

Form A6121

Part Number D301159X012

December 2005

ROCLINK™ 800 Configuration Software

User Manual

Flow Computer Division

Website: www.EmersonProcess.com/flow



Revision Tracking Sheet

December 2005

This manual is periodically altered to incorporate new or updated information. The date revision level of each page is indicated at the bottom of the page opposite the page number. A major change in the content of the manual also changes the date of the manual, which appears on the front cover. Listed below is the date revision level of each page.

Page	Revision
All Pages	Dec-05
All Pages	Feb-05
All Pages	Oct-04
All Pages	Apr-04
All Pages	Sep-03
All Pages	Jul-03
All Pages	Sep-02

FloBoss and ROCLINK are marks of one of the Emerson Process Management companies. The Emerson logo is a trademark and service mark of Emerson Electric Co. All other marks are the property of their respective owners.

This product may be covered under pending patent applications.

© Fisher Controls International, LLC. 2002-2005. All rights reserved.

Printed in the U.S.A.

While this information is presented in good faith and believed to be accurate, Fisher Controls does not guarantee satisfactory results from reliance upon such information. *Nothing contained herein is to be construed as a warranty or guarantee, express or implied, regarding the performance, merchantability, fitness or any other matter with respect to the products*, nor as a recommendation to use any product or process in conflict with any patent. Fisher Controls reserves the right, without notice, to alter or improve the designs or specifications of the products described herein.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section 1 – ROCLINK 800 Software Basics	1-1
1.1 ROCLINK 800 SOFTWARE DESCRIPTION	1-1
1.2 COMPUTER REQUIREMENTS	1-2
1.3 CONTACTING THE FLOW COMPUTER DIVISION	1-2
1.4 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION	1-2
1.4.1 Manually Creating a Desktop Shortcut	1-3
1.4.2 Launching ROCLINK 800 During Setup.....	1-4
1.4.3 Un-Installing ROCLINK 800	1-4
1.5 STARTING ROCLINK 800 SOFTWARE	1-4
1.5.1 Logging On.....	1-5
1.6 USER INTERFACE BASICS	1-6
1.6.1 Menu Bar and Menus	1-8
1.6.2 Buttons.....	1-8
1.6.3 ToolBar.....	1-9
1.6.4 Keystrokes	1-10
1.6.5 Help System	1-11
1.6.6 About ROCLINK 800	1-12
1.6.7 Basic Navigation	1-12
1.6.8 TLP Box Selections.....	1-13
1.6.9 AutoScan Update Interval Option	1-14
1.7 CONFIGURATION BASICS	1-14
1.7.1 Configuration Checklist (ROC800-Series)	1-15
1.7.2 Configuration Checklist (ROC300-Series)	1-16
1.7.3 Configuration Checklist (FloBoss 100-Series).....	1-16
1.7.4 Configuration Checklist (FloBoss 407).....	1-17
1.7.5 Duplicating a Configuration	1-17
1.8 CREATING A NEW CONFIGURATION FILE	1-18
1.8.1 Opening a Configuration File.....	1-19
1.8.2 Configuration Tree Menu	1-20
 Section 2 – Configuring Communications and Security	 2-1
2.1 SECURITY ACCESS LEVELS	2-2
2.2 ROCLINK 800 SECURITY	2-5
2.3 DEVICE SECURITY.....	2-6
2.3.1 Device Security – Users (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)	2-6
2.3.2 Device Security – Users (FloBoss 407)	2-8
2.3.3 Device Security – Users (ROC300-Series)	2-9
2.3.4 Device Security – Groups.....	2-10
2.3.5 Device Security – Comm Ports (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)	2-11
2.3.6 Device Security – Users / Group Summary (ROC800-Series)	2-12
2.4 LICENSE KEY ADMINISTRATOR (ROC800-SERIES)	2-13
2.5 DEVICE DIRECTORY	2-14
2.5.1 Device Root.....	2-15
2.6 ROCLINK 800 COMMUNICATIONS.....	2-17
2.6.1 ROCLINK 800 Communications – General	2-17
2.6.2 ROCLINK 800 Communications – Advanced.....	2-20

2.7	COMMUNICATION PORTS ON THE ROC AND FLOBOSS	2-21
2.7.1	Comm Ports – General	2-25
2.7.2	Comm Ports – Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	2-27
2.7.3	Comm Ports – Modem	2-28
2.7.4	Comm Ports – SRBX or RBX.....	2-30
2.7.5	Comm Ports – Store & Forward (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 407).....	2-32
2.7.6	Comm Ports – Diagnostics (ROC800-Series).....	2-33
2.7.7	Configuring TCP/IP Communications on the Ethernet Port (ROC800-Series)	2-34
2.8	CONNECTING TO A ROC OR FLOBOSS	2-36
2.8.1	Direct Connect.....	2-36
2.8.2	Local Operator Interface (LOI – Local Port)	2-37
2.8.3	Connect.....	2-37
2.8.4	Successful Login	2-37
2.9	TROUBLESHOOTING COMMUNICATIONS	2-38
2.9.1	Troubleshooting Connection Errors	2-38
2.9.2	Troubleshooting ROCLINK 800 Communications	2-39
2.9.3	Troubleshooting TCP/IP Connections.....	2-39
2.9.4	Communications Monitor.....	2-40
2.9.5	Disconnecting from a ROC or FloBoss.....	2-40
Section 3 – Configuring System Parameters		3-1
3.1	SETTING THE CLOCK.....	3-1
3.2	CONFIGURING DEVICE INFORMATION.....	3-2
3.2.1	Information – General	3-4
3.2.2	Information – Internet (ROC800-Series)	3-6
3.2.3	Information – Points	3-7
3.2.4	Information – Other Information.....	3-10
3.2.5	Information – System Configuration (ROC800-Series).....	3-12
3.2.6	Information – Revision Info (FloBoss 100-Series)	3-13
3.2.7	Information – Keypad Display (ROC800-Series)	3-14
3.3	CONFIGURING SYSTEM FLAGS	3-15
3.3.1	Returning the Device to Factory Default Settings.....	3-18
3.3.2	Flags – Advanced	3-19
3.3.3	Flags – User Programs (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407)	3-22
Section 4 – Configuring Inputs and Outputs (I/O)		4-1
4.1	I/O CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW	4-1
4.2	AI – ANALOG INPUT CONFIGURATION.....	4-2
4.2.1	AI – General	4-2
4.2.2	AI – Advanced.....	4-4
4.2.3	AI – Alarms	4-7
4.3	AO – ANALOG OUTPUT CONFIGURATION.....	4-9
4.3.1	AO – General.....	4-9
4.3.2	AO – Advanced	4-11
4.3.3	AO – Alarms (ROC800-Series)	4-13

4.4	DI – DISCRETE INPUT CONFIGURATION	4-14
4.4.1	DI – General	4-14
4.4.2	DI – Advanced.....	4-16
4.4.3	DI – TDI Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)	4-18
4.4.4	DI – Alarms	4-19
4.5	DO – DISCRETE OUTPUT CONFIGURATION	4-21
4.5.1	DO – General.....	4-22
4.5.2	DO – Advanced	4-24
4.5.3	DO – TDO Parameters	4-26
4.5.4	DO – Alarms (ROC800-Series)	4-28
4.6	PI – PULSE INPUT CONFIGURATION	4-29
4.6.1	PI – General.....	4-29
4.6.2	PI – Advanced	4-32
4.6.3	PI – Alarms.....	4-35
4.7	PULSE INTERFACE MODULE DIAGNOSTIC (FLOBoss 104).....	4-37
4.8	RTD – RTD INPUT CONFIGURATION (ROC800-SERIES)	4-38
4.8.1	RTD – General	4-39
4.8.2	RTD – Advanced.....	4-40
4.8.3	RTD – Alarms	4-41
4.9	TC – THERMOCOUPLE INPUT CONFIGURATION (ROC800-SERIES)	4-42
4.9.1	Thermocouple – General	4-43
4.9.2	Thermocouple – Advanced	4-44
4.9.3	Thermocouple – Alarms	4-45
4.10	SYSTEM AI – SYSTEM ANALOG INPUT CONFIGURATION (ROC800-SERIES)	4-46
4.10.1	System AI – General (ROC800-Series)	4-47
4.10.2	System AI – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-48
4.10.3	System AI – Alarms (ROC800-Series)	4-49
4.11	HART INPUT CONFIGURATION (ROC800-SERIES).....	4-50
4.11.1	HART – General (ROC800-Series)	4-51
4.11.2	HART – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-53
4.11.3	HART – Device (ROC800-Series).....	4-54
4.12	MVS SENSOR (ROC800-SERIES OR FLOBoss 407).....	4-57
Section 5 – Configuring the Meter Setup.....		5-1
5.1	METER SETUP BASICS.....	5-1
5.2	STATION CONFIGURATION (ROC800-SERIES)	5-2
5.2.1	Station – General (ROC800-Series)	5-3
5.2.2	Station – Gas Quality (ROC800-Series)	5-5
5.2.3	Station – Advanced (ROC800-Series)	5-7
5.2.4	Station – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	5-9
5.3	METER SETUP CONFIGURATION.....	5-11
5.3.1	Meter – General.....	5-12
5.3.2	Meter – Inputs	5-16
5.3.3	Meter – Gas Quality (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407)	5-19
5.3.4	Meter – Advanced	5-21
5.3.5	Meter – Sampler (FloBoss 100-Series)	5-32
5.3.6	Meter – Instrument Calibration (FloBoss 100-Series)	5-33

5.3.7	Meter – Calibration Factors (ROC800-Series).....	5-34
5.3.8	Meter – Alarms.....	5-35
5.3.9	Meter – Mass Meter Pressure Effect (ROC800-Series)	5-38
Section 6 – Configuring and Viewing History		6-1
6.1	HISTORY	6-1
6.2	HISTORY SETUP (FloBoss 100-SERIES).....	6-3
6.2.1	Configuring FloBoss 100-Series History	6-5
6.3	HISTORY SETUP (ROC300-SERIES AND FloBoss 407)	6-6
6.4	CONFIGURING HISTORY SEGMENTS (ROC800-SERIES)	6-8
6.5	CONFIGURING HISTORY POINTS.....	6-10
6.6	CONFIGURING HISTORY FOR EFM REPORTING.....	6-13
6.7	EFM REPORTS.....	6-17
6.7.1	Collecting ROC Data.....	6-17
6.7.2	Displaying EFM Reports.....	6-18
6.7.3	Converting EFM Files	6-19
6.7.4	PGAS Conversions.....	6-23
6.7.5	Flow-Cal (.CFX) Conversions	6-31
6.8	HISTORY, ALARM, AND EVENT LOG REPORTS.....	6-31
6.8.1	Viewing the History Log.....	6-31
6.8.2	Viewing the Alarm Log.....	6-31
6.8.3	Viewing the Event Log.....	6-31
6.8.4	Viewing Report Logs From the Device	6-32
6.8.5	Viewing Report Logs From a File.....	6-33
6.8.6	Viewing the History Log Report Graphically (Plot)	6-34
6.9	DEVICE MEMORY.....	6-35
Section 7 – Extended Functions		7-1
7.1	SOFT POINTS	7-1
7.2	OPCODE TABLE.....	7-3
7.3	SAMPLER/ODORIZER (ROC800-SERIES).....	7-4
7.4	PROPORTIONAL, INTEGRAL, AND DERIVATIVE (PID)	7-5
7.4.1	PID (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series).....	7-6
7.4.2	PID (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407).....	7-8
7.4.3	PID – General	7-9
7.4.4	PID – Tuning	7-13
7.4.5	PID – Status (ROC800-Series).....	7-16
7.4.6	PID – Example	7-17
7.5	RADIO POWER CONTROL	7-18
7.6	DS800 DEVELOPMENT SUITE SOFTWARE (ROC800-SERIES).....	7-21
7.7	USER PROGRAM ADMINISTRATOR	7-22
7.7.1	User Program Download Steps	7-24
7.8	USER DATA.....	7-25

Section 8 – Modbus Communications	8-1
8.1 MODBUS CONFIGURATION (ROC800-SERIES AND FLOBOSS 100-SERIES)	8-2
8.1.1 Configuring a ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series as a Modbus Slave.....	8-2
8.1.2 Configuring a ROC800-Series as a Modbus Host.....	8-2
8.1.3 Modbus Configuration – General.....	8-3
8.1.4 Modbus Configuration – Scale Values.....	8-5
8.2 MODBUS CONFIGURATION – HISTORY	8-8
8.2.1 Modbus Configuration – History Access Registers (FloBoss 100-Series)	8-10
8.3 MODBUS EVENTS AND ALARMS FUNCTIONALITY	8-13
8.3.1 Modbus Events and Alarms (ROC800-Series)	8-14
8.3.2 Reading Modbus Events and Alarms Register.....	8-15
8.3.3 Acknowledging Modbus Events and Alarms.....	8-16
8.4 MODBUS REGISTERS (ROC800-SERIES AND FLOBOSS 100-SERIES)	8-18
8.4.1 Modbus Conversion (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)	8-23
8.5 MODBUS MASTER TABLE (ROC800-SERIES)	8-29
8.6 MODBUS MASTER MODEM (ROC800-SERIES)	8-31
8.7 MODBUS HOST PARAMETERS (FLOBOSS 407 AND ROC300-SERIES)	8-32
 Section 9 – Saving and Retrieving Configurations	 9-1
9.1 SAVING A ROC USER FILE	9-1
9.2 SAVING A CONFIGURATION.....	9-2
9.3 DOWNLOADING A CONFIGURATION	9-3
9.3.1 Opening a Configuration	9-4
 Section 10 – Calibration.....	 10-1
10.1 CALIBRATION BASICS	10-1
10.1.1 Calibration Report	10-2
10.2 STARTING CALIBRATION.....	10-3
10.2.1 Verify – Calibration	10-3
10.2.2 Set Zero – Calibration	10-5
10.2.3 Set Span – Calibration	10-7
10.2.4 Set Midpoints – Calibration.....	10-8
10.2.5 Zero Shift / Offset / RTD Bias – Calibration.....	10-10
10.2.6 Orifice Meter Calibration.....	10-10
10.2.7 Turbine Meter Calibration	10-13
10.2.8 AI and RTD Calibration.....	10-14
10.2.9 HART Calibration.....	10-15
10.3 ANALOG INPUT CALIBRATION VALUES	10-16
10.4 RTD INPUT CALIBRATION VALUES	10-17
10.5 MVS INPUT CALIBRATION VALUES (ROC800-SERIES AND FLOBOSS 407)	10-19
 Section 11 – Updates and Changes	 11-1
11.1 UPDATE FIRMWARE	11-1
11.1.1 Update Firmware – I/O Termination Board.....	11-3
11.1.2 Update Firmware – Keypad Display (ROC800-Series).....	11-4
11.2 UPGRADE HARDWARE (FLOBOSS 100-SERIES).....	11-5
11.3 PLATE CHANGE.....	11-6

Section 12 – Displays, Diagnostics, and Monitoring	12-1
12.1 PRINT CONFIGURATION.....	12-2
12.2 I/O MONITOR.....	12-3
12.3 LCD DISPLAY CONFIGURATION (ROC300-SERIES)	12-5
12.4 LCD USER LIST (FLOBOSS 100-SERIES AND FLOBOSS 407)	12-6
12.5 METER RUN VALUES	12-7
12.6 CUSTOM DISPLAYS	12-9
12.6.1 Custom Displays – New Display.....	12-10
12.6.2 Custom Displays – Objects	12-11
12.6.3 Custom Displays – Object Properties.....	12-12
12.6.4 Editing a Custom Display From a File.....	12-13
12.6.5 Adding an Expression to a Custom Display Object	12-13
12.6.6 Display Administrator	12-15
12.7 KEYPAD DISPLAY EDITOR CONFIGURATION	12-16
12.7.1 Creating a New Keypad Display File (ROC800-Series).....	12-16
12.7.2 Update Keypad Display Firmware (ROC800-Series)	12-17
12.7.3 Editing a Keypad Display File	12-18
12.7.4 Keypad Display Security (ROC800-Series).....	12-19
 Appendix A – FST Editor.....	 A-1
A.1 FST EDITOR.....	A-1
A.2 FUNCTION SEQUENCE TABLE INTRODUCTION.....	A-1
A.3 FST REGISTERS	A-3
A.4 FST EDITOR.....	A-5
A.4.1 FST Function Structure	A-6
A.4.2 FST Label Field.....	A-7
A.4.3 FST Command Field – CMD	A-7
A.4.4 FST Argument Fields – ARG.....	A-7
A.4.5 FST Comment Fields.....	A-8
A.4.6 FST Function Examples	A-8
A.4.7 Basic Rules for Creating FSTs	A-8
A.4.8 FST Storage and Restart.....	A-9
A.5 WORKING WITH FSTs	A-10
A.5.1 Creating an FST.....	A-10
A.5.2 Altering an FST – Edit Menu	A-13
A.6 MONITOR MODE	A-13
A.6.1 FST – Trace Mode.....	A-15
A.7 FST COMMAND LIBRARY	A-16
A.7.1 FST Mathematical Commands	A-18
A.7.2 FST Logical Commands.....	A-20
A.7.3 FST Comparison Commands	A-22
A.7.4 FST Time-Related Commands	A-23
A.7.5 FST Control-Related Commands	A-24
A.7.6 FST Miscellaneous Commands.....	A-25
A.7.7 FST Database Commands	A-26

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Glossary G-1

IndexI-1

SECTION 1 – ROCLINK 800 SOFTWARE BASICS

This section describes how to use the ROCLINK™ 800 Configuration Software to configure and monitor ROC800-Series Remote Operations Controllers, ROC300-Series, FloBoss™ 407 Flow Managers, and FloBoss 100-Series devices.

The software runs on a personal computer that uses the Windows 98 or higher operating system. This user manual covers configuration, calibration, monitoring, database archiving, custom displays, and embedded utilities.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
1.1 ROCLINK 800 Software Description.....	1-1
1.2 Computer Requirements	1-2
1.3 Contacting the Flow Computer Division	1-2
1.4 Software Installation	1-2
1.5 Starting ROCLINK 800 Software.....	1-4
1.6 User Interface Basics	1-6
1.7 Configuration Basics.....	1-14
1.8 Creating a New Configuration File.....	1-18

1.1 ROCLINK 800 Software Description

ROCLINK 800 Configuration Software provides the capability to monitor, configure, and calibrate ROC800-Series Remote Operations Controllers, ROC300-Series, FloBoss 407 Flow Managers, and FloBoss 100-Series Flow Managers. The software and user documentation are supplied on a CD-ROM.

ROCLINK 800 software is designed for ease of use. Drop-down menus simplify accessing the functions provided by the software. Dialog boxes and drop-down list boxes help to direct selections and data entry. You can perform actions with the keyboard or a pointing device, such as a mouse. Refer to User Interface Basics for a description of the user interface.

Help screens are accessed either from the Help menu or in a context-sensitive fashion using <F1>. This feature makes it easy to access on-line information for any ROCLINK 800 software topic.

You can build custom displays for the ROC or FloBoss that combines both graphic and dynamic data elements. The displays can monitor the operation of the ROC or FloBoss either locally or remotely.

The software also provides multiple levels of security for controlling access to ROCLINK 800 software functions, as well as the ROC database.

- ❖ **Note:** If you are using a **serial mouse** (typically plugs into serial port COM1), be sure to set up communications to the ROC or FloBoss through a port that does not share interrupts (typically COM2), or a conflict occurs.

1.2 Computer Requirements

ROCLINK 800 software runs on most IBM-compatible personal computers (PCs). The PC can be a desktop or a portable computer. In any case, the PC should meet the following minimum requirements:

- ◆ Pentium-class processor (233 MHz or greater recommended).
- ◆ CD-ROM drive.
- ◆ Windows 98, ME, NT 4.0 (Service Pack 6), 2000 (Service Pack 2), or XP.
- ◆ 64 MB of RAM (Random Access memory).
- ◆ SVGA color monitor, 800 by 600 pixels, small fonts.
- ◆ 15 to 50 MB of available hard disk space depending on Operating System and revision level.
- ◆ EIA-232 (RS-232) serial connection, a dial-up modem connection, a TCP/IP connection (ROC800-Series), or a wireless radio (FloBoss 100-Series).

1.3 Contacting the Flow Computer Division

Please contact your local sales representative, or contact the Flow Computer Division directly.

Emerson Process Management
Flow Computer Division
Marshalltown, IA 50158 USA
Houston, TX 77065 USA
Pickering, North Yorkshire UK Y018 7JA

E-mail: fas.tech-support@emersonprocess.com

Website: www.emersonprocess.com/flow/

Technical Support Website: www.emersonprocess.com/flow/Emerson/support/support_index.html

Telephone: (641) 754-3449 (Monday through Friday 7:30 AM to 4:30 PM Central US Time)

1.4 Software Installation

To install ROCLINK 800 software:

1. Start the installation by one of the two methods described below.
 - ◆ **Method 1** – If you have a **CD-ROM** that contains the ROCLINK 800 installation files:
 - A. Place the ROCLINK Software Installation CD-ROM into your drive.
 - B. If the CD-ROM runs automatically, click the **Install a ROCLINK Product** button in the Main Menu.
 - C. Click the **Install ROCLINK 800** button in the Installation Screen.
 - ❖ **Note:** If the CD-ROM does not run automatically, click Windows **Start** > **Run**. When the Run dialog box opens, click the **Browse** button and navigate to the CD-ROM drive and select **Setup.exe**. Click the **Open** button. If the CD-ROM drive is drive D, the location will be D:\Installs\ROCLINK800_ W68130\Setup.exe. Click **OK** in the Run dialog box.

- ◆ **Method 2** – If you have **.zip** file that contains the ROCLINK 800 installation files:

A. Extract the **.zip** file to the local hard drive (for example, in the C:\TEMP\ directory).

B. Run **setup.exe** from extraction location (for example, run C:\TEMP\SETUP.EXE).

The Installation Wizard screen appears.

2. The Installation Wizard determines whether ROCLINK 800 has been installed previously.
 - ◆ If this is an upgrade, a dialog box appears asking whether to continue with the upgrade. Click **Yes**. Installation begins. Click **Next** when prompted.
 - ◆ If this is a new installation, click **Next** in the ROCLINK 800 Welcome screen. Read the License Agreement and click **Yes** to confirm. Enter your Name and Company name, and click **Next**.
 3. Select a destination folder, if you want to install the software in a folder other than the default, C:\Program Files\ROCLINK800. The ROCLINK800 default folder is recommended.
 4. Click **Next**.

A confirmation screen appears when you are ready to start copying files.
 5. Click **Next** in the Setup Status screen.
 6. Click the **Finish** button in the Wizard Complete screen.
 7. If the installation was performed from the CD-ROM, select **View Manual** or **Exit** on the Main Menu screen. Once you have exited the Main Menu, remove the installation CD-ROM.
- ❖ **Note:** A restart may be necessary after installation is complete.

1.4.1 Manually Creating a Desktop Shortcut

ROCLINK 800 software installation should automatically create a Desktop Shortcut on your computer. If for some reason you need to manually create the Desktop Shortcut, perform the following steps.

1. Double-click the **My Computer** icon.
2. Navigate to the **C:\Program Files\ROCLINK800** folder or the folder where you installed ROCLINK 800.
3. Select the **ROCLINK.exe** file.
4. Select **Create Shortcut** from the File menu.
5. Click and drag the shortcut to your **Desktop**.
6. Double-click the **shortcut** on your desktop to launch ROCLINK 800 software.

1.4.2 Launching ROCLINK 800 During Setup

This procedure launches ROCLINK 800 software every time you start this computer.

1. Double-click the **My Computer** icon.
2. Navigate to the **C:\Program Files\ROCLINK800** folder or the folder where you installed ROCLINK 800 software.
3. Select the **ROCLINK.exe** file.
4. Select **File > Create Shortcut**.
5. Depending on the Operating System of your PC, use the required method to place the shortcut file into the startup folder.

1.4.3 Un-Installing ROCLINK 800

To remove ROCLINK 800 software from a personal computer, perform the following steps.

1. Click the Windows **Start** button.
2. Select **Settings > Control Panel**.
3. Double-click the **Add/Remove Programs** icon.
4. Select ROCLINK 800.
5. Click **Add/Remove** button.
6. Follow the instructions.

1.5 Starting ROCLINK 800 Software

To use ROCLINK 800 software to configure a hardware device, you must have the ROC or FloBoss properly connected to power and I/O. Refer to the appropriate hardware instruction manual. Initially, the ROC should also be connected to a personal computer (PC) running ROCLINK 800 using the Local Operator Interface (LOI), serial, modem, or Ethernet port.

To run ROCLINK 800 software, perform one of the following steps:

- ◆ Double-click the Desktop shortcut.
- ◆ Select **Start > Programs > ROCLINK 800 > ROCLINK 800**.
- ◆ Double-click the file **ROCLINK.exe** located in **C:\Program Files\Roclink800** (the default directory), or wherever you installed ROCLINK 800 software.

The software loads and initializes.

- ❖ **Note:** You can only run one version of ROCLINK 800 software at a time.

1.5.1 Logging On

To log on to ROCLINK 800 Software:

1. **Connect** the ROC or FloBoss to the Local Operator Interface (LOI – Local Port) and launch **ROCLINK 800**.

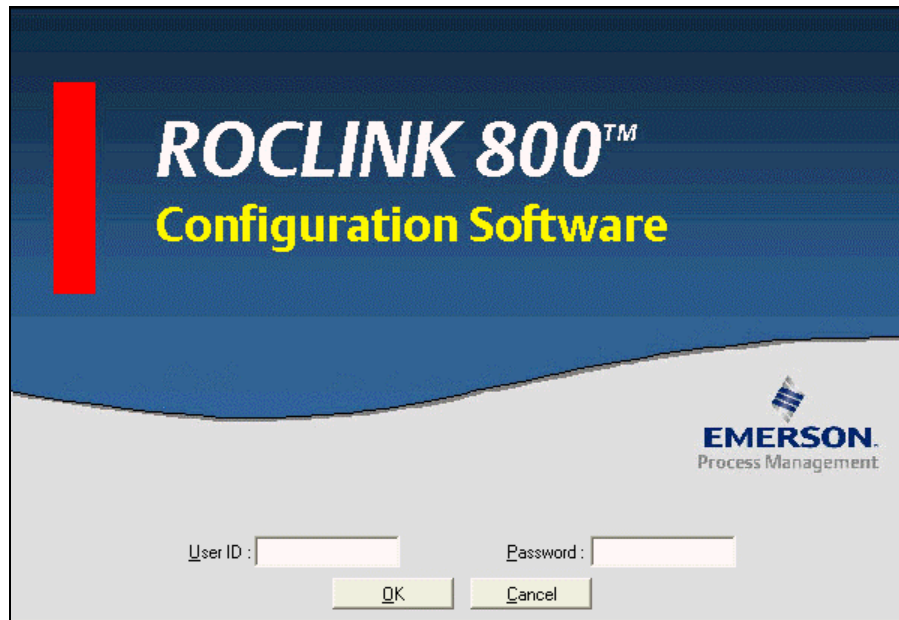


Figure 1-1. Logon

2. Type in your assigned 3-character identifier in the **User ID** field and press **<Enter>** or **<Tab>**.

❖ **Note:** This User ID is case sensitive.

Your initials are typically your User ID. If User IDs have not yet been assigned, try using the default User ID. of **LOI**. User IDs are assigned by using the ROC > Security feature in ROCLINK 800 software.

3. Type in your assigned 4-digit **Password** and press **<Enter>** or click **OK**. For added security, the software displays an asterisk for each number that you type. If Passwords have not yet been assigned, use the default Password of **1000** (valid with default User ID of LOI).

ROCLINK 800 software compares the entered User ID and Password to a list of valid ones.

If the log on is not valid, a dialog box appears. Click **OK** and re-enter the User ID and Password. You can repeat the procedure as many times as needed until you successfully enter a valid User ID and Password.

To exit from the log on screen, press **<Esc>** or click **Cancel**. This aborts ROCLINK 800 software and returns you to the point where you started ROCLINK 800 software.

1.6 User Interface Basics

Users interact with ROCLINK 800 software using various displays on the computer monitor and the computer keyboard and/or pointing device.

The major components of ROCLINK 800 software user interface are:

- ◆ Menu bar and menus.
- ◆ Toolbar.
- ◆ Function screens.
- ◆ Dialog boxes.
- ◆ Help system, including the Status bar and message boxes.
- ◆ Device Directory or Configuration Tree menu.

ROCLINK 800 software employs a Graphical User Interface (GUI) with a standard Windows menu structure. After logging on to ROCLINK 800 software, available functions display in a menu bar with drop-down menus. A Status Line at the bottom left of the display contains pertinent information about the highlighted item, such as a menu option or a parameter.

Buttons display dialog boxes for further configuration details or perform a desired action, such as the Update button. To activate the button:

- ◆ Click the button with a left click of the mouse.
- ◆ When a button is active, press <Enter> or a function key.

Dialog boxes are areas that “pop up” inside the current screen to allow further selections or values to be entered. They can also provide messages or information that is more detailed.

The menu structure lists choices from which you can select the desired function. Once a function is selected, the screen or dialog box for that function displays. This screen or dialog box provides the requested information and lets you enter the applicable configuration data. Refer to Table 1-1.

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Table 1-1. Menu Listing for ROCLINK 800

Menu	Menu Options
File	New, Open..., Download..., Close, Save Configuration, Print Configuration, Print ^{1, 3, 4} , Print Setup ^{1, 3, 4} , [List of recent files], Exit
Edit	Undo ^{1, 3, 4} , Cut ^{1, 3, 4} , Copy ^{1, 3, 4} , Paste ^{1, 3, 4}
View	Directory, EFM Report, Calibration Report, History, Alarms, Events, Display, I/O Monitor, Toolbar
ROC	Direct Connect, Connect, Collect Data, Clock, Security, Comm Ports, Memory ^{2, 3, 4} , Information, Flags
Configure	I/O, Control, History Segments ¹ , History Points, Opcode Table, MODBUS, LCD User List ^{2, 3} , LCD ⁴ , User Data ^{2, 3, 4}
Meter	Setup, Calibration, Values, Plate Change, History ^{3, 4}
Utilities	Update Firmware, Update Hardware ² , License Key Administrator ¹ , Convert EFM File, User Program Administrator, ROCLINK 800 Security, AI Calibration Values, RTD Calibration Values ¹ , MVS Calibration Values ^{1, 3} , FST Editor, ROC Keypad Display Editor ¹ , Communications Monitor
Tools	Customize, Options
Window	Cascade, Tile, Device Directory, [List of open windows]
Help	Help Topics, About ROCLINK 800

1. This option applies to ROC800-Series units.

2. This option applies to FloBoss 100-Series units.

3. This option applies to FloBoss 407 units.

4. This option applies to ROC300-Series units.

1.6.1 Menu Bar and Menus

The menu bar appears at the top of the screen.

From the menu bar, you can use either the keyboard or the mouse to activate a menu and then to select a function in that menu. You can also select functions using ToolBar Buttons or the Configuration Tree Menu.

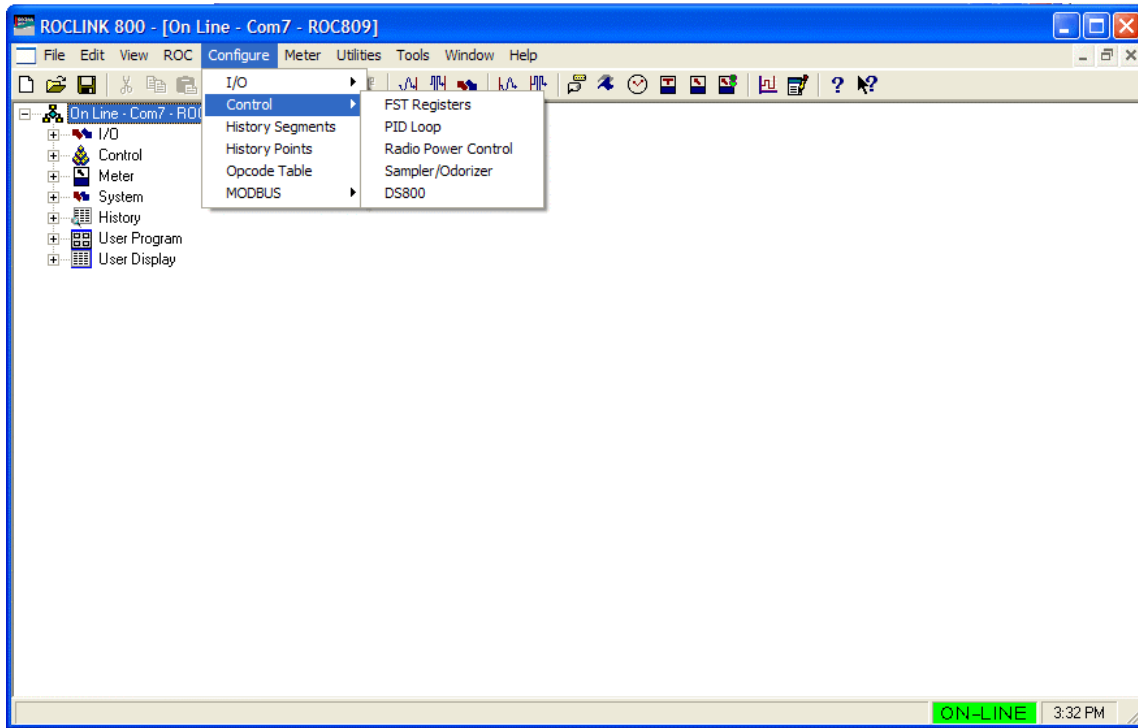


Figure 1-2. Menu Bar and ToolBar (ROC800-Series Example)

1.6.2 Buttons

Several buttons appear on the majority of ROCLINK 800 screens.



Minimize and hide windows.



Maximize the size of the windows to fit in the screen area.



Return to Original size of the window.



Close a window.



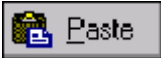
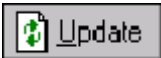


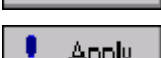
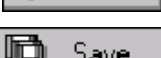

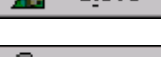
Expand options listed in the Device Directory or Configuration Tree Menu.



Hide options listed in the Device Directory or Configuration Tree Menu.














Copy contents of window to Clipboard.

	Paste contents of the Clipboard to the active window.
	Update contents of the active window from the device.
	Apply changes, if any, on the active window to the device and close the active window. A Confirm Save dialog box appears if there are unsaved changes.
	Cancel all unsaved changes and close the active window.
	Apply changes on the active window to the device.
	Save contents of the active window.
	Close the active window. A Confirm Save dialog box appears if there are unsaved changes.
	Delete current selection.

1.6.3 ToolBar

The following buttons appear in the ROCLINK 800 toolbar. These buttons will be grayed out if not applicable to the current screen.

	New file creates a New Configuration File. Available configuration parameters can be specified using menu selections. Configure the file as if you were connected to the device. Functions requiring a live connection are unavailable in this mode.
	Open a disk file opens an existing configuration file. Configuration files are created using the New Device or Save Configuration functions.
	Save file saves the current configuration of the connected Device to a disk file.
	Cut deletes currently selected text and places it in the Clipboard.
	Copy duplicates currently selected text and places it in the Clipboard.
	Paste places text currently in the Clipboard where the cursor is located.
	Print prints the configuration file.
	AI Points views the Analog Input window.
	AO Points views the Analog Output window.
	DI Points views the Discrete Input window.
	DO Points views the Discrete Output window.



PI Points views the Pulse Input window.



Clock views the Clock window.



Comm Ports views the Comm Ports Setting window.



Direct Connect connects to a Device locally using the (LOI) Local Operator Interface port.



Connect connects to a Device.



Flags views the Flags window.



Meter Setup views the Meter Setup window.



Configure PID Points views the PID Loop window.



Plate Change views the Plate Change window.



FST Editor launches the Function Sequence Table Editor.



Display Program Information displays program information, version, creation date, and copyright of ROCLINK 800 software.



Help launches ROCLINK 800 on-line help system.

1.6.4 Keystrokes

If you are using the keyboard, you may use the Alt key plus the letter to activate the menus. For example, press <Alt + F> and press <O> to select the Open file dialog. You may also use the Left Arrow ← and Right Arrow → keys to highlight the menu bar item (the help Status Line at the bottom of the screen provides a description of the menu) and press the letter.

With a menu displayed, you can highlight the desired item by using the Down Arrow ↓ and Up Arrow ↑ keys or the mouse. With the desired item highlighted, press the <Enter> key to activate the function.

To leave a menu or submenu, press the <Esc> key. You can then select another menu. You can also access another menu simply by using the Left Arrow and Right Arrow key.

The text scrolling keys are the <Page Up> and <Page Down> keys.

To use the keyboard in configuration screens and dialog boxes, press the <Tab> key to move in a predetermined sequence from one parameter field or button to the next. The selected field or button becomes highlighted. Fields unavailable for changes are automatically skipped.

When you <Tab> to the last field or button in the screen or dialog box, pressing the <Tab> key again jumps back to the first field or button. To go back to a previous field or button, press <Shift + Tab>.

In an option field, the currently selected option is highlighted. To select one of the other options, use the Up Arrow ↑ and Down Arrow ↓ keys to highlight the desired option, and then press <Enter>.

In a field that requires a text or numerical entry, type in the required characters or numbers from the keyboard. Use the <Backspace> or <Delete> keys to erase unwanted characters. Use the Left Arrow ← and Right Arrow → to move the cursor one character at a time and the <Home> and <End> keys to place the cursor at the beginning and end of the field, respectively.

Other keys or key combinations include:

- ◆ <F1> – Launches ROCLINK 800 on-line help.
- ◆ <Esc> – Cancels the current activity, closes the screen, and returns you to the last-used place in the menu structure, screen, or other place from which the dialog box originated. If a menu is active, <Esc> closes the last-opened menu, taking you up one level in the menu structure. If the menu bar is active, <Esc> de-selects all menu options. Press the <Alt> key or click with the mouse to reactivate the menu bar.
- ◆ <Ctrl + N> – Creates a new configuration file.
- ◆ <Ctrl + O> – Opens a configuration file.
- ◆ <Ctrl + S> – Saves the current configuration file.

1.6.5 Help System

The Help menu provides detailed on-screen information about getting started with ROCLINK 800 software and performing keyboard operations, a list of the Help topics, and the ROCLINK 800 software version.

To display context sensitive help on a menu item, a parameter, or a button, press <F1> while the item, parameter, or button is highlighted. A help window appears on the screen.

To view detailed help, select Help > Help Topics.

Contents – The Contents button displays a list of Help Topics that display based on task oriented situations. Each screen, tab, and field has a help topic associated with it. For example: the Modbus Scale Values tab is located under Modbus > Modbus Configuration > Scale Values Tab.

Index – Use the Index to locate specific Help Topics. The Index lists each field individually and by the tab or screen in which the field appears. For example: Modbus Scale Values appears in the Index under Modbus Configuration > Scale Values Tab and under Scale Values. Each field within the Scale Values Tab displays under the Index listing Modbus Configuration – Scale Values Tab and individual based on the name of the field.

Search – Use Search to query on specific word.

Back – Click to return to the last topic that you viewed.

Print – Click to Print the currently displayed topic.

<< and >> – Click the Browse Sequence buttons to navigate forward (>>) and backwards (<<) through the help system on a per topic basis. The Browse Sequence follows the order of the topics as displayed in the Contents tab.

See Also – Click to display topics related to the selected topic.

1.6.6 About ROCLINK 800

Select Help > About ROCLINK 800 to view the ROCLINK 800 version number and other information, such as Supporting Files Version Information.

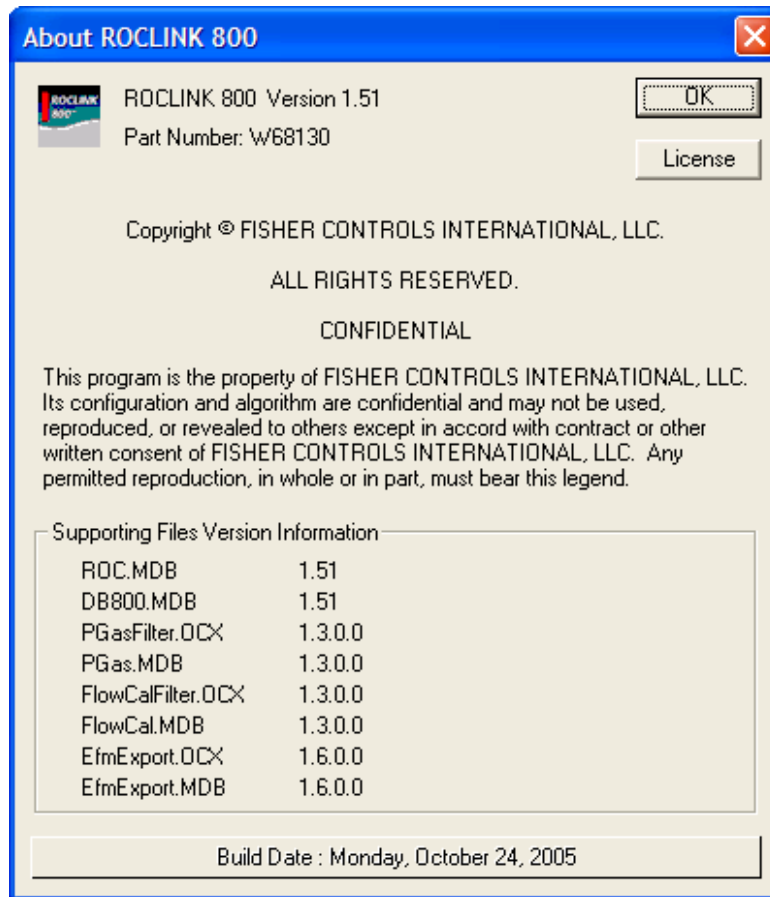


Figure 1-3. About ROCLINK 800 (ROC800-Series)

1.6.7 Basic Navigation

When you start the ROCLINK 800 software, the Device Directory displays. After you connect to a ROC or FloBoss, the Configuration Tree View displays. Refer to Figure 1-7.

Use the + and – symbols to display or hide various options. Double-click a point to display the associated parameter configuration screen. You can also use the menu options and buttons to display the associated parameter configuration screen.

The Status Line at the bottom of the Device Directory and Configuration Tree View serves two purposes. First, on the left side of the line, brief information about the device being connected. Second, on the right side of the line, the device on-line or off-line status and system time display.

1.6.8 TLP Box Selections

Throughout ROCLINK 800 software, the Select TLP dialog can be accessed by clicking the browse button with three dots. The Select TLP dialog allows you to assign specific inputs and outputs to parameters. ROCLINK 800 software uses Point Type (T), Logical Number (L), and Parameter (P) to define point locations.

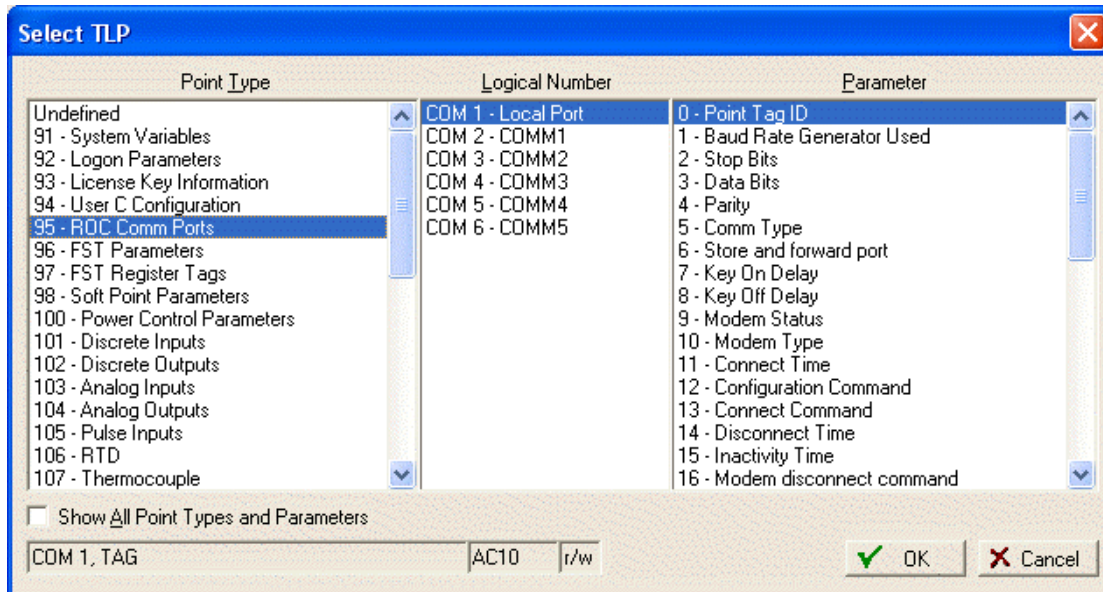


Figure 1-4. Select TLP

To use the Select TLP dialog box:

1. Select the **Point Type** from the list. This opens a list of logical numbers and parameters that belong to that Point Type.
2. Select the **Logical Number**. In the configuration screens, the Logical Number is generally referred to as Point Number or Number.
3. Select the specific **Parameter**. These are usually called by the same term as the Tag on the configuration screen. Click **OK**.

The display field at the bottom of the Select TLP dialog displays the numeric point location of the TLP point or a text abbreviation, depending on the setting in the Tools > Options window.

1.6.8.1 Display TLP Options

Select Tools > **Options** to set whether TLPs display as text or numbers in TLP display fields throughout ROCLINK 800 software, including the FST Editor. For example, the TLP for Register 2 of FST 1 could display as either “FST 1,R2” or “96, 0, 3”.

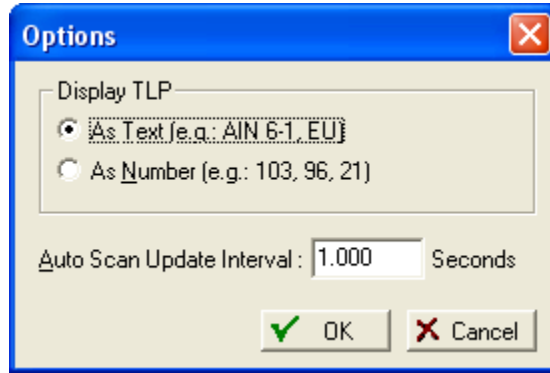


Figure 1-5. TLP Options

Select Tools > Options to set the time interval, in seconds, at which the AutoScan feature on various screens in ROCLINK 800 software will poll the ROC or FloBoss device. Click the AutoScan button to cause ROCLINK 800 software to poll the device automatically, until the StopScan button is clicked.

1.6.9 AutoScan Update Interval Option

Select Tools > Options to set the time interval, in seconds, at which the **AutoScan** feature on various screens in ROCLINK 800 software will poll the ROC or FloBoss device. Pushing the AutoScan button on any screen will cause ROCLINK 800 software to poll the device automatically, until the **StopScan** button is pushed.

1.7 Configuration Basics

Configuration of a ROC or FloBoss unit can be performed by altering an existing configuration file or by starting a new configuration file.

The full configuration procedure involves using the menu functions or Configuration Tree Menu to access the configuration screens. Some of the configuration screens may not be required for your application or may not be available for your type of ROC or FloBoss.

The following checklists present the order of configuration in a typical application. Omit configuration screens for modules and accessories that do not appear in your hardware configuration and for control elements (PID, FST, and such) that do not apply to your application.

1.7.1 Configuration Checklist (ROC800-Series)

For a ROC800-Series unit:

- ◆ ROC menu > ROCLINK 800 Security (logon)
- ◆ Device Directory > Comm Port > Properties (PC communication configurations)
- ◆ ROC menu > Security (User List and Comm Port Security)
- ◆ ROC menu > Clock
- ◆ ROC menu > Information (system variables)
- ◆ Utilities menu > License Key Administrator (for user programs, DS800 programs and AGA Meter Runs)
- ◆ Meter menu > Setup > Station (for English or Metric Unit selection)
- ◆ ROC menu > Comm Ports (ROC communication configurations)
- ◆ Configure menu > I/O menu > AI, AO, DI, DO, PI, HART, MVS, RTD, and T/C
- ◆ Meter menu > Station Configuration
- ◆ Meter menu > Orifice or Turbine Meter Setup
- ◆ Configure menu > History Segments and History Points (history database)
- ◆ Configure menu > Control menu > PID Loop
- ◆ Configure menu > Radio Power Control (for communications sleep mode)
- ◆ Utilities menu > FST Editor
- ◆ View menu > Display > New or from File (for custom PC displays)
- ◆ Utilities menu > Keypad Display (for ROC Keypad Display)
- ◆ ROC menu > Flags (for saving and system variables to Flash memory)

1.7.2 Configuration Checklist (ROC300-Series)

For a ROC300-Series unit:

- ◆ Utilities menu > ROCLINK 800 Security (logon)
- ◆ Device Directory > Comm Port > Properties (PC communication configurations)
- ◆ ROC menu > Security (User List and Comm Port Security)
- ◆ ROC menu > Clock
- ◆ ROC menu > Information (system variables)
- ◆ ROC menu > Comm Ports (ROC communication configurations)
- ◆ Configure menu > I/O menu > AI, AO, DI, DO, and PI
- ◆ Meter menu > Setup (Orifice or Turbine meter)
- ◆ Meter menu > History (Meter run history setup)
- ◆ Configure menu > Control menu > PID Loop
- ◆ Configure menu > History Points (history database)
- ◆ Configure menu > LCD
- ◆ Configure menu > Radio Power Control (communications sleep mode)
- ◆ Utilities menu > FST Editor
- ◆ ROC menu > Flags (for saving and system variables to Flash memory)

1.7.3 Configuration Checklist (FloBoss 100-Series)

For a FloBoss 100-Series unit:

- ◆ ROC menu > ROCLINK 800 Security (logon)
- ◆ Device Directory > Comm Port > Properties (PC communication configurations)
- ◆ ROC menu > Security (User List and Comm Port Security)
- ◆ ROC menu > Clock
- ◆ ROC menu > Information (system variables)
- ◆ ROC menu > Comm Ports (ROC communication configurations)
- ◆ Configure menu > I/O menu > AI, AO, DI, DO, and PI
- ◆ Meter menu > Setup (orifice or turbine meter)
- ◆ Meter menu > History (Meter run history setup)
- ◆ Configure menu > Control menu > PID Loop
- ◆ Configure menu > History Points (history database)
- ◆ Configure menu > LCD User List
- ◆ Configure menu > Radio Power Control (for communications sleep mode)
- ◆ Utilities menu > FST Editor
- ◆ View menu > Display > New or from File (for custom PC displays)
- ◆ ROC menu > Flags (for saving and system variables to Flash memory)

1.7.4 Configuration Checklist (FloBoss 407)

For a FloBoss 407 unit:

- ◆ Utilities menu > ROCLINK 800 Security (logon)
- ◆ Device Directory > Comm Port > Properties (PC communication configurations)
- ◆ ROC menu > Security (User List and Comm Port Security)
- ◆ ROC menu > Clock
- ◆ ROC menu > Information (system variables)
- ◆ ROC menu > Comm Ports (ROC communication configurations)
- ◆ Configure menu > I/O menu > AI, AO, DI, DO, PI, and MVS
- ◆ Meter menu > Setup (Orifice or Turbine meter)
- ◆ Meter menu > History (Meter run history setup)
- ◆ Configure menu > Control menu > PID Loop
- ◆ Configure menu > History Points (history database)
- ◆ Configure menu > LCD User List
- ◆ Configure menu > Radio Power Control (communications sleep mode)
- ◆ Utilities menu > FST Editor
- ◆ ROC menu > Flags (for saving and system variables to Flash memory)

1.7.5 Duplicating a Configuration

You can duplicate the configuration for another ROC or FloBoss unit by using these menu functions in the following order:

1. File > **Save Configuration** to save the configuration to a specified file.
2. ROC > **Direct Connect** (Local Port) or **Connect** (modem) to connect physically to the second unit, and then communicate.
3. File > **Download** loads the configuration into the unit.

After you have loaded configuration data into the second ROC (Step 3) and changed it as needed, you can save the configuration to its own disk file by using Step 1.

1.8 Creating a New Configuration File

The new configuration file screen allows you to create a configuration file off-line with the basic information about the meters and modules that will be installed on the ROC or FloBoss unit for which the new configuration was created.

1. Select File > New.

Figure 1-6. New File Configuration Example (ROC800-Series)

2. The **Type** parameter indicates the type of ROC or FloBoss unit.
3. For the ROC800-Series, select the type of I/O or Comm **809 Modules** that will reside in each of the nine module slots of the ROC800-Series unit.
4. For the FloBoss 100-Series, select the type of termination board (**I/O Type**). Selections are 4 point (old style termination board) or 6 point (new style) with or without I/O points. When 6 point with I/O is selected, **External I/O** selections appear. Be sure to select the types of I/O for which the termination board switches and wiring are configured.
5. For the ROC800-Series, enter the number of PID loops, FSTs, Stations, Sampler/Odorizers, Orifice Meters, and Turbine Meters that will be configured. Only activate the necessary number of devices.
6. For the **FloBoss 100-Series**, enter the number of **PID Loops**.
7. For the FloBoss 100-Series, select the maximum number of History Points in Standard and Extended History (**103 History Sizing**). Be sure to select this carefully, as History Points cannot be added later without clearing current history present in the unit. Standard history affects the amount of available extended history.

8. **Save** the configuration file. ROCLINK 800 files have the extension **.800**.
9. Establish an on-line connection to the ROC or FloBoss unit.
10. Set the parameters and point assignments, as necessary.

The **Type** parameter indicates the type of ROC or FloBoss unit.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, select the type of termination board (**I/O Type**). Selections are 4 point (old style termination board) or 6 point (new style) with or without I/O points. When 6 point with I/O is selected, **External I/O** selections appear. Be sure to select the types of I/O for which the termination board switches and wiring are configured.

For the **ROC800-Series**, enter the number of PID loops, FSTs, Stations, Sampler/Odorizers, Orifice Meters, and Turbine Meters that will be configured. Only activate the necessary number of devices. For the **FloBoss 100-Series**, enter the number of PID Loops.

For the ROC800-Series, select the type of I/O or Comm **809 Modules** that will reside in each of the nine module slots of the ROC800-Series unit.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, select the maximum number of History Points in Standard and Extended History (**103 History Sizing**). Be sure to select this carefully, as History Points cannot be added later.

Optionally, the FloBoss 100-Series units have I/O. When 6 point I/O termination board is selected, **External I/O** selections appear. Be sure to select the types of I/O for which the termination board switches and wiring are configured.

1.8.1 Opening a Configuration File

The Open option allows you to open an existing configuration file either on-line (from a ROC or FloBoss unit) or off-line (from the PC hard drive or disk). Configuration files are created using the Save Configuration function. To open a configuration file:

1. Establish an on-line connection to the ROC or FloBoss, if opening a file on-line.
2. Select File > **Open**.
3. Select the configuration file name. ROCLINK 800 files have the extension **.800**.
4. Alter the **parameters** and **point** assignments as necessary.

Once the configuration file is opened, it automatically becomes active and you may edit the file off-line. The configuration file may also be loaded into a ROC by using the Download function.

1.8.2 Configuration Tree Menu

When you open a configuration file or go on-line with a ROC or FloBoss unit, the Configuration Tree appears on the screen. It has a hierarchy tree with the configurable items in the configuration, such as I/O, Meter Runs, and History.

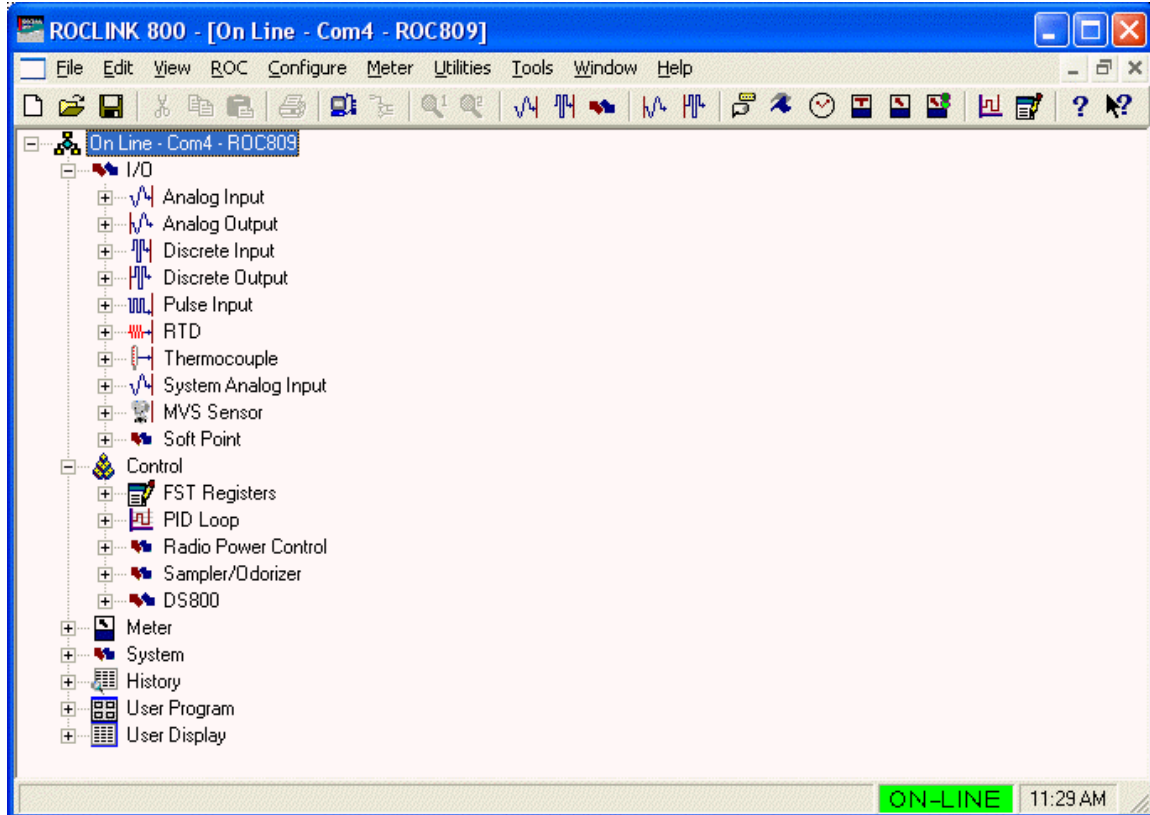


Figure 1-7. Configuration Tree

SECTION 2 – CONFIGURING COMMUNICATIONS AND SECURITY

This section describes how to configure the communication ports on a PC and on a ROC or FloBoss. It also describes how to use the Connect and Direct Connect features in ROCLINK 800 software and security controlling access to the ROC or FloBoss and ROCLINK 800 software.

Security can be controlled in two ways:

- ◆ **ROCLINK 800 Security** – The ROCLINK 800 Security screen allows you to control who can log on to ROCLINK 800 software and which screens they can access. Refer to Section 2.2, ROCLINK 800 Security, on page 2-5.
- ◆ **Device Security** – Device Security screen controls who has access to the Comm Ports on the ROC or FloBoss device. Refer to Section 2.3, Device Security, on page 2-6.
 - ❖ **Note:** Security Access Levels enable you to control which users have access to specific ROCLINK 800 functions. Refer to Section 2.1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

Before attempting to connect to a ROC or FloBoss, configure communication parameters in two places:

- ◆ **ROCLINK 800 Communications** – The Device Directory communication configurations allow ROCLINK 800 software to communicate to an individual ROC or FloBoss unit. Refer to Section 2.6, ROCLINK 800 Communications, on page 2-17.
- ◆ **Communication Ports on the ROC and FloBoss** – Use the ROC > Comm Ports to set up communication ports available for incoming or outgoing communications with the ROC or FloBoss. Refer to Section 2.7, Communication Ports on the ROC and FloBoss, on page 2-21.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
2.1 Security Access Levels	2-2
2.2 ROCLINK 800 Security	2-5
2.3 Device Security	2-6
2.4 License Key Administrator (ROC800-Series)	2-13
2.5 Device Directory	2-14
2.6 ROCLINK 800 Communications	2-17
2.7 Communication Ports on the ROC and FloBoss.....	2-21
2.8 Connecting to a ROC or FloBoss.....	2-36
2.9 Troubleshooting Communications.....	2-38

2.1 Security Access Levels

Refer to Table 2-1. The **Menu Options** focus on the activity while you use the **Access Levels** to increase or decrease responsibility levels within the Menu Options.

- ❖ **Note:** If security is enabled on any port, at least one user must have the highest level of security (level 5).
- ❖ **Note:** Login requests are rejected when ROCLINK 800 Access Levels are greater than Device Security.

Table 2-1. Security Access Levels

Menu	Menu Option	Access Level
ROC	Security	5
Utilities	License Key Administrator	5
Utilities	ROCLINK 800 Security	5
Utilities	Update Firmware	4
Utilities	Upgrade Hardware	4
Utilities	Upgrade to FlashPAC	4
Utilities	User Program Administrator	4
Configure	Control > DS800	3
Configure	Control > FST Registers	3
Configure	Control > PID Loop	3
Configure	Control > Radio Power Control	3
Configure	Control > Sampler Odorizer	3
Configure	History Points	3
Configure	History Segments	3
Configure	I/O > AI Points	3
Configure	I/O > AO Points	3
Configure	I/O > DI Points	3
Configure	I/O > DO Points	3
Configure	I/O > MVS Sensor	3
Configure	I/O > PI Points	3
Configure	I/O > RTD Points	3
Configure	I/O > Soft Points	3
Configure	I/O > System AI Points	3
Configure	I/O > T/C Points	3
Configure	LCD User List	3
Configure	Modbus > Configuration	3
Configure	Modbus > History	3
Configure	Modbus > Master Modem	3
Configure	Modbus > Master Table	3
Configure	Modbus > Registers	3
Configure	Opcode Table	3
Configure	User Data	3
File	Download	3
File	New	3
File	Save Configuration	3
ROC	Clock	3

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Menu	Menu Option	Access Level
ROC	Comm Ports	3
ROC	ROC Flags	3
ROC	ROC Information	3
Tools	Options	3
Utilities	AI Calibration Values	3
Utilities	Convert EFM File	3
Utilities	FST Editor	3
Utilities	MVS Calibration Values	3
Utilities	RTD Calibration Values	3
View	Display > New	3
Meter	Calibration > Orifice Meter	2
Meter	Calibration > Turbine Meter	2
Meter	History	2
Meter	Plate Change	2
Meter	Setup > Orifice Meter	2
Meter	Setup > Station	2
Meter	Setup > Turbine Meter	2
Meter	Values > Orifice Meter	2
Meter	Values > Turbine Meter	2
ROC	Collect Data	2
View	Calibration Report	2
View	EFM Report	2
File	Close	1
File	Open	1
File	Print Configuration	1
File	Recent Files	1
ROC	Memory	1
View	Alarms > From File	1
View	Alarms > From ROC	1
View	Events > From File	1
View	Events > From ROC	1
View	History > Between Dates	1
View	History > From File	1
View	History > From ROC	1
View	I/O Monitor	1
Edit	Copy	0
Edit	Cut	0
Edit	Paste	0
Edit	Undo	0
File	Exit	0
File	Print	0
File	Print Setup	0
Help	About ROCLINK	0
Help	Help Topics	0
ROC	Connect	0
ROC	Direct Connect	0
Tools	Customize	0

Menu	Menu Option	Access Level
Utilities	Communications Monitor	0
View	Directory	0
View	Display > Display 1	0
View	Display > Display 2	0
View	Display > From File	0
View	Toolbar	0
Window	Cascade	0
Window	Currently Open Files	0
Window	Tile	0

2.2 ROCLINK 800 Security

Select Utilities > **ROCLINK 800 Security**. The ROCLINK 800 Security screen allows you to control who can log on to ROCLINK 800 software and which screens they can access. You may specify up to 21 different users. The Operator ID is used as the User ID when you login to ROCLINK 800. Refer to Section 12, Keypad Display Security.

- ❖ **Note:** After you initially access ROCLINK 800 software and establish security parameters, delete the default Operator ID LOI and default Operator Password 1000 to prevent unauthorized users from accessing and changing parameters.
- ❖ **Note:** To delete an Operator ID, Password or Access Level, highlight the cell and use the backspace key or Delete key.

Operator ID	Password	Access Level
LOI	1000	5
TRP	1000	2

Figure 2-1. ROCLINK 800 Security

1. Select Utilities > **ROCLINK 800 Security**.
2. Enter the three alphanumeric characters for the **Operator ID**, which is typically the initials of the person who operates the device. Each Operator ID must be unique and is case-sensitive.
 - ❖ **Note:** The default Operator ID is LOI and the default Password is 1000.
3. Enter the four numeric characters between 0000 and 9999 to define the **Password**. More than one user can have the same Password.
4. Enter the desired **Access Level** of the user. “0” is the lowest Access Level and allows access to the fewest number of screens. “5” is the highest Access Level and permits access to all screens. Each Access Level permits access to screens at that level and any inherited from lower access levels. For example, the users with Access Level 3, have access to screens with levels 0, 1, 2, and 3. Refer to Table 2-1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

2.3 Device Security

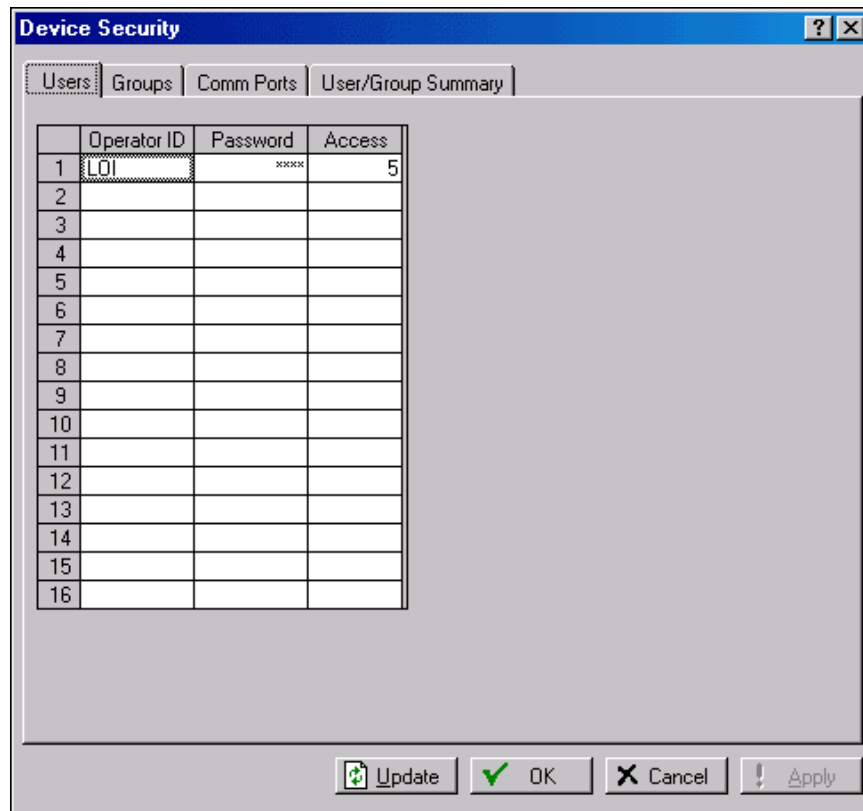
Select ROC > **Security**. Device Security screen controls who has access to the Comm Ports on the ROC or FloBoss device. Refer to Section 12, Keypad Display Security.

2.3.1 Device Security – Users (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

Select ROC > **Security**. For the ROC800-Series and the FloBoss 100-Series, the Device Security screen controls who has access to the Comm Ports on the ROC or FloBoss device. When Enabled, you must login to use the communications port. Each communications port may be Enabled or Disabled separately. For the ROC800-Series, the Keypad Display user and group security settings are also configured on this screen.

The default Operator ID is LOI. The default Password is 1000.

1. Select ROC > **Security**.
2. Click an **Operator ID** field to add, edit, or remove a user.

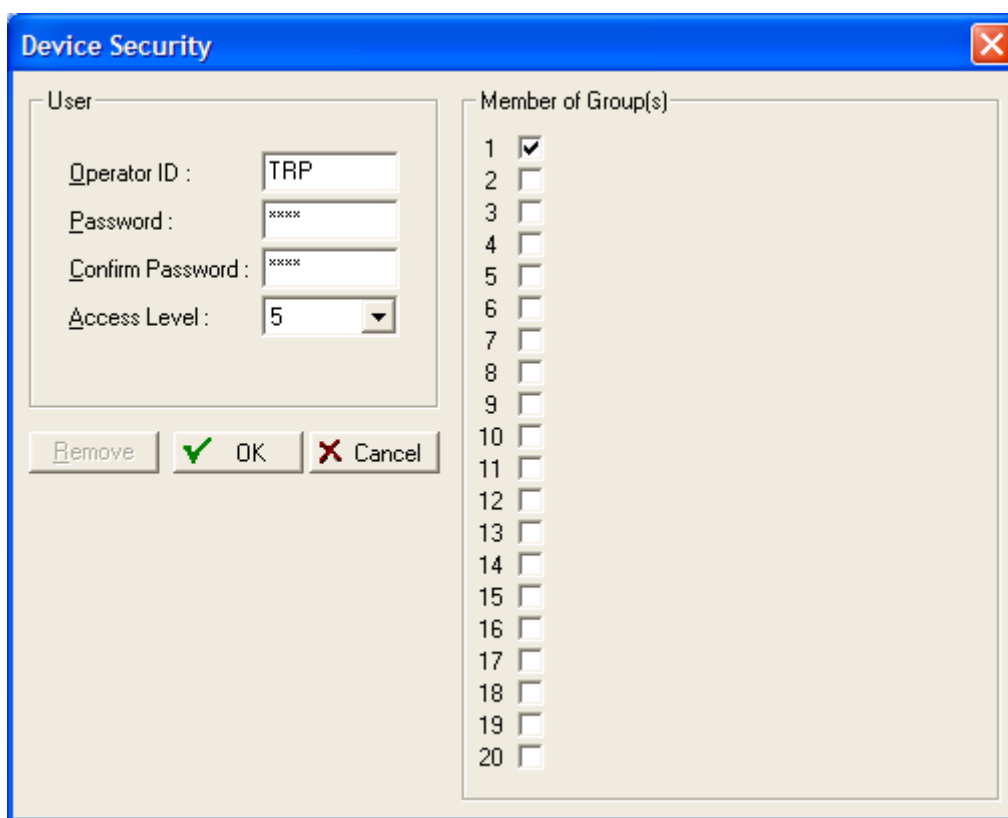


	Operator ID	Password	Access
1	LOI	XXXX	5
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			

Figure 2-2. Device Security – Users (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

3. Enter the **Operator ID**, **Password**, **Confirmed Password**, and user **Access Level**. Refer to Table 2-1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

4. Select the **Group** to which the user belongs.



The image shows a 'Device Security' dialog box with a blue title bar and a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog is divided into two main sections. The left section, titled 'User', contains four input fields: 'Operator ID' with the text 'TRP', 'Password' with 'xxxx', 'Confirm Password' with 'xxxx', and 'Access Level' with a dropdown menu showing '5'. Below these fields are three buttons: 'Remove', 'OK' (with a green checkmark icon), and 'Cancel' (with a red X icon). The right section, titled 'Member of Group(s)', contains a list of 20 groups, numbered 1 through 20. Each number is followed by a checkbox. The checkbox for group 1 is checked, while all other checkboxes are unchecked.

Group	Member of Group(s)
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 2-3. Device Security – Users Maintenance (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

5. Click **OK** and click **Apply**.

2.3.2 Device Security – Users (FloBoss 407)

Select ROC > **Security**. The Device Security screen controls who has access to the Comm Ports and LCD / Keypad on the FloBoss device. When Enabled, you must login to use the communications port. Each communications port may be Enabled or Disabled separately. For the FloBoss 407, Device Security also controls who has access to the Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) for the unit. Select an Operator ID in the table to set each individual's security, for up to 32 users.

Operator ID	Password	Access	LCD ON	User List 1	User List 2	User List 3	Std Lists
1	KPD	0	View+Edit	View+Edit	View+Edit	View+Edit	
2	LOI	5	View+Edit	View+Edit	View+Edit	View+Edit	
3							
4							
5							
6							
7							
8							
9							
10							
11							
12							
13							
14							
15							
16							

Security on LOI: ☒ Disabled ☐ User ID Enabled ☐ User Access Level Enabled

Security on COM1: ☒ Disabled ☐ User ID Enabled ☐ User Access Level Enabled

Security on COM2: ☐ Disabled ☒ User ID Enabled ☐ User Access Level Enabled

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 2-4. Device Security – Users (FloBoss 407)

User Table – Select an Operator ID in the table to set each individual's security. If you wish to create a user, click on an empty cell in the table. The Device Security dialog box appears.

To delete an operator entry from the table, highlight a cell in that line. When the Device Security dialog box appears, click the Remove button.

Operator ID – Enter the three alphanumeric characters for the **Operator ID**, which is typically the initials of the person who operates the device through that communications port. Each Operator ID must be unique. The Operator ID is case-sensitive. The default Operator ID is LOI. The default Password is 1000.

Password – Enter the four numeric characters between 0000 and 9999 for the **Password**. Users can have the same Password.

❖ **Note:** Login requests are rejected when ROCLINK 800 Access Levels are greater than Device Security. Refer to Table 2-1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

Access Level – Enter the desired **Access Level** of the user. “0” is the lowest Access Level and allows access to the fewest number of screens. “5” is the highest Access Level and permits access to all screens. Each Access Level permits access to screens at that level and any inherited from lower access levels. For example, the users with Access Level 3, have access to screens with levels 0, 1, 2, and 3. Refer to Security Access Levels for a full list of the access levels. Refer to Table 2-1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

❖ **Note:** If security is enabled on any port, at least one user must have the highest level of security (level 5).

LCD ON – Select Enabled to turn the LCD Display Always ON and leave it active, or select Disabled to allow the LCD Display to time out and turn itself off. If Enabled, the LCD remains on until the next user logs on who has the LCD Disabled.

LCD Custom User List – Check a radio button to give a user access to the **LCD Custom User List 1**, **2**, and **3** of an on-line FloBoss 407 for viewing, editing, or both. This includes the keypad functions.

Security on LOI, Security on COM1, and Security on COM2 – For each communications port, select Disabled, **User ID Enabled** (to require security on a specific communications port), or **User Access Level Enabled** (to require a specific level of security for this user).

2.3.3 Device Security – Users (ROC300-Series)

Select ROC > **Security**. The Device Security screen controls who has access to the Comm Ports and optional Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) on the ROC device. When Enabled, you must login to use the communications port. Each communications port may be Enabled or Disabled separately and you can select the Access Level.

	Operator ID	Password	Access	Timeout
1	LOI	XXXXXX	5	10
2				10
3				10
4				10
5				10
6				10
7				10
8				10
9				10
10				10

Security on LOI
☒ Disabled ☐ User ID Enabled ☐ User Access Level Enabled

Security on COM1
☐ Disabled ☐ User ID Enabled ☒ User Access Level Enabled

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 2-5. Device Security – Users (ROC300-Series)

User Table – Select an **Operator ID** in the table to set each individual's security. If you wish to create a user, click on an empty cell in the table. The Device Security dialog box appears. Refer to Device Security.

To delete an operator entry from the table, highlight a cell in that line. When the Device Security dialog box appears, click the Remove button.

Operator ID – Enter the three alphanumeric characters for the **Operator ID**, which is typically the initials of the person who operates the device through that communications port. Each Operator ID must be unique. The Operator ID is case-sensitive.

Password – Enter the four numeric characters between 0000 and 9999 for the **Password**. Users can have the same Password.

Access Level – “0” is the lowest Access Level and allows access to the fewest number of screens. “5” is the highest Access Level and permits access to all screens. Each Access Level permits access to screens at that level and any inherited from lower access levels. For example, the users with Access Level 3, have access to screens with levels 0, 1, 2, and 3. Refer to Security Access Levels.

- ❖ **Note:** Login requests are rejected when ROCLINK 800 Access Levels are greater than Device Security. Refer to Table 2-1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

Security On LOI and Security on COM1 – For each communications port, select one of the following options:

- ◆ **Disabled** – All login requests are accepted.
- ◆ **User ID Enabled** – Login requests are accepted if the User ID and Password are valid. Upon successful login, full access is allowed.
- ◆ **User Access Level Enabled** – Login requests are accepted if the User ID and Password are valid. Upon successful login, the user is restricted by access level. Refer to Security Access Levels. Refer to Table 2-1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

2.3.4 Device Security – Groups

Select ROC > **Security**. Click the **Groups** tab. For ROC800-Series units, with firmware version 1.50 or greater, the Group tab establishes the Groups used in Keypad Display security. Enter a name for each Group that you are establishing. If your application does not require a Keypad Display, do not create Groups.

	Group Name
1	FAS
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	
18	
19	
20	

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 2-6. Device Security – Groups (ROC800-Series)

2.3.5 Device Security – Comm Ports (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

Select ROC > **Security**. Click the **Comm Ports** tab. For each communications port, select one of the following **Security on** options:

- ◆ **Disabled** – All login requests are accepted.
- ◆ **User ID Enabled** – Login requests are accepted if the Operator ID and Password are valid. Upon successful login, full access is allowed.
- ◆ **User Access Level Enabled** – Login requests are accepted if the Operator ID and Password are valid. Upon successful login, the user is restricted by access level. Refer to Table 2-1, Security Access Levels, on page 2-2.

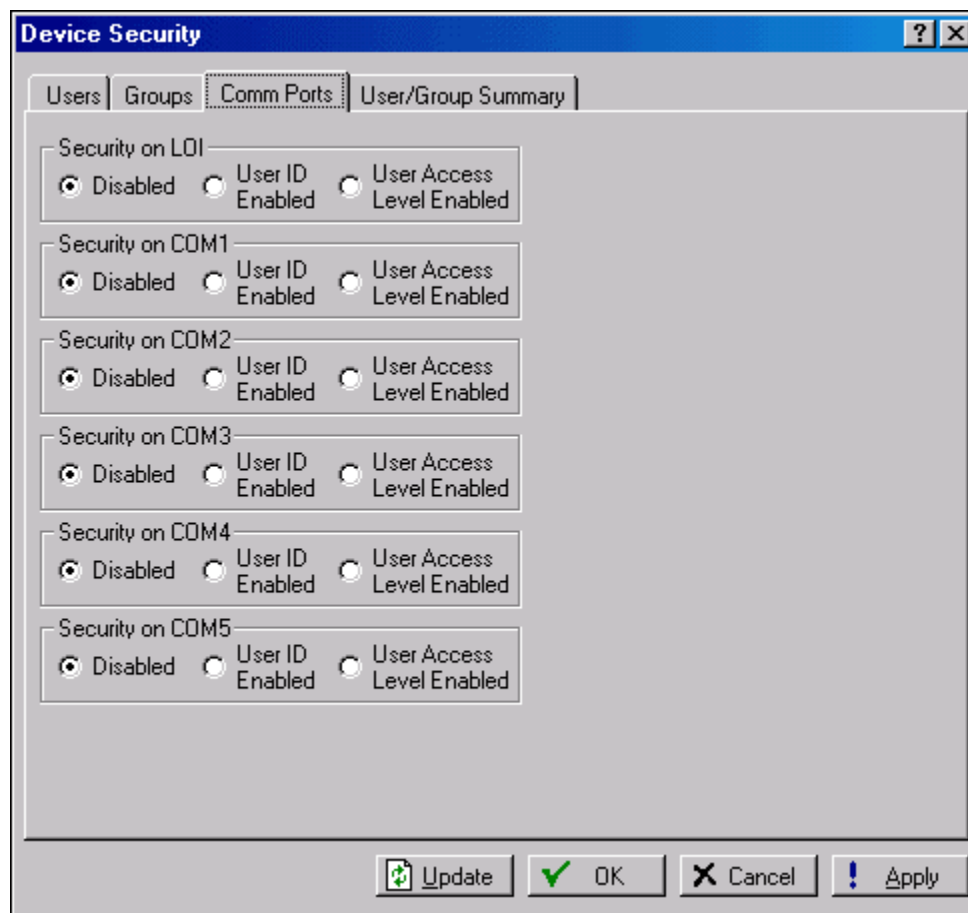


Figure 2-7. Device Security – Comm Ports (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

2.3.6 Device Security – Users / Group Summary (ROC800-Series)

Select ROC > **Security**. Click the **Users / Group Summary** tab. For ROC800-Series units, with firmware version 1.50 or greater, the User/Group Summary tab displays which users belong to which Group. Use the Users and Groups table to quickly make changes to the ROC > Security settings.

User	Member of Group																			
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
1 LOI	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Group 1 Name :

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 2-8. Device Security – User/Group Summary (ROC800-Series)

2.4 License Key Administrator (ROC800-Series)

Select Utilities > **License Key Administrator** to access the license information on any license key that may currently be installed in the CPU of the ROC800-Series. From this screen, you can view and manage the licenses stored on the license key(s).

AGA Meter Runs and some applications, such as DS800 and user programs, must have a license key installed in the ROC800-Series CPU with the appropriate entry to allow execution of the application.

The Application Code is specific to the application and is defined by the application provider. The application code should not be mistaken for license quantity. License Application Code values may not be merged or split.

- ◆ In a DS800 license, the application code has no meaning and is 0.
- ◆ In a User Program license, the application code's meaning is documented in the user program's manual.
- ◆ In an AGA 3/7/8 license, the application code will be 6, which indicates six Meter Runs per license. If the quantity of licenses is 2, then 12 Meter Runs can execute.

License Key Administrator

License Key #1

Num	Application Name	Provider Name	App Code	Version	Quantity	# Available	Expiration	Time Created
1	AGA_3/7/8	Emerson FCD	6	0.0.0	1	0	No Expiration	05/06/2005 10:49:46

License Key #2

Move Merge Split

Num	Application Name	Provider Name	App Code	Version	Quantity	# Available	Expiration	Time Created
1								

Update Cancel

Figure 2-9. License Key Administrator (ROC800-Series)

The License Key grids provide a list of the licenses currently on the key in the upper (#1) and lower (#2) key slots of the CPU module. Licenses may be moved from one key to another. If both keys are full, the Move, Merge, and Split buttons are grayed out.

Use the **Move** button to move licenses from one key to another key.

Use the **Merge** button to merge the first two similar entries by creating a single license with the combined quantities.

Use the **Split** button to split a license with a quantity greater than 1. This allows multiple quantity licenses to be split and moved between license keys. You cannot split a license with a quantity of 1.

2.5 Device Directory

The Device Directory is the first screen that displays after logging in to ROCLINK 800 software. The Device Directory provides a way to create and maintain communications setup configurations for a PC running ROCLINK 800 software. The communication ports on the PC can be uniquely configured to send data to specified ROC or FloBoss units.

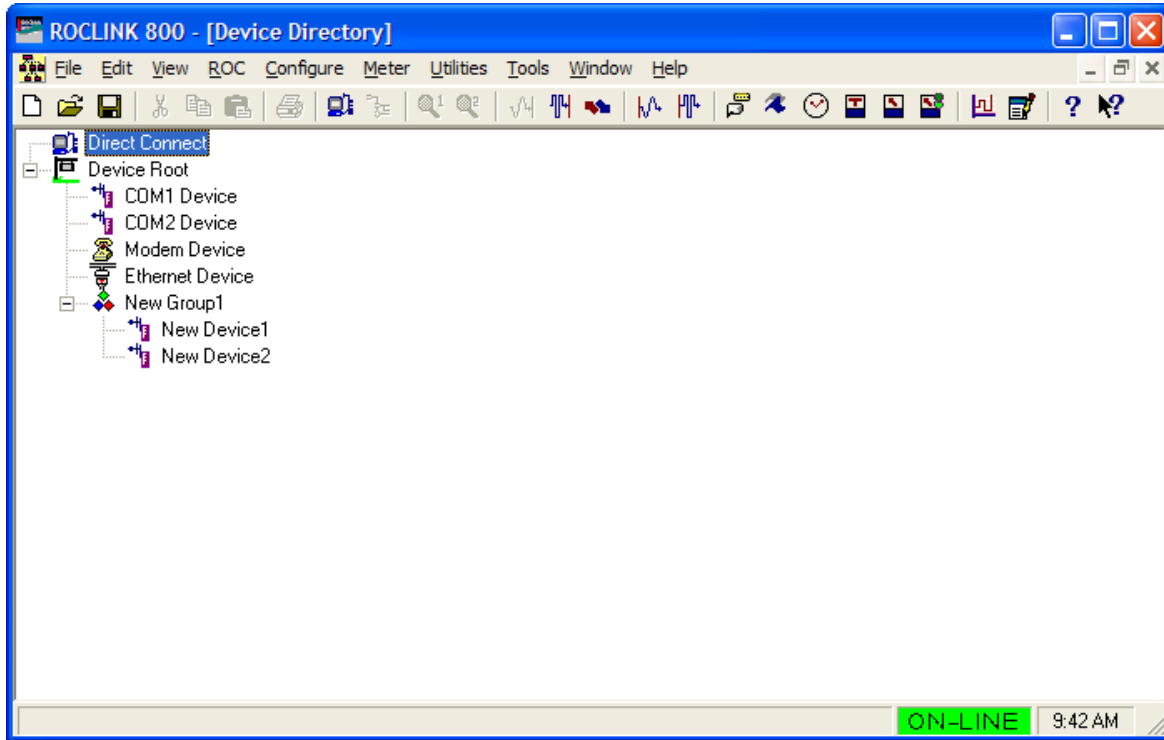




Figure 2-10. Device Directory

Use the  and  symbols to display or hide various options.

- ❖ **Note:** Configuration of the PC Communication Ports to the ROC or FloBoss unit cannot be performed within the Configuration Tree screen. You must return to the Device Directory. If you are in a configuration, select Window > Device Directory or View > Directory to go to the Device Directory.

The PC communication configurations allow ROCLINK 800 software to communicate to an individual ROC or FloBoss unit. You may add, delete, or modify these communications setups and establish a tree of Groups and Devices.

The Device Directory is used to set up the personal computer's (PC) communications ports (COM ports).

The ROCLINK 800 Communication Parameter Setup screen allows you to change your PC communications port, time-out settings, and other variables, used by ROCLINK 800 software when establishing a connection to a Device.

In order for ROCLINK 800 software to communicate with a Device, ROCLINK 800 software must know to which device it is communicating. Each Device within a Group is given a unique Device Address.

2.5.1 Device Root

The Device Root is the organizational level in the Device Directory. When you open ROCLINK 800 software, the default Device labels display in the Device Directory. You can modify these communications setup configurations, or you can create new configurations.

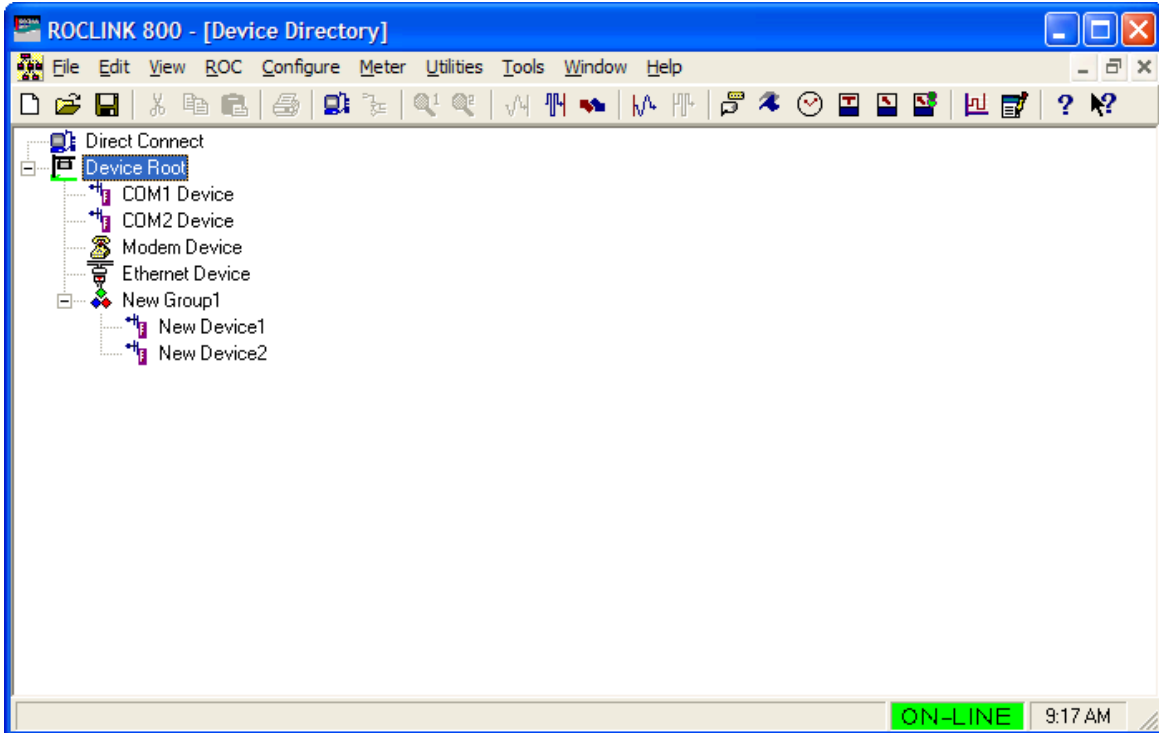


Figure 2-11. Device Root

The default Device Root labels include:

- ◆ COM1 Device
- ◆ COM2 Device
- ◆ Modem Device
- ◆ Ethernet Device
- ◆ New Group1
 - ◆ New Device1
 - ◆ New Device2

The communication configurations allow ROCLINK 800 software to communicate to an individual ROC or FloBoss unit. You may add, delete, or modify these communications setups and establish Groups of devices. Creating a back-up file of the Device Root settings after you have configured the settings is highly suggested. To do so, use Windows Explorer to find the ROC_user.mdb file, then create a back-up copy of this file in case your settings should ever be corrupted.

Devices can be configured for on-line communications using the Local Operator Interface (LOI) port or a communication port, such as a modem.

Each icon represents a different type of communications connection.

The devices can be logically organized to form **Groups**. A Group is typically several units in the same geographical area. Each Group contains a list of all the devices contained within that Group.

Each ROC or FloBoss has a **Tag** and unique **Device Address** for differentiation. The Device Address must be different from any other host system that may access the network. The Tag and Device Address are set by clicking with the right mouse on the Device and selecting **Properties**.

2.5.1.1 Adding a Group

Devices can be organized to form Groups. Groups are typically units in the same geographical area or units with something else in common. When you select a Group file, a list of all communication setups in the Group appears below the Group.

To add a new Group under the Device Root directory or add a Subgroup to an existing Group:

1. Select the **Device Root** directory icon.
2. Right-mouse click.
3. Select **Add a Group**.
4. Right mouse click again and **Rename** the Group or use the default.
5. You may now wish to **add** a Device.

2.5.1.2 Deleting a Group

To delete a Group under the Device Directory:

1. Select a **Group**.
2. Right-mouse click.
3. Select **Delete Group**.
4. Click **Yes** in the Confirm Delete Message dialog.

2.5.1.3 Deleting a Device

To delete a Device under the Device Directory:

1. Select a Device by highlighting the **Name** next to its icon.
2. **Right-mouse click** on the Name.
3. Select **Delete Device**.
4. Click **Yes** in the Confirm Delete Message dialog.

2.5.1.4 Adding a Device

To add a new Device under the Device Directory or add to an existing group:

1. Select the **Device Root** directory icon.
2. Right-mouse click.
3. Select **Add a Device**.
4. **Configure** the communication **parameters**.
 - ❖ **Note:** You can place a Device connection under a Group by selecting the Group before adding the Device connection.

2.5.1.5 *Deleting All Devices*

To delete all Device communication parameter configurations under the Device Root directory:

❖ **Note:** This deletes **all** ROC units that you currently have configured.

1. Select the **Device Root** directory icon.
2. **Right-mouse click**.
3. Select **Delete All Devices**.
4. Click **Yes** in the Confirm Delete Message dialog box.

2.5.1.6 *Renaming a Group or Device*

To rename a Group or Device in the Device directory:

1. Select (highlight) the **Device Name** or **Group** label.
2. **Right-mouse click** on the Device Name or Group label.
3. Select **Properties**.
4. Enter the **Tag** of the Group label or Device Name.
5. Press **OK** or **Apply**.

2.6 ROCLINK 800 Communications

The Device Root is the organizational level in the Device Directory. When you open ROCLINK 800 software, the default Device labels display in the Device Directory. You can modify these communications setup configurations, or you can create new configurations. Refer to 2.3, Device Security, on page 2-6.

2.6.1 ROCLINK 800 Communications – General

The Device Directory is the first screen that displays after logging in to ROCLINK 800 software. Use the ROCLINK 800 Communications General tab to configure basic communications for the PC running ROCLINK 800 software.

1. Select the **Device Root** directory icon.
2. Right-mouse click on a **communications** icon.
3. Select **Properties**.

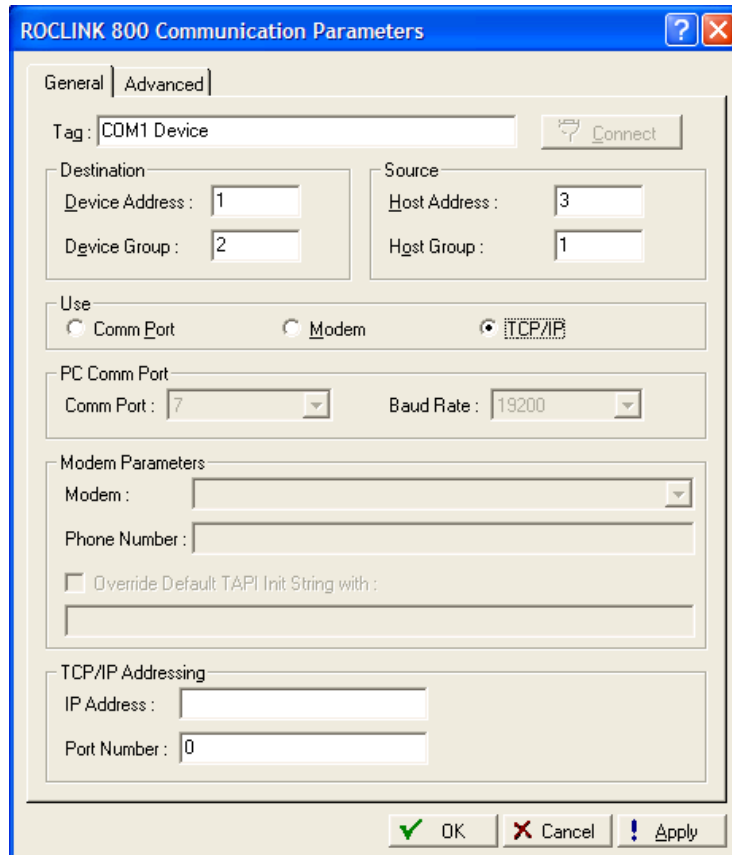


Figure 2-12. ROCLINK 800 Communications – General Example (ROC800-Series)

Tag – Enter the Station Name in the Tag field.

Connect – Press the **Connect** button to connect using the configured parameters for this PC Communications Port.

Device Group – The Group in which the ROC or FloBoss is associated.

Device Address – The Address of the specific ROC or FloBoss with which you desire to communicate. If you are connected to a multi-drop series of devices, enter the Device Address and Device Group of the specific Device to which you will talk.

- ❖ **Note:** If the PC that is running ROCLINK 800 software is connected directly to the LOI Local Port on the device, ROCLINK 800 makes a request to Device Group of 240 and Device Address of 240. The Local Port of a device always responds to a request for Address 240/Group 240, no matter what Device Address and Device Group is configured in the device if the LOI Security is valid.
- ❖ **Note:** For communications to any port on the ROC or FloBoss, other than the Local Port, the Device Address and Device Group in the ROCLINK Communications Parameters window determines which device will be contacted. The Device Address and Group must match the Device Address and Group in the ROC > Information screen. Changing the Device Address and Group, on the ROCLINK 800 Communications Parameters window, will cause the PC to communicate with a different device.
- ❖ **Note:** When using a FloBoss 100-Series device, the default Device Group of 240 and Device Address of 240 allows communications to any Comm Port.

Host Address – The PC has a default value of Address 3 and Group 1. If more than one computer running ROCLINK 800 software will be communicating with a group of devices, either by radio or by other multi-drop communications, the Host Address of each Device Directory setup must be unique to avoid multiple responses. The Host Address must also be different from any other host system that may access the communications link.

Host Group – The PC has a default value of “1.” When using ROC Protocol, the Group address must match the address setup at the destination device in order for communications to properly transmit. In the assignment of the Host Group and Host Address, the following convention should be used:

Host Group and Host Address limitations:

0 and 240= Reserved

Use – Select the connection type: **Comm Port**, **Modem**, or **TCP/IP**.

- ❖ **Note:** If TCP/IP is selected, the Time Out parameter on the Advanced tab applies, but the other parameters do not apply. Firmware updates cannot be transmitted over a TCP/IP connection.

PC Comm Port – If in the Use portion of the screen, you selected Comm Port, select the **PC Comm Port** on the computer to be used by ROCLINK 800 software for this setup. The device can communicate through any configured Comm Port of the PC. Typically, COMM1 or COMM2 is used with the Local Port. Before selecting this parameter, check to see which Communications Ports are assigned in the PC.

Baud Rate – The Baud Rate is set in the PC and used by ROCLINK 800 software to communicate with the device through a serial port (COM port). **For successful communications, the Baud Rate setup in the ROC and the Baud Rate set here for the PC must match.** If you are having difficulties communicating to your device, set the Baud Rate in both the device and the computer to 19200 bps.

- ❖ **Note:** When using a FloBoss 100-Series, you may need to set the Baud Rate to 9600 bps if you are communicating simultaneously with external devices.

Phone Number – If in the Use portion of the screen, you selected Modem, enter the **Phone Number** of the device to be dialed by ROCLINK 800 software.

Modem – Use the **Modem** drop-down list box to choose your modem. Only the modems set up from the Modems dialog box in the Window’s Control Panel on your PC display. Ensure that the selected modem is properly setup.

Override Default TAPI Init String – Enter a value to override your modem’s default Initialization String configuration.

IP Address – If in the Use portion of the screen, you selected TCP/IP, enter the **IP Address** and **Port Number** so the Ethernet port of a ROC800-Series controller may be accessed by ROCLINK 800 software. Enter the **IP Address** of the ROC to be accessed. The default IP Address for a ROC is 10.0.0.2.

Port Number – The Port Number of the ROC to be accessed. The default Port Number for a ROC is 4000. If these default values are changed in the ROC800-Series, all ROC Plus communications over TCP/IP connections will be closed and you will have to re-establish a connection. Port Numbers 1113 and 1131 are reserved.

If Login to ROCLINK 800 Configuration software fails, then the TCP/IP connection closes.

- ❖ **Note:** If the number of active ROC Plus Protocol using TCP/IP connections displayed on the ROC > Information > Internet tab is 6, then you will not be able to establish a connection.

2.6.2 ROCLINK 800 Communications – Advanced

Use the ROCLINK 800 Communications Advanced tab to configure advanced communications for the PC running ROCLINK 800 software.

1. Select the **Device Root** directory icon.
2. Right-mouse click on a **communications** icon.
3. Select **Properties**.
4. Click the **Advanced** tab.

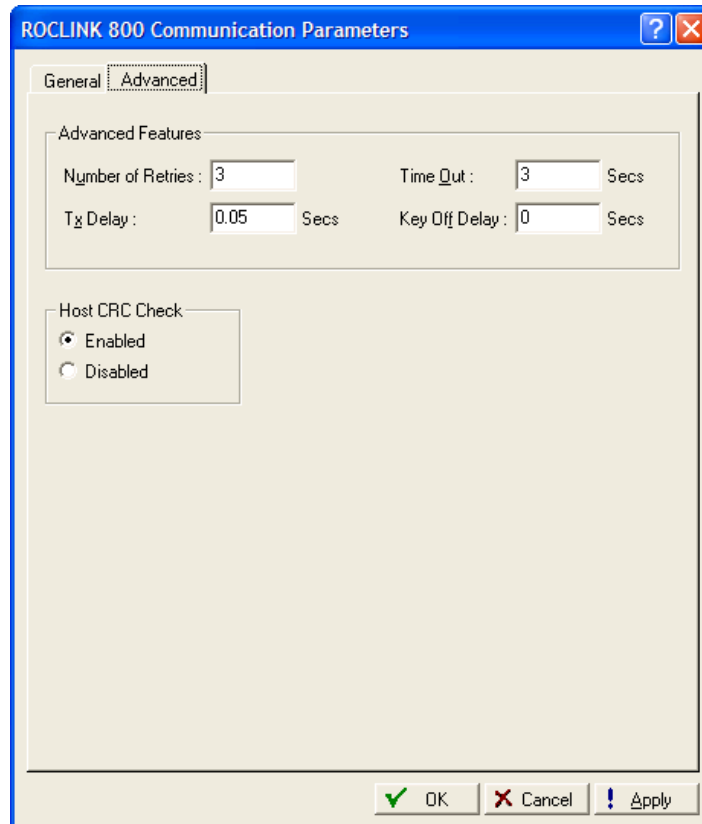


Figure 2-13. ROCLINK 800 Communications Example – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Number of Retries – Can be set from 0 to 25. Once connected, ROCLINK 800 will attempt to request data. This is the number of times to try after the initial attempt to request data from the specified device and before reporting a timeout error. Adjust the amount of time between retries using the Time Out parameter.

The Number of Retries parameter does not apply to the dial-up modem, which only tries to establish a connection once.

Tx Delay – Enables the RTS line for the amount of delay specified before transmitting data. Tx Delay is typically used to allow a radio to fully stabilize before data is applied to transmit.

- ◆ For EIA-232 (RS-232) and Dial-up Modem communications, the Tx Delay and Key Off Delay values should normally be set to 0 (zero) or the default of 0.05 seconds.
- ◆ For EIA-485 (RS-485) and Radio communications, the Tx Delay value is typically set to 0.1.

Time Out – The actual amount of time that ROCLINK 800 software waits to receive a valid message after it sends a request to a device. Do not enter 0 (zero) in the Time Out field. For Dial-up Modem communications, the Time Out value is typically set to 3 seconds.

Key Off Delay – Defines the amount of time to delay when done transmitting a message before turning the RTS signal off. For EIA-232 (RS-232) and Dial-up Modem communications, the Tx Delay and Key Off Delay values should normally be set to 0 (zero).

CRC Check – Select Enabled or Disabled in the ROCLINK **CRC Check** field for Cyclical Redundancy Checking.

2.7 Communication Ports on the ROC and FloBoss

While in a configuration and on-line with a ROC or FloBoss unit, select ROC > Comm Ports to display the Comm Port settings screen. Each communications port has a unique set of parameters on the screen.

The ROC > Comm Ports screen is used to setup the communications ports that are available for incoming and outgoing communications with the ROC or FloBoss and not the personal computer (PC). PC communication ports are setup using the Device Directory.

The communication ports located on the ROC or FloBoss provide a data link to ROCLINK 800 software, other ROC or FloBoss units, and host systems. Depending on the type of modules you are using, the following types of communications are possible:

- ◆ EIA-232 (RS-232) serial communications.
- ◆ EIA-422 (RS-422) serial communications (ROC800-Series).
- ◆ EIA-485 (RS-485) multi-point serial communications.
- ◆ Dial-up modem communications.
- ◆ TCP/IP communications (ROC800-Series).
- ◆ Spread-Spectrum wireless radio (FloBoss 100-Series).

Table 2-2. Communication Ports for the ROC800-Series

Port	Port Location	Default Tag	Function/Type
1	CPU RJ-45 (top)	Local Port	LOI / RS-232D
2	CPU RJ-45 (middle)	COMM1	Ethernet
3	CPU 5-pin (bottom)	COMM2	Serial / EIA-232 (RS-232)
4	Module Slot 1	COMM3	EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-422 (RS-422), EIA-485 (RS-485), Modem, or MVS
5	Module Slot 2	COMM4	EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-422 (RS-422), EIA-485 (RS-485), Modem, or MVS
6	Module Slot 3	COMM5	EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-422 (RS-422), EIA-485 (RS-485), Modem, or MVS

Table 2-3. Communication Ports for the FloBoss 407

Port	Default Tag	Function/Type
1	Local Port	LOI / RS-232D
2	COMM1	EIA-232 (RS-232)
3	COMM2	EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-485 (RS-485), or Modem

❖ **Note:** COMM1 is built into the termination board of the FloBoss 407, and COMM2 is located on an optional communications card.

Table 2-4. Communication Ports for the FloBoss 100-Series

Port	Default Tag	Function/Type
1	Local Port	LOI / RS-232D
2	COMM1	Serial / EIA-485 (RS-485)
3	COMM2	EIA-232 (RS-232), Modem, or Spread-Spectrum Radio

❖ **Note:** COMM2 requires an optional communications card.

Table 2-5. Communication Ports for the ROC300-Series

Port	Default Tag	Function/Type
1	Local Port	LOI / RS-232D
2	COMM1	EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-485 (RS-485), or Modem
3	COMM2	EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-485 (RS-485), or Modem

❖ **Note:** COMM1 and COMM2 are located on an optional communications card.

The communication ports of the ROC or FloBoss provide a link to computers, such as one running ROCLINK 800 software or a host computer. ROC800-Series units can have up to six communication ports. FloBoss and ROC300-Series units can have up to three.

Select ROC > **Comm Ports** to set up communications ports available for the ROC or FloBoss.

❖ **Note:** For FloBoss 100-Series, the Modem tab only appears after Comm Ports 3 has been selected.

The SRBX or RBX (Spontaneous Report-by-Exception) alarming feature is available for serial communication ports. It is not supported on the Ethernet port. This feature allows the device to call in to a host computer when a configured alarm occurs. To prevent “nuisance” alarms from being reported to the host, configure the parameters correctly. If you wish to configure dial-up SRBX, then a modem must be present and appropriately configured.

When using SRBX Alarming, you must ensure that the alarms are enabled and configured for each point you desire to monitor. Configure the alarm parameters so that an alarm occurs only when desired. These parameters are configured on the Alarms tabs of the I/O configuration screens.

Once configured, the configuration of all communications ports should be saved to programmable ROM using the Flash Memory Save Configuration function in the ROC > Flags screen.

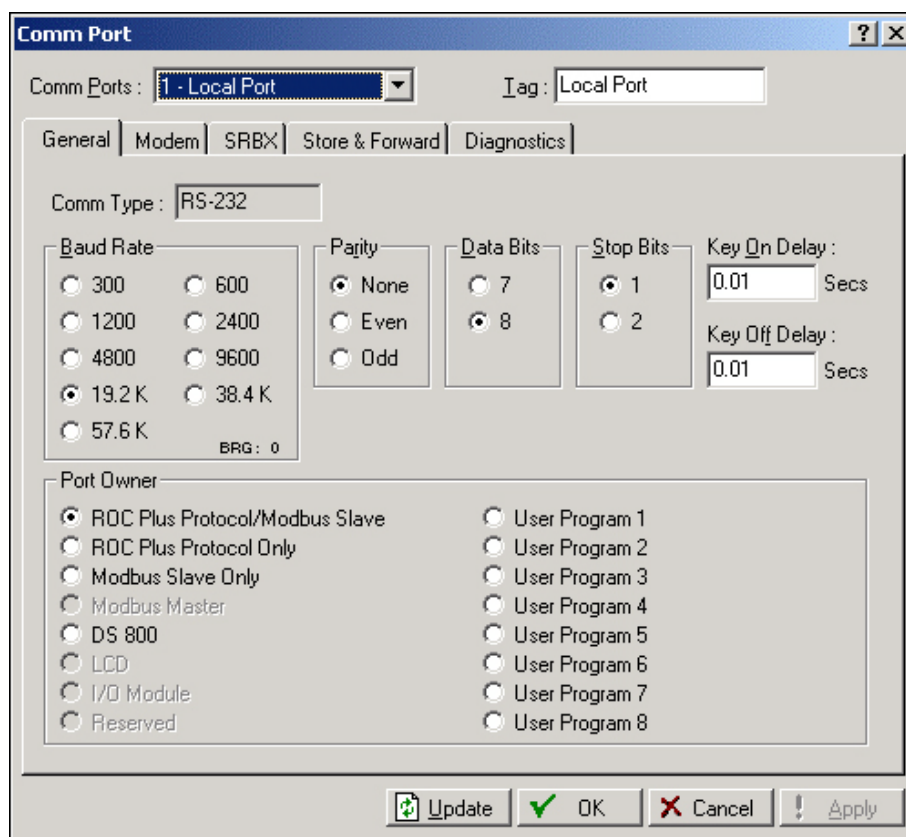


Figure 2-14. Comm Port (ROC800-Series)

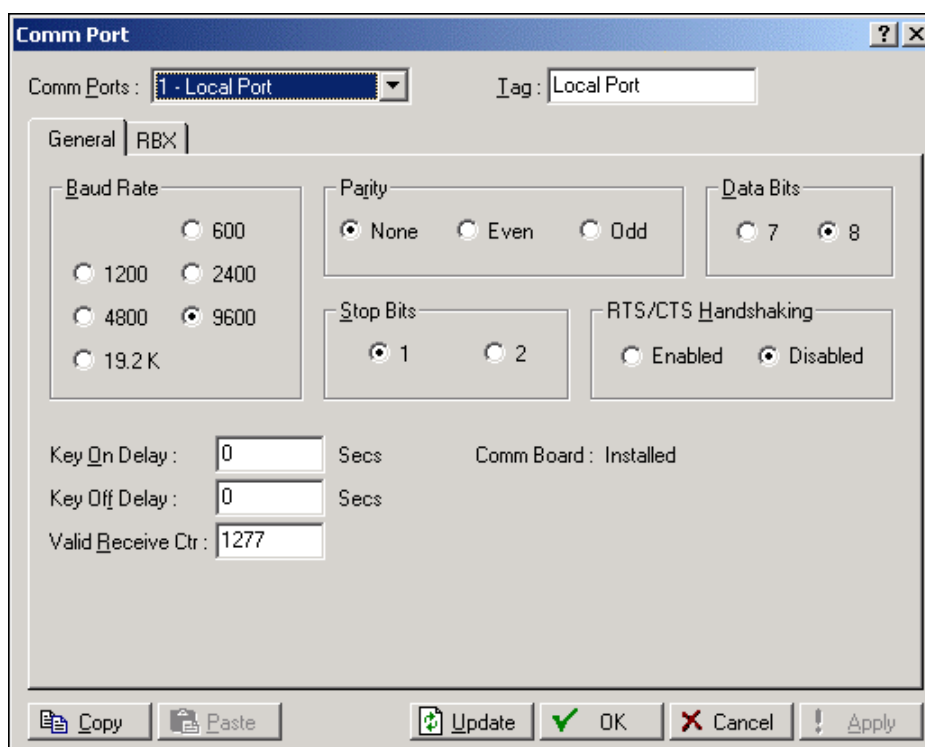


Figure 2-15. Comm Port (FloBoss 100-Series)

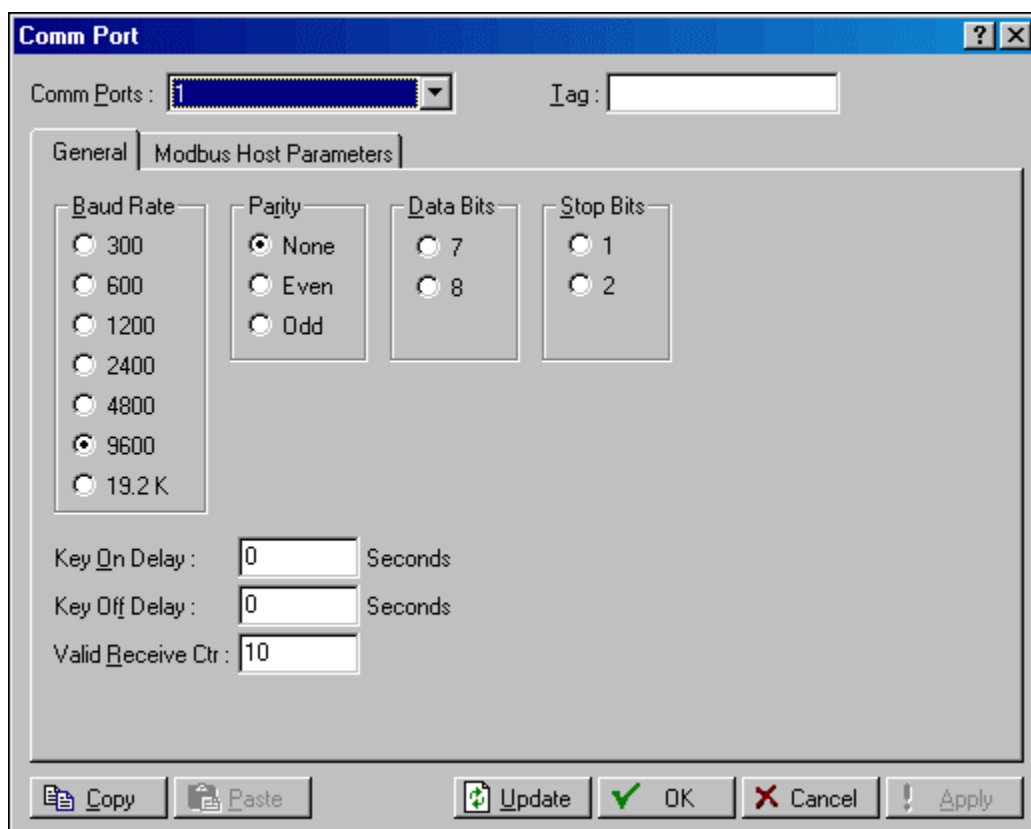


Figure 2-16. Comm Port (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

2.7.1 Comm Ports – General

Select ROC > **Comm Ports** to configure the communications ports on the ROC or FloBoss.

Figure 2-17. Comm Port Example (ROC800-Series)

Select the Communications **Port** that the device is using to communicate.

Enter the 10-character **Tag** name for identification of the communications port.

Comm Type (ROC800-Series) displays the type of communications port associated to this Comm Port number, such as EIA-232 (RS-232).

Select the transmit and receive data **Baud Rate** in bits per second.

If **Parity** checks are to be performed by the communications controller, select the Parity radio button.

Select the number of **Data Bits** contained in an asynchronous byte, or character. This number is typically 8.

Select the number of **Stop Bits** contained in an asynchronous byte, or character. This number is typically 1.

Enter the **Key On Delay** to define the number of seconds to delay after turning the RTS signal on before beginning transmission. For some older radios, the Key On Delay may need to be set as high as 0.2 seconds. For newer radios designed for data transmission, no more than 0.02 second should be required. For Dial-up modems and EIA-232 (RS-232) communications, the Key On Delay should normally be set at 0 seconds or may be changed to optimize communications.

Enter the **Key Off Delay** intervals defining the period to delay before turning the RTS signal off once a valid message has been sent. The default of 0.01 seconds should be sufficient for most radios. For Dial-up modems and EIA-232 (RS-232) communications, the Key Off Delay should normally be set at 0 seconds or may be changed to optimize communications.

Select the **Port Owner** (ROC800-Series). This refers to the communications protocol that will be in use on this Port.

- ◆ **ROC Plus Protocol/Modbus Slave** configures the Port to automatically switch between Modbus and ROC Plus protocol messages.
- ◆ **ROC Plus Protocol Only** configures the Port to only accept ROC Plus protocol messages (Modbus Slave is disabled).
- ◆ **Modbus Slave Only** configures the Port to allow the ROC or FloBoss to act only as a Modbus slave device (ROC Plus Protocol is disabled).
 - ❖ **Note:** It is recommended that the “Only” options be used if the messages received will only be of this specific protocol. Otherwise, select ROC Plus Protocol/Modbus Slave if this Comm Port is going to have both protocols communicate on it.
- ◆ **Modbus Master** configures the Port to allow the ROC or FloBoss to poll Modbus devices (ROC Plus Protocol and Modbus Slave are disabled.)
- ◆ **DS800** configures the Port to download and debug Development Suite 800 projects only. You will not be able to connect two ROC800-Series units together with this option. It is exclusively configured for DS800/PC communications.
 - ❖ **Note:** Modems are not supported for the DS800 communication type.
- ◆ **LCD** configures the port for communications with a ROC Keypad Display unit.
- ◆ **I/O Module** configures this Port to use the communications protocol residing in the I/O module.
- ◆ **User Program 1 to 8** configures this Port to use the communications protocol residing in the loaded user program. The user program number here will match the user program number in the Configuration Tree menu and the User Program Administrator screen.
- ◆ **Reserved** indicates that this Port is reserved and cannot be used for communications.

For the ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407, enable **RTS/CTS Handshaking**, if applicable.

The **Valid Receive Ctr** (Counter) displays the number of valid messages received by the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407 on this communication port. This counter can be preset to a value or cleared.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, **Comm Board** indicates if the communications port is available. Local Port and COMM1 are always present. Comm Board and Board Type indicate an optional communications board is installed.

2.7.2 Comm Ports – Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

Select ROC > Comm Ports > Modbus Host Parameters tab to configure the Modbus communications on the ROC or FloBoss.

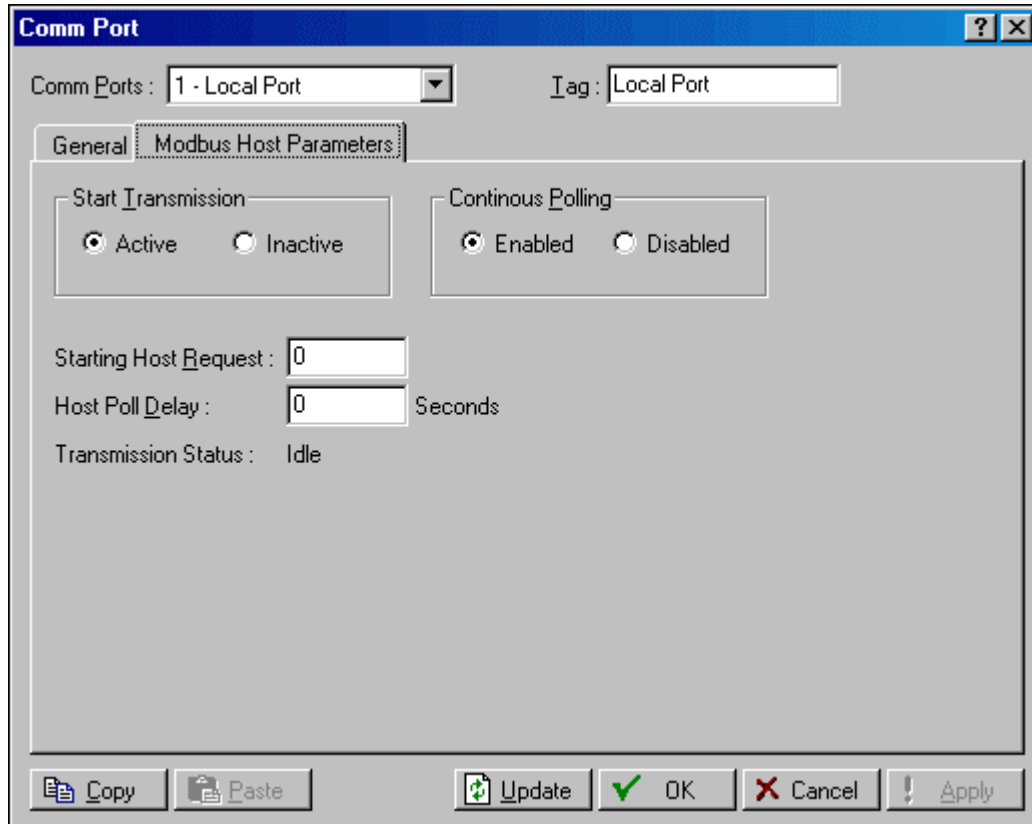


Figure 2-18. Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

- ❖ **Note:** Modbus functionality is not resident in the firmware. The Modbus User Program must be loaded and enabled for this tab to be relevant.
- 1. Select ROC > **Comm Ports**.
- 2. Select the host **Comm Port** and click the **Modbus Host Parameters** tab.
- 3. Select the **Start Transmission Active** radio button to enable Modbus transmission.
- 4. Enable **Continuous Polling** to continuously poll for Modbus messages.
- 5. Enter the **Starting Host Request** line number entry in the host table where you desire the poll to begin. The poll request continues through each line, starting at the value entered in this field, until it reads a 0 in the Modbus host table.
- 6. Enter the **Host Poll Delay** to specify the amount of time in seconds to wait between poll transmissions.

The **Transmission Status** displays the current status of the Modbus program.

2.7.3 Comm Ports – Modem

Select ROC > Comm Ports > **Modem** tab to configure the Modem communications ports on the ROC or FloBoss.

The screenshot shows the 'Comm Port' configuration window with the 'Modem' tab selected. The 'Comm Ports' dropdown is set to '3 - COMM2' and the 'Tag' is 'COMM2'. The 'Modem Type' section has three radio buttons: 'None' (selected), 'External', and 'Internal'. Below this, there are input fields for 'Connect Time' (60.0 Secs), 'Disconnect Time' (60.0 Secs), and 'Inactivity Time' (900.0 Secs). There are also text boxes for 'Config Command' (AT&F0EH0V0X0&K3S0=1S7=255S24=60), 'Connect Command' (ATDT (number)), and 'Disconnect Command' (ATH0). The 'Modem Status' is displayed as '0: OK'. At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Update' (with a refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark), 'Cancel' (with a red X), and 'Apply' (with an exclamation mark).

Figure 2-19. Comm Port – Advanced Example (ROC800-Series)

Select **Modem Type Internal** when an internal modem is detected. Select **None** when using a Serial link to the host or **External** when using a Modem that is external to the ROC or FloBoss.

❖ **Note:** Internal cannot be selected by the user, it is automatically set.

Set the **Connect Time** parameter to determine the amount of time that the ROC or FloBoss waits after initiating a call to receive a connect message from a device (typically the modem) before it terminates the call. The Connect Time varies from system to system and can take up to 60 seconds to make and complete a dial up connection. If a successful connection is made, the Disconnect Time begins.

Set the **Disconnect Time** parameter to determine the amount of time that the ROC or FloBoss waits for further activity on the line before it hangs up. This timer resets after each valid receive signal.

Enter the **Inactivity Time** in seconds that the ROC or FloBoss will wait, without receiving a signal, before it resets the modem. The inactivity timer looks at the valid receive counter to determine if the signal has been received.

Enter the **Config Command** characters required to initialize the modem. For external modems, refer to the manufacturer's literature. For an internal modem, use the default value or the modem card may not operate correctly. Refer to your modem's documentation for default Config Command characters.

Enter the Hayes-style **Connect Command** required to contact the host. Typically, this is the command ATDT followed by the telephone number. This parameter is required only for dial-out operations, such as for SRBX Alarming.

For example, ATDT5155551212

For a ROC800-Series, enter the Hayes-style **Disconnect Command** required to disconnect the contact to the host. Typically, this is the command ATH0.

The **Modem Status** numerically displays the result code.

Result Code	Definition
0 = OK	Successfully executed command line
1 = CONNECT	Connection established
2 = RING	Ring signal detected
3 = NO CARRIER	Carrier not detected/lost (Not supported by the FloBoss 100-Series)
4 = ERROR	Error in command line (Not supported by the FloBoss 100-Series)
6 = NO DIAL TONE	No dial tone detected (Not supported by the FloBoss 100-Series)
7 = BUSY	Busy signal detected (Not supported by the FloBoss 100-Series)
8 = NO ANSWER	Line not picked up on the called end (Not supported by the FloBoss 100-Series)

2.7.4 Comm Ports – SRBX or RBX

Select ROC > Comm Ports > **SRBX** or **RBX** tab to configure the Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception alarming features on the ROC or FloBoss.

The screenshot shows the 'Comm Port' configuration window with the 'SRBX' tab selected. The window has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two fields: 'Comm Ports' with a dropdown menu showing '3 - COMM2' and 'Tag' with a text box containing 'COMM2'. Below these are four tabs: 'General', 'Modem', 'SRBX', 'Store & Forward', and 'Diagnostics'. The 'SRBX' tab is active, showing several configuration sections:

- SRBX Mode:** Two radio buttons, 'Enabled' and 'Disabled'. 'Disabled' is selected.
- SRBX Host:** Two text boxes, 'Address' with '1' and 'Group' with '0'.
- Delay:** Three text boxes labeled 'Delay #1', 'Delay #2', and 'Delay #3' with values '20.0', '30.0', and '45.0' respectively, each followed by 'Secs'.
- SRBX Attempts #1, #2, #3:** Each has two radio buttons, 'Fixed Number' and 'Continuous'. 'Fixed Number' is selected for all three. Below each is a text box with values '1', '2', and '3' respectively.
- SRBX Alarm Index:** A text box with '0'.
- SRBX Status:** A text box with '0'.

At the bottom of the window are five buttons: 'Update' (with a green plus icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark icon), 'Cancel' (with a red X icon), and 'Apply' (with a yellow lightning bolt icon).

Figure 2-20. Comm Port – SRBX Example (ROC800-Series)

Enables or Disables **SRBX Mode** or **RBX Mode** for Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception alarming on this Comm Port.

When using SRBX Alarming, you must ensure that the alarms are enabled and configured for each point you desire to monitor. Configure the alarm parameters so that an alarm occurs only when desired. These parameters are configured on the Alarms tabs of the I/O, MVS, and Meter Setup configuration screens.

Enter the **SRBX Host Address** and **SRBX Host Group** number of the host to which the SRBX feature is communicating.

Defines the time in seconds between attempts to transmit an SRBX message. There is a Delay parameter associated with each Retry Count parameter.

The **SRBX Attempts** #1 to #3 (Retry Count) is the number of attempts a message is repeated if a valid response is not obtained on the first attempt. Attempts include the initial message, plus the retries. The three Retry Count parameters each have an associated Delay parameter. This allows you to set up different length delays for successive retries. Selecting Fixed Number allows you to enter a value for how many times a message is retried after the first unsuccessful attempt. Note that a “0” entry causes no retries. Selecting Continuous (255) causes continuous retries that can only be stopped when the host acknowledges the SRBX alarm.

For example: If you set

Retry Count #1 to “2” and Delay #1 to “10”,

Retry Count #2 to “1” and Delay #2 to “20”,

then after the first unsuccessful attempt to communicate with the host, the device tries two more times (after waiting 10 seconds each time), and once more (after waiting 20 seconds).

Defines the time in seconds between attempts to transmit an SRBX message. There is a Delay parameter associated with each Retry Count parameter.

Enable **Extra Key On Delay** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) to add an additional amount of time to delay prior to transmitting an RBX message after turning the RTS signal on. This parameter may be required for radio communications.

For the FloBoss 100-Series unit, the **RBX Ack Timeout** field displays the amount of time that is allowed for the host to respond with an ACK (acknowledge) to the SRBX message from the FloBoss 100-Series unit. If the ACK fails to be received within the timeout period, the FloBoss 100-Series unit retries the SRBX messages.

The **SRBX Alarm Index** indicates the ROC or FloBoss alarm currently being reported through SRBX.

The **SRBX Status** parameter indicates the status of RBX messaging, either Active or Inactive. Active indicates that an SRBX alarm is being processed.

2.7.5 Comm Ports – Store & Forward (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 407)

Select ROC > Comm Ports > Store & Forward tab to configure the Store & Forward features on the ROC or FloBoss.

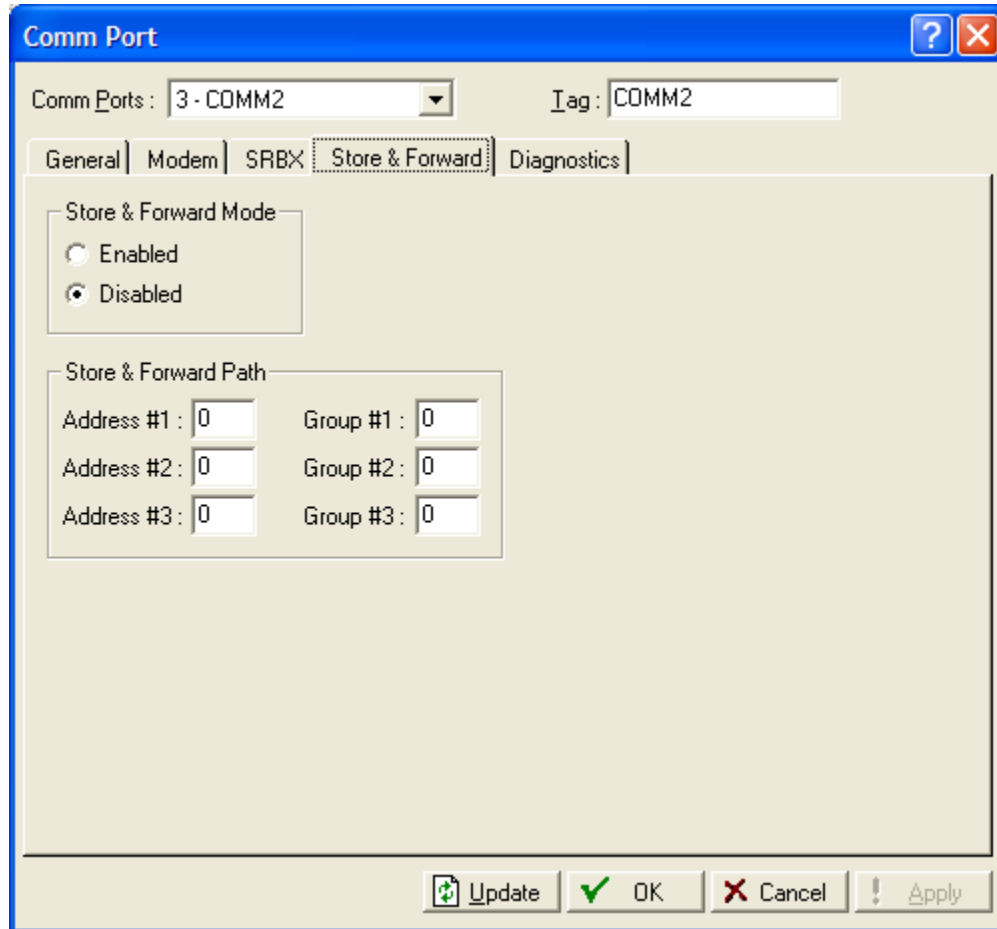


Figure 2-21. Comm Ports – Store & Forward (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 407)

Select **Store & Forward Port** (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) **Same Port** to transmit a received message out using the same communications port, or select **Opposite Port** to transmit using an alternate communications port.

❖ **Note:** Only COMM1 and COMM2 Ports are supported.

Enter the **Store & Forward Path Address** and **Group** numbers of the devices that need to receive this SRBX message and forward it on to the next device to extend the communications path. You may also specify addresses for other devices that support the ROC Protocol. The device specified by the last non-zero Address/Group then sends the message to the host specified by the previous parameter.

If **Store & Forward Mode** (ROC800-Series) is Enabled, all Store and Forward messages transmit out the Port selected in the General tab. If it is Disabled, none will be sent.

2.7.6 Comm Ports – Diagnostics (ROC800-Series)

Select ROC > Comm Ports > **Diagnostics** tab to view the communications diagnostic features on the ROC.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Comm Port" with a blue title bar. Inside, there's a dropdown menu for "Comm Ports" set to "3 - COMM2" and a text field for "Tag" set to "COMM2". Below these are five tabs: "General", "Modem", "SRBX", "Store & Forward", and "Diagnostics" (which is selected). The "Diagnostics" tab contains three sections: "ROC Protocol", "Modbus", and a general section. Each section has a "Valid Receive Counter" (all set to 0) and a "Successful Message Time" (all set to 01/01/2000 00:00:00). The general section also has a "Transmit Counter" (0), "Invalid Message Bytes" (0), and "Invalid Message Byte Time" (01/01/2000 00:00:00). At the bottom are buttons for "Update", "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Figure 2-22. Comm Ports – Diagnostics (ROC800-Series)

The **Valid Receive Counters** displays the number of valid messages received by the ROC800-Series unit for the ROC Plus Protocol or Modbus protocol.

The **Successful Message Time** displays the time and date of the last valid message received for ROC Plus protocol or Modbus protocol.

The **Transmit Counter** displays the number of messages sent by the ROC800-Series unit.

Invalid Message Bytes displays the number of ROC Plus or Modbus protocol bytes lost since the last time it was cleared.

Invalid Message Byte Time displays the time and date of the last invalid message.

2.7.7 Configuring TCP/IP Communications on the Ethernet Port (ROC800-Series)

TCP/IP connections through the ROC800-Series Ethernet port can be used for DS800, Modbus® RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP, Modbus TCP/IP, or ROC Plus Protocol communications.

To configure TCP/IP communications:

1. Connect to the **ROC**.
2. If using **ROC Plus, Modbus RTU Encapsulated in TCP/IP**, or **Modbus TCP/IP**, the parameters on the Internet tab of the ROC > Information screen must be set. Refer to Section 3.2.2.
3. If using **DS800**, verify the parameters and enable the DS800 communications on the Configure > Control > DS800 screen.
4. If using **Modbus RTU Encapsulated using TCP/IP** or **Modbus TCP/IP**, select the communications port and configure the parameters on the Configure > Modbus > Configuration screen.

The parameters on the General, Modem, SRBX, and Store and Forward Tabs of the ROC > Comm Ports screen do NOT apply to the Ethernet port.

The Diagnostics tab of the ROC > Comm Ports screen displays the communication statistics available for all Modbus and ROC Plus Protocol communications transmitted using TCP/IP connections. Refer to Parameters on Comm Ports Diagnostics Tab (ROC800-Series).

The total number of Modbus and ROC Plus Protocol over TCP/IP connections is limited to 6 of each protocol at any given time. The number of active TCP/IP connections is displayed on the Active Connections field on the Internet tab of the ROC > Information screen.

SRBX messaging or firmware updates cannot be transmitted over a TCP/IP connection.

Once a ROC Plus Protocol, Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP, or Modbus TCP/IP connection is made, the communication session can be closed by a timeout. Three timeouts that can close a connection are executed as follows:

- ◆ A security timeout is started after a valid Login. If a valid ROC Plus Protocol message is not received within 60 minutes, the connection closes. The timeout is reset after each valid message.
- ◆ An inactivity timer for each TCP/IP connection has been added in addition to the security timeout. The Inactivity Time field on the Internet tab of the ROC Information screen sets this parameter in seconds. A value of 0 disables the timer. If a valid ROC Plus Protocol message is not received within the Inactivity Time, the connection closes.
- ◆ Each connection will be kept alive by periodic transmissions of messages (probes). If the other side of the connection fails to respond to 10 repetitive probes, the connection will be considered broken and the connection closed. The amount of idle time (in seconds) before the first probe is configurable is set in the Keep Alive Time field on the Internet tab of the ROC > Information screen. The other 9 probes will be 64 seconds apart. The total time will be: $(9 \times 64) + \text{the value of the Keep Alive Time parameter}$.

DS800

DS800 Development Suite Software can be used to develop programs, independently of ROCLINK 800 software. These programs can be downloaded over the Ethernet port to a ROC800-Series that has the optional license key installed.

Once DS800 is enabled on the Configure > Control > DS800 screen, the Ethernet port for DS800 is always available to accept DS800 connections.

The ROC800-Series unit is capable of distinguishing TCP/IP messages received from DS800, in Modbus or in ROC Protocol. The DS800 messages are routed to the correct communications task in the ROC800-Series unit's firmware.

ROC Plus Protocol

ROC > Security for the Ethernet port will enable or disable security for all ROC Plus Protocol based Ethernet connections.

The Ethernet port is always available to accept ROC Plus Protocol connections.

Modbus

The ROC800-Series (firmware version 1.30 or greater) allows both Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP and Modbus TCP/IP communications on the Ethernet port. Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP is the form of Modbus protocol traditionally supported on serial connections in the ROC800-Series, which has been or encapsulated in a TCP/IP message. Modbus TCP/IP is the protocol developed for use over TCP/IP connections.

❖ **Note:** Both Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP and Modbus TCP/IP support Slave mode only.

The Ethernet port is always available to accept Modbus connections.

The ROC800-Series is capable of supporting Modbus communications on any of the serial ports, at the same time as Modbus RTU encapsulated over TCP/IP or Modbus TCP/IP connections.

2.8 Connecting to a ROC or FloBoss

Once ROCLINK 800 communication parameters are configured, you can connect to the ROC or FloBoss unit. You can connect in several ways:

- ◆ **Direct Connect** – Connect to the device using the Local Operator Interface Port (LOI) if the default communication parameters apply.
- ◆ **Device Directory** – Double-click the Device Name to connect to the device using the parameters currently set for that port.
- ◆ **ROC > Connect** – Connect to the Device Name currently selected in the Device Root.
 - ❖ **Note:** Once you are connected (on-line), the Configuration Tree view becomes the active screen.

2.8.1 Direct Connect

Select Direct Connect to establish a connection with a ROC or FloBoss. ROCLINK 800 software attempts to establish communications through COM1 of the PC at one of the following baud rates: 19200, 9600, 57600, 38400, 4800, 2400, and 1200 bps. If this is unsuccessful, the program then attempts to establish communications through the remaining COM Ports of the PC, successively, until it receives a valid reply.



To use Direct Connect:

1. Physically **connect** cable to the **ROC** or **FloBoss**.
2. **Launch** and **login** to **ROCLINK 800** software.
3. Do one of the following:
 - ◆ Click on the Direct Connect icon in the Device Directory.
 - ◆ Click the **Direct Connect** button on the toolbar.
 - ◆ Select ROC > **Direct Connect**.
4. If this is the first time that you have connected to the ROC or FloBoss, continue to the steps for Setting the Clock.

By default, the **Local Port** is the Comm Tag in the ROC > Comm Port settings screen.

For the Direct Connect option to work, security conditions must be met, and the IBM-compatible personal computer (PC) must be connected to the Local Port (LOI) of the device with communication settings of:

- ◆ 8 Data Bits
- ◆ 1 Stop Bit
- ◆ No Parity

The Direct Connect command causes ROCLINK 800 software to initiate communications with the ROC or FloBoss device by performing a search of the PC communication ports at various baud rates. Direct Connect then “locks on” to the first Comm Port and Baud Rate that are successful in communicating with a device.

2.8.2 Local Operator Interface (LOI – Local Port)

The PC running ROCLINK 800 software physically connects to the ROC or FloBoss device through a cable. For a local connection, this cable is typically a prefabricated local operator interface (LOI) cable (available from the Flow Computer Division of Emerson Process Management). One end of the cable (a 9-pin, D-shell, female connector) plugs into a serial communications port on the PC running ROCLINK 800 software. The other end of the cable plugs into the ROC or FloBoss operator interface connector called the Local Port.

2.8.3 Connect

To connect the computer to a remotely located ROC or FloBoss, a serial, dial-up modem, radio, satellite, or other communications line should be installed. This connection may be made through the LOI (Local Port) or other Communications Port on the ROC or FloBoss.

Use the **Connect** command to connect to a serial or dial-up modem. To use Connect:

1. Physically **connect** the **ROC** or **FloBoss** unit.
2. **Launch** and **log in** to **ROCLINK 800** software.
3. Perform one of the following:
 - ♦ Select a device from the Device Directory and press the <Enter> key.
 - ♦ Double-click a device in the Device Directory.
 - ♦ Select a device from the Device Directory and click the **Connect** button on the toolbar.
 - ♦ Select ROC > **Connect** to connect to the device currently selected in the Device Directory.

2.8.4 Successful Login

A successful login produces an on-line connection. The Configuration Tree of the configuration that is in the ROC or FloBoss unit displays. Refer to Configuration Tree Menu.

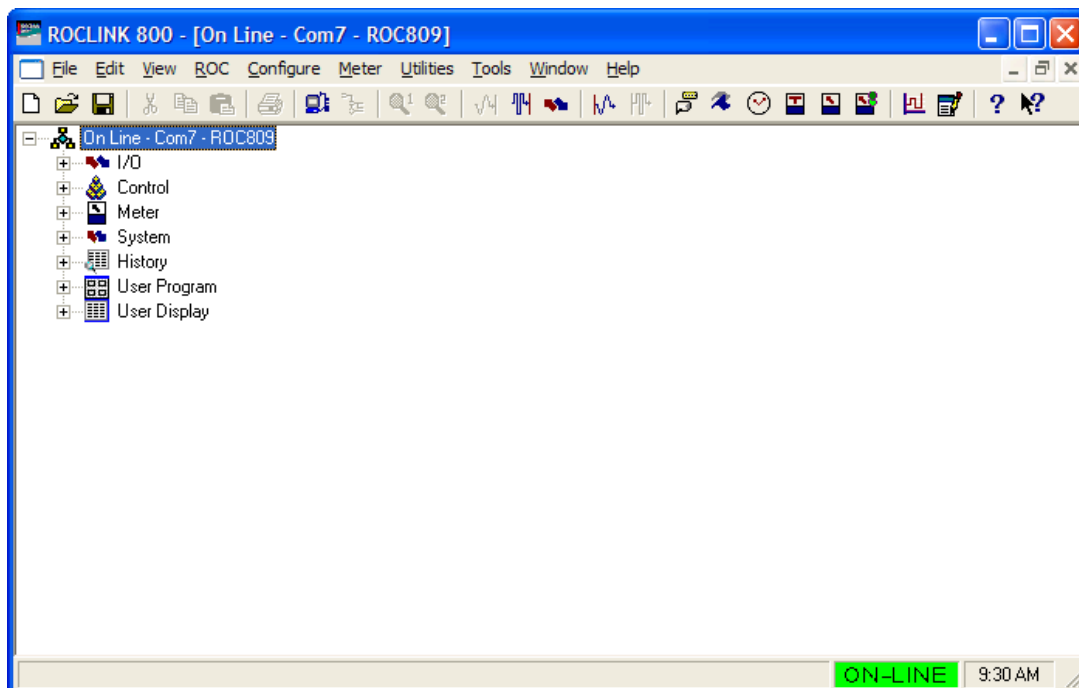


Figure 2-23. Successful Login Example (ROC800-Series)

The following Configuration Tree menu options are available:

I/O – Lists all available inputs and outputs by type.

Control – Displays the FST, PID, Radio Control, Sampler, and DS800 (ROC800-Series) options enabled on the ROC > Information screen.

Station – Lists all available Stations and Meters (ROC800-Series).

Meter – Lists all available Meters (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series).



System – Displays ROC > Information system folders, Comm Port, Flags, and Opcode Table.

History – Displays all available History Segments and points.

User Programs – Displays all installed User Programs (ROC800-Series).

User Data – Displays all installed user defined points (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series).

From the Configuration Tree, you may change the configuration or monitor current operations.

Once you are in the Configuration Tree menu, you can use the  and  symbols to display or hide various options.

Double-click the desired function in the Configuration Tree to display the associated screen. Double-clicking an icon is the same as selecting the menu bar or Toolbar button option.

If this is the first time that you have connected to the ROC or FloBoss, continue to the Setting the Clock procedure. Refer to Setting the Clock.

2.9 Troubleshooting Communications

This section details how to troubleshoot connection and communications.

2.9.1 Troubleshooting Connection Errors

Several events can cause a connection problem:

- ◆ If the parameters used by ROCLINK 800 when establishing a communications link to your PC are incorrect, a Direct Connect connection cannot be made.
- ◆ If ROCLINK 800 software stands idle for too long and exceeds the timeout value for a device, a communications failure can also occur. In this case, simply log back into ROCLINK 800 and use the Direct Connect or Connect features.
- ◆ If you do not have security access to the ROC or FloBoss, a connection cannot be made. A valid User ID and Password must be configured for each user who can connect to a ROC or FloBoss in the ROC > Security options.
- ◆ If the PC cannot establish a connection to the ROC800-Series by “pinging” the Device Address (ROC Address), a TCP/IP connection through ROCLINK 800 software cannot be made.

2.9.2 Troubleshooting ROCLINK 800 Communications

Occasionally, you may need to alter your PC communications options when you are having problems communicating with your ROC or FloBoss.

1. Select the desired Device in the Device Directory. Right-mouse click and select **Properties**.
2. Make sure you have specified the correct Device Address and Device Group of the ROC or FloBoss with which you are trying to communicate. If you are communicating through the LOI port of the device, the Device Address is 240 and Group Address is 240, which is the universal address.
3. Click the **Advanced** tab. Try increasing the **Time Out** and/or **Tx Delay**.
4. Click **Apply**. Return to the General tab, and click **Connect**.
5. If you are still having trouble communicating, try increasing the **Number of Retries** field in the Advanced tab screen. Click **Apply**. Return to the General tab, and click **Connect**.
6. If you are still having trouble communicating, try increasing or decreasing the **Keyoff Delay** field in the Advanced tab screen. Click **Apply**. Return to the General tab, and click **Connect**.

2.9.3 Troubleshooting TCP/IP Connections

If you are unable to establish a connection between ROCLINK 800 software and the ROC800-Series unit on the Ethernet port, verify that the PC is able to “ping” the ROC.

1. Launch the DOS command prompt and write a command to “**ping**” the ROC at its IP Address. For example, C:\>ping 155.177.78.111”.
2. If the Ping Statistics Reply is similar to “Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 <0% loss>”, then the PC and ROC are connecting. You may need to alter the Internet communications setting in ROCLINK 800 software. Verify all parameters on the pertinent screens. Refer to Configuring TCP/IP Communications on the Ethernet Port (ROC800-Series).
3. If the Ping Statistics Reply is similar to “Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 <100% loss>”, then the PC and ROC are not connecting. You will need to review your network, your physical connection, your router, and your PC.

2.9.4 Communications Monitor

Select Utilities > **Communications Monitor** and perform an operation to displays the data bytes (in hexadecimal format) sent and received from the ROCLINK 800 software during that operation. Bytes sent are shown in black; bytes received are shown in red. Data received since the last good response (and before a request) are shown in aqua.

Right-click on the display to Copy highlighted data, Clear All data, or Unselect. Copied data can be pasted in a file for analyzing.

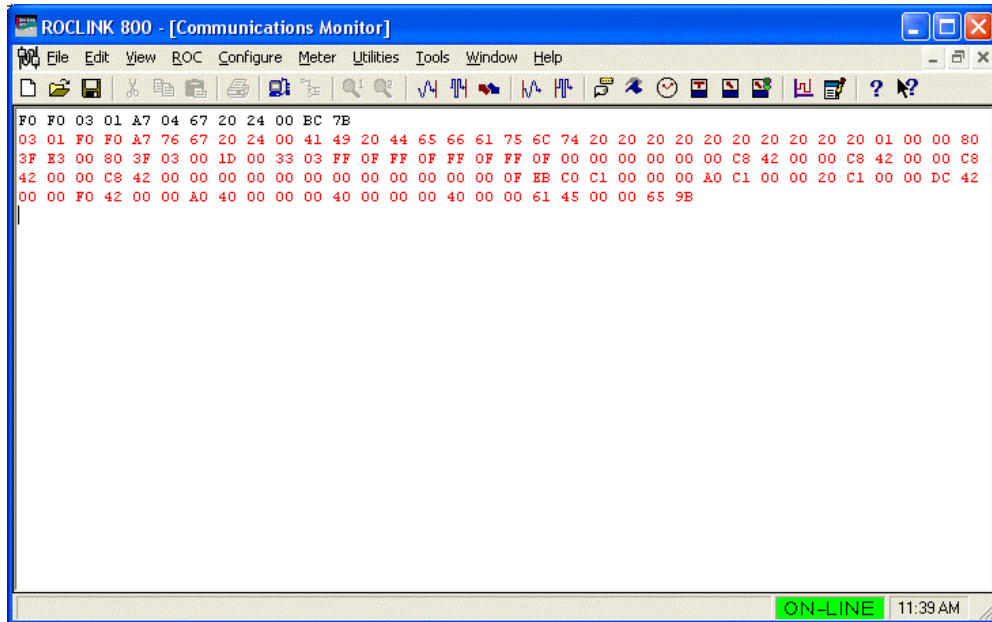


Figure 2-24. Communications Monitor Example (ROC800-Series)

2.9.5 Disconnecting from a ROC or FloBoss

To disconnect an on-line connection, close the screen by clicking the lower of the two Close buttons or select File > Close. This automatically closes the connection.

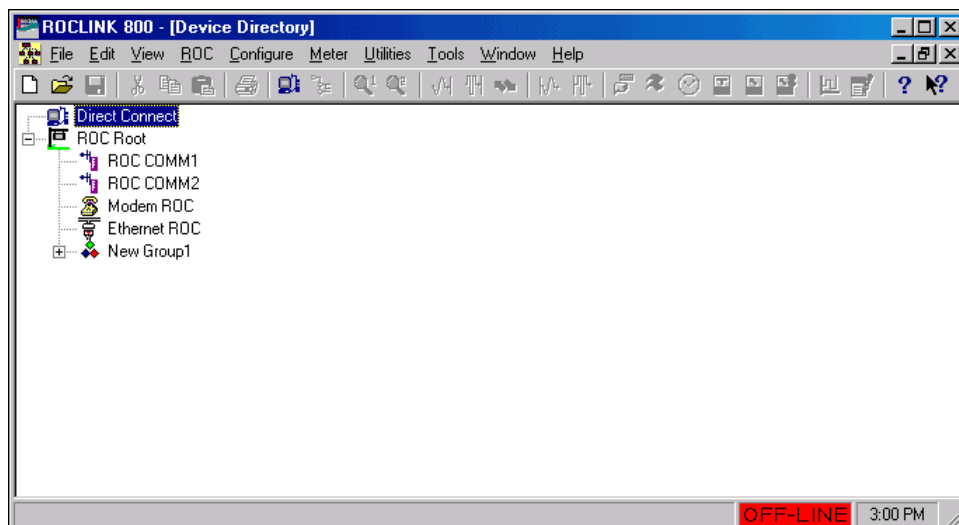


Figure 2-25. Device Directory

SECTION 3 – CONFIGURING SYSTEM PARAMETERS

This section describes how to set system preferences within the ROC or FloBoss, such as the Clock, Security, System Information, and License Keys.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
3.1 Setting the Clock	3-1
3.2 Configuring Device Information	3-2
3.3 Configuring System Flags	3-15

3.1 Setting the Clock

Immediately after connecting to a ROC or FloBoss for the first time, set the Clock to ensure proper logging of history.

The internal real-time clock provides time-stamping and control of the historical databases, Event Log, and Alarm Log.

- ❖ **Note:** The time stamp in the ROC or FloBoss reflects the time at the end of the period, not at the beginning. Data collected from 0800 to 0900 is thus time-stamped 0900. This is used for the logging of history.

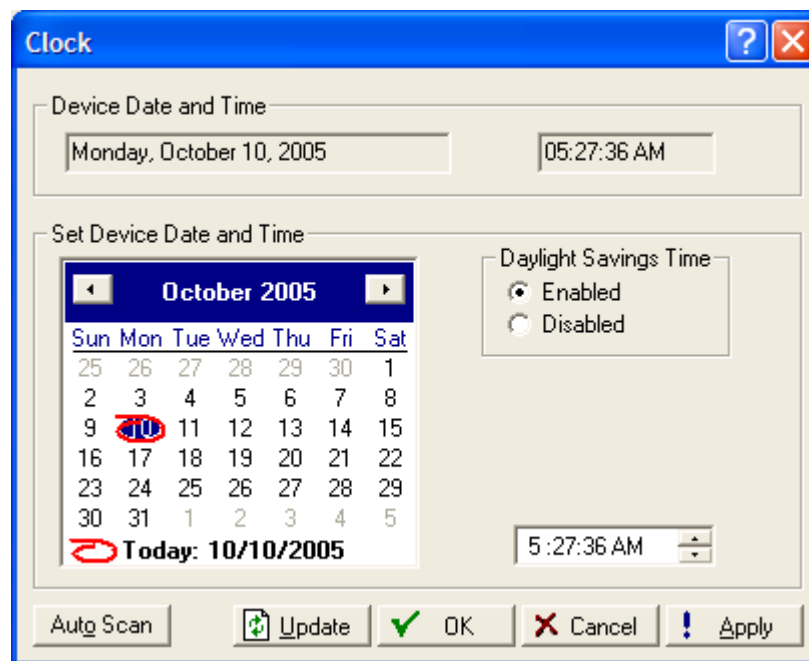


Figure 3-1. Clock

1. Select ROC > **Clock** or click the Clock icon in the toolbar.
2. If the clock in your PC is set correctly, you can use it to set the ROC or FloBoss clock. Click **Today** at the bottom of the calendar and click **Apply**.

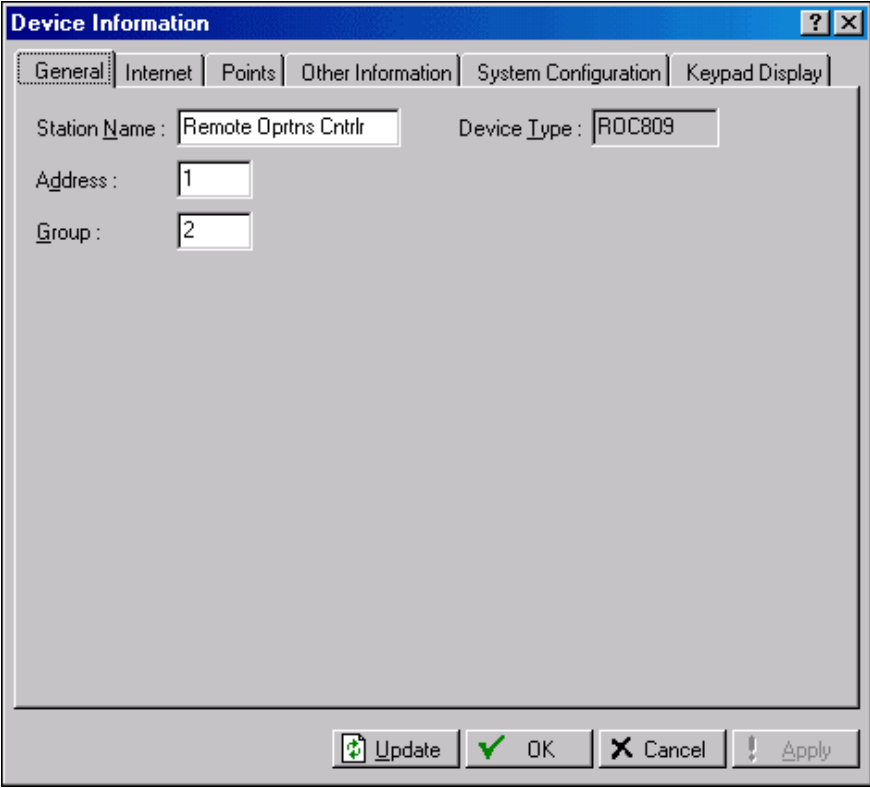
3. If the PC clock is not correct:
 - ◆ Use the arrow buttons to select the correct Month and Year. You can also click the Month to select the exact month or the Year and use the arrows to select the desired Year.
 - ◆ Click on the desired **day** of the month.
 - ◆ Click on the time field and type in the desired value (type **P** or **A** for the AM/PM field) or use the arrows.
4. The clock can automatically compensate for **daylight savings time** by enabling this feature (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series).
5. Click the **Apply** button.
6. Click the **OK** button.

3.2 Configuring Device Information

The Device Information screen establishes the Station Name, Address, Group, and other global variables that differentiate each individual ROC or FloBoss. Other system variables set in the Device Information screen must be established for a particular application.

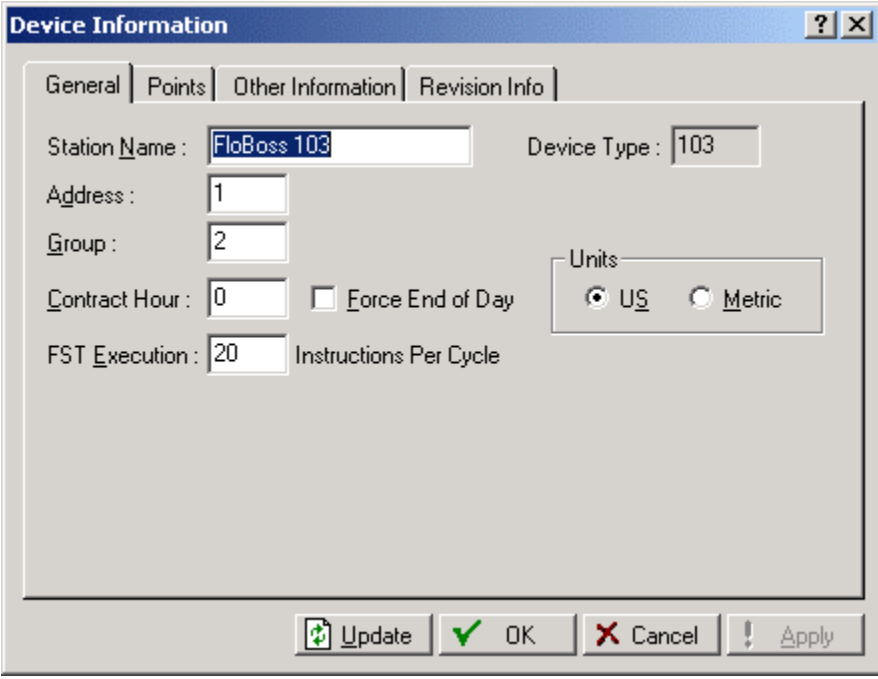
Select ROC > **Information**. The General tab has basic information about the ROC or FloBoss. The Points screen allows you to change the number of certain points that you want to be active. The Other Information tab and Revision Info tab (FloBoss 100-Series) display information about the firmware and boot firmware. The System Configuration tab (ROC800-Series) allows you to specify the four Baud Rate Generators (BRG) possible by the ROC800-Series unit at any one given time.

The Internet tab allows you to set addresses for I/P and other Internet communication options. TCP/IP connections can be used for either DS800, Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP, Modbus TCP/IP, or ROC Plus Protocol communications. If the default value of the IP Address, Gateway Address, or Subnet Mask parameter is changed, then all ROC Plus Protocol over TCP/IP connections will be closed, and you will have to re-establish a connection.



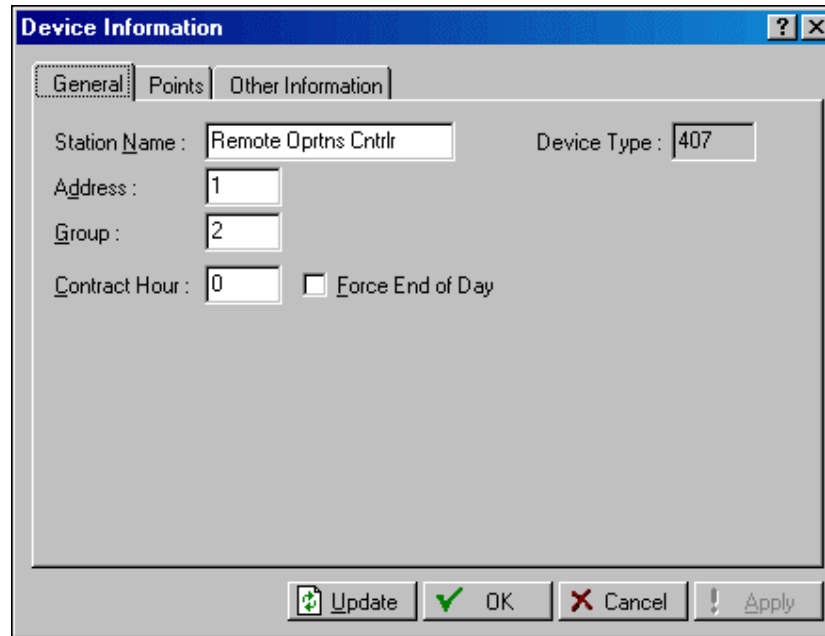
The 'Device Information' dialog box for the ROC800-Series features a blue title bar with a question mark and close button. It contains five tabs: 'General' (selected), 'Internet', 'Points', 'Other Information', and 'System Configuration'. The 'General' tab displays the following fields: 'Station Name' (text box with 'Remote Oprtns Cntrl'), 'Device Type' (text box with 'ROC809'), 'Address' (text box with '1'), and 'Group' (text box with '2'). At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Update' (with a green refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark icon), 'Cancel' (with a red X icon), and 'Apply' (with a blue exclamation mark icon).

Figure 3-2. Device Information (ROC800-Series)



The 'Device Information' dialog box for the FloBoss 100-Series has a blue title bar with a question mark and close button. It includes four tabs: 'General' (selected), 'Points', 'Other Information', and 'Revision Info'. The 'General' tab shows the following fields: 'Station Name' (text box with 'FloBoss 103'), 'Device Type' (text box with '103'), 'Address' (text box with '1'), 'Group' (text box with '2'), 'Contract Hour' (text box with '0'), 'FST Execution' (text box with '20'), and 'Instructions Per Cycle' (text box). There is an unchecked checkbox for 'Force End of Day' and a 'Units' section with two radio buttons: 'US' (selected) and 'Metric'. The bottom of the dialog features four buttons: 'Update' (with a green refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark icon), 'Cancel' (with a red X icon), and 'Apply' (with a blue exclamation mark icon).

Figure 3-3. Device Information (FloBoss 100-Series)



The image shows a 'Device Information' dialog box with three tabs: 'General', 'Points', and 'Other Information'. The 'General' tab is selected. It contains the following fields and controls:

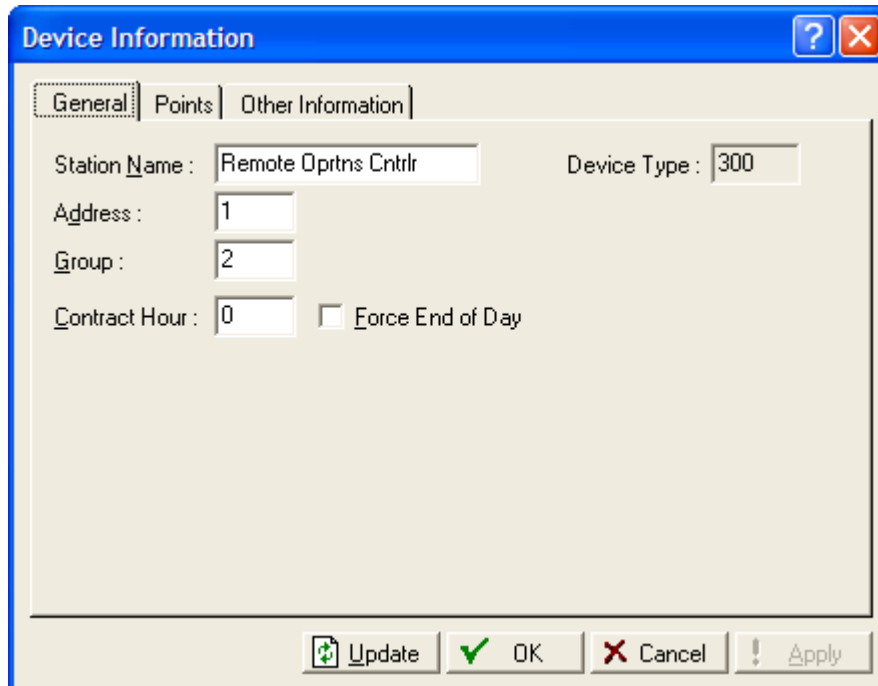
- Station Name: Remote Oprtns Cntrl
- Address: 1
- Group: 2
- Contract Hour: 0
- Device Type: 407
- Force End of Day: ☐

At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Update' (with a refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark), 'Cancel' (with a red X), and 'Apply' (with an exclamation mark).

Figure 3-4. Device Information (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

3.2.1 Information – General

Select ROC > Information. The **General** tab has basic information about the ROC or FloBoss.



The image shows a 'Device Information' dialog box with three tabs: 'General', 'Points', and 'Other Information'. The 'General' tab is selected. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Station Name: Remote Oprtns Cntrl
- Address: 1
- Group: 2
- Contract Hour: 0
- Device Type: 300
- Force End of Day: ☐

At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Update' (with a refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark), 'Cancel' (with a red X), and 'Apply' (with an exclamation mark).

Figure 3-5. Device Information Example (ROC300-Series) and FloBoss 407

Enter the **Station Name** to be logged in EFM Reports for easy site identification.

Enter a unique **Address** with which to differentiate each individual ROC or FloBoss device among all units in a communications group. The Address can be assigned a value from 1 to 255. Do not assign a value of 240 for an address.

Enter a **Group** to identify a set of ROC or FloBoss units for communication purposes, typically to a host that polls the ROC or FloBoss. The Station Group can be assigned a value from 1 to 255. Do not assign a value of 240 for a Group. All of the ROCs addressed as an area in the host have the same Station Group.

When using the ROC Protocol, the Group and Address values must match the address setup at the destination device in order for communications to properly transmit.

For a ROC800-Series, TCP/IP connections can be used for Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP, Modbus TCP/IP, and ROC Plus Protocol communications. If the default value of the Address or Group parameters is changed, then all Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP, Modbus TCP/IP, or ROC Plus Protocol over TCP/IP connections will be closed, and you will have to re-establish a connection.

Select either US or Metric **Units** (FloBoss 100-Series) for calculations. If Metric units are selected, then the AGA calculation expects all inputs to be in terms of the indicated units (such as kPa for the static pressure input). The calculation results are then in terms of the selected units.

Enter the **Contract Hour** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) which is the time when values are totaled for a single day of production, accumulators are cleared, and data is logged to the Daily History database. The Contract Hour is based on a 24-hour clock with midnight as the "0" hour.

Select **Force End of Day** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) checkbox, and click Apply to cause the current day and its hourly values to be logged into memory for all historical data except Station totals. Force End of Day also resets the daily and hourly accumulators. Force End of Day uses one of the 35 possible slots for storing daily data.

The user may specify how many FST instructions will be executed per **FST Execution** period (FloBoss 100-Series). Execution period is 1 second. The default number of instructions is 20. When the default is used, an FST with 30 sequential instructions will run in 2 execution periods; 20 in the first period and 10 in the second.

- ❖ **Note:** Changes to this parameter will take effect in the next execution period. Re-start is not required.
- ❖ **Note:** To reduce the potential risk of loading on the FloBoss unit, the user should monitor the MPU loading when changes to this parameter are made.

The **Device Type** field displays the type of ROC or FloBoss being configured.

3.2.2 Information – Internet (ROC800-Series)

Select ROC > Information. The **Internet** tab (ROC800-Series) configures addresses for Internet communications.

The screenshot shows the 'Device Information' dialog box with the 'Internet' tab selected. The dialog has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar are tabs: 'General', 'Internet', 'Points', 'Other Information', 'System Configuration', and 'Keypad Display'. The 'Internet' tab is active. It contains two main sections: 'Addressing' and 'Modbus'. The 'Addressing' section has fields for 'MAC Address' (00a0d8fc09d6), 'IP Address' (10.0.0.2), 'Subnet Mask' (255.255.255.0), and 'Gateway Address' (10.0.0.1). The 'ROC Plus Protocol' section has fields for 'IP Port Number' (4000), 'Inactivity Time' (3600.0 Seconds), 'Keep Alive Time' (324 Seconds), and 'Active Connections' (0). There is a 'Reset All Connections' button. The 'Modbus' section has fields for 'IP Port Number' (502), 'Inactivity Time' (3600.0 Seconds), 'Keep Alive Time' (324 Seconds), and 'Active Connections' (0). There is also a 'Reset All Connections' button. To the right of the 'Modbus' section is the 'Address to Use' section with three radio buttons: 'Device Address', 'Slave Address' (selected), and 'Either Device or Slave'. Below these is a 'Slave Address' field with the value 0. At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: 'Update' (with a refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark), 'Cancel' (with a red X), and 'Apply' (with an exclamation mark).

Figure 3-6. Information – Internet (ROC800-Series)

View the **MAC Address** for the ROC unit. The Media Access Control Address (MAC) Address is also referred to as the Ethernet address and is set at the factory.

Enter the desired **IP Address** for the ROC. The IP Address will identify the ROC device on a TCP/IP network.

Enter a **Subnet Mask** if required. The Subnet mask is a mask used to determine to which subnet an IP address belongs.

Enter the desired **Gateway Address** for the ROC800-Series unit. The Gateway address identifies the node on a network that serves as an entrance to the network on which the ROC resides.

Enter the **IP Port Number** for the Modbus or ROC Plus Protocol communications. The IP Port Number determines which port that the ROC unit monitors for Modbus or ROC Plus Protocol connections when communicating over a TCP/IP connection. The ROC Plus Protocol default is 4000. The Modbus default is 502. Port Numbers 1113 and 1131 are reserved.

If you change the port number, the change takes effect immediately. If the default value of this parameter is changed, then all Modbus or ROC Plus Protocol over TCP/IP connections will be closed, and you will have to re-establish a connection.

Enter the **Inactivity Time** in seconds. If a valid Modbus or ROC Plus Protocol message is not received within the Inactivity Time, the connection will be closed. This timer is in addition to the security timeout. A value of 0 will disable the timer.

Each connection will be kept alive by periodic transmissions of messages (probes). Enter the amount of idle time before the first probe is configurable, in seconds, in the **Keep Alive Time** field. If the other side of the connection fails to respond to ten repetitive probes, the connection will be considered broken and the connection closed. The other nine probes will be 64 seconds apart. The total time will be $(9 \times 64) +$ the value of the Keep Alive Time parameter.

The total number of Modbus or ROC Plus Protocol over TCP/IP connections will be limited to six of each type. The **Active Connections** field displays the number of active Modbus or ROC Plus Protocol over TCP/IP connections.

Use the **Reset All Connections** button to close all active Modbus or ROC Plus Protocol over TCP/IP connections. This button returns to an un-pressed state when connections are successfully closed.

For Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP or Modbus TCP/IP connections, select **Device Address**, **Slave Address**, or **Either Device or Slave Address**. The ROC800-Series unit will respond to the Device Address (ROC Address) configured on the General tab of the Device Information screen, to a Slave Address configured in the **Slave Address** field, or to either address.

3.2.3 Information – Points

Select ROC > Information. The **Points** tab displays the Maximum number points are available and how many are currently Active in the ROC or FloBoss units, such as Events, Alarms, PIDs, Stations, Samplers, FSTs, and Meter Runs (Orifice and Turbine).

The **Maximum** column displays the number of Points available for the option and the **Active** column displays the number of Points that are active. To conserve processor executions, set the Active fields to the minimum value required by your application.

For FloBoss 407 units, the Points tab displays the number of database **History Points** contained in the RAM areas. Base RAM is always 30; RAM1 is always 20; RAM2 is always 0. These fields are Read-Only and cannot be changed. You can also configure the number of PIDs and AGAs.

For ROC300-Series units, the Points tab displays the number of database points contained in the RAM areas. Base RAM is always 30; RAM1 is always 30; RAM2 is always 27. These fields are Read-Only and cannot be changed. You can also configure the number of PIDs and AGAs.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, the Points tab also displays the number of points allocated for Standard History and Extended History on the Configure > History Points screen. You can also configure the number of PIDs and AGAs.

	Maximum	Active
Events :	450	
Alarms :	450	
PIDs :	16	16
Stations :	6	1
Samplers :	6	1
FSTs :	6	

Meter Runs :	6
Orifice :	1
Turbine :	1

Buttons: Update, OK, Cancel, Apply

Figure 3-7. Information – Points (ROC800-Series)

	Maximum	Active
PIDs :	3	3
AGAs :	1	1

History Points	
Base RAM :	15
RAM 1 :	0
RAM 2 :	0

Buttons: Update, OK, Cancel, Apply

Figure 3-8. Information – Points (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

The screenshot shows a 'Device Information' dialog box with a blue title bar and standard Windows window controls. It has four tabs: 'General', 'Points' (selected), 'Other Information', and 'Revision Info'. The 'Points' tab contains a table with the following data:

	Maximum	Active	History Points
PIDs :	1	1	Standard History : 35
AGAs :	1	1	Extended History : 4

At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: 'Update' (with a refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark), 'Cancel' (with a red X), and 'Apply' (with an exclamation mark).

Figure 3-9. Information – Points (FloBoss 100-Series)

3.2.4 Information – Other Information

Select ROC > Information. The **Other Information** tab displays information about the firmware, boot firmware, processor, and LCD (if pertinent to the type of ROC or FloBoss). The fields are read-only.

The screenshot shows a 'Device Information' window with a blue title bar and standard Windows window controls. It features a tabbed interface with the following tabs: General, Internet, Points, Other Information (selected), System Configuration, and Keypad Display. The 'Other Information' tab displays several read-only fields in a list format:

- Version Name : W68126 Ver1.52
- Time Created : May 05, 2005 12:20
- Vendor ID : Emerson Process Mgmt
- MPU Loading : 10.29
- Boot Version : W68127X0012 Ver1.00
- Time Created : Jul 30, 2002 15:18
- Last Power Down Time : 11/03/2005 16:19:40
- Last Power Up Time : 11/03/2005 17:14:03

At the bottom of the window, there are four buttons: 'Update' (with a refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark icon), 'Cancel' (with a red X icon), and 'Apply' (with an exclamation mark icon).

Figure 3-10. Information – Other Information Example (ROC800-Series)

Field	Value
Customer Name	NONE
Version Name	W68123 Ver 2.12
ID	Fisher FCD
Time Created	Mar 10, 2005 11:20
ROM Serial #	
MPU Loading	19.28879

Figure 3-11. Other Information (FloBoss 407 and FloBoss 100-Series)

Field	Value
Customer Name	*
Version Name	W68067 Ver2.23
ID	Emerson FCD ROC300
Time Created	Jan 15, 2004 13:51
ROM Serial #	0003008619jij
MPU Loading	16.51667
LCD Installed	Yes

Figure 3-12. Other Information (ROC300-Series)

The **Version Name**, **Part Number**, **ID**, and **Time Created** of the firmware display.

The information about the ROM (**Customer Name** and **Serial Number**) display.

The processes in the processor (**MPU Loading**) display.

The amount of **RAM** installed in the ROC or FloBoss display.

In a ROC800-Series field display when power was added or removed: **Last Power Up Time** (connected to power) and **Last Power Down Time** (power was disconnected).

For the ROC300-Series, the **LCD Installed** field indicates whether an LCD is connected to the unit.

3.2.5 Information – System Configuration (ROC800-Series)

Select ROC > Information. The **System Configuration** tab allows you to specify the four Baud Rates (bps) possible by the ROC unit at any given time. You may use any one of the four baud rates specified on the System Configuration tab. A Read Only display on the Comm Ports General screen indicates which of the four Baud Rate Generators is in use.

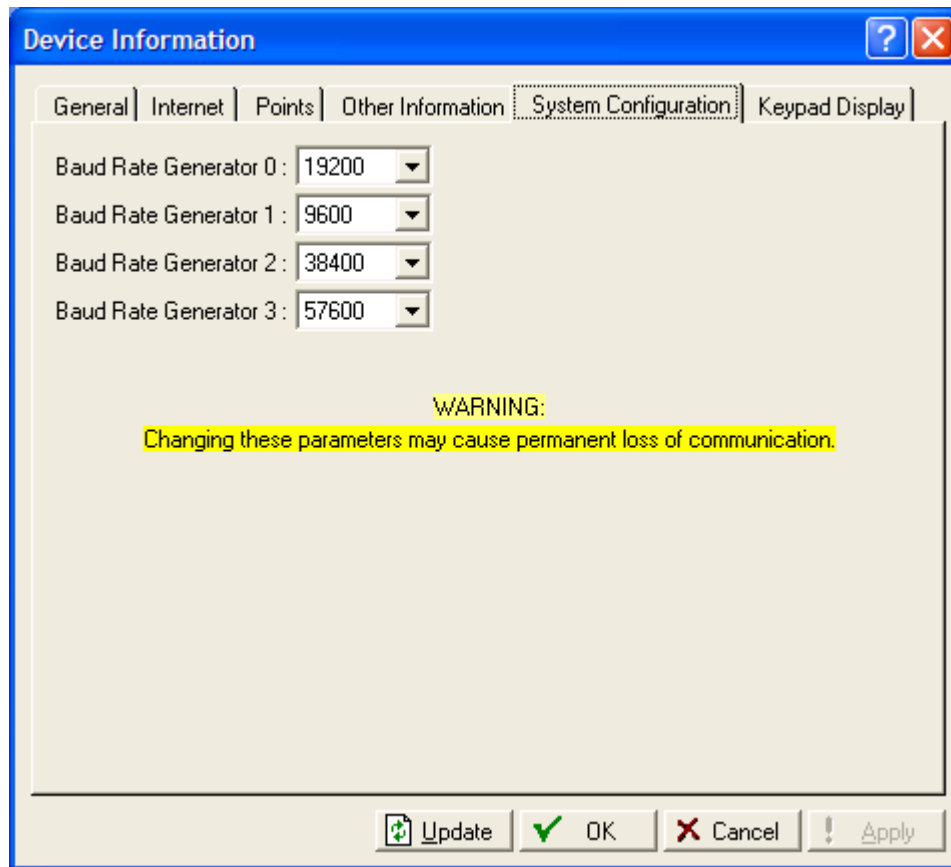


Figure 3-13. Information – System Configuration (ROC800-Series)

3.2.6 Information – Revision Info (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select ROC > Information. The **Revision Info** tab displays information about the **Application Firmware** or **Accessory** software installed in the FloBoss 100-Series unit. For example, the Accessory field may say I/O Card, 6 Points, or Turbine Interface. When the Accessory field displays Not Used, there are no additional accessories installed. The **Part Number** and **Version** control number also display.

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Device Information". It has four tabs: "General", "Points", "Other Information", and "Revision Info", with "Revision Info" being the active tab. The dialog is divided into three sections, each with a title bar and two input fields for "Part Number" and "Version".

Section	Part Number	Version
Application Firmware	\W68123	Rev. 2.12
Boot Firmware	\W68129	Rev. 1.10
I/O Card, 6 points	\W68156	Rev. 1.10

At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: "Update" (with a refresh icon), "OK" (with a checkmark icon), "Cancel" (with an X icon), and "Apply" (with a document icon).

Figure 3-14. Information – Revision Info (FloBoss 100-Series)

3.2.7 Information – Keypad Display (ROC800-Series)

Select ROC > Information. The **Keypad Display** allows you to configure settings for the ROC800-Series optional Display Keypad.

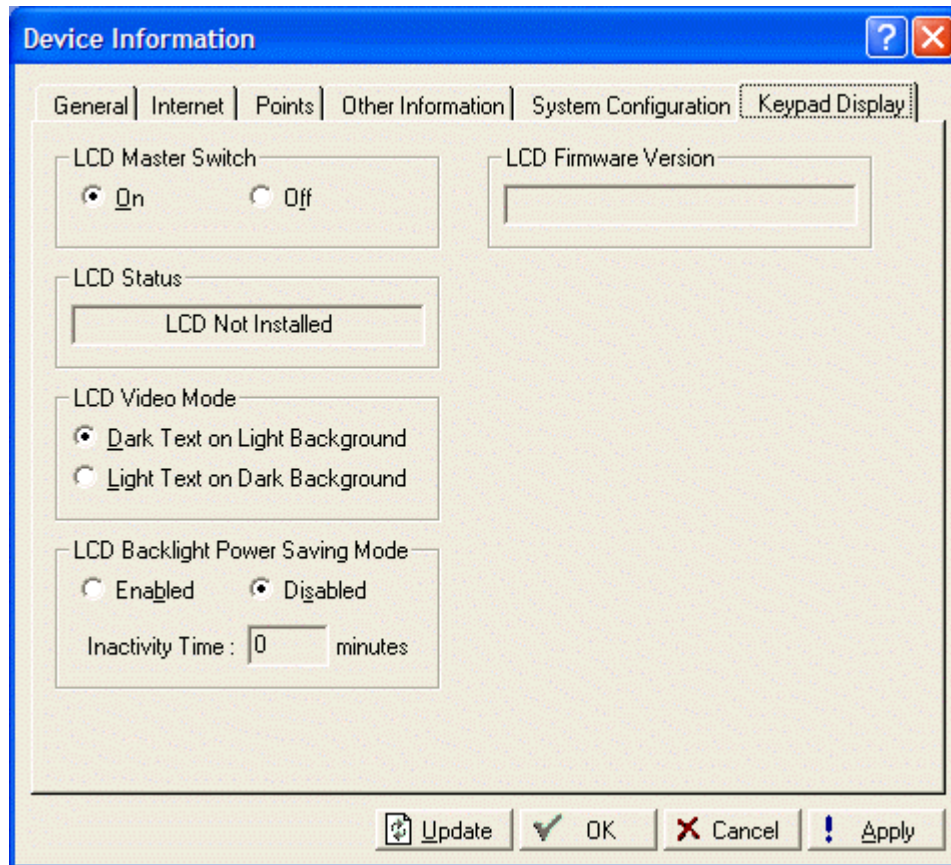


Figure 3-15. Information – Keypad Display (ROC800-Series)

LCD Master Switch resets the Keypad/Display task without cycling power or having to perform a Warm-Start.

LCD Status indicates the status of the Keypad Display. OK displays if a Keypad Display unit is installed and has a valid configuration file. An error displays if the configuration file is invalid, no Keypad Display is installed, or if there is a CRC error.

Select the default **LCD Video Mode** for the display (dark text on light background) or invert the LCD display (light text on dark background). Click **Apply** to change the display mode.

When **LCD Backlight Power Saving Mode** (ROC800-Series) is enabled, the LCD automatically shuts off after the amount of time set in the **Inactivity Time** field.

LCD Firmware Version displays the firmware version currently loaded.

3.3 Configuring System Flags

Select ROC > Flags to perform actions that affect the overall operation of the ROC or FloBoss device. From this screen, a configuration can be saved to Flash memory and the ROC or FloBoss can be re-initialized if necessary. Refer to Table 3-1.

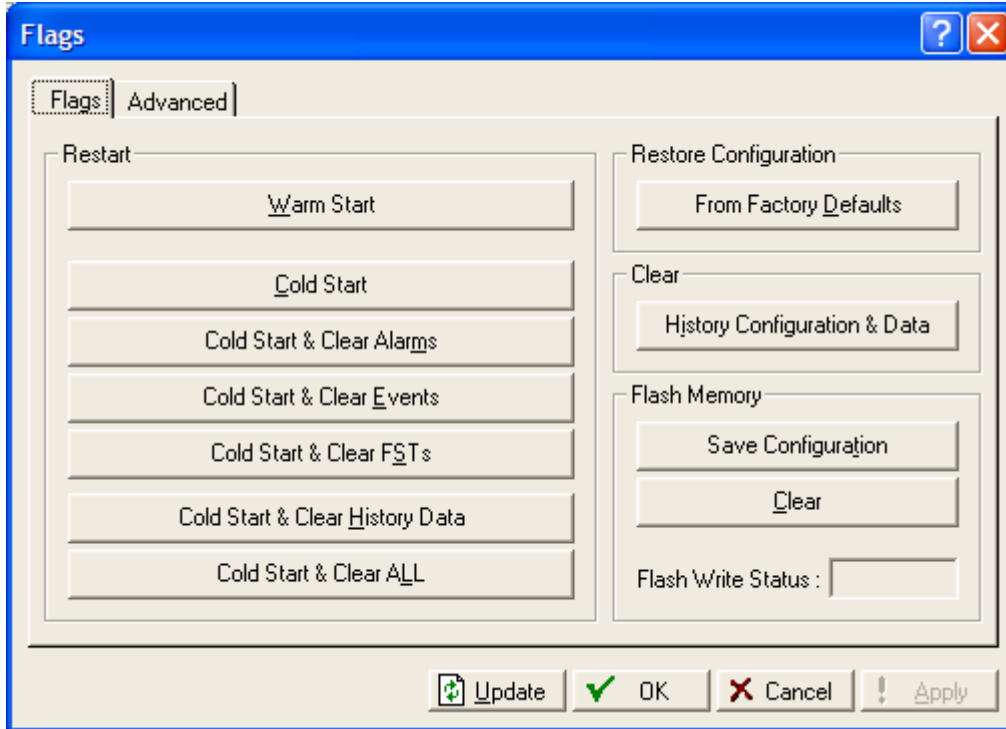


Figure 3-16. Flags (ROC800-Series)

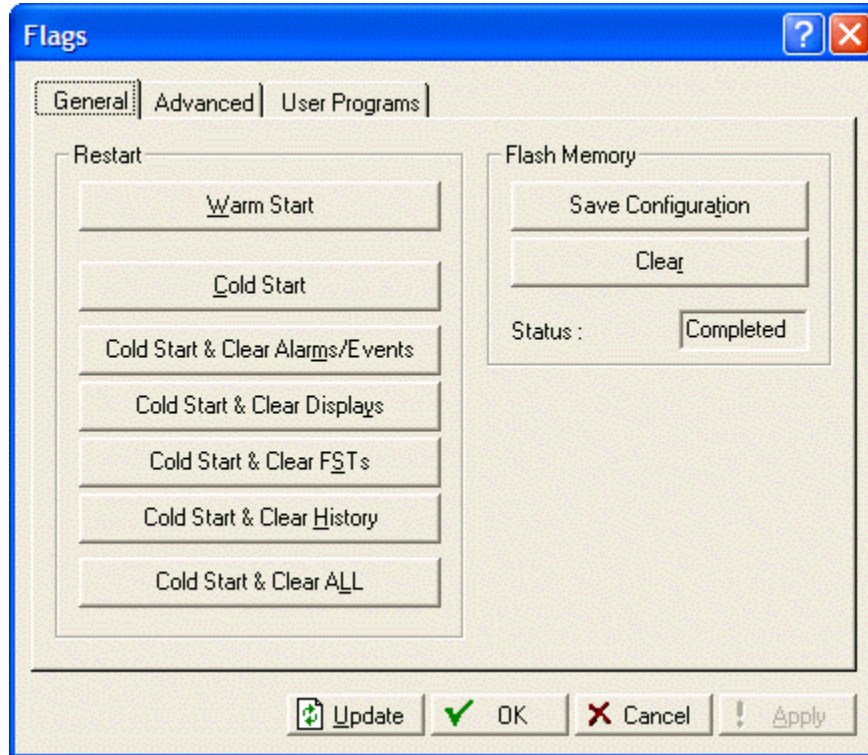


Figure 3-17. Flags (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series)

- ❖ **Note:** Be very careful when using the System Flags. Certain Flags cause data to be lost, parameter values to be changed, and configuration memory to be cleared. Be sure you understand the function of the Flags before changing them.
- ❖ **Note:** A Reset using the Reset switch or a jumper reloads all configuration data from Electrically Erasable Program Read-Only Memory (EEPROM) or Flash memory, clears all history, clears the Event Log, clears the Alarm Log, and clears all ROC Displays, disables all user program tasks, and disables all user data types.

The Reset switch or a jumper permits a restart from the boot block of the flash memory (Cold Start) rather than from RAM (Warm Start).

The Reset switch or a jumper permits a restart from the boot block of the flash memory (Cold Start) rather than from RAM (Warm Start).

For a FloBoss 100-Series, a Jumper Reset configures all Comm Ports back to their factory defaults, shuts off all User Programs and FSTs. All other data remains intact.

- ❖ **Note:** Cold Start reloads all restart configuration data and may also clear logs, displays, and FSTs. In addition, it may cause output changes, load new accumulator values, and disable User Program tasks and User Data Types. Generally, a **Cold Start should not be used on a ROC or FloBoss that is actively gathering data or performing control**. Save or document all required data and parameter values that could be affected before performing the Cold Start.

Table 3-1. ROC > Flag Definitions

Button	Device	Action
Clear – Flash Memory	All	Clears all Flash memory.
Clear History Configuration and Data	ROC800-Series	Clears all Historical Database files and clears the Historical Database configuration.
Cold Start	All	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory. If the configuration memory is not valid, the factory default settings are used.
Cold Start & Clear Alarms	ROC800-Series	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears the Alarm Log.
Cold Start & Clear Alarms/Events	FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears the Alarm Log and Event Log.
Cold Start & Clear All	All	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears all History database files, Custom Displays, Alarm Log, Event Log, and FSTs.
Cold Start & Clear Displays	FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears the ROC Custom Displays.
Cold Start & Clear Events	ROC800-Series	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears the Event Log.
Cold Start & Clear FSTs	All	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears the FSTs.
Cold Start & Clear History	FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears the History.
Cold Start & Clear History Data	ROC800-Series	Restores a configuration from default values stored in Flash memory and clears the History.
From Factory Defaults – Restore Configuration	ROC800-Series	Restores a configuration from default factory values.
History Configuration & Data – Clear	ROC800-Series	Clears all historical configurations and historical data.
Save Configuration – Flash Memory	All	Saves the current configuration to Flash Memory.
Warm Start	All	ROC or FloBoss is initialized from SRAM memory. If the configuration is valid, databases and FSTs remain intact. If the memory is not valid, the configuration last saved to Flash is used. User Programs remain on.

3.3.1 Returning the Device to Factory Default Settings

Sometimes it is necessary to return the ROC or FloBoss device to the original factory default settings. The following procedure clears all saved restart configuration data contained in Flash memory. Only factory defaults are retained.

ROC800-Series

To return the device to the original factory default settings using a ROC800-Series unit:

1. Select ROC > **Flags**.
2. Click Flash Memory **Clear**.
3. Click **Yes** and **OK**.
4. Click Restore Configuration **From Factory Defaults** button.
5. Click **Yes** and **OK**.

❖ **Note:** You may need to re-connect as the factory default settings may be altered from the stored data.

FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407

To return the device to the original factory default settings using a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407 unit:

1. Select ROC > **Flags**.
2. Click Flash Memory **Clear**.
3. Click **Yes** and **OK**.
4. Perform a Cold Start using the **Cold Start & Clear ALL** button.
5. Click **Yes** and **OK**.

❖ **Note:** You may need to re-connect as the factory default settings may be altered from the stored data.

3.3.2 Flags – Advanced

Select ROC > Flags. Click the **Advanced** tab.

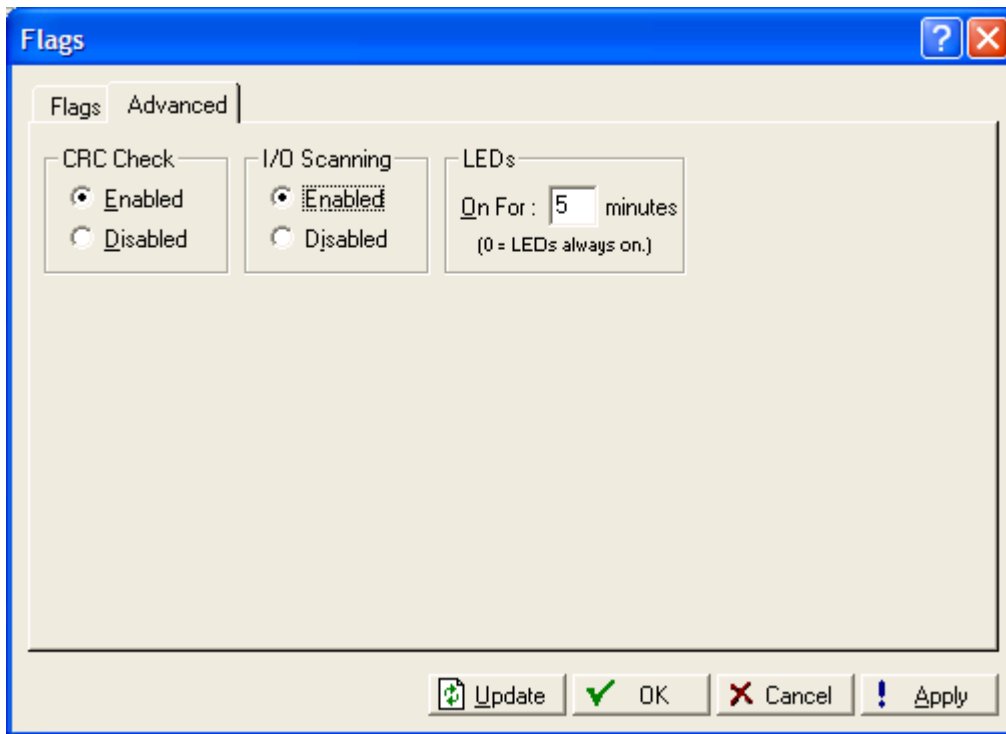


Figure 3-18. Flags – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

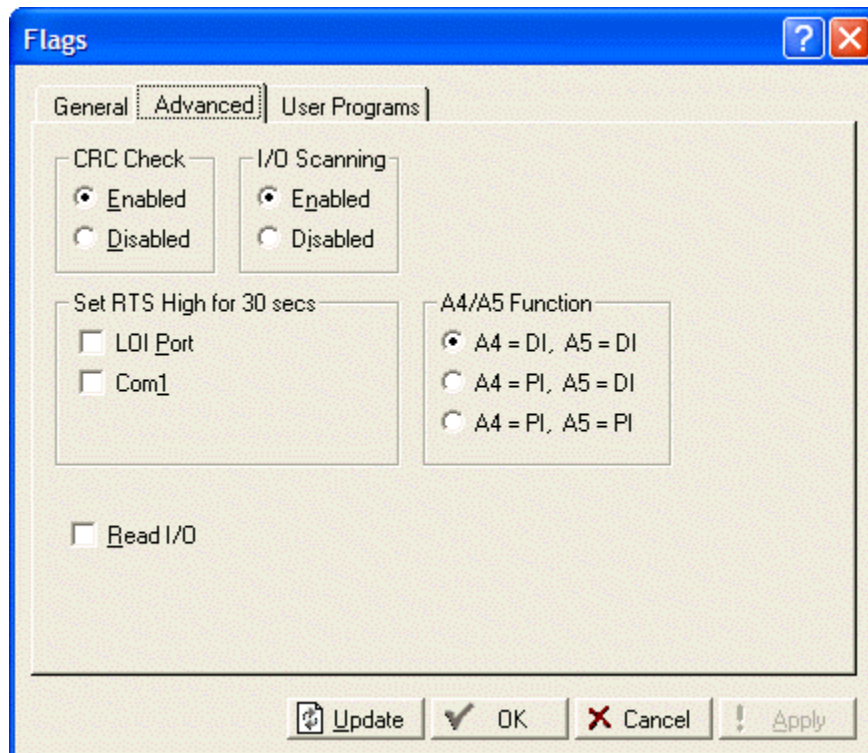


Figure 3-19. Flags – Advanced (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

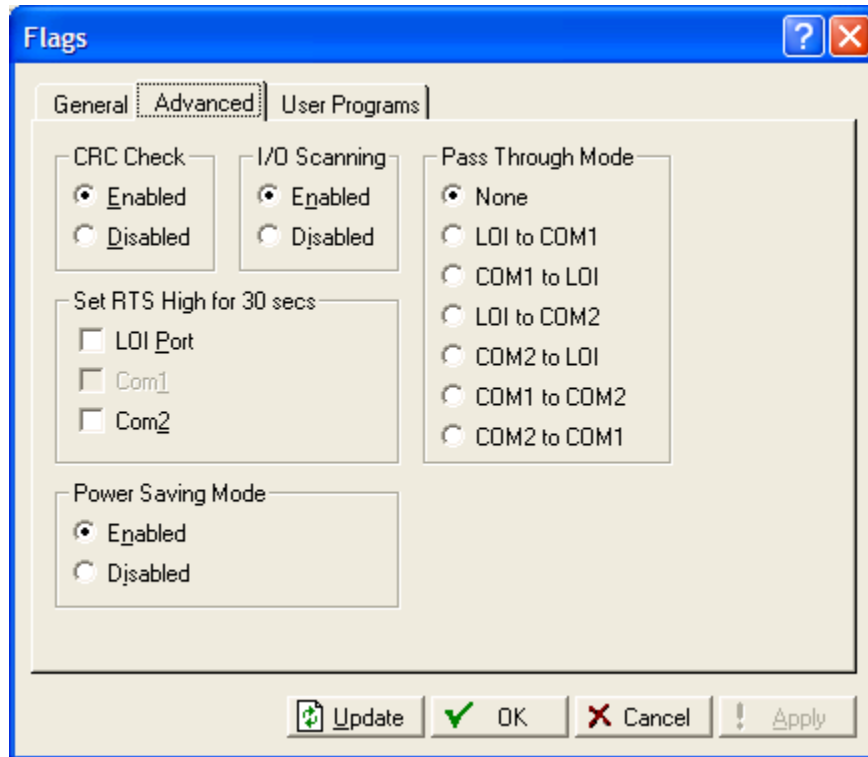


Figure 3-20. Flags – Advanced (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select **CRC Check** Enabled to perform CRC (Cyclical Redundancy Check) checking on ROC Protocol and ROC Plus Protocol communications.

Select **I/O Scanning** Enabled so I/O is in normal scan mode. When Disabled, all I/O scanning is stopped and the last values are used until scanning is resumed. This includes MVS sensors.

You can Enable and Disable I/O Scanning on the I/O point displays.

LEDs (ROC800-Series), with the exception of the LED on the Power module, can be enabled or disabled as a power saving feature. This parameter determines how long the LEDs remain on after the LED button on the CPU module is pressed.

For instance, with the default setting of 5 minutes, all LEDs will go off. If you press the LED button, the LEDs become active again for 5 minutes. By placing a 0 (zero) in this field, the LEDs always stay active.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, **Power Saving Mode** when enabled allows the FloBoss unit to enter sleep mode when no activity is occurring. When disabled, the FloBoss unit will stay awake (not enter sleep mode during no activity periods). Enabled is the default.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, select a **Pass Through Mode** communications option to send Pass Through messages. By using any of the FloBoss 100-Series communications ports, Pass Through Mode allows data to be received by one unit and then passed through to other devices connected on any other communications port. For example, the host communicates via a radio on the FloBoss 100-Series COM2 port. Other FloBoss 100-Series units can then be connected via EIA-485 (RS-485) on the COM1 port of the first FloBoss 100-Series unit, and then all the FloBoss 100-Series units can use the one radio to communicate to the host.

- ❖ **Note:** If COM2 is a Dial-up modem, this port must be used as the receiving port for Pass Through messages. It will not transmit to other field devices other than the host.
- ❖ **Note:** The Group number of the FloBoss 100-Series receiving the data must match the Group number of the FloBoss 100-Series unit(s) to which the data will be passed. If the Group number does not match, the data will not be forwarded. Refer to ROC > Information to view or change the Group number.

Select the respective port (Local Port, COM1, or COM2) for the **Set RTS to High for 30 Sec** option (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) and click Apply to activate the RTS (Request-to-Send) signal. The RTS signal turns on for 30 seconds.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, COM1 is not available and COM2 requires an optional EIA-232 (RS-232) communications card.

The **Read I/O** Flag forces the unit to search for all installed I/O modules. Select the Flag and click Apply when an I/O module is added or removed under power.

For a FloBoss 407, the **Transmitter (+T)** Flag changes transmitter power to Analog Inputs when enabled.

For the Revision M of the Termination Board with the 12V/24V jumper (P15) set to 24V, selecting this Flag maintains the Transmitter Power at 24 volts nominal. De-select the checkbox, to change the Transmitter Power to 12 volts nominal. If the jumper is set to 12V, this Flag essentially has no effect.

Revisions A and B of the Termination Board, certain I/O modules (specifically the AI Loop and AO Source) route input power back to +T. With +T flag disabled, the +T voltage returns to zero when those modules are removed.

Revisions A and B of the Termination Board did not have a 12/24 jumper, so this feature allows the Transmitter Voltage to be selected.

Revisions A and B of the Termination Board did not have a 12/24 jumper, so this feature allows the Transmitter Voltage to be selected.

Select the **A4/A5 Function** (ROC300-Series) to determine whether the two built-in DI/PI channels in the ROC300-Series are configured.

3.3.3 Flags – User Programs (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407)

Select ROC > Flags. Click the **User Programs** tab.

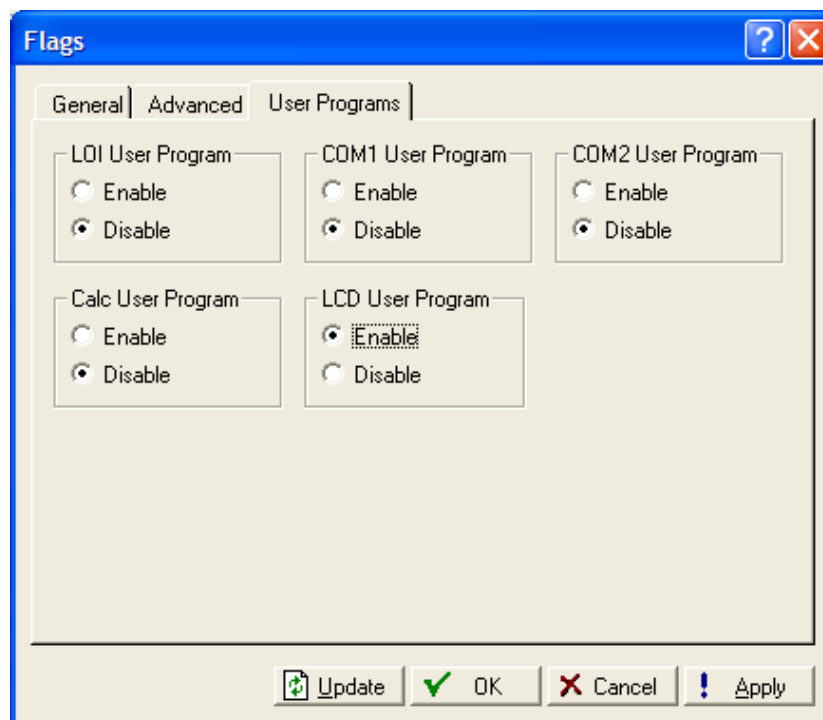


Figure 3-21. Flags – User Programs (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

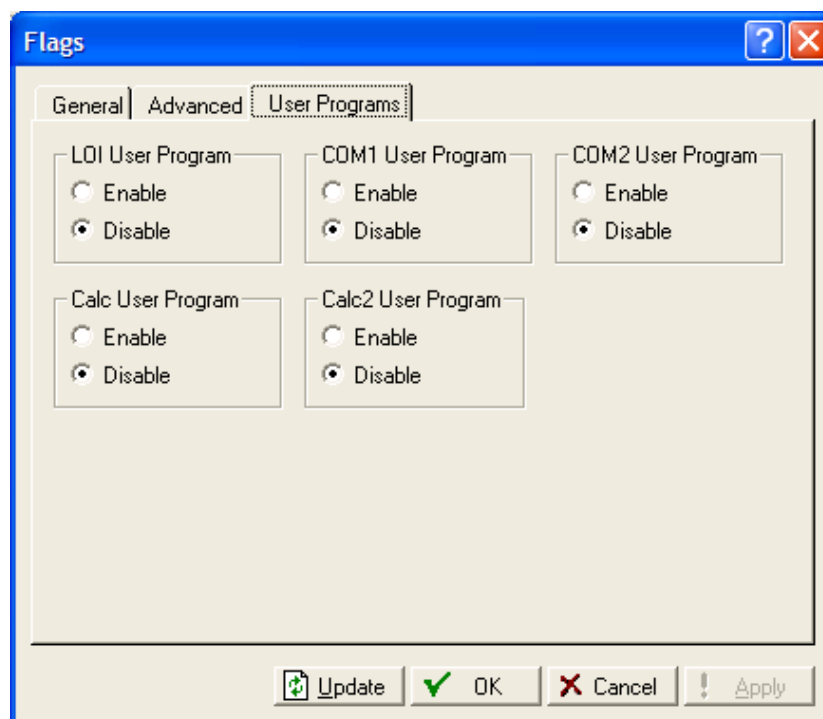


Figure 3-22. Flags – User Programs (FloBoss 100-Series)

LOI User Program (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series) – If installed, allows a User Program for the operator interface Local Port to be run. Select **Disable** and then click Apply to stop the function.

COM1 User Program (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) – If a user program is installed for the COM1 task, this Flag allows the User Program associated with the COM1 or COMM port on the ROC to be run.

COM2 User Program (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) – If a user program is installed for the COM2 task, this Flag allows the User Program associated with the COM2 port on the ROC to be run.

Calc User Program (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) – If installed, allows the calculation user program to be run.

Calc2 User Program (FloBoss 100-Series) – If installed, allows the second calculation User Program to be run.

LCD User Program – If installed, allows a User Program for the optional Local Display Panel to be run.

SECTION 4 – CONFIGURING INPUTS AND OUTPUTS (I/O)

The I/O points in the ROC or FloBoss have many items that can be configured. For more information on the types of I/O available and their functions, refer to the appropriate hardware manual.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
4.1 I/O Configuration Overview	4-1
4.2 AI – Analog Input Configuration.....	4-2
4.3 AO – Analog Output Configuration	4-9
4.4 DI – Discrete Input Configuration	4-14
4.5 DO – Discrete Output Configuration.....	4-21
4.6 PI – Pulse Input Configuration	4-29
4.7 Pulse Interface Module Diagnostic (FloBoss 104)	4-37
4.8 RTD – RTD Input Configuration (ROC800-Series).....	4-38
4.9 TC – Thermocouple Input Configuration (ROC800-Series)	4-42
4.10 System AI – System Analog Input Configuration (ROC800-Series)	4-46
4.11 HART Input Configuration (ROC800-Series).....	4-50
4.12 MVS Sensor (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 407).....	4-57

4.1 I/O Configuration Overview

Configuring a ROC or FloBoss is a matter of establishing **points** and then configuring various **parameters**.

Each Input and Output has a unique **Point Number** to identify the input or output. The Point Number indicates the location of the point at the slot number of the I/O module and channel number in the ROC800-Series. For example, DI 2-1 indicates the Point Number for a Discrete Input at module slot number two, first channel.

The Point Number in the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407 indicates the location of the point on the termination board. The Point Number is automatically assigned by the device and cannot be edited.

- ❖ **Note:** When configuring similar point types, use the **Copy** (F4) and **Paste** (F5) options to speed configuration of similar I/O types. For example, if you have nearly identical Analog Inputs to configure, copy the configuration of one AI and paste that configuration into a new AI configuration. Make the changes that are required to differentiate the two AI configurations.
- ❖ **Note:** Each point must be individually configured. If there is more than one point of this type available in the device, you can “page” to the other points by using **Page Up** and **Page Down**. Points are in the same order as the I/O modules installed in the slots.
- ❖ **Note:** For FloBoss 100-Series units with six points of I/O, select **Configure > I/O > Setup** to select which types of I/O each channel will be assigned before configuring the I/O points. This applies to the software-selectable AI/DI, AO/DO, and PI/DI channels.

4.2 AI – Analog Input Configuration

Analog Inputs are analog signals generated by measurement devices, such as pressure and temperature transmitters, including RTD probes and pressure sensors.

- ❖ **Note:** Use the AI configuration screens to configure a DVS for the FloBoss 100-Series and RTD inputs for the FloBoss 100-Series and FloBoss 407.
- ❖ **Note:** For the FloBoss 407, do not configure the second AI point if the jumper is selected to PI. Refer to the *FloBoss 407 Flow Manager Instruction Manual* (Form A6013).

Select Configure > I/O > **AI Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs in the order given below.

1. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the Analog Input point.
2. The Advanced tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering, A/D conversions, and clipping for the selected Analog Input.
3. The AI Calibration tab is available to allow for calibration of the AI point while on-line. Refer to Section 10, Calibration.
4. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this AI point.
5. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.2.1 AI – General

Select Configure > I/O > **AI Points**. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the Analog Input point.

The screenshot shows the 'Analog Input' configuration window with the 'General' tab selected. The window has a blue title bar with a question mark and close button. Below the title bar, there are two dropdown menus: 'Analog Inputs' set to '1 - AI Default' and 'Tag' set to 'AI Default'. Below these are four tabs: 'General', 'Advanced', 'AI Calibration', and 'Alarms'. The 'General' tab is active and contains the following fields: 'Point Number' (2-1), 'Value' (-24.11477), 'Units' (empty), 'Scan Period' (1.0) with 'Secs' next to it, 'Low Reading EU' (0.0), 'High Reading EU' (100.0), and 'Active Alarms' (Point Fail Alarm) with a red background and '64' next to it. To the right of the 'Scan Period' field is a 'Scanning' section with two radio buttons: 'Enabled' (selected) and 'Disabled'. At the bottom of the window are several buttons: 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 4-1. AI – General (ROC800-Series)

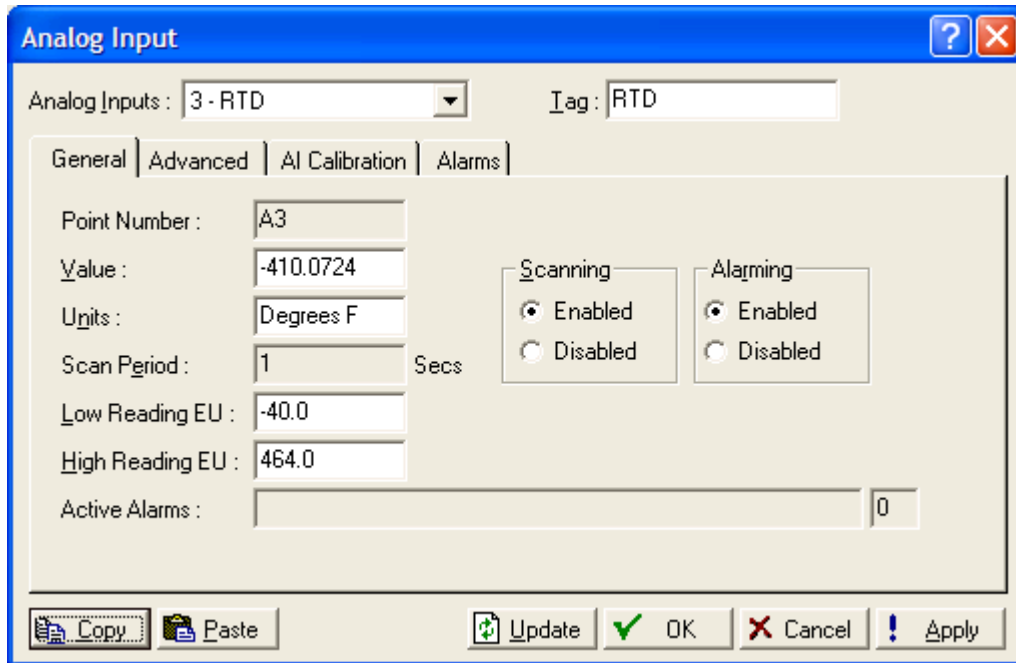


Figure 4-2. AI – General (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series)

Select the **Analog Input** to be configured. The inputs are listed by both Point Number and Tag.

Each Point is given a **Tag**, which includes up to 10 characters to identify the Point being defined in the I/O screen. Any alphanumeric characters, including spaces, may be used.

The **Point Number** identifies the physical location of the input. For the ROC800-Series, the Point Number identifies the module slot – channel number.

If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a **Value** to override the input. When Scanning is set to Enable, Value displays the last Analog Input scan in engineering units.

A **Units** is a user-defined 10-character description for the engineering units assigned to the I/O point. For example: PSIG, MCF, degrees F, milliamps, or volts.

Select a **Scanning** option. For the input to automatically process the field input, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode). When Scanning is set to Enabled, the engineering unit (EU) **Value** displays the last Analog Input scan. When Scanning is set to **Disabled** (Manual Mode), the engineering unit (EU) Value is no longer updated by the ROC or FloBoss. If Alarming is Enabled, a Manual Mode alarm generates when Scanning is set to Disabled. If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter an override input in the **Value** field.

Scan Period is the amount of time between updates of the Filter value. All Analog Inputs are updated based on their individual Scan Periods. The default value is 1 second. The minimum Scan Period allowed is 50 mSec. For a FloBoss 100-Series, the minimum Scan Period is 1 second.

Low Reading EU (engineering unit) corresponds to zero percent input. For example, if a temperature transmitter is connected to the Analog Input with a range of –40 to 160 degrees F, the Low Reading EU would be set to –40.

High Reading EU (engineering unit) corresponds to 100 percent input. For example, if a temperature transmitter is connected to the Analog Input with a range of –40 to 160 degrees F, the High Reading EU would be set to 160.

If you Enable **Alarming**, the limit alarms thresholds (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. If you Disable Alarming, no limit alarms generate for this point. The Point Fail alarm may appear in the Active Alarms field, but will not be logged in the Alarms file. Alarm Enable activates the limit alarms for the point. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is Disabled.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When Alarming is set to Enabled, the limit alarms (such as Low Alarm and Rate Alarm) that are active appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm and Manual (Scanning Disabled) indicators can still appear.

4.2.2 AI – Advanced

Select Configure > I/O > AI Points. The **Advanced** tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering, A/D conversions, and clipping for the selected Analog Input.

The screenshot shows the 'Analog Input' configuration window with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The window has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two dropdown menus: 'Analog Inputs' set to '1 - AI Default' and 'Tag' set to 'AI Default'. The main area contains several input fields and checkboxes. The 'Filter' field is set to '3'. The 'Zero Shift' field is set to '0.0'. The 'Adjusted A/D 0%' field is set to '819'. The 'Adjusted A/D 100%' field is set to '4095'. The 'Raw A/D Input' field is set to '29'. The 'Actual Scan' field is set to '0.9999971' with the unit 'Seconds' next to it. There are two groups of radio buttons: 'Average Raw Value' with 'Enabled' and 'Disabled' options, and 'Clipping' with 'Enabled' and 'Disabled' options. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Field	Value
Analog Inputs	1 - AI Default
Tag	AI Default
Filter	3
Zero Shift	0.0
Adjusted A/D 0%	819
Adjusted A/D 100%	4095
Raw A/D Input	29
Actual Scan	0.9999971
Unit	Seconds
Average Raw Value	Disabled
Clipping	Disabled

Figure 4-3. AI – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Analog Input

Analog Inputs: 1 - Fixed AI#1 Tag: Fixed AI#1

General | **Advanced** | AI Calibration | Alarms

Filter: 3

Adjusted A/D 0%: 800

Adjusted A/D 100%: 4000

Raw A/D Input: 12

Actual Scan: 1 Seconds

Average Raw Value
☒ Enabled
☐ Disabled

Clipping
☐ Enabled
☒ Disabled

Temp Compensation
☒ Enabled
☐ Disabled

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 4-4. AI – Advanced (ROC300-Series)

Analog Input

Analog Inputs: 1 - Fixed AI#1 Tag: Fixed AI#1

General | **Advanced** | AI Calibration | Alarms

Filter: 3

Adjusted A/D 0%: 800

Adjusted A/D 100%: 4000

Raw A/D Input: 7

Actual Scan: 1 Seconds

Action on Failure
☒ Hold Last Value
☐ Set To Fault Value
 Fault Value: 0.0

Average Raw Value
☒ Enabled
☐ Disabled

Clipping
☐ Enabled
☒ Disabled

Temp Compensation
☐ Enabled
☒ Disabled

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 4-5. AI – Advanced (FloBoss 407)

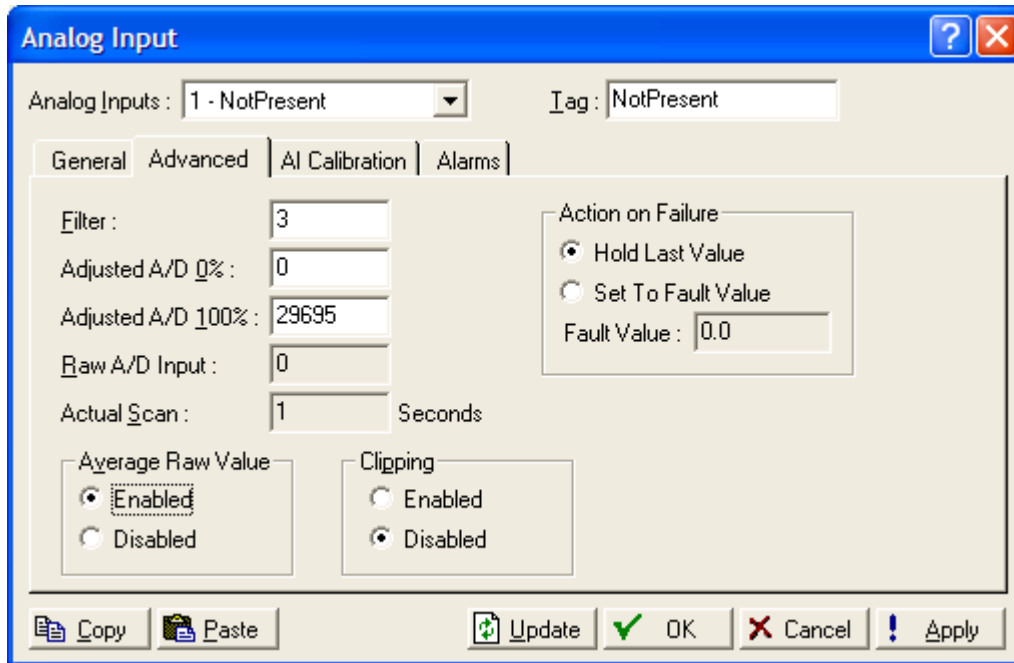


Figure 4-6. AI – Advanced (FloBoss 100-Series)

Filter value is a weighted sample using a percentage of the last value plus a percentage of the new value. The entered data is the percentage of the last value used. The Filter is calculated every Scan Period by the formula:

ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series

$$(\text{Last Value} \times \text{Entered \%}) + [\text{New Value} \times (100 - \text{Entered \%})] = \text{Filtered Value}$$

ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407

$$(\text{Last Value} \times [75 + (\text{Entered \%} \div 4)]) + (\text{New Value} \times [25 - (\text{Entered \%} \div 4)]) = \text{Filtered Value}$$

The **Adjusted A/D 0%** is the calibrated Analog-to-Digital count corresponding to zero percent input. In the Calibrate function, this value is altered to set the zero percent input exactly at the Low Reading EU value.

The **Adjusted A/D 100%** is the calibrated Analog-to-Digital count corresponding to 100 percent input. This value is used to convert the input to engineering units. In the Calibrate function, this value is altered to set the 100 percent input exactly at the High Reading EU value.

Raw A/D Input displays the current digital count directly from the Analog-to-Digital converter.

Actual Scan displays the actual amount of time in seconds that passes between scans. This number should be the same as shown for the Scan Period parameter on the General tab if the system is not overloaded.

When **Hold Last Value** is selected, the last input value is retained on point fail. If **Set to Fault Value** is selected, then the value entered as the **Fault Value** is written to the Filtered Value on point fail.

Enable **Average Raw Values** to average and calculate the raw readings during the Scan Period and use the outcome as the Raw A/D Input during calculations. Disable this function to acquire Instantaneous Values.

For example, when using a ROC300-Series or FloBoss 407 and Average Raw Values is enabled, an Analog Input point configured with a Scan Period of 1.0 seconds obtains a new value from the A/D every 50 milliseconds. During the Scan Period, 20 values are obtained from the A/D and summed together. At EU Value calculation, the values summed are divided by the number of samples taken during the Scan Period and are used as the Raw A/D Input.

When **Clipping** is enabled, the ROC or FloBoss forces the Filtered EUs to stay within the range defined by the cut off limits. Set the cut off limits by using the LoLo Alarm and HiHi Alarm parameters defined on the Alarms tab.

When **Temp Compensation** (ROC300-Series or FloBoss 407) is enabled, a temperature compensation curve is applied to the Analog Input using the board temperature of the ROC300-Series or FloBoss 407 as a reference. Use this feature to improve the A/D conversion accuracy at temperature extremes for modular Analog Inputs only; built-in Analog Inputs already have temperature compensation. If you use this feature, be sure to perform a calibration after it is enabled.

For a ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series, enter a **Zero Shift** value if necessary to compensate for the zero shift effect on a differential pressure input.

4.2.3 AI – Alarms

Select Configure > I/O > AI Points. The **Alarms** tab sets the alarm parameters for this AI point.

If you enable Alarming, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. To conserve Alarm Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

- ◆ For the ROC800-Series, Alarming is Enabled in the Configure > I/O > AI Points > Alarms tab.
- ◆ For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, Alarming is Enabled in the Configure > I/O > AI Points > General tab.
- ❖ **Note:** Refer to Section 10, Calibration.

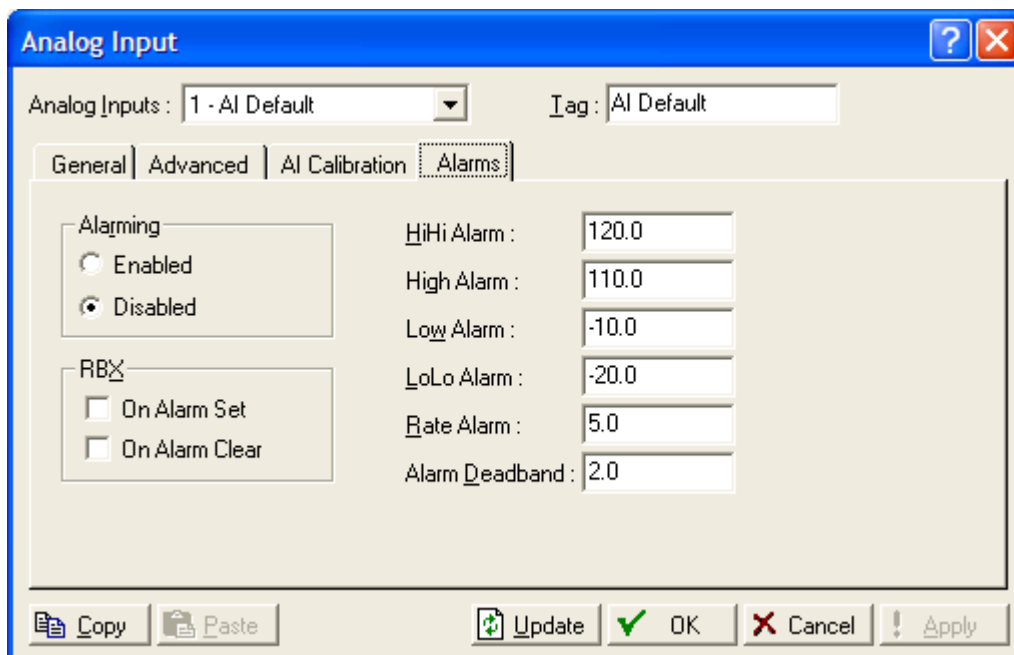


Figure 4-7. AI – Alarms (ROC800-Series and ROC300-Series)

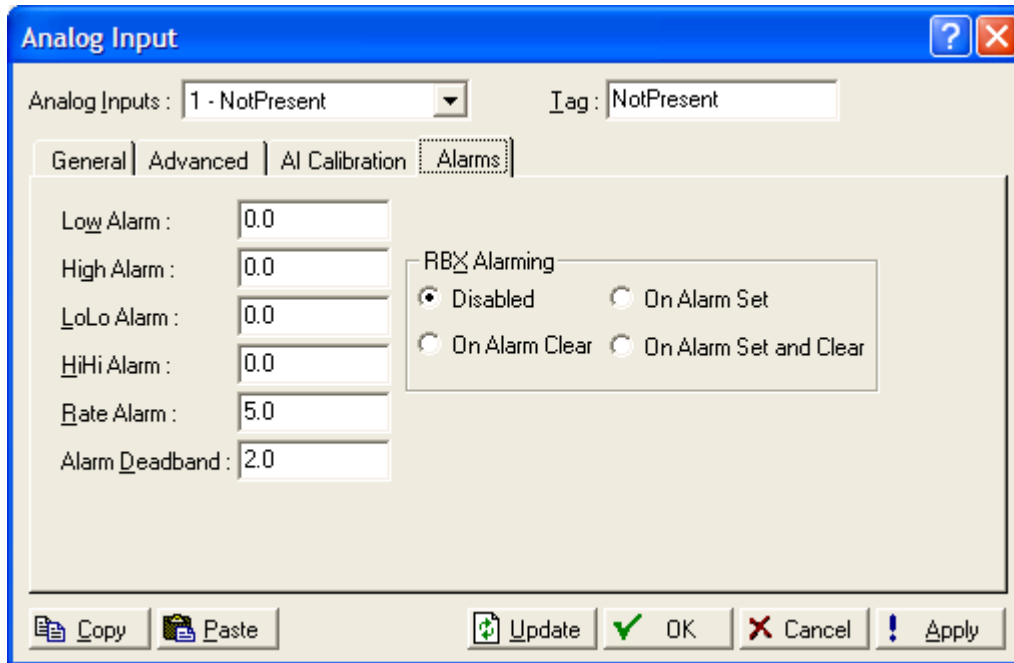


Figure 4-8. AI Alarms (FloBoss 407 and FloBoss 100-Series)

Enter the **High Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the input value must rise to generate a High Alarm. The **HiHi Alarm** value is typically set higher than the High Alarm.

Enter the **Low Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the input value must fall to generate a Low Alarm. The **LoLo Alarm** value is typically set lower than the Low Alarm.

The Rate Alarm is the value, in engineering units, that represents the maximum amount of change allowed between updates. If the change is equal to or greater than this value, an alarm is generated. To disable this **Rate Alarm** without disabling the other alarms, the Rate Alarm value can be set greater than the Span of the Analog Input.

Alarm **Deadband** is the value, in engineering units, that is an inactive zone above the Low Alarm limits and below the High Alarm limits. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit. This prevents the Alarm Log from being over-filled with data.

Select the **SRBX / RBX Alarming** option to configure Spontaneous-Report-By-Exception (SRBX or RBX) alarming for this point.

- ◆ **Disabled** – The RBX Alarming is turned OFF.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – The point enters an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – The point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set and Clear** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407). In either condition, an RBX message generates to the host.
 - ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.3 AO – Analog Output Configuration

Analog Outputs are analog signals generated by the ROC or FloBoss to regulate equipment, such as control valves or any device requiring proportional control.

Select Configure > I/O > **AO Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs in the order given below.

1. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the Analog Output point.
2. The Advanced Analog Outputs tab enables you to configure features, such as on a restart and RBX Alarming for the Analog Output.
3. The Alarms tab on a ROC800-Series sets the alarm parameters for the AO point.
4. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.3.1 AO – General

Select Configure > I/O > **AO Points**. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the Analog Output point.

The screenshot shows the 'Analog Output' configuration window with the 'General' tab selected. The window has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two dropdown menus: 'Analog Outputs' set to '1 - AO Default' and 'Tag' set to 'AO Default'. The main area contains several input fields and a section for 'Scanning Mode'. The 'Point Number' is '5-1', 'Auto Value' is '0.0', 'Manual Value' is '0.0', 'Physical Value' is '0.0', 'Units' is 'Percent', 'Low Reading EU' is '0.0', 'High Reading EU' is '100.0', and 'Active Alarms' is '0'. The 'Scanning Mode' section has three radio buttons: 'Auto', 'Manual' (which is selected), and 'Disabled'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Field	Value
Analog Outputs	1 - AO Default
Tag	AO Default
Point Number	5-1
Auto Value	0.0
Manual Value	0.0
Physical Value	0.0
Units	Percent
Low Reading EU	0.0
High Reading EU	100.0
Active Alarms	0
Scanning Mode	Manual

Figure 4-9. AO – General (ROC800-Series)

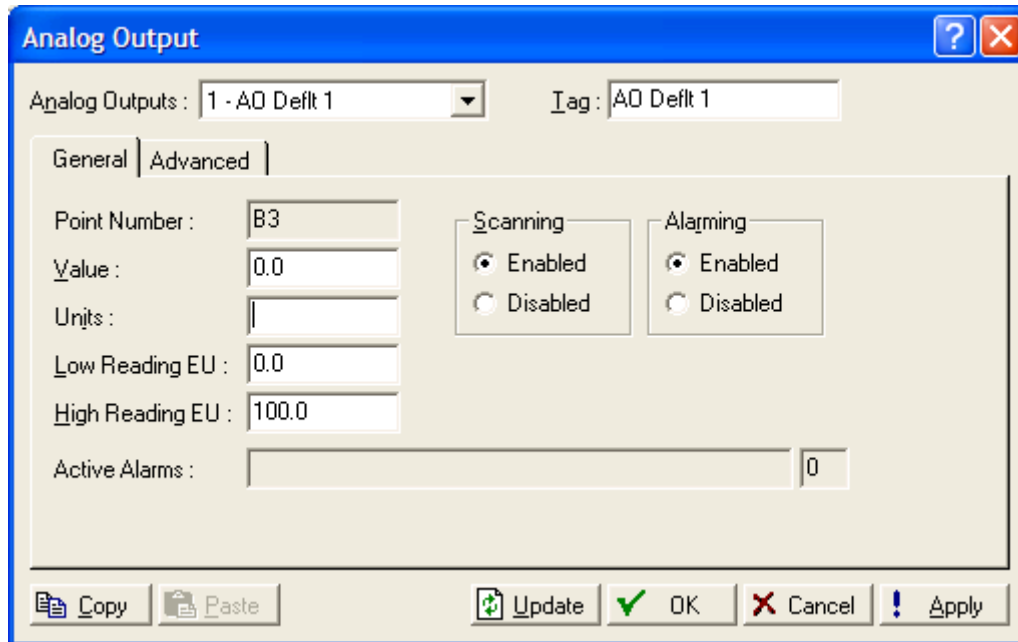


Figure 4-10. Analog Outputs (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

Select the **Analog Output** to be configured. The outputs are listed by both Point Number and Tag.

The FloBoss 100-Series only have one AO.

Each Point is given a **Tag**, which includes up to 10 characters to identify the Point being defined in the I/O screen. Any alphanumeric characters, including spaces, may be used.

The **Point Number** identifies the physical location of the input. For the ROC800-Series, the Point Number identifies the module slot – channel number.

Enter the **Units**, a user-defined 10-character description for the engineering units assigned to the I/O. For example: PSIG, MCF, degrees F, milliamps, or volts.

Select the **Scanning** option.

- ◆ For the input to automatically process the field output, select **Enabled** or **Auto** (Automatic Mode). When Scanning is set to Enabled or Auto, **Value** displays the last Analog Output scan in engineering unit.
- ◆ When Scanning is set to **Disabled**, the engineering unit (EU) Value is no longer updated by the ROC or FloBoss. If Alarming is Enabled, a Manual Mode alarm generates when Scanning is set to Disabled.

For a ROC300-Series or FloBoss 407 and Scanning is set to Disabled, the output holds the current value regardless of any Value entered.

For a ROC300-Series, FloBoss 100-Series, or FloBoss 407 and Scanning is set to Enabled, the Value displays the current output Value.

For a ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series and Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a Value to override the output.

For a ROC800-Series, when the Scanning is set to **Manual**, use the **Auto Value** field to override the output.

For the ROC800-Series, when Scanning Mode is set to Auto or Enabled, **Auto Value** displays the last Analog Output scan in engineering units.

For the ROC800-Series, when the Scanning Mode is set to Manual, use **Manual Value** to enter the value instead of the Auto Value field.

For a ROC800-Series, **Physical Value** indicates the current state of the AO. When the AO is in Manual Mode, this should reflect the Manual Value. When the AO is in Auto mode, this should reflect the Auto Value.

Enter the **Low Reading EU** value corresponding to a zero percent output (the low end of the EU range). Based on the EU range determined in part by this parameter, the EU Value is converted to a corresponding analog signal.

Enter the **High Reading EU** value corresponding to a 100 percent output (the high end of the EU range). Based on the EU range determined in part by this parameter, the EU Value is converted to a corresponding analog signal.

If you Enable **Alarming**, alarms will be generated on point failure or Manual Mode. If you Disable Alarming, the Point Fail or Manual Mode alarm appear in the Active Alarms field, but will not be written to the Alarm log.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When Alarming is set to Enabled, the active alarms appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm and Manual (Scanning Disabled) indicators can still appear. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is Disabled.

4.3.2 AO – Advanced

Select Configure > I/O > **AO Points**. The Advanced Analog Outputs tab enables you to configure features, such as resetting and RBX Alarming for the Analog Output.

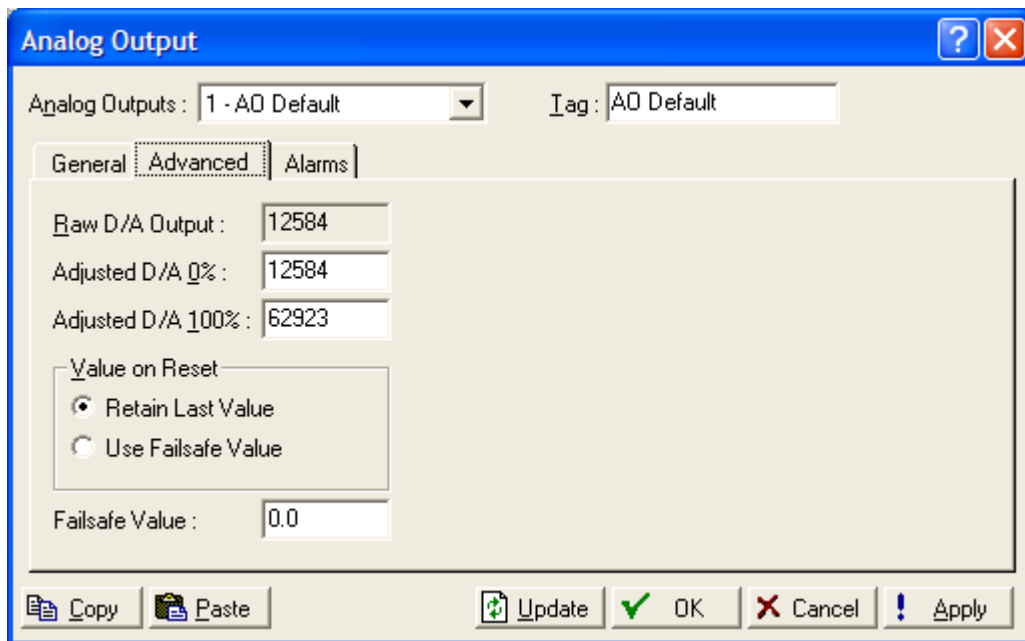


Figure 4-11. AO – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

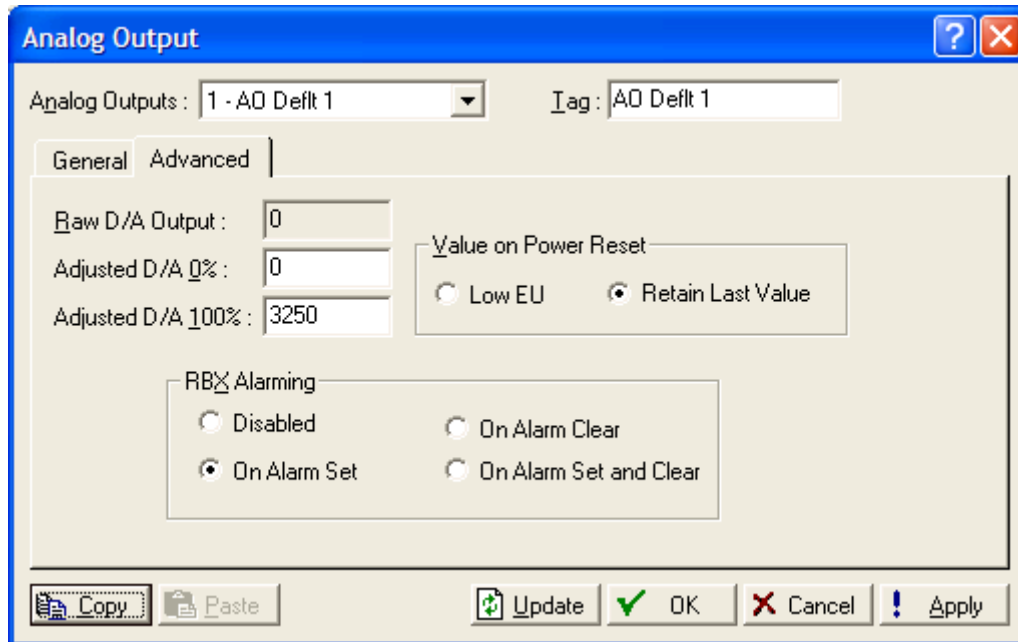


Figure 4-12. AO Advanced (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

Displays the **Raw D/A Output** current reading (in counts) written to the Digital-to-Analog converter. The D/A value sent to the AO is the Raw D/A Output.

Enter the **Adjusted D/A 0%** count used by the Digital-to-Analog converter for zero percent output. This value is also used to scale the output to engineering units.

Enter the **Adjusted D/A 100%** count decoded by the Digital-to-Analog converter for 100 percent output. This value is also used to scale the output to engineering units.

Select **Value on Power Reset**, such as a power restart or a Warm Start. When Low EU is selected (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series), the Value parameter is set to the Low EU Value in the General tab upon a restart of the ROC or FloBoss. If Retain Last Value is selected, the last output value is maintained. If Value on Reset is selected, enter a value to be set in the **Failsafe Value** field for a ROC800-Series.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, select the **RBX Alarming** option to configure Spontaneous-Report-By-Exception (SRBX or RBX) alarming for this point.

- ◆ **Disabled** – The RBX Alarming is turned OFF.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – The point enters an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – The point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set and Clear** – In either condition, an RBX message generates to the host.
 - ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.3.3 AO – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > **AO Points**. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for the AO point.

If you Enable Alarming, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. To conserve Alarm Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

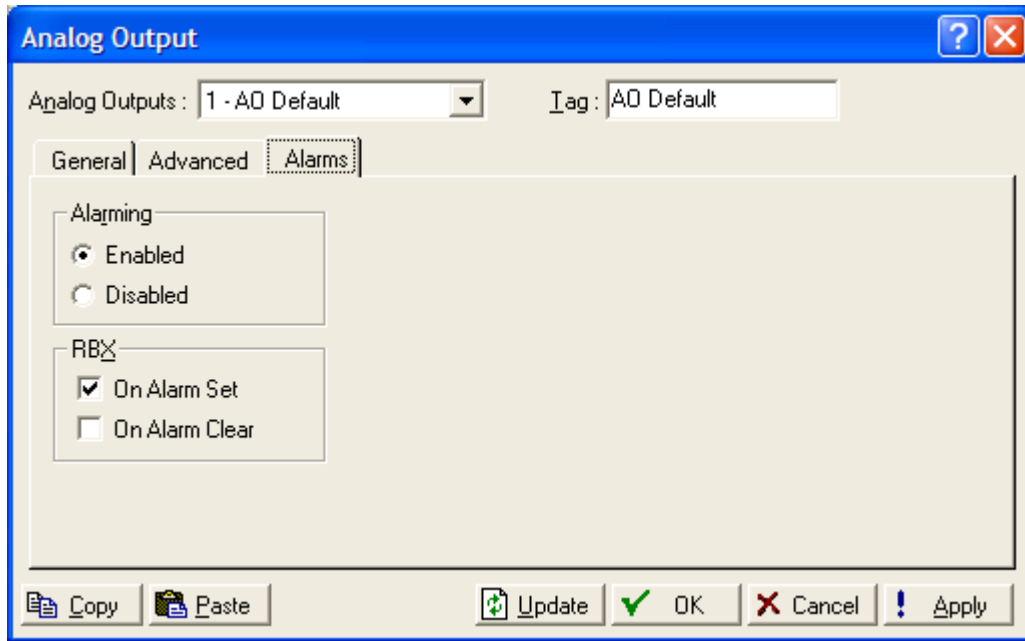


Figure 4-13. AO – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

For a ROC800-Series, select the **SRBX / RBX Alarming** option to configure Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception (SRBX or RBX) alarming for this point.

- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – The point enters an alarm condition, the ROC generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – The point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.4 DI – Discrete Input Configuration

The DI modules monitor the status of relays, open collector /open drain type solid-state switches, and other two-state devices. Each DI channel can also be software configured to function as a latched DI. A latched DI remains in the active state until reset. Other parameters can invert the field signal and gather statistical information on the number of transitions and the time accumulated in the on or off state.

Select Configure > I/O > **DI Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs in the order given below.

1. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the DI point.
2. The Advanced tab lets you configure features, such as filtering, input inversion, and counter values for the Discrete Input.
3. The TDI Parameters tab (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) provides additional parameters to specify scaling and engineering unit conversion.
4. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this DI point.
5. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.4.1 DI – General

Select Configure > I/O > **DI Points**. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the DI point.

The screenshot shows the 'Discrete Input' configuration window with the 'General' tab selected. The window has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. Inside, there's a dropdown for 'Discrete Inputs' set to '1 - DI Default' and a text field for 'Tag' set to 'DI Default'. Below these are three tabs: 'General', 'Advanced', and 'Alarms'. The 'General' tab contains several settings: 'Point Number' is '6-1', 'Module Scan Period' is '0.05' seconds. There are three groups of radio buttons: 'Status' with 'On' (selected) and 'Off'; 'Physical Status' with 'On' and 'Off' (selected); and 'Scanning' with 'Enabled' (selected) and 'Disabled'. Below these is a 'DIN Type' section with 'Standard' (selected) and 'Latched'. At the bottom, there's an 'Active Alarms' field set to '0'. The bottom of the window has a toolbar with 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

Figure 4-14. Discrete Inputs – General (ROC800-Series)

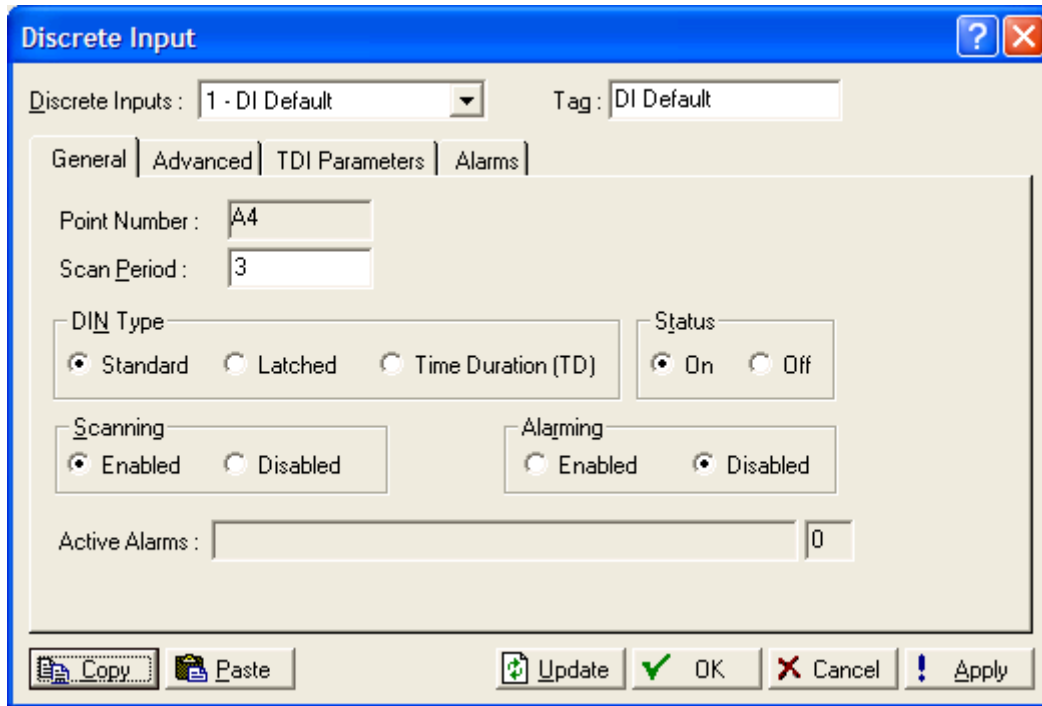


Figure 4-15. Discrete Inputs – General (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

Select the **Discrete Input** to be configured. The inputs are listed by both number and tag.

Enter a 10-character string **Tag** for identification of this Point Number. Any alphanumeric characters, including spaces, may be used.

The **Point Number** identifies the physical location of the input. For the ROC800-Series, the Point Number identifies the module slot – channel number.

Select the **Scanning** option.

- ◆ For the input to automatically process the field input, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode).
- ◆ When Scanning is set to **Disabled** (Manual Mode), Status is no longer automatically updated by the ROC or FloBoss. If Alarming is Enabled, an alarm generates when Scanning is set to Disabled.

Enter the **Module Scan Period** as the amount of time between scans of the physical hardware and updates of the Status Value in seconds. The default value is 1 second. All Discrete Inputs are updated based on their individual Scan Periods, and all Discrete Inputs are scanned on a per module basis.

For a ROC300-Series or a FloBoss 407, the minimum **Scan Period** is 0.05 (50 milliseconds).

Status indicates the state of the Discrete Input: Off normally indicates that the input is Off or that a switch is open; On normally indicates that the input is On or that a switch is closed.

For a ROC800-Series, **Physical Status** indicates the state of the hardware. Off normally indicates that a switch is open; On normally indicates that a switch is closed. This may be different from the Status if Inverting or Latching is in effect.

Select the **DIN Type** as Standard, Time Duration (TDI) or Latched.

- ◆ Select **Standard** if you want the Discrete Input status to follow the actual field input.
- ◆ Select **Latched** if you want the Discrete Input status, on an active transition of the input (from Off to On), to change to On and remain in that state until it is cleared. To be cleared, the Status parameter must be changed to the Off state, either by the software or manually. If the DI has the Input Inverted field set, the field input is inverted in the Status field (Status latches on a physical change from On to Off).
- ◆ Select **Time Duration** (TDI) (FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series), if you want the Discrete Input to function as a Timed Discrete Input. For Timed Discrete Inputs, the time that the Discrete Input is active versus the time it is inactive is converted into a quantitative value, similar to an Analog Input. The TDI tab provides additional parameters to specify scaling and engineering unit conversion.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When **Alarming** is set to **Enabled**, the active alarms appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm and Manual (Scanning Disabled) indicators can still appear. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is Disabled.

4.4.2 DI – Advanced

Select Configure > I/O > **DI Points**. The Advanced tab lets you configure features, such as filtering, input inversion, and counter values for the Discrete Input.

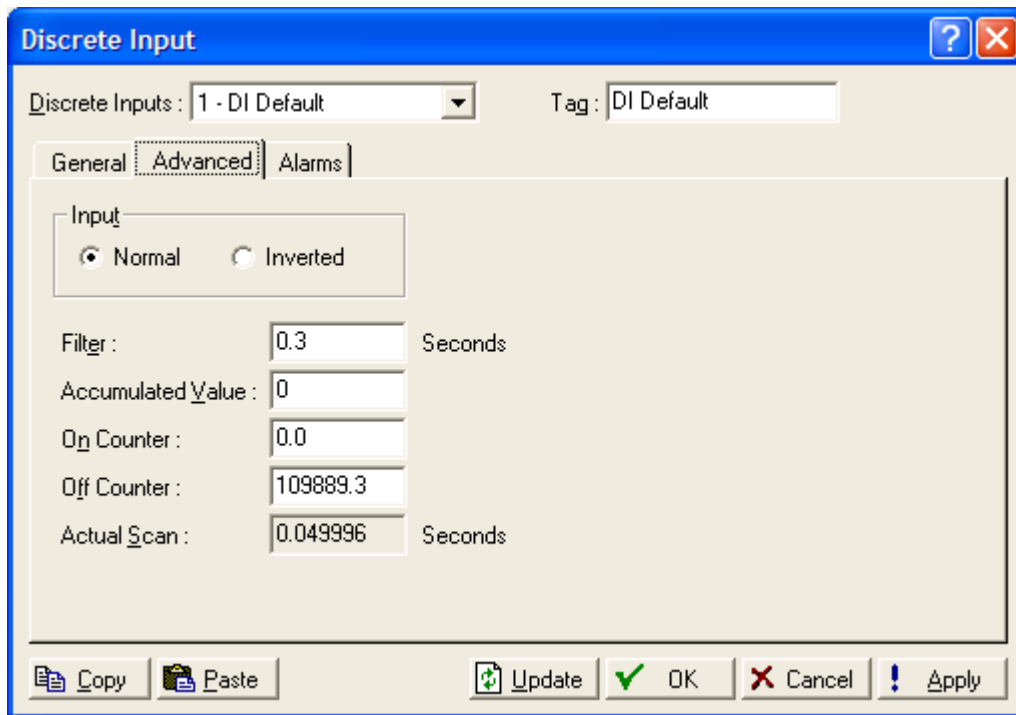


Figure 4-16. Discrete Inputs – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

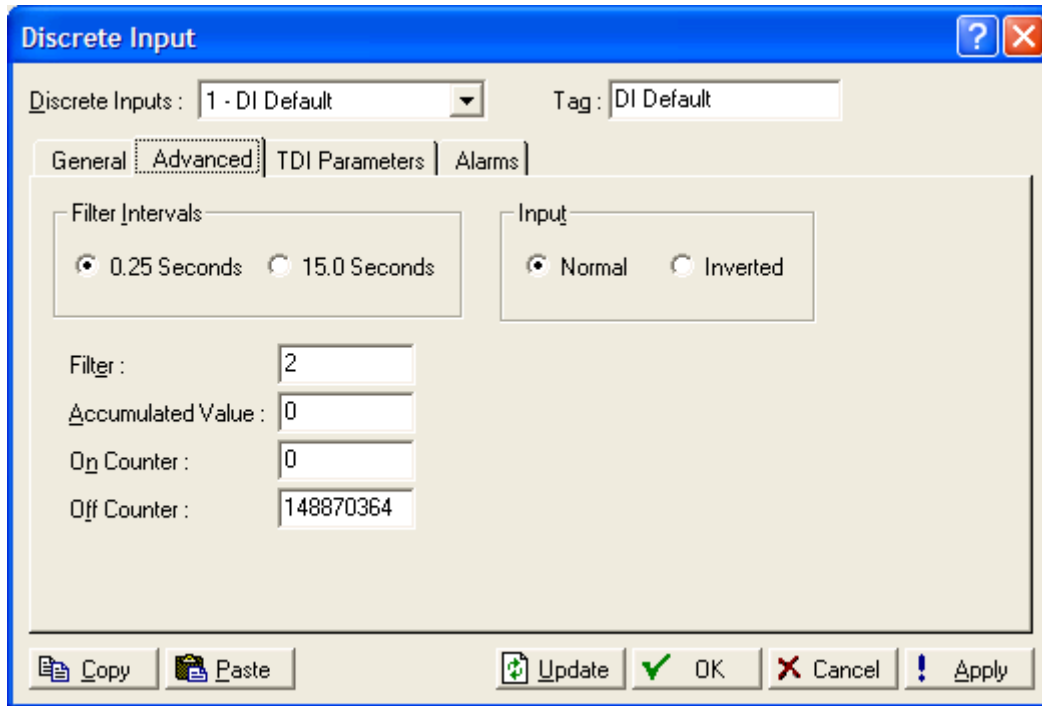


Figure 4-17. Discrete Inputs – Advanced (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

In the **Input** field, select **Normal** to signify the field input as on, when wired through a set of closed contacts. Select **Inverted** to cause the field input to be inverted in the Status field (On becomes Off and vice-versa). An open circuit in the field would then be indicated as On in the Status parameter, and closed contacts would be indicated as Off in the Status.

Enter the **Filter** to determine the amount of time that the Discrete Input must remain in the On (high) state before it is recognized as such. The Filter value is entered as a number of Filter Intervals. Valid entries are 0 to 255. The Discrete Input returns to the Off state immediately upon detection of the On to Off transition; there is no filtering for this transition.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, **Filter Intervals** is used with the Filter parameter to determine the amount of time that the Discrete Input must remain in the On (high) state before it is recognized as such. The Filter value is entered as a number from 0 to 255, and the Filter Interval selection determines the time basis. The Discrete Input returns to the Off state immediately upon detection of the On to Off transition; there is no filtering for this transition.

For the FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series, when 0.25 seconds is selected as the Filter Interval, the Filter is defined as the number of 250-millisecond intervals before the change from Off to On is recognized.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, when 0.1 seconds is selected as the Filter Interval, the Filter is defined as the number of 100-milliseconds intervals before the change from Off to On is recognized. The FloBoss 100-Series has a 1 second resolution. The ROC or FloBoss round the Filter Time to the nearest second.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series or FloBoss 407, when 15.0 seconds is selected as the Filter Interval, the Filter is defined as the number of 15-second intervals before the input is recognized on the Off to On transition.

Accumulated Value indicates the number of times the Discrete Input goes from Off to On. The accumulator is a 32-bit number with a maximum count of 4,294,967,295. The accumulator can be preset by entering the desired value or can be cleared by entering 0.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series, **On Counter** indicates the number of 50 millisecond periods when the Status parameter is in the On state. The On Counter, which does not operate if Scanning is set to Disabled, is a 32-bit number that automatically “rolls over” when it reaches its maximum value. The On Counter can be preset by entering the desired value or cleared by entering 0.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series, **Off Counter** indicates the number of 50 millisecond periods when the Status parameter is in the Off state. The Off Counter, which does not operate if Scanning is set to Disabled, is a 32-bit number that automatically “rolls over” when it reaches its maximum value. The Off Counter can be preset by entering the desired value or cleared by entering 0.

For the ROC800-Series, **Actual Scan** displays the actual amount of time in seconds that passes between scans. This number should be the same as shown for the Scan Period parameter if the system is not overloaded.

4.4.3 DI – TDI Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > **DI Points**. The TDI Parameters tab (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) provides additional parameters to specify scaling and engineering unit conversion.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Discrete Input" with a blue header bar containing a help icon and a close button. Below the header, there are two dropdown menus: "Discrete Inputs:" set to "1 - DI Default" and "Tag:" set to "DI Default". Below these are four tabs: "General", "Advanced", "TDI Parameters" (which is selected and highlighted with a dashed border), and "Alarms". The "TDI Parameters" tab contains several input fields arranged in two columns. The left column has: "0% Pulse Width:" with a value of 60, "100% Pulse Width:" with a value of 240, "Max Time Between Pulses:" with a value of 0, and "Actual Pulse Width:" with a value of 0. Each of these fields is followed by a "Secs" label. The right column has: "Zero EU:" with a value of 0.0, "Span EU:" with a value of 100.0, "EU Value:" with a value of 0.0, and "Units:" with a dropdown menu set to "Percent". At the bottom of the window is a toolbar with buttons for "Copy", "Paste", "Update" (with a refresh icon), "OK" (with a green checkmark), "Cancel" (with a red X), and "Apply" (with an exclamation mark).

Figure 4-18. Discrete Inputs – TDI Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

Enter the **0% Pulse Width**, the width of a 0% input pulse in seconds.

Enter the **100% Pulse Width**, the width of a 100% input pulse in seconds.

Indicates **Actual Pulse Width** of the input signal, measured in seconds. The pulse width is the time that the input signal is in the ON state. This parameter can be affected by the Max Time Between Pulses parameter.

Enter the **Maximum Time Between Pulses** as the number of seconds within which the input must make a transition to the ON state. If a new signal is not received in the number of seconds specified, then the actual value of the **Actual Pulse Width** parameter is set to 0. The Max Time Between Pulses parameter is disabled by entering 0.

Enter the **Zero EU** value corresponding to the 0% Pulse Width. This is the low reading EU.

Enter the **Span EU** value corresponding to the 100% Pulse Width. This is the high reading EU.

Enter the **EU Value**. At intervals determined by the Scan Period parameter, the EU Value is calculated using the 0% Pulse Width, 100% Pulse Width, and Actual Pulse Width parameters. If Scanning was set to disabled, the normal TDI calculation is suspended, and a value can be manually entered.

Enter the engineering **Units** assigned to the TDI input. For example, MCF or CFM.

4.4.4 DI – Alarms

Select Configure > I/O > **DI Points**. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this DI point.

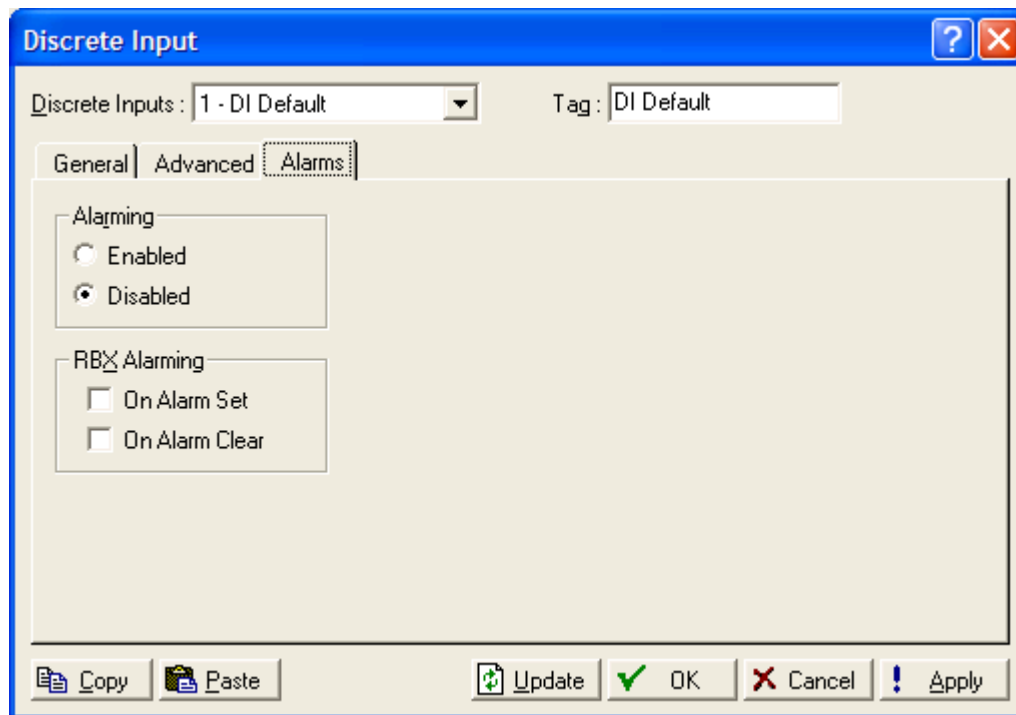


Figure 4-19. Discrete Inputs – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

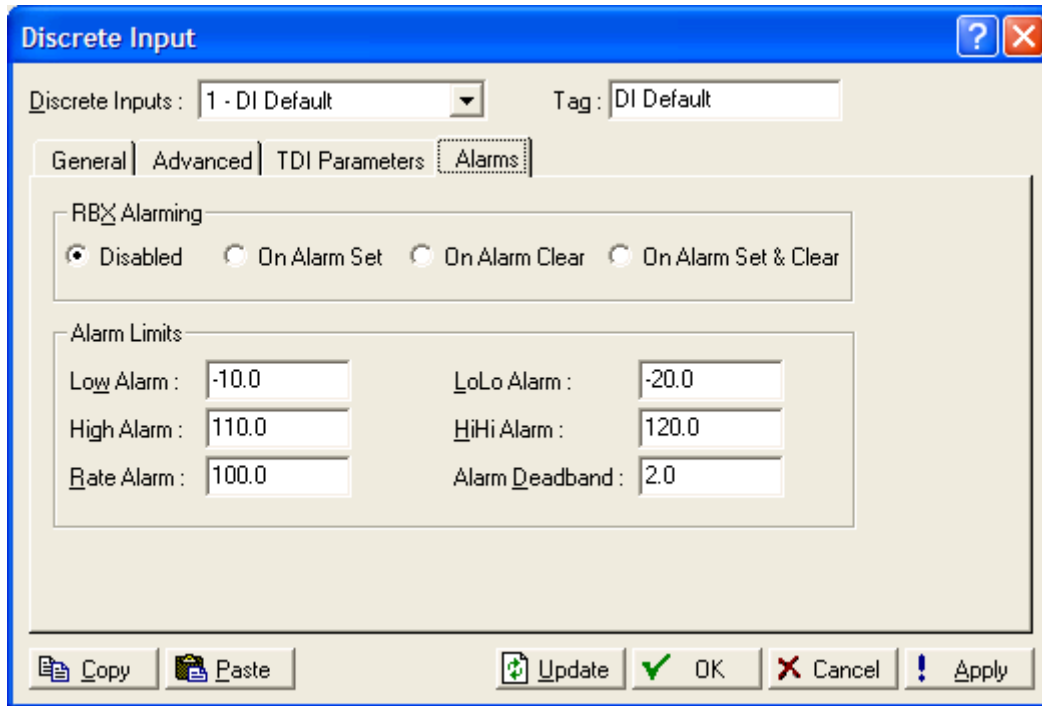


Figure 4-20. Discrete Inputs – Alarms (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

When **Alarming** is Enabled, alarms generate on point status change. When Alarming is Disabled, the Status Change alarm appears in the Active Alarms field, but will not be written to the Alarm Log.

To conserve Alarm Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

If the host computer is configured to receive field-initiated calls, you can select a Report-by-Exception (**RBX**) option to send a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message.

- ◆ **Disabled** – (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, or ROC300-Series). Select Disabled to turn RBX Alarming Off for this point.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set & Clear** – (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, or ROC300-Series). In either condition, an RBX message generates.
 - ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

For the ROC300-Series, FloBoss 100-Series, or FloBoss 407, Alarm Deadband, Rate Alarm, and alarm limits parameters apply when in TDI Mode. **Rate Alarm** is the value, in engineering units, that represents the maximum calculated EU value change allowed between updates. If the change is equal to, or greater than this value, an alarm is generated.

Alarm Deadband is the value, in engineering units, that is an inactive zone above the Low Alarm and below the High Alarm and is used to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the TDI EU value is oscillating around the alarm limit. The four level alarms are the limit value, in engineering units, to which the EU Value must fall to generate a **Low**, **High**, **LoLo**, or **HiHi Alarm**. The LoLo Alarm value is typically set lower than the Low Alarm. The HiHi Alarm value is typically set higher than the High Alarm.

To disable this alarm without disabling the other alarms, the Rate Alarm EU value must be set greater than the Span of the TDI.

4.5 DO – Discrete Output Configuration

A Discrete Output may be set to send a pulse to a specified device. DOs are high/low outputs used to turn equipment On and Off. A Discrete Output can be configured in one of several different modes: Latched, Momentary, Toggle, Timed Duration Output (TDO), and TDO Toggle.

Select Configure > I/O > **DO Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs in the order given below.

1. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the DO point.
2. The Advanced tab enables you to configure accumulated value and state for reset for the selected DO.
3. The TDO Parameters tab allows configuration of TDO parameters when one of the DOUT Types TDO (Timed Duration) or TDO Toggle is selected in the Discrete Outputs screen.
4. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this DO point for a ROC800-Series.
5. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.5.1 DO – General

Select Configure > I/O > **DO Points**. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the DO point.

The screenshot shows the 'Discrete Output' configuration window for the ROC800-Series. The window has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two fields: 'Discrete Outputs' with a dropdown menu showing '1 - DO Default' and 'Tag' with a text box containing 'DO Default'. The window is divided into four tabs: 'General', 'Advanced', 'TDO Parameters', and 'Alarms'. The 'General' tab is selected. Inside the 'General' tab, there are several sections: 'Point Number' with a text box containing '2-1' and 'Time On' with a text box containing '1.0' and 'Seconds' next to it. Below these are four groups of radio buttons: 'Auto Output' (On, Off), 'Manual Output' (On, Off), 'Momentary' (On, Off), and 'Physical Output' (On, Off). There are also two groups of radio buttons for 'DQUT Type' (Latched, Momentary, Toggle, TDO, TDO Toggle) and 'Scanning Mode' (Auto, Manual, Disabled). At the bottom of the window, there is an 'Active Alarms' field with a text box containing '0'. The bottom of the window has a toolbar with buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 4-21. Discrete Outputs – General (ROC800-Series)

The screenshot shows the 'Discrete Output' configuration window for FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series. The window has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two fields: 'Discrete Outputs' with a dropdown menu showing '1 - DO Default' and 'Tag' with a text box containing 'DO Default'. The window is divided into three tabs: 'General', 'Advanced', and 'TDO Parameters'. The 'General' tab is selected. Inside the 'General' tab, there are several sections: 'Point Number' with a text box containing 'A6'. Below this are three groups of radio buttons: 'State' (On, Off), 'Momentary' (On, Off), and 'Time On' with a text box containing '3'. There are also two groups of radio buttons for 'DQUT Type' (Latched, Toggle, Time Duration, TDO Toggle) and 'Scanning' (Enabled, Disabled). At the bottom of the window, there is an 'Active Alarms' field with a text box containing '0'. The bottom of the window has a toolbar with buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 4-22. Discrete Outputs – General (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

Select the **Discrete Output** to be configured. The outputs are listed by both number and tag.

Enter the 10-character string **Tag** for identification of the Point Number. Any alphanumeric characters, including spaces, may be used.

The **Point Number** identifies the physical location of the input. For the ROC800-Series, the Point Number identifies the module slot – channel number.

Select the **Scanning Mode**.

- ◆ For the output to automatically process the field output, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode). When the Scanning mode is set to Auto Output On, enter an Auto Output to drive the physical output of the Discrete Output (ROC800-Series).
- ◆ When the Scanning Mode is set to **Disabled**, the Auto Output (ROC800-Series), Manual Output (ROC800-Series), or State (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) is no longer updated by the ROC or FloBoss. When Alarming moves from enabled to disabled, an alarm generates.
- ◆ When the Scanning Mode is set to **Manual** (ROC800-Series), use the **Manual Output** field to override the output.

Auto Output (ROC800-Series), **Manual Output** (ROC800-Series), and **State** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) indicate the State of the Discrete Output. Off normally indicates that the output is Off or that a switch is open; On normally indicates that the output is On or that a switch is closed.

Set the **Momentary** parameter. When set to On, the Discrete Output (regardless of its configured DOUT Type) is placed into the one-shot Momentary mode. Immediately after setting On and clicking Apply, the Discrete Output is activated for the amount of time defined in the Time On parameter. The Momentary radio button automatically resets to Off at the end of the time period.

For a ROC800-Series, **Physical Output** indicates the actual status of the output channel at the field terminations.

Select the **DOUT Type** to specify the function of this Discrete Output:

- ◆ Select **Latched** if you want the Discrete Output status, on an active transition of the output (from Off to On), to change to On and remain in that State until it is cleared. To be cleared, the Auto Output or Manual Output parameter must be changed to the Off state, either by the software or manually in a ROC800-Series. For a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, change the State to Off to clear the output.
- ◆ Select **Momentary** to place the DO in Momentary mode (ROC800-Series).
- ◆ Select **Toggle** if you want the Discrete Output to enter the Toggle mode. Toggle mode enables a square-wave output for which both the Time On and Time Off are defined by the Time On parameter. Time On and Time Off will be equal.
- ◆ Select **TDO** for a timed duration output. TDO Parameters tab provides additional parameters to specify scaling and engineering unit conversion. For a TDO, the quantitative value calculated by a PID loop or FST is converted into a time that the Discrete Output is active versus the time it is inactive, similar to an Analog Output.

- ◆ Select **TDO Toggle** if you want the Discrete Output to enter the TDO Toggle mode. In the TDO Toggle mode, the DO continuously repeats in a cycle defined by the Cycle Time parameter with the on-time duration being controlled by the EU Value parameter. When the TDO mode is enabled, the TDO parameters tab becomes available. Select TDO Parameters tab to set the Cycle Time and EU Value parameters.

Enter the **Time On** value for momentary operation. The Time On default value is 1 second. Time On indicates the following: In Momentary mode, this is the amount of time (in seconds) that the momentary contact is energized. In the Toggle mode, this value is the time (in seconds) between switching On or Off. In the TDO and TDO Toggle modes, this value is calculated in the software by the TDO configuration.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When Alarming is set to Enabled (ROC800-Series), the active alarms appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm and Manual (Scanning Disabled) indicators can still appear. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is Disabled.

4.5.2 DO – Advanced

Select Configure > I/O > **DO Points**. The Advanced tab enables you to configure accumulated value and state for reset for the selected DO.

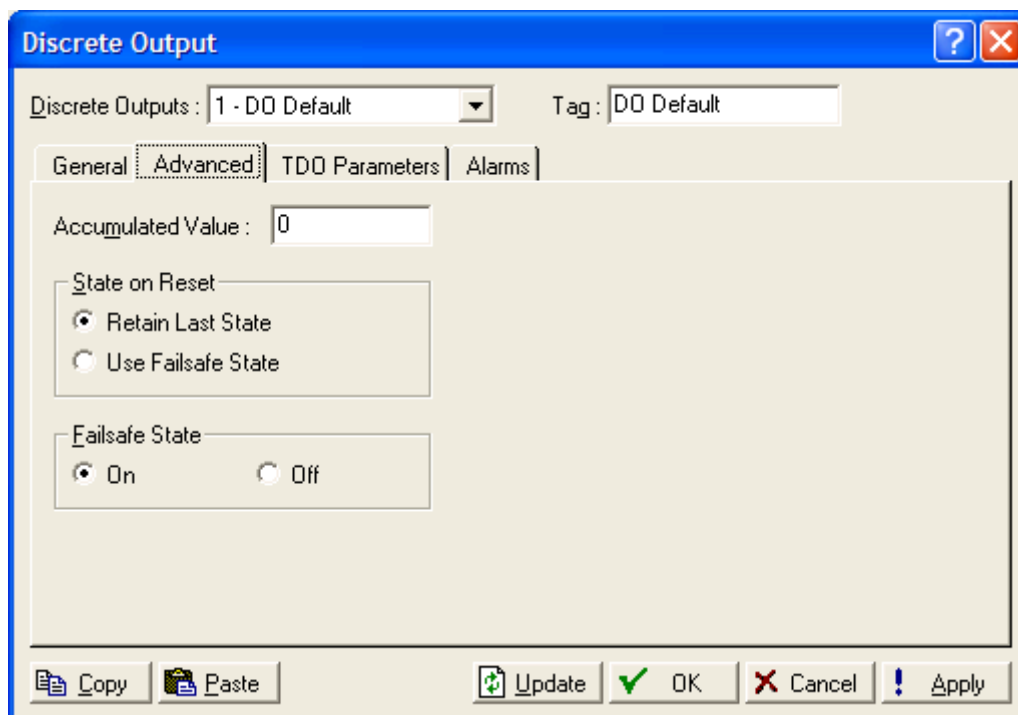


Figure 4-23. Discrete Outputs – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

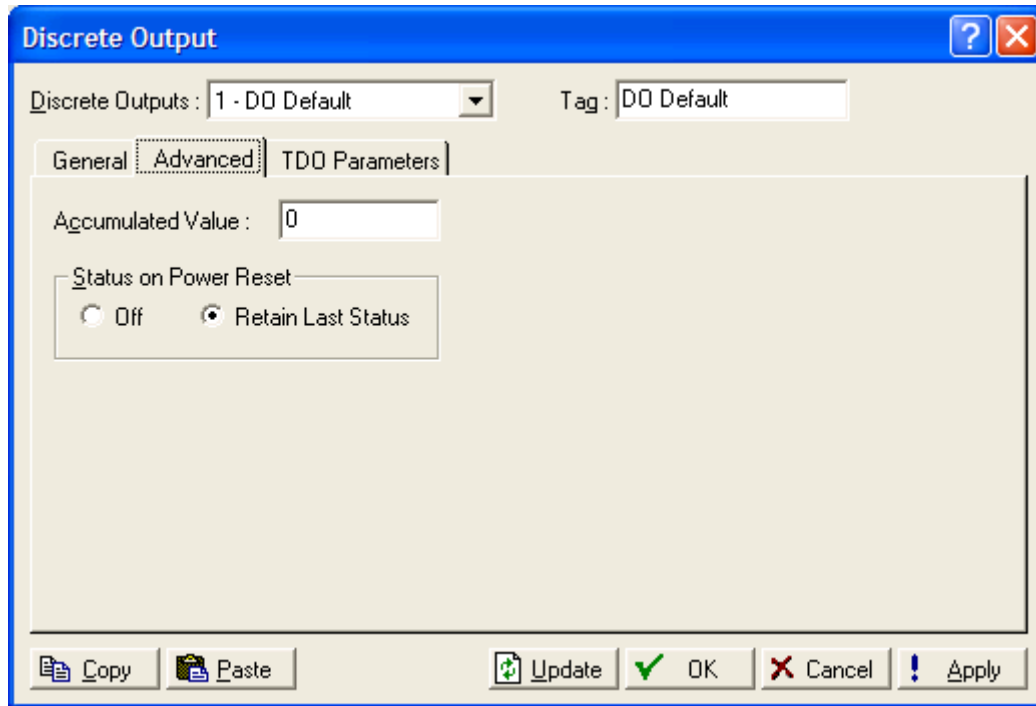


Figure 4-24. Discrete Outputs – Advanced (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

Indicates **Accumulated Value** as the number of Off to On transitions of the Discrete Output. The accumulator is a 32-bit number with a maximum count of 4,294,967,295. The accumulator can be preset by entering the desired value or cleared by entering zero.

For a FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series, select the **Status on Power Reset** to determine the Accumulated Value used after a power reset. When **Off** is selected, the Accumulated Value parameter is cleared upon a reset of the ROC or FloBoss, such as a power restart or a Warm Start and the Low Reading EU is used as the new Accumulated Value. If **Retain Last Status** is selected, the last output value is used after a reset. If the AO is set to Manual Mode (Scanning Disabled), no changes occur unless manually entered.

For a ROC800-Series, select the **State on Reset** parameter to determine the Accumulated Value after a reset of the ROC, such as a power restart or a Warm Start. If **Retain Last State** is selected, the last output value is used after a reset. If the AO is set to Scanning Mode Manual, no changes occur unless manually entered. If you select **Use Failsafe State**, the Low Reading EU is used as the new Accumulated Value.

For a ROC800-Series and **Use Failsafe State** is selected, specify whether the Scanning Mode Auto or Scanning Mode Manual is set to On or Off

4.5.3 DO – TDO Parameters

Select Configure > I/O > DO Points. The **TDO Parameters** tab allows configuration of TDO parameters when one of the DOUT Types TDO (Timed Duration) or TDO Toggle is selected in the Discrete Outputs screen.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Discrete Output" with a blue header bar containing a help icon and a close button. Below the header, there are two fields: "Discrete Outputs:" with a dropdown menu showing "1 - DO Default" and a "Tag:" field with the text "DO Default". Below these are four tabs: "General", "Advanced", "TDO Parameters" (which is selected and highlighted with a dotted border), and "Alarms". The "TDO Parameters" tab contains several input fields with labels to their left: "Cycle Time:" with a value of "15.0" and the unit "Seconds" to its right; "Low Reading Time:" with a value of "3.0" and the unit "Seconds" to its right; "High Reading Time:" with a value of "12.0" and the unit "Seconds" to its right; "Low Reading EU:" with a value of "0.0"; "High Reading EU:" with a value of "100.0"; "EU Value:" with a value of "0.0"; and "Units:" with a dropdown menu showing "Percent". At the bottom of the window is a toolbar with icons and labels for "Copy", "Paste", "Update", "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Figure 4-25. Discrete Outputs – TDO Parameters (FloBoss 407, ROC300-Series, ROC800-Series)

Enter the **Low Reading Time** (0% Count) in seconds that represents a zero percent output pulse width. The default is 3 seconds. This is the minimum amount of time that the TDO can be energized to move the motor. Set to a value that allows movement, but also provides good resolution of control.

Enter the **High Reading Time** (100% Count) in seconds that represents a 100 percent output pulse width. The default is 12 seconds. This is the maximum amount of time that the TDO can be energized to move the motor. Normally, this is the amount of time it takes for the actuator to move the valve from fully open to fully closed.

Enter the **Low Reading EU** (engineering units) value corresponding to the Low Reading Time.

Enter the **High Reading EU** (engineering units) value corresponding to the High Reading Time.

Enter the **EU Value** when using TDO or TDO Toggle mode. When a value is saved, the Discrete Output is activated according to the magnitude of the value. The amount of on-time that a given value represents is determined by the scaling from Low Reading Time, High Reading Time, Low Reading EU, and High Reading EU. The EU Value is typically written by a PID Loop or an FST.

Enter the **Units** as a 10-character name for the engineering units assigned to the TDO output. For example, MCF or CFM might be typical entries for this field.

Enter the **Cycle Time** when using TDO Toggle mode. Cycle Time defines the total time of one cycle (the sum of the On time and Off time) in seconds. After a cycle has been completed, a new cycle is initiated. The default is 15 seconds.

The Cycle Time entry is used to define the OFF time in the TDO Toggle mode. The OFF time is calculated by the formula:

$$\text{Off Time} = \text{Cycle Time} - \text{On Time}$$

Example:

A TDO is used to emulate a field instrument measuring flow. The TDO outputs a pulse width of 3 seconds for no flow and a pulse width of 12 seconds for 1000 MCF per day flow. The output is repeated every 15 seconds.

If the Cycle Time is less than, or equal to the On Time, the OFF time is set to one. Care must be taken in configuration (including other places, such as FSTs) to ensure that **the Cycle Time remains greater than the calculated On Time** for proper operation.

Select Configure > I/O > **DO Points**. The TDO Parameters tab allows configuration of TDO parameters when one of the DOUT Types TDO (Timed Duration) or TDO Toggle is selected in the Discrete Outputs screen. The Time On field is calculated from the entered EU Value and the previous definitions of Low Reading Time, High Reading Time, Low Reading EU, and High Reading EU entered in the TDO Parameters screen. The calculation formulas are:

$$\text{EU Span} = \text{High Reading EU Value} - \text{Low Reading EU}$$

$$\text{Count Span} = \text{High Reading Time (100\% Count)} - \text{Low Reading Time (0\% Count)}$$

$$\text{On Time} = \frac{(\text{Entered EU Value} \times \text{Count Span})}{\text{EU Span}} + \text{Low Reading Time (0\% Count)}$$

4.5.3.1 DO – TDO (Defining the Output Pulse)

To define the TDO Output Pulse:

1. Select Configure > I/O > **DO Points**.
2. Select a DOUT Type of **TDO** or **TDO Toggle** in the Discrete Outputs dialog.
 - ◆ **TDO (Timed Duration)**. The single-pulse output can be triggered by writing to the Status or the EU Value parameter of the DO point. This can be accomplished directly, by a PID point, or by an FST.
 - ◆ **TDO Toggle**. A continuous pulse is generated with the pulse length being controlled by writing to the EU Value parameter in the DO point. This can be accomplished directly or by an FST.
3. Click the **TDO Parameters** tab.

The output pulse from the TDO function must be defined for proper engineering unit (EU) conversion. The minimum pulse width (Low Reading Time / 0% Count) and the maximum pulse width (High Reading Time / 100% Count) define the minimum and maximum ON time of the output pulse. The values entered in the Low Reading Time and High Reading Time are the number of seconds the output is ON.

Example:

A TDO is used to emulate a field instrument measuring flow. The TDO outputs a pulse width of 3 seconds for no flow and a pulse width of 12 seconds for 1000 MCF per day flow.

Low Reading Time (0% Count) = 3 seconds

High Reading Time (100% Count) = 12 seconds

Low Reading EU = 0

High Reading EU = 1000

4.5.4 DO – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > **DO Points**. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this DO point.

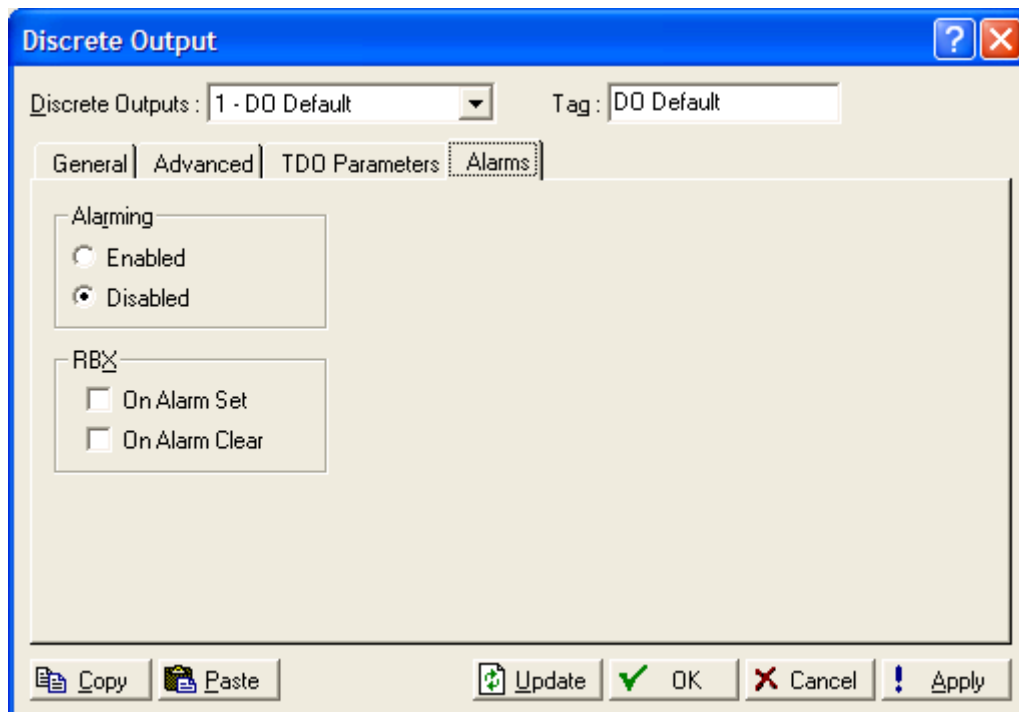


Figure 4-26. Discrete Outputs – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

When **Alarming** is Enabled, alarms will be generated on point failure. When Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail alarm appears in the Active Alarms field, but will not be written to the Alarm Log.

To conserve Alarm Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

If the host computer is configured to receive field-initiated calls, you can select a Report-by-Exception (**RBX**) option to send a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message.

- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a SRBX message.
- ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.6 PI – Pulse Input Configuration

Pulse Inputs (PI) accept pulse trains (square wave signals) generated by measurement devices, such as turbine meters. The Pulse Input accepts digital level On/Off signals from an external device and accumulates the changes over a configured period of time. The PI can also determine a rate from the accumulated pulses over a configured period of time.

Select Configure > I/O > **PI Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs in the order given below.

1. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the PI point.
2. The Advanced tab lets you configure features, such as EU Options, Rate Period, Rollover value, and Conversion for the Pulse Input.
3. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this PI point.
4. When Alarming is Enabled, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. When Alarming is Disabled, no limit alarms generate for this point. The Point Fail and Manual Mode alarm appears in the Active Alarms field, but will not be logged in the Alarms Log.
5. To conserve Alarms Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.
6. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.6.1 PI – General

Select Configure > I/O > **PI Points**. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the PI point.

Figure 4-27. Pulse Inputs – General (ROC800-Series)

The screenshot shows the 'Pulse Input' configuration window with the 'General' tab selected. The 'Pulse Inputs' dropdown is set to '1 - Aux PI 1' and the 'Tag' field contains 'Aux PI 1'. The 'Point Number' is 'B6', 'EU Value' is '0.0', 'Units' is empty, 'Scan Period' is '5' seconds, 'Accum'd Pulses' is '0', 'Today's Total' is '0.0', 'Yesterday's Total' is '0.0', 'Current Rate' is '0.0', and 'Active Alarms' is '0'. The 'Scanning' checkbox is checked (Enabled) and the 'Alarming' checkbox is unchecked (Disabled). The bottom of the window has buttons for Copy, Paste, Update, OK, Cancel, and Apply.

Figure 4-28. Pulse Inputs – General (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

Select the **Pulse Input** to be configured.

Enter a 10-character string **Tag** for identification of the Point Number. Any alphanumeric characters, including spaces, may be used.

The **Point Number** identifies the physical location of the input. For the ROC800-Series, the Point Number identifies the module slot – channel number.

Enter the **Units**, a user-defined 10-character description for the engineering units (EU) assigned to the I/O, such as Counts or Pulses.

The **EU Value** is dependent on how the EU Options are set in the PI Advanced tab. If the PI is set up for a Rate (Max Rollover) then the Current Rate is assigned to the EU Value. If the PI is set up as an accumulator using Today's Total (Max Rollover), then Today's Total is assigned to the EU Value.

If the PI is set up for accumulator using Running Total (Entered Rollover), then the EU Value corresponds to the accumulated pulses times the Conversion. The EU Value is compared to the value entered for the Rollover Value. If it is greater than or equal to this entered value, the EU Value here is reset to zero.

Select the **Scanning** option.

- ◆ For the input to automatically process the field input, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode). When Scanning is set to Enabled, **EU Value** displays the last Pulse Input scan in engineering units.
- ◆ When Scanning is set to **Disabled** (Manual Mode), the engineering unit (EU) Value is no longer updated by the ROC or FloBoss. If Scanning is set to Disabled, a value may be entered in the **EU Value** to override the input.

Enter the **Scan Period** as the amount of time between scans of the EU Value in seconds. The default value is 1 second for the ROC800-Series and 5 seconds for the other devices. The rate calculation is performed based on the number of pulses counted during the scan interval divided by the time interval. To avoid highly fluctuating calculation results, there should typically be at least 10 pulses occurring between scans at low flow conditions. For example, if a flow meter produces one pulse per second at low flow, then the Scan Period should be set to a minimum of 10 seconds.

For a Pulse Input implemented in a PI module for a ROC300-Series or FloBoss 407, the input signal must be scanned often enough such that rollover in the module's 16-bit counter, which occurs at 65535, is not missed. For example, a 10 kHz input signal must be scanned at least every 6.5 seconds to register the value before rollover occurs.

Once the Scan Period is reached, the Accum'd Pulses, Pulses Today, Today's Total, Yesterday's Total, and Current Rate values update.

Enter the **Accum'd Pulses** as the value of the raw counts (accumulated pulses) as stored in an accumulated value counter that resides in the firmware. For each Scan Period, the ROC or FloBoss determines the number of raw counts that have occurred since the last Scan Period and adds them to the accumulated value counter. The accumulated value rolls over to zero after reaching 16,777,216 for the ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series. The FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series rolls over to zero after reaching 8,388,608.

Enter the **Conversion** (ROC800-Series). This value is multiplied by the number of pulses to determine the Units as configured. This parameter is sometimes referred to as the "K Factor" for turbine meters. The value entered here is taken times the number of pulses to convert the pulses into the Units of measurement configured on this screen.

Enter the **Contract Hour** (ROC800-Series). This will set the beginning of the day for the daily counted parameters listed above.

If you Enable **Alarming**, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. If you disable Alarming, no limit alarms generate for this point. The Point Fail and Manual Mode alarm may appear in the Active Alarms field, but will not be logged in the Alarms log.

Alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the values so that no false alarms generate.

For the ROC800-Series, Alarming is Enabled in the Configure > I/O > PI Points > Alarms tab.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, Alarming is Enabled in the Configure > I/O > PI Points > General tab.

Frequency (ROC800-Series version 1.24 and greater) displays the frequency, in pulses/second, of incoming pulses.

Pulses For Day (ROC800-Series) displays the total number of pulses that the PI has received for the contract day. The Contract Hour is specified on this screen. At the end of the contract day, it zeros and starts over, only if being totalized in History.

Today's Total displays the total EU Values accumulated for the current contract day. Today's Total is reset to zero at Contract Hour.

Today's Total = Accumulated Pulses x the Conversion Value

Yesterday's Total displays the total EU Value accumulated the previous contract day.

Yesterday's Total = Previous day's Today's Total at Contract Hour before being cleared

Current Rate is the value of the calculated rate as of the most recent scan expressed in EUs per unit of time. Time units are selected by the Rate Period parameter on the Advanced tab. Rate is calculated at the end of each Scan Period.

$$\text{Current Rate} = \text{Number of pulses received} \times \text{Conversion Value} \div \text{Rate Period}$$

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When Alarming is set to Enabled, the limit alarms (such as Low Alarm and Rate Alarm) that are active appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm indicator can still appear. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is Disabled.

4.6.2 PI – Advanced

Select Configure > I/O > **PI Points**. The **Advanced** tab lets you configure features, such as EU Options, Rate Period, Rollover value, and Conversion for the Pulse Input.

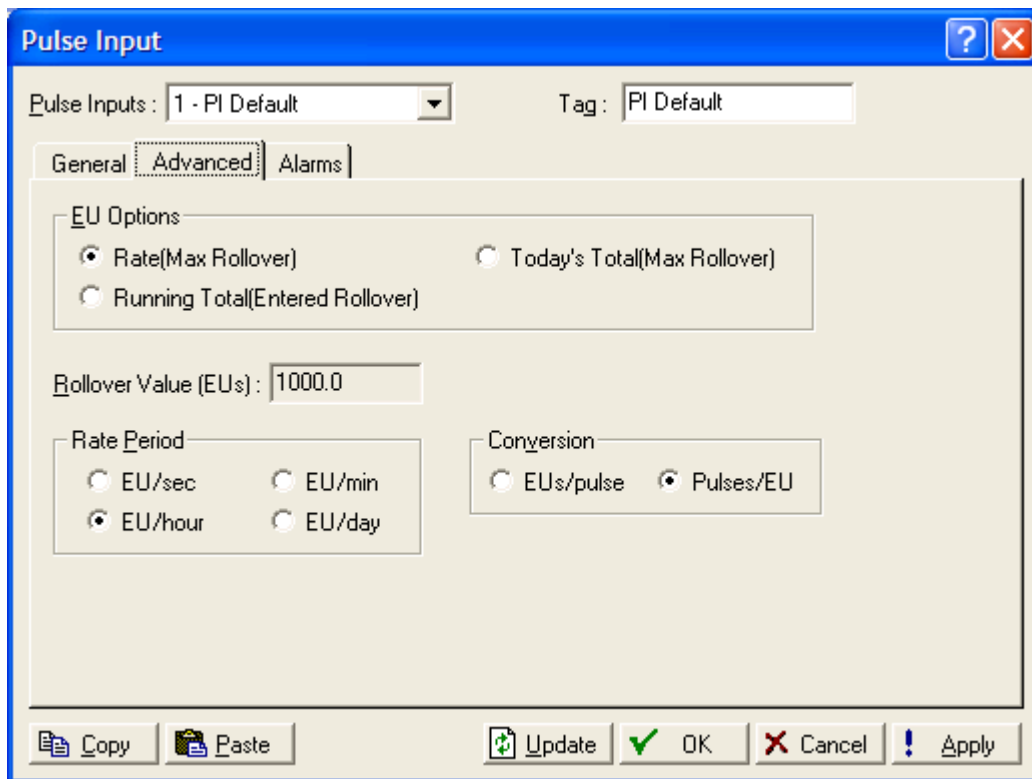


Figure 4-29. Pulse Input – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

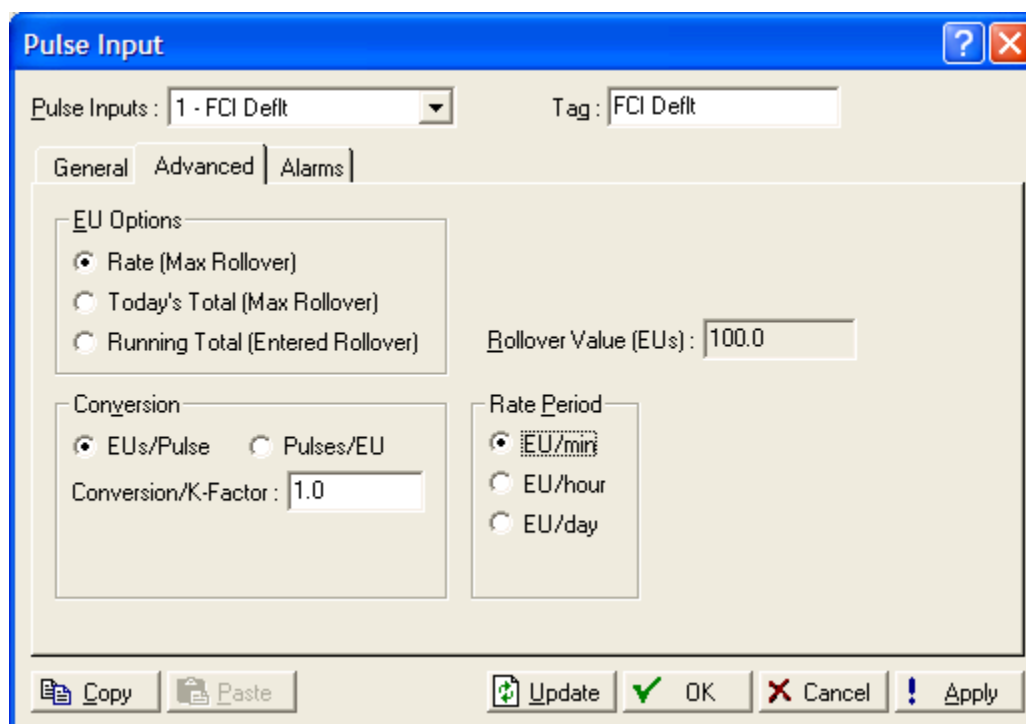


Figure 4-30. Pulse Inputs – Advanced (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

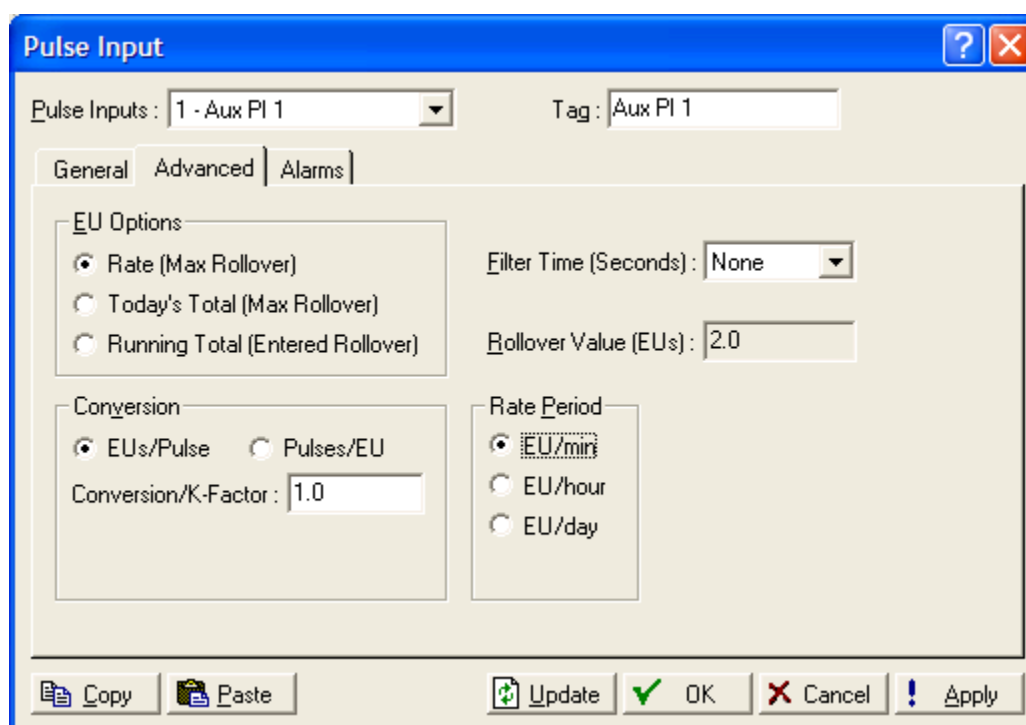


Figure 4-31. Pulse Inputs – Advanced (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select the type of **EU Option**:

- ◆ **Rate (Max Rollover)** – EU Value is assigned the values of the Current Rate parameter.
- ◆ **Today's Total (Max Rollover)** – EU Value is assigned the value of the Today's Total parameter.
- ◆ **Running Total (Entered Rollover)** – EU Value corresponds to the accumulated pulses multiplied by the Conversion factor. If the EU Value exceeds the Rollover value, it is cleared and starts to accumulate from 0 again. In this mode, EU Values are not cleared at Contract Hour.

Enter the **Rollover Value** (EUs) when Running Total (Entered Rollover) is selected in the EU Options field. Enter a number in EUs (not pulses) to specify when the rollover should occur.

This field is not used when Rate or Today's Total is selected as the EU Option type.

The **Filter Time (Seconds)** (FloBoss 100-Series) determines the amount of time (in seconds) between start of pulse and recognition of pulse. The user should estimate the amount of signal “bounce” time so that the FloBoss will not count noise as actual pulses. If none (the default) is selected, the FloBoss will recognize all pulse signal movement as actual pulses.

Enter the **Rate Period** if Rate was selected under EU Options. Four time periods can be selected to perform the rate calculation:

- ◆ **EU/Sec** – Calculation based on EU second totals (ROC800-Series).
- ◆ **EU/Min** – Calculation based on EU minute totals.
- ◆ **EU/Hour** – Calculation based on EU hourly totals.
- ◆ **EU/Day** – Calculation based on EU day totals.

The following shows the calculation of the Current Rate in two different ways:

If Conversion Mode is EUs per pulse, and Rate Period is EU per minute, then

$$\text{Current Rate} = (\text{accumulated pulses} \times \text{Conversion}) \div (\text{Scan Period} \times \text{conversion from seconds to minutes})$$

If Conversion Mode is pulses per EU, and Rate Period is EU per hour, then

$$\text{Current Rate} = (\text{accumulated pulses} \div \text{Conversion}) \div (\text{Scan Period} \times \text{conversion from seconds to hours})$$

Select the **Conversion** if Rate was selected under EU Options.

- ◆ **EUs/Pulse** – The specified number of engineering units (typically fractional parts, such as 0.01) associated with a single pulse.
- ◆ **Pulses/EU** – This is the inverse of EUs/Pulse. Here, the specified number of pulses (such as 100) is required to equal one engineering unit.

For the ROC800-Series, this parameter specifies how the number entered in the **Conversion** field on the main PI screen is used.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, enter the **Conversion/K-Factor**. This parameter is sometimes called the K-Factor for turbine meters.

For the ROC300-Series and FloBoss 100-Series, if the PI is used as an input to AGA7 calculations, then the Conversion value should be set to produce the EU Value in MCF or km^3 .

For a FloBoss 407, the Conversion/K-Factor value should be set to produce a EU value in the units select for the EU Units.

Define the **EU Units** (FloBoss 407) represented by the EU Value. The EU selections of values CF/m³, 10CF/10m³, CCF/100m³, and MCF/kM³ affect the weight of each pulse received by the Pulse Input.

For example, if the PI is configured so that 50 pulses = 1 EU and the EU Units is set to EU=CF/m³, then 100 pulses = 2 CF or 2 m³. If the PI is configured so that 50 pulses = 1 EU and the EU Units is set to EU=MCF or kM³, then 100 pulses = 2 MCF or 2 kM³.

This selection will also have an effect on the uncorrected volume totals input to an AGA7 calculation. The AGA 7 calculation converts the Pulse Input rate to MCF/kM³ per day for the uncorrected meter input.

4.6.3 PI – Alarms

Select Configure > I/O > **PI Points**. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this PI point.

When Alarming is Enabled, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. When Alarming is Disabled, no limit alarms generate for this point. The Point Fail alarm appears in the Active Alarms field, but will not be logged in the Alarms Log.

To conserve Alarms Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

Pulse Input

Pulse Inputs: 1 - PI Default Tag: PI Default

General | Advanced | **Alarms**

Alarming

☐ Enabled

☒ Disabled

RBX

☐ On Alarm Set

☐ On Alarm Clear

HiHi Alarm: 110.0

High Alarm: 100.0

Low Alarm: 10.0

LoLo Alarm: 0.0

Rate Alarm: 5.0

Alarm Deadband: 2.0

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 4-32. Pulse Inputs – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

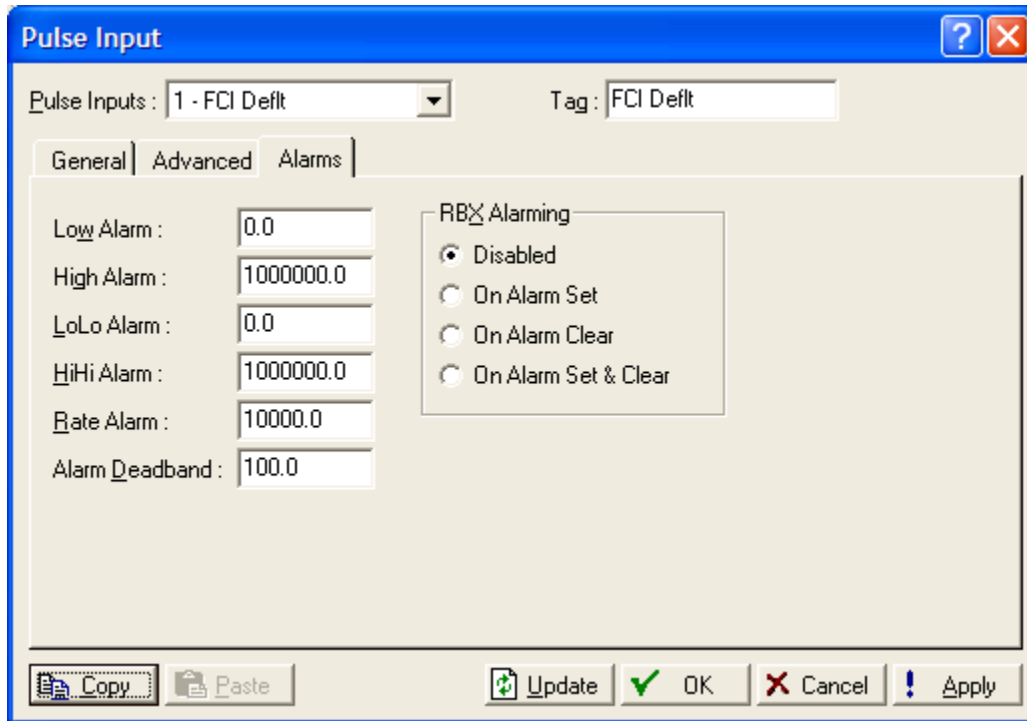


Figure 4-33. Pulse Inputs – Alarms (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series)

The **Rate Alarm** is the value, in engineering units, that represents the maximum amount of change in the calculated rate allowed between updates. If the change is equal to, or greater than this value, an alarm is generated. To disable this Rate Alarm without disabling the other alarms, the Rate Alarm value can be set to a value greater than the maximum rate.

The two high level alarms are the limit values, in engineering units, to which the EU Value must rise to generate a High or HiHi Alarm. The HiHi Alarm value is typically set higher than the High Alarm.

The two low level alarms are the limit values, in engineering units, to which the EU Value must fall to generate a Low or LoLo Alarm. The LoLo Alarm value is typically set lower than the Low Alarm.

The **Alarm Deadband** value, in engineering units, is an inactive zone above the Low Alarm and below the High Alarm. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit. This also prevents the Alarm Log from being overfilled with data.

If the host computer is configured to receive field-initiated calls, you can select a Report-by-Exception (**RBX**) option to send a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message.

- ◆ **Disabled** – Select Disabled to turn RBX Alarming Off.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set & Clear** – (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407). In either condition, an RBX message generates.
 - ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.7 Pulse Interface Module Diagnostic (FloBoss 104)

When on-line with a FloBoss 104 unit, select Utilities > **Pulse Input Module Diagnostic** to monitor the operation of the Pulse Interface Module. These Read-Only fields display information about the module firmware and hardware, as well as data from the last scan of the module.

Figure 4-34. Pulse Interface Module Data (FloBoss 104)

Revision and **Build Date** refer to the firmware in the module.

Direction refers to the direction that the magnet will move. **P1 Installed** and **P2 Installed** refer to the Auxiliary Pulse Inputs.

Last Rotation Time is the amount of time, in seconds, required to complete a rotation at the last Update or last scan in AutoScan mode. **Rotation Deviation** is the amount of change between the last rotation and the current rotation, in %. **Unexpected Switch Counts** is a diagnostic tool. If this value in this field rises while the FloBoss 104 is installed and operating, please contact your local sales representative.

The **Rotation Position** graphic at the bottom of the screen is a visual representation of the counter's position. Rotation position is the indicator that the magnet is turning on the Roots or Rotary meter. If this position does not change while the FloBoss is in operation and this screen is in AutoScan mode, please contact your local sales representative.

After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

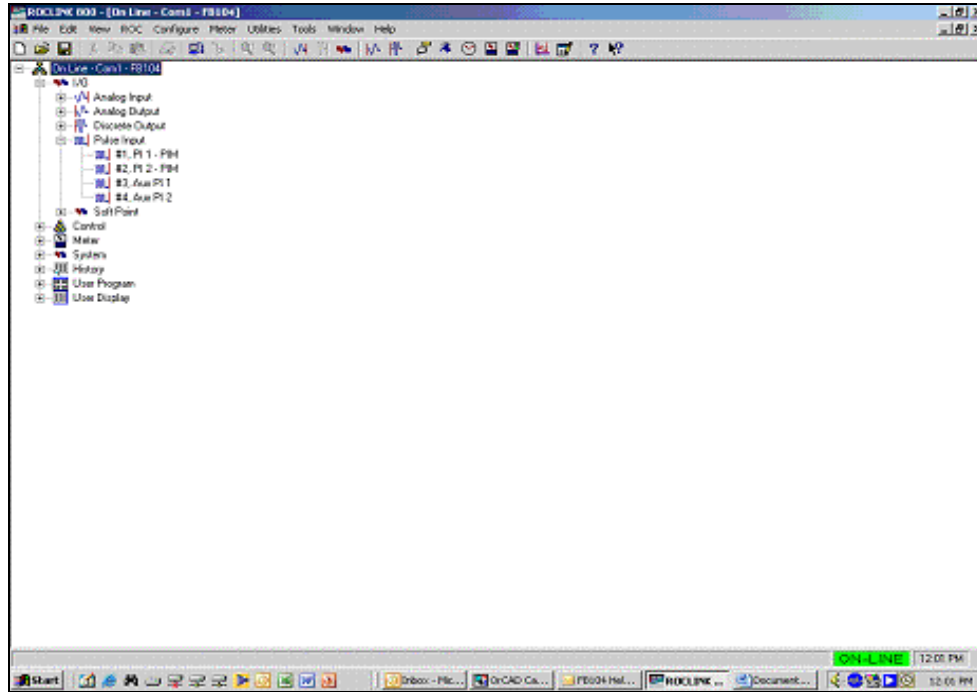


Figure 4-35. Pulse Interface Module View (FloBoss 104)

If the meter is turning the magnet clockwise direction while looking down on the magnet after it is installed then PI 1 of the PIM PI Points #1, PI 1 – PIM indicates pulses.

If the magnet is turning counter-clockwise while looking at it from the top down after being installed on the meter, then Pulse Input #2, PI 2 – PIM indicate pulses.

4.8 RTD – RTD Input Configuration (ROC800-Series)

RTD Inputs are analog signals generated by RTD (Resistance Temperature Detector) probes, a device to measure temperature.

For the ROC800-Series, select Configure > I/O > **RTD Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs in the order given below.

- ❖ **Note:** The RTD point for the FloBoss 100-Series or FloBoss 407 is configured as a type of AI Point. Refer to AI – Analog Input Configuration.
- 1. Select Configure > I/O > **RTD Points**.
- 2. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the RTD Input point.
- 3. The **Advanced** tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering, A/D conversions, and clipping for the selected RTD Input.
- 4. The **RTD Calibration** tab is available on-line for calibration of the RTD point. Refer to Section 10, Calibration.
- 5. The **Alarms** tab sets the alarm parameters for this RTD point.
- 6. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.8.1 RTD – General

Select Configure > I/O > **RTD Points**. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the RTD Input point.

Figure 4-36. RTD – General (ROC800-Series)

Select the **RTD Input** to be configured. The inputs are listed by both number and tag.

Enter a 10-character string **Tag** for identification of the Point Number. Any alphanumeric characters, including spaces, may be used.

The **Point Number** identifies the physical location of the input. For the ROC800-Series, the Point Number identifies the module slot – channel number.

If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a **Value** to override the RTD Input. When Scanning is set to Enabled, Value displays the last RTD Input scan in engineering unit.

Select one of the **Units** radio buttons. This determines in which EU the temperature will be calculated.

Enter a **Units Tag** to display in configuration screens, reports and custom displays. This should be the same unit of measure as is chosen in the Units radio buttons. If this field is blank, then configuration screens, reports, and custom displays will show a blank where the unit of measure should be.

Select the **Scanning** option.

- ◆ For the input to automatically process the field input, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode). When Scanning is set to Enabled, **Value** displays the last RTD Input scan in engineering units.
- ◆ When Scanning is set to **Disabled** (Manual Mode), the engineering unit (EU) Value is no longer updated by the ROC. If Alarming is Enabled, a Scanning Disabled alarm generates when Scanning is set to Disabled. If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a **Value** to override the input.

Enter the **Scan Period** as the amount of time between updates of the Filter value. All RTD Inputs are updated based on their individual Scan Periods. The default value is 1 second. The minimum scan period allowed is 64 mSec. ROCLINK 800 software will not allow a value less than 64 mSec in this field. The scan occurs in multiples of 64 mSec (i.e. if you enter 0.20 sec, it will scan every 0.192 sec).

The **Low Reading EU** corresponds to a 0% input.

The **High Reading EU** corresponds to a 100% input.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When Alarming is set to Enabled, the limit alarms (such as Low Alarm and Rate Alarm) that are active appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm indicator can still appear. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is Disabled.

4.8.2 RTD – Advanced

Select Configure > I/O > **RTD Points**. The **Advanced** tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering, A/D conversions, and clipping for the selected RTD Input.

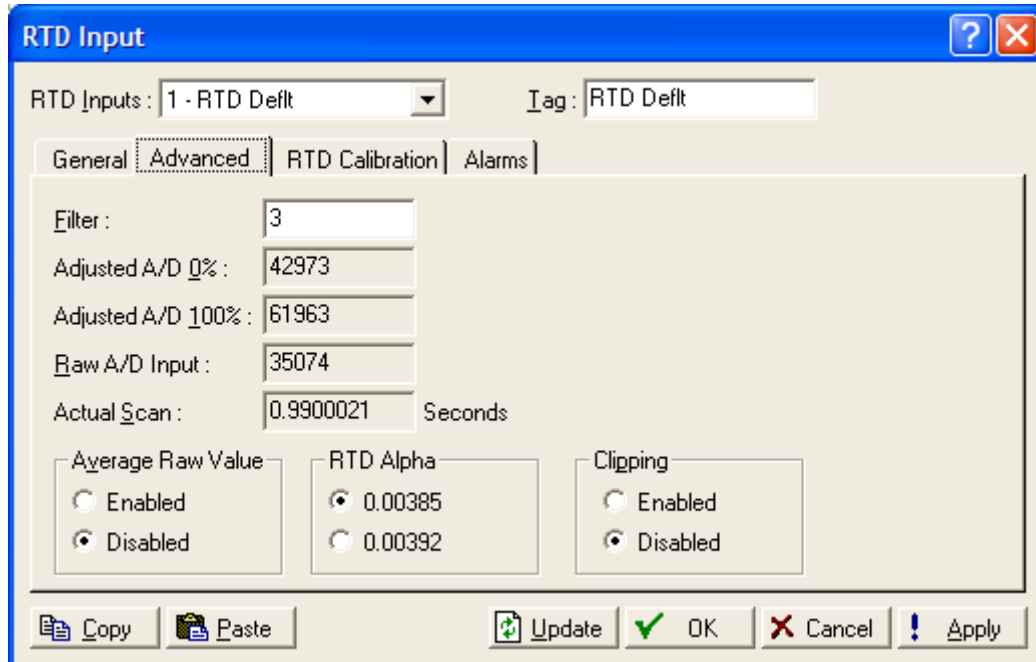


Figure 4-37. RTD – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Enter a **Filter** value, which is a weighted sample using a percentage of the last value, plus a percentage of the new value. The entered data is the percentage of the last value used. The filter is calculated every Scan Period by the formula:

$$(\text{Last Value} \times \text{Entered } \%) + (\text{New Value} \times (100 - \text{Entered } \%)) = \text{Filtered Value}$$

Enable **Average Raw Values** to average and calculate the raw readings during the Scan Period and use the outcome as the Raw A/D Input during EU calculations. For example, when enabled, an RTD Input point configured with a Scan Period of 1.0 seconds obtains a new value from the A/D every 50 milliseconds. During the Scan Period, 20 values are obtained from the A/D and summed together. At EU calculation, the values summed are divided by the Actual Scan Period display and are used as the Raw A/D Input. Disable this function to acquire instantaneous values.

Select the **RTD Alpha** of the RTD being used 0.00385 or 0.00392.

When **Clipping** is enabled, the software forces the Filtered EUs to stay within the range defined by the cut off limits. Set the cut off limits by using the LoLo Alarm and HiHi Alarm parameters.

The **Adjusted A/D 0%** is the calibrated Analog-to-Digital (A/D) reading corresponding to zero percent input. In the Calibrate function, this value is altered to set the zero percent input exactly at the Low Reading EU value to eliminate transmitter and system errors.

The **Adjusted A/D 100%** is the calibrated A/D reading corresponding to 100 percent input. This value is used to convert the input to engineering units. In the Calibrate function, this value is altered to set the 100 percent input exactly at the High Reading EU value.

Raw A/D Input displays the current reading directly from the Analog-to-Digital converter.

Actual Scan displays the actual amount of time in seconds that passes between scans. This number should be the same as shown for the Scan Period parameter if the system is not overloaded.

4.8.3 RTD – Alarms

Select Configure > I/O > **RTD Points**. The **Alarms** tab sets the alarm parameters for this RTD point.

Figure 4-38. RTD – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

When **Alarming** is Enabled, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. When Alarming is Disabled, no limit alarms generate for this point. The Point Fail alarm appears in the Active Alarms field, but will not be logged in the Alarms Log.

To conserve log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

The Rate Alarm is the value, in engineering units, that represents the maximum amount of change allowed between updates. If the change is equal to or greater than this value, an alarm is generated. To disable this **Rate Alarm** without disabling the other alarms, the Rate Alarm value can be set greater than the Span of the Analog Input.

Enter the **High Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the input value must rise to generate a High Alarm. The HiHi Alarm value is typically set higher than the High Alarm.

Enter the **Low Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the input value must fall to generate a Low Alarm. The LoLo Alarm value is typically set lower than the Low Alarm.

Alarm Deadband is the value, in engineering units, that is an inactive zone above the Low Alarm limits and below the High Alarm limits. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit. This also prevents the Alarm Log from being over-filled with data.

If the host computer is configured to receive field-initiated calls, you can select a Report-by-Exception (**RBX**) option to send a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message.

- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC generates a SRBX message.
- ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.9 TC – Thermocouple Input Configuration (ROC800-Series)

Thermocouple (TC) Inputs are used to monitor the extremely small voltage generated by a thermocouple sensor. These small voltages are converted to temperature values.

- ❖ **Note:** Thermocouple modules are only available with ROC800-Series units.

Select Configure > I/O > **TC Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs in the order given below.

1. Select Configure > I/O > **TC Points**.
2. The **General** tab sets the basic parameters for the TC Input point.
3. The **Advanced** tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering and averaging for the selected TC Input.
4. The **Alarms** tab sets the alarm parameters for this TC point.
5. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.9.1 Thermocouple – General

Select Configure > I/O > **TC Points**. The General tab sets the basic parameters for the TC Input point.

Figure 4-39. Thermocouple – General (ROC800-Series)

Select the **Thermocouple Input** to be configured. The inputs are listed by both Point Number and Tag. Enter a 10-character string **Tag** for identification of the Point Number.

The **Point Number** identifies the physical location of the input. For the ROC800-Series, the Point Number identifies the module slot – channel number.

When Scanning is set to Enable, **Value** displays the last TC Input scan in engineering unit. If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a Value to override the input.

Select the **Type** of Thermocouple sensor in use.

Input Temperature Range:

- ◆ **J Type:** –200 to 1200°C (–328 to 2192°F).
- ◆ **K Type:** –100 to 1372°C (–121 to 2500°F).

Select one of the **Units** radio buttons. This determines in which EU the temperature will be calculated.

Enter a **Units Tag** to display in configuration screens, reports and custom displays. This should be the same unit of measure as is chosen in the Units radio buttons. If this field is blank, then configuration screens, reports, and custom displays will show a blank where the unit of measure should be.

Select the **Scanning** option.

- ◆ For the input to automatically process the field input, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode). When Scanning is set to Enabled, **Value** displays the last TC Input scan in engineering units.
- ◆ When Scanning is set to **Disabled** (Manual Mode), the engineering unit (EU) Value is no longer updated by the ROC. If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a **Value** to override the input.

Enter the **Scan Period** as the amount of time between updates of the Filter value. All TC Inputs are updated based on their individual Scan Periods. The default value is 1 second. The minimum scan period allowed is 100 mSec.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When Alarming is set to Enabled, the limit alarms (such as Low Alarm and Rate Alarm) that are active appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm and Manual (Scanning Disabled) indicators can still appear. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is disabled.

4.9.2 Thermocouple – Advanced

Select Configure > I/O > **TC Points**. The Advanced tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering and averaging for the selected TC Input.

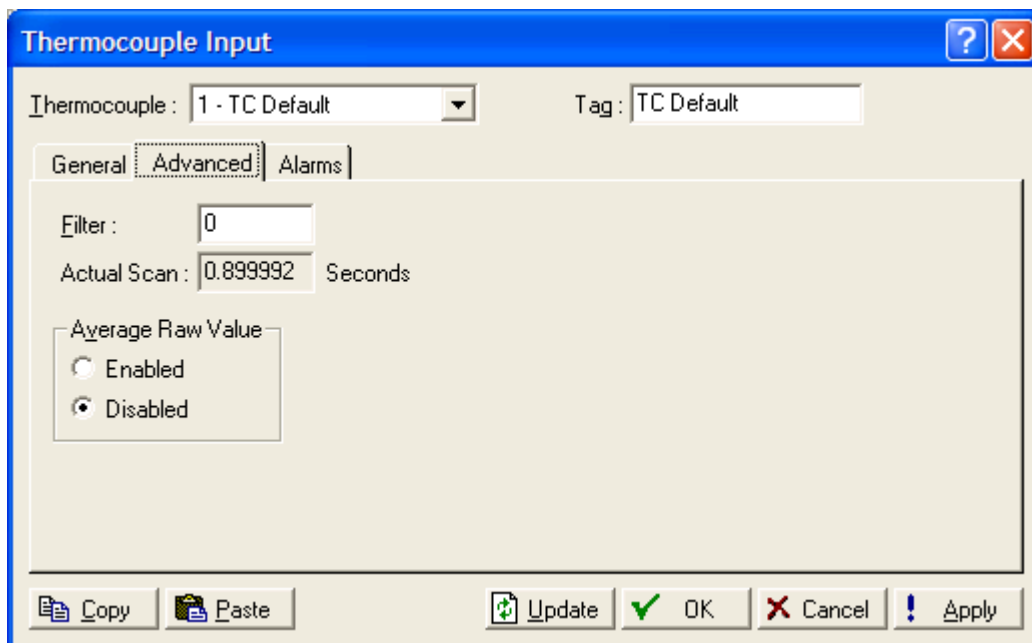


Figure 4-40. Thermocouple – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Enter a **Filter** value, which is a weighted sample using a percentage of the last value, plus a percentage of the new value. The entered data is the percentage of the last value used. The filter is calculated every Scan Period by the formula:

$$(\text{Last Value} \times \text{Entered \%}) + [\text{New Value} \times (100 - \text{Entered \%})] = \text{Filtered Value}$$

Enable **Average Raw Values** to average and calculate the raw readings during the Scan Period and use the outcome as the Raw A/D Input during EU calculations. For example: When Enabled, a TC Input point configured with a Scan Period of 1.5 seconds obtains a new value from the A/D every 100 milliseconds. During the Scan Period, 10 values are obtained from the A/D and summed together. At EU calculation, the values summed are divided by the Actual Scan Period display and are used as the Raw A/D Input. Disable this function to acquire instantaneous values.

Actual Scan displays the actual amount of time in seconds that passes between scans. This number should be the same as shown for the Scan Period parameter if the system is not overloaded.

4.9.3 Thermocouple – Alarms

Select Configure > I/O > **TC Points**. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this TC point.

Figure 4-41. Thermocouple – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

When **Alarming** is Enabled, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. When Alarming is Disabled, no limit alarms generate for this point. The Point Fail alarm appears in the Active Alarms field, but will not be logged in the Alarms Log.

To conserve Alarm Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

The **Rate Alarm** is the value, in engineering units, that represents the maximum amount of change allowed between updates. If the change is equal to, or greater than this value, an alarm is generated. To disable this Rate Alarm without disabling the other alarms, the Rate Alarm value must be set greater than the Span (Range) of the TC Input.

Input Temperature Range:

- ◆ **J Type:** –200 to 1200°C (–328 to 2192°F).
- ◆ **K Type:** –100 to 1372°C (–121 to 2500°F).

The four level alarms are the limit value, in engineering units, to which the EU Value must fall to generate a Low, High, LoLo, or HiHi Alarm. The HiHi Alarm value is typically set higher than the High Alarm.

The four level alarms are the limit value, in engineering units, to which the EU Value must fall to generate a Low, High, LoLo, or HiHi Alarm. The LoLo Alarm value is typically set lower than the Low Alarm.

The **Alarm Deadband** value, in engineering units, is an inactive zone above the Low Alarm and below the High Alarm. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit. This also prevents the Alarm Log from being filled with nuisance alarm trips.

If the host computer is configured to receive field-initiated calls, you can select a Report-by-Exception (**RBX**) option to send a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message.

- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC generates a SRBX message.
- ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.10 System AI – System Analog Input Configuration (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > **System AI Points**. System Analog Inputs are analog signals generated by sources within the ROC unit.

For the ROC800-Series, select Configure > I/O > **System AI Points**. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs.

The ROC800-Series has five System Analog Inputs:

- ◆ System AI #1 = Battery.
 - ◆ System AI #2 = Charge Voltage.
 - ◆ System AI #3 = Module Voltage.
 - ◆ System AI #4 = AI Default.
 - ◆ System AI #5 = Board Temperature.
- ❖ **Note:** For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, select Configure > I/O > Analog Input. The System Analog Inputs are treated as Analog Inputs. Refer to AI – Analog Input Configuration.
1. Select Configure > I/O > System AI Points **General** tab sets the basic parameters for the AI Input point.
 2. The **Advanced** tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering, averaging, and clipping for the selected Input.
 3. The **Alarms** tab sets the alarm parameters for this AI point.
 4. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.10.1 System AI – General (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > **System AI** Points > General to set the basic parameters for the AI Input point.

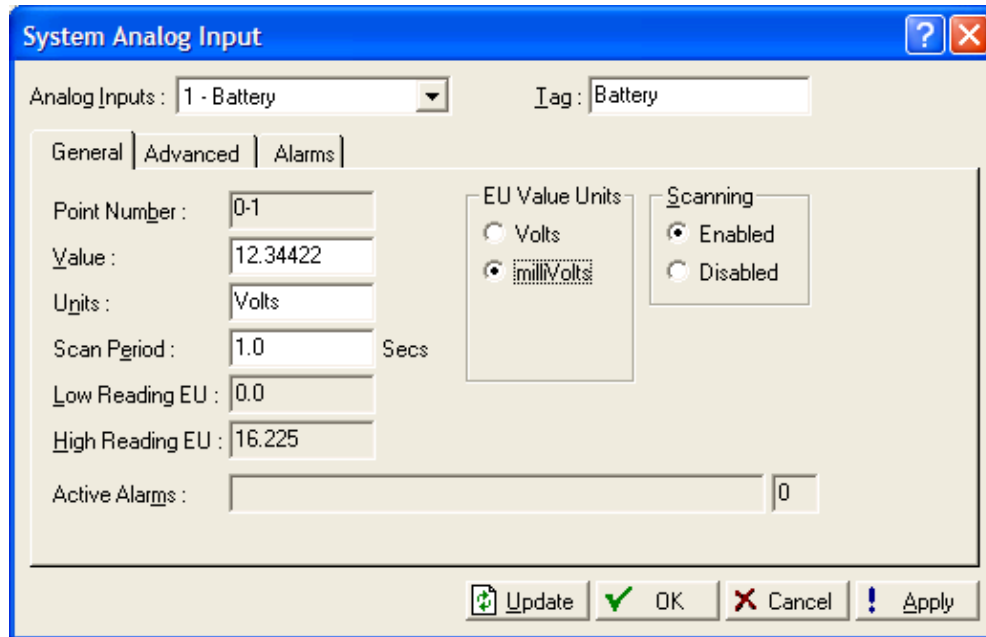


Figure 4-42. System AI – General (ROC800-Series)

System AI Number

In the **ROC800-Series**:

- ◆ System AI #1 = Battery.
- ◆ System AI #2 = Charge Voltage.
- ◆ System AI #3 = Module Voltage.
- ◆ System AT #4 = AI Default.
- ◆ System AI #5 = Board Temperature.
- ❖ **Note:** For the FloBoss 100-Series or FloBoss 407, select Configure > I/O > Analog Input. The System AI are treated as Analog Inputs.

Because this type of input has no physical location, the portion of the **Point Number** that refers to module location is 0. The portion that refers to channel number is 1 to 5 for the input numbers.

Enter a 10-character string **Tag** for identification of the point.

When Scanning is set to Enable, **Value** displays the last Analog Input scan in engineering units. If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a Value to override the input.

Enter the **Units** value. Inputs #1, 2, and 3 are in Volts. Input #5 is in Degree C.

Select the **Scanning** option.

- ◆ For the input to automatically process the field input, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode). When Scanning is set to Enabled, **Value** displays the last System AI scan in engineering units.
- ◆ When Scanning is set to **Disabled** (Manual Mode), the engineering unit (EU) Value is no longer updated by the ROC or FloBoss. If Scanning is set to Disabled, enter a **Value** to override the input.

Enter the **Scan Period** as the amount of time between updates of the Filter value. The default value is 1 second. All System Analog Inputs are updated based on their individual Scan Periods.

The **Low Reading EU** (engineering unit) corresponds to zero percent input.

The **High Reading EU** corresponds to 100 percent input.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are active for this point. When Alarming is set to Enabled, the limit alarms (such as Low Alarm and Rate Alarm) that are active appear. Even if Alarming is Disabled, the Point Fail (hardware reports a malfunction) alarm indicator can still appear. If Alarming is set to Enabled, an alarm is generated when Scanning is Disabled.

4.10.2 System AI – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > **System AI Points**. The Advanced tab enables you to configure features, such as filtering, averaging, and clipping for the selected Input.

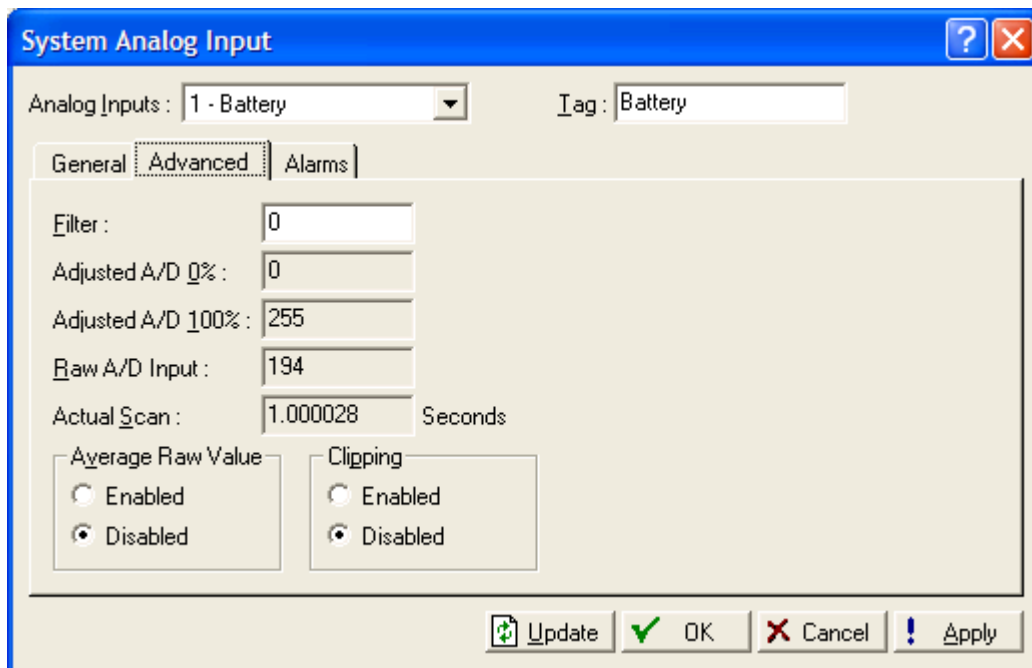


Figure 4-43. System AI – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Enter a **Filter** value, which is a weighted sample using a percentage of the last value plus a percentage of the new value. The entered data is the percentage of the last value used. The Filter is calculated every Scan Period by the formula:

$$(\text{Last Value} \times \text{Entered \%}) + (\text{New Value} \times (100 - \text{Entered \%})) = \text{Filtered Value}$$

Enable **Average Raw Values** to average and calculate the raw readings during the Scan Period and use the outcome as the Raw A/D Input during EU calculations. For example, when enabled, an Analog Input point configured with a Scan Period of 5 seconds obtains a new value from the A/D every second.

During the Scan Period, five values are obtained from the A/D and summed together. At EU calculation, the values summed are divided by the number of samples and are used as the Raw A/D Input. Disable this function to acquire instantaneous values.

When **Clipping** is Enabled, the software forces the Filtered EUs to stay within the range defined by the cut off limits. Set the cut off limits by using the LoLo Alarm and HiHi Alarm parameters.

Adjusted A/D 0% is the calibrated Analog-to-Digital (A/D) reading corresponding to zero percent input.

Adjusted A/D 100% is the calibrated A/D reading corresponding to 100 percent input.

Raw A/D Input displays the current reading directly from the Analog-to-Digital converter.

Actual Scan displays the actual amount of time in seconds that passes between scans. This number should be the same as shown for the Scan Period parameter if the system is not overloaded.

4.10.3 System AI – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > **System AI** Points. The Alarms tab sets the alarm parameters for this AI point.

The screenshot shows the 'System Analog Input' configuration window with the 'Alarms' tab selected. The 'Analog Inputs' dropdown is set to '1 - Battery' and the 'Tag' is 'Battery'. The 'Alarming' section has 'Disabled' selected. The 'RBX' section has 'On Alarm Set' and 'On Alarm Clear' both unchecked. The alarm thresholds are: HiHi Alarm: 15.0, High Alarm: 14.5, Low Alarm: 11.0, LoLo Alarm: 10.6, Rate Alarm: 3.0, and Alarm Deadband: 0.5. At the bottom are buttons for Update, OK, Cancel, and Apply.

Parameter	Value
HiHi Alarm	15.0
High Alarm	14.5
Low Alarm	11.0
LoLo Alarm	10.6
Rate Alarm	3.0
Alarm Deadband	0.5

Figure 4-44. System AI – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

If you Enable **Alarming**, the limit alarms (four levels, Rate, and Deadband) are configured on the Alarms tab. If you Disable Alarming, no limit alarms generate for this point. The Point Fail alarm appears in the Active Alarms field, but will not be logged in the Alarms Log.

To conserve Alarm Log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

The Rate Alarm is the value, in engineering units, that represents the maximum amount of change allowed between updates. If the change is equal to or greater than this value, an alarm is generated. To disable this **Rate Alarm** without disabling the other alarms, the Rate Alarm value can be set greater than the Span of the Analog Input.

Enter the **High Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the input value must rise to generate a High Alarm. The HiHi Alarm value is typically set higher than the High Alarm.

Enter the **Low Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the input value must fall to generate a Low Alarm. The LoLo Alarm value is typically set lower than the Low Alarm.

Alarm **Deadband** is the value, in engineering units, that is an inactive zone above the Low Alarm limits and below the High Alarm limits. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit. This also prevents the Alarm Log from being over-filled with data.

If the host computer is configured to receive field-initiated calls, you can select a Report-by-Exception (**RBX**) option to send a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message.

- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC generates a SRBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC generates a SRBX message.
- ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

4.11 HART Input Configuration (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > HART. Examine the default settings and adjust the parameters to suit your application on each of the tabs.

1. Select Configure > I/O > **HART** (Highway Addressable Remote Transducer).
2. The **General** and **Advanced** tabs set parameters for the channel. Each ROC800-Series HART module can support up to four channels.
3. The **Calibration** tab enables you to calibrate the HART Analog Input. Refer to Section 10, Calibration.
4. The **Device** tabs set parameters specific to the devices in that channel. Each channel in Analog Output mode can support one device. Each channel in Analog Input mode can support up to five devices.
5. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

4.11.1 HART – General (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > HART. The **General** tabs sets parameter for the channel. Each ROC800-Series HART module can support up to four channels. Select the HART Point Number you desire to configure.

Figure 4-45. HART – General (ROC800-Series)

Channel Version indicates the version of firmware present in the HART card for this channel.

Comm Status indicates the status of the communications channel. **Scanning** indicates the channel is currently scanning the device(s). **Not Scanning** indicates the device(s) is currently off-line or not communicating. **Dual Master** indicates that the channel has another master connected. Examples of other masters include a **Hand-Held Communicator** and a device that is configured to be in **Burst** mode. When in Dual Master, the ROC is not scanning the device, which allows communications between the other master and the device(s). When the Hand-Held Communicator finishes communicating with the HART device (or Burst mode was turned off in the device), normal HART module scanning will automatically resume.

- ❖ **Note:** Burst mode is not supported by the ROC800-Series HART module. The device should not be configured in Burst mode when connected to the ROC. If a device is in Burst mode, use a Hand-Held Communicator to turn off Burst mode.

I/O Type indicates whether the jumper on the HART module is configured as an Analog Input or Analog Output.

When **Communication Mode** is disabled, all HART communication stops. No changes will occur, unless manually entered. When in Point to Point mode, the channel will allow communications with one device. When in Multi-drop mode, the channel will allow communications with the specified number of devices (maximum of five).

EU Value is the value in Engineering Units of the Analog Input or Analog Output.

Low Reading EU is the value in Engineering Units that corresponds to zero percent input.

High Reading EU is the value in Engineering Units that corresponds to 100 percent input.

Output Mode / Analog Scanning

When the Channel I/O displays Analog Input, select an **Analog Scanning** option:

- ◆ For the input to automatically process the field input, select **Enabled** (Automatic Mode).
- ◆ For the engineering unit (EU) Value to be no longer updated by the ROC, select **Disabled** (Manual Mode).

When the Channel I/O displays Analog Output, select an **Output Mode** option:

- ◆ For the output to automatically process the field input and use the Auto Value, select **Automatic** (Enabled Mode).
- ◆ For the output to use the Manual Value, select **Manual**.

For the engineering unit (EU) Value to be no longer updated by the ROC, select **Disabled**.

- ❖ **Note:** Even in Manual Mode, the HART device may change.

When the Channel I/O displays Analog Output and Automatic Output mode has been selected, the **Auto Value**, in Engineering Units, will be used as an output.

When the Channel I/O displays Analog Output and Manual Output mode has been selected, the **Manual Value**, in Engineering Units, will be used as an output.

Physical Value displays the current value of the output in Engineering Units.

4.11.2 HART – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > HART. The **Advanced** tab sets parameters for the channel. Each ROC800-Series HART module can support up to four channels.

Figure 4-46. HART – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Adjusted A/D 0% is the calibrated Analog-to-Digital (A/D) reading corresponding to zero percent input. In the Calibrate function, this value is altered to set the zero percent input exactly at the Low Reading EU value to eliminate transmitter and system errors.

Adjusted A/D 100% is the calibrated A/D reading corresponding to 100 percent input. This value is used to convert the input to engineering units. In the Calibrate function, this value is altered to set the 100 percent input exactly at the High Reading EU value.

Raw A/D Input displays the current reading directly from the Analog-to-Digital converter.

When Retain Last Value is selected as the **EU Value on Reset**, the last EU value for the channel is used after a reset or a Warm Start. If Use Failsafe Value is selected, then the value entered as the **Failsafe Value** here is used after a reset or Warm Start.

Pass Through enables pass through communications from a host device through the ROC800-Series unit and on to the HART devices. The communications must be in ROC Plus protocol (typically for Opcode 120 requests). You may either enable it to strip all preamble bytes (in HART protocol) or leave the entire message intact. If Enabled, enter the **Timeout**, the amount of time (in milliseconds) to pause between the end of the pass through communication and the restarting of polling of the HART device.

4.11.3 HART – Device (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > I/O > HART. The **Device** tabs set parameters specific to the devices in that channel. Each channel in Analog Output mode can support one device. Each channel in Analog Input mode can support up to five devices.

When Point to Point Communications Mode is selected from the General tab, the device information is presented via the Device 1 tab. When Multidrop Communications Mode is selected, each Device tab corresponds to the HART Tag (Point Number) defined for the ROC to Poll.

Figure 4-47. HART – Device (ROC800-Series)

Poll Mode determines the polling behavior for this device.

- ◆ **Skip this Device** removes this device from the polling sequence.
- ◆ **PV Only** signifies that only the Primary Variable value is to be polled.
- ◆ **Dynamic Variables** signifies that the values for all of the Dynamic Variables (primary, secondary, tertiary, and fourth) are to be polled.
- ◆ **Slot Variables** signifies that only the values for the three Slot Variables are to be polled.
- ◆ **Update** polls for a full update of all values.

PV is the value of the Primary Dynamic Variable.

If Value on Reset is set to Use Failsafe Value, **PV Fail Safe** is the value to be used as the Primary Variable, after a reset or Warm Start.

SV is the value of the Secondary Dynamic Variable.

If Value on Reset is set to Use Failsafe Value, **SV Fail Safe** is the value to be used as the Secondary Variable, after a reset or Warm Start.

TV is the value of the Tertiary Dynamic Variable.

If Value on Reset is set to Use Failsafe Value, **TV Fail Safe** is the value to be used as the Tertiary Variable, after a reset or Warm Start.

FV is the value of the Fourth Dynamic Variable.

If Value on Reset is set to Use Failsafe Value, **FV Fail Safe** is the value to be used as the Fourth Variable, after a reset or Warm Start.

Slot Assignment (0, 1, 2, or 3) determines which variable in that slot to request.

Slot Value (0, 1, 2 or 3) is the value of the variable requested from that slot. The Read-Only units defined in the device is displayed to the right of this field.

Actual Scan Period displays the actual amount of time in seconds that passes between scans.

Current displays the current, in milliamps, reported by the device.

% of Range displays the percentage of the range currently being reported by the device.

Status displays the state of the device. This field will display either No Device or Communicating.

Response Code displays the response status of the device. Refer to the documentation from the transmitter manufacturer for more information.

ID Number displays a 3-byte globally unique address of the device.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarms that are being sent from the device. These are not entered in the Alarm Log.

When Retain Last Value is selected as the **Value on Reset**, the last EU values for the Dynamic Variables are used after a reset or a Warm Start. If Use Failsafe Value is selected, then the values entered as the Failsafe Value are used after a reset or Warm Start.

Enter a **Tag** for the HART device. This will identify this device throughout the configuration. The Tag should be 10 characters or less. When in Multi-drop mode, the Tag must be unique for every device.

The **Poll Address** displays the address used for this HART device. When in Point to point mode, the Poll Address will be 0. When in Multi-drop mode, the addresses of 1 to 5 will be used.

Device ID displays the coded ID that reflects the manufacturer of the device, the device type, and the device ID.

PV Sensor Serial Number displays the serial number of the sensor.

PV Upper Sensor Limit (USL) displays the upper limit on the sensor.

PV Lower Sensor Limit (LSL) displays the lower limit on the sensor.

Sensor Units displays the units of measure for the upper and lower sensor limits.

PV Damping Value displays the damping value reported by the device for the Primary Variable.

PV Range Units displays the units of measure for the Analog Output minimum span and upper and lower range limits.

PV Upper Range Limit (URV) displays the maximum value in the Analog Output range.

PV Lower Range Limit (LRV) displays the minimum value in the Analog Output range.

PV Minimum Span displays the minimum sensor span.

Enter a **Descriptor** to identify this device. This may be 24 characters in length. This is intended as a more specific identifier than the tag.

Enter a **Message** that will be sent to the device and stored there.

4.12 MVS Sensor (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 407)

Select Configure > I/O > **MVS Sensor**. The MVS Sensor screen provides you with an interface to a Multi-Variable Sensor. The MVS sensor is a smart device that can measure temperature, static pressure, and differential pressure.

- ❖ **Note:** Refer to Section 10, Calibration.
- ❖ **Note:** The DVS sensor for the FloBoss 100-Series is configured using Analog Inputs.

Figure 4-48. Multi-Variable Sensor (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 407)

Select Configure > I/O > **MVS Sensor**.

Select the **MVS Sensor** to configure. Each MVS has a unique Address number to differentiate it from other MVS units, because MVS sensors can be multi-dropped.

Sensor Interface Version displays the version of the sensor interface firmware for the sensor.

Enter the ten-character **Tag** that resides in the MVS. Click the Write button to write the Tag to the MVS Sensor.

Enter the **Address** of the MVS interface used with the device communications protocol. The default Address is 1. If the MVS is used in the multi-drop mode, each MVS must have a unique Address. Address 240 can be used to poll the sensor to determine the address of the connected sensor. This is similar to polling a ROC or FloBoss using Address and Group 240. When Address 240 is used, the sensor will respond with its address by updating the Address field. Click the Write button to write the Address to the MVS Sensor.

Displays the **Voltage** input to the sensor. If the MVS interface version is 6 or greater, this field should read approximately “5”, which is the voltage to the microcontroller in the sensor. If the MVS interface version is less than 6, this field shows the input voltage to the sensor. The input voltage to the sensor, in versions less than 6, must be at least 10.5 volts dc for proper operation.

For a ROC800-Series unit, enter the **DP Zero Shift** value to be used as the Zero Shift Differential Pressure value during calibration. During a calibration procedure, the ROC may modify this value. The user may also modify this value after a calibration is performed, as needed.

The Pressure / Temperature Values display the scaled Differential Pressure (**Diff Pressure**) reading from the sensor. The units display as either In H₂O or kPa. The scaled Differential Pressure (**Reverse DP**) reading is from the sensor times a negative “1” for flow in the reverse direction. The scaled absolute Pressure (**Static Pressure**) reading from the sensor displays in either PSI or kPa. The scaled process Temperature reading from the sensor displays in either degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius.

Enable **Scanning** for the input to enable communications to the MVS sensor. An alarm generates when Scanning is Disabled.

If Scanning is Disabled, no values are updated from the MVS sensor.

Select either US or Metric **Units** for the Process Variable. If Metric units are selected, then the AGA calculation expects all inputs to be in the indicated units, such as kPa for the Static Pressure input. Note that US Units are included in the factory defaults for the MVS101, but not for the MVS205. For an MVS205, if you change Units, use the Set Back to Factory Defaults button in Utilities > MVS Calibration screen to match the default calibration values. For an MVS101, the default calibration values automatically match Units. If you change the Units, a Sensor Configuration Write is required.

Click to enable or disable **Differential Pressure Alarms**, **Pressure Alarms**, **Temperature Alarms**, and **RBX Alarms** for the MVS Sensor.

Select either **Upstream** or **Downstream** to indicate the location of the static pressure tap in relation to the orifice and normal flow. By default, the MVS sensor is set as an Upstream device. The **Report Pressure As** parameter allows the pressure to be reported as either **Upstream** or **Downstream** pressure. If Downstream is selected, then the Diff Pressure (DP) is subtracted (in PSI) from the Static Pressure (SP) reading to obtain a Downstream Pressure measurement for archiving. For Downstream operation, adjustments to the calibration procedure may be required when setting the Span value.

Enable or disable **Sensor Alarms**. Status displays the alarm conditions of the sensor or any alarms that are active for this point. When Sensor Alarms are Enabled, the failed alarms (such as point fail alarms, 485 comm fail, and sensor fail) that are active appear.

Click the **Write** button, in the **Sensor Configuration** field, to update the sensor with the current values on the screen or click the **Read** button to read the sensor’s current configuration data and Process Variables.

Select the **Action on Failure** to set the sensor to retain the last values (Hold Last Value) before the failure, or you can set the sensor to return to the configured fault values (Set To Fault Value) when the sensor fails, an input point fails, or comm fail.

Select to enable or disable **Differential Pressure Alarms**, **Pressure Alarms**, and/or **Temperature Alarms**. If Enabled, configure the alarms using the Modify Limits buttons. Alarms are logged to the Alarm Log. To conserve log space, enable alarms only when necessary. Even if all alarms are Disabled, the Point Fail alarm indicator can still appear. The status of the alarm is indicated in the read-only Status field.

- ◆ **Low Alarm** – The limit value, in engineering units, to which the value must fall to generate a Low Alarm.
- ◆ **High Alarm** – The limit value, in engineering units, to which the value must rise to generate a High Alarm.
- ◆ **Alarm Deadband** – The value, in engineering units, that is an inactive zone above and below the Low Alarm and High Alarm limits. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the DP, SP, and Temp values are oscillating around the alarm limit. This also prevents the Alarm Log from being overfilled with data.
- ◆ **Fault Value** – If a point fails and Action on Failure is configured to Set to Fault Value, the EU value for that point is set to the number entered in the Fault Value field. Fault Values are only used in Modify Limits.

Select the **Reference Temperature** to determine how the DP is reported. The default value is 15.6°C (60°F). This value is only used when the Units selection is changed or the Downstream option is selected.

If the host computer is configured to receive field-initiated calls, you can select a Report-by-Exception (RBX) option to send a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message.

- ◆ **Disabled** – (FloBoss 407) Select Disabled to turn **RBX Alarming Off**.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a RBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a RBX message.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set and Clear** – (FloBoss 407) When the point enters or leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a RBX message.
 - ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

- ❖ **Note:** Click the **Write** button, in the **Sensor Configuration** field, to update the sensor with the current values on the screen or click the **Read** button to read the sensor's current configuration data and Process Variables.

SECTION 5 – CONFIGURING THE METER SETUP

Use Meter Setup to configure Meter Runs (all devices) and Stations (ROC800-Series). The Meter and Station configuration screens contain the functions directly associated with measuring and logging flow, including setup of American Gas Association (AGA) or International Standards Organization (ISO) (ROC800-Series) calculation configuration parameters, and calibrating the meter.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
5.1 Meter Setup Basics.....	5-1
5.2 Station Configuration (ROC800-Series)	5-2
5.3 Meter Setup Configuration.....	5-11

5.1 Meter Setup Basics

The **ROC800-Series** organizes Meter Runs into Stations. The 12 Meter Runs can be grouped among the 12 Stations (maximum) in any combination. Meters are assigned to Stations in the Meter > Setup > Orifice or Turbine screens. Meter runs belong in the same Station when they have the same gas data, calculation methods, and base / contract conditions. If using constant gas quality data from a lab analysis report, then all 12 Stations can be employed. If using live Gas Quality data from a Gas Chromatograph, no more than ten Stations are recommended.

- ❖ **Note:** Contract hours can be set differently for each Station in the History Segment Configuration screen.

Configuration screens for the Station and the individual meters are accessible by clicking on the Station or meter icon in the Configuration Tree. Each Station may be given a unique Tag, and each Meter may be given a unique Tag and Meter Description.

The **FloBoss 103** has a single orifice meter and does not support Stations.

The **FloBoss 104** has a single turbine or rotary meter and does not support Stations.

The **FloBoss 407** has up to four orifice or turbine meters and does not support Stations.

The **ROC306** and **ROC312** have up to three orifice or turbine meters and does not support Stations.

The **ROC364** has up to five orifice or turbine meters and does not support Stations.

Table 5-1 displays the defaults for Metric and US Engineering Units.

Table 5-1. Default Engineering Units (EU)

Flow Parameter	U.S. Units	Metric Units
Meter Input (AGA3)	Inches H ₂ O	kPa
Meter Input (AGA7) – Volume	MCF/Day	kM ³ /Day
Meter Input (AGA7) – Mass	lb/Hr	kg/Hr
Static Pres	PSIG or PSIA	kPaG or kPaA
Temp	°F	°C
Inst Volume/Day	MCF/Day	kM ³ /Day
Inst Energy/Day	MMBTU/Day	GJoules/Day
Flow Today/Yesterday	MCF	kM ³
Energy Today/Y'day	MMBTU	GJoules
Viscosity	Lb/ft-sec	cP
Diameters	inches	mm
Elevation	Ft	M
Inst Mass	.lb/Hr	kg/Hr

5.2 Station Configuration (ROC800-Series)

To configure a Station, select a Station icon in the Configuration Tree menu or select Meter > Setup > **Stations**. Configure the parameters on each tab as pertains to your application.

Configure the Station before configuring the Meter Runs.

1. The Station Configuration **General** tab sets basic parameters that all the Meter Runs in the Station have in common.
2. The **Gas Quality** tab sets the parameters for the gas information. The Gas Quality tab defines the mole percentages of twenty-one gas components, as well as the Heating Value Basis, the Heating Value, and the Specific Gravity. If other Stations have similar characteristics, use Copy and Paste to create Gas Quality configurations.
 - ❖ **Note:** For information on the Gas Quality tab on the Meter Setup screens for the FloBoss 100-Series and FloBoss 407, refer to Parameters on Meter Gas Quality Tab (FloBoss 100-Series and FloBoss 407).
3. The **Advanced** tab of the Station Configuration contains a number of additional parameters that affect the flow calculation.
4. The **Alarms** tab allows you to configure alarming parameters for Station flow rates.
5. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags screen to save I/O configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

5.2.1 Station – General (ROC800-Series)

To configure a Station, select a Station icon in the Configuration Tree menu or select Meter > Setup > **Stations**. The Station Configuration General tab sets basic parameters that all the Meter Runs in the Station have in common.

Figure 5-1. Station – General (ROC800-Series)

Select the active **Station** to be configured. This lists all active Stations.

Enter a unique **Tag** for the Station of up to 10 characters.

Select the **History Segment** in the Historical Database that will be used to configure history points for the Meters in this Station.

Select the **Contract Hour** for the meters in this Station.

- ❖ **Note:** The Contract Hour for the Station may also be set in the Configure > History Segment screen.

Select the set of **Calculation Standards** that are to be used for orifice, gas linear meters, and mass linear meters in this Station. There is only one edition of AGA and ISO flow calculations for the ROC800-series. Calculation standards include:

- ◆ **Gas, AGA3-92 / AGA7-96 / AGA11-2003** – American Gas Association (AGS) standard for gas flow through an orifice, a linear meter, and a mass (Coriolis) meter.
- ◆ **Gas, ISO5167-98 / ISO9951-93 / ISO10790-2003** – International Standard Organization (ISO) standard for gas flow through an orifice, a linear meter, and a mass (Coriolis) meter.
- ◆ **Liquid, ISO5167-98 / API 12-95 / ISO10790-1999** – ISO and API (American Petroleum Institute) standards for liquid flow through an orifice, a linear meter, and a mass (Coriolis) meter.

Select Gas, AGA3-92 / AGA7-96 / AGA11-2003 for the Station when you want AGA 3 calculations for all orifice meters in the Station and AGA 7 calculations for all turbine meters and all mass (Coriolis) meters in a Station.

Select Gas, ISO5167-98 / ISO9951-93 / ISO10790-2003 for the Station when you want one of these calculations for all orifice meters in the Station and ISO9951 calculations for all turbine meters and all mass (Coriolis) meters in a Station.

❖ **Note:** ISO9951 calculations are identical to AGA 7 calculations.

Select Liquid, ISO5167-98 / API 12-95 / ISO10790-1999 for the Station when you want one of these calculations for all orifice meters with an expansion factor set to 1.0. Linear volumetric meters will calculate a corrected volume using user-entered / calculated pressure and temperature correction factors. Mass (Coriolis) meters calculate a corrected volume from the Mass Flow Rate and the Base Density.

❖ **Note:** For linear volumetric meters using API 12, the user-entered / calculated pressure and temperature correction factors, as well as the Base Density and Flowing Density values, will need to be supplied by a FST, User C program, a host computer, a DS800 program, or manually entered from a custom display. The FPV Method parameter must be set to User so that the density values can be entered.

The **Station Values** displays flow rates and accumulations that represent the summation of all the Meter Runs in the Station.

Flow Rate: Volume flow rate at base condition in MCF/day or km^3/day .

Energy Rate: Energy rate at base conditions in mmBtu/day or GJ/day.

Mass Rate: Mass rate conditions in Mlb/day or Tonnes/day.

Flow Today: Total accumulation of flow for the current contract day in MCF or km^3 .

Energy Today: Total accumulation of energy for the current contract day in mmBtu or GJ.

Mass Today: Total mass for the day in Mlb or Tonnes.

Zs: Represents the compressibility at standard conditions (~).

Zb: Represents the compressibility at base conditions (~).

Base Density: Represents the density of the measured fluid at base conditions in lbm/ft^3 or kg/m^3 .

Flow Yesterday: Total accumulation of flow for the previous contract day in MMCF or km^3 .

Energy Yesterday: Total accumulation of energy for the previous contract day in MMBTU or GJ.

Mass Yesterday: Total accumulation of mass for the previous contract day in Mlb or Tonnes.

Current alarm conditions display in the **Active Alarms** fields located at the bottom of the General tab.

5.2.2 Station – Gas Quality (ROC800-Series)

To configure a Station, select a Station icon in the Configuration Tree menu or select Meter > Setup > Stations.

The Gas Quality tab sets the parameters for the gas information. The Gas Quality tab defines the mole percentages of twenty gas components, as well as the Heating Value Basis, the Heating Value, and the Specific Gravity. If other Stations have similar characteristics, use Copy and Paste to create Gas Quality configurations.

- ❖ **Note:** For information on the Gas Quality tab on the Meter Setup screens for the FloBoss 100-Series and 407, refer to Parameters on Meter Gas Quality Tab (FloBoss 100-Series and 407).

Station Setup

Station: 1 - Station 1 Tag: Station 1

General Gas Quality Advanced Alarms

Nitrogen: 1.0 Heptane: 0.0
 CO2: 0.0 Octane: 0.0
 Methane: 96.0 Nonane: 0.0
 Ethane: 3.0 Decane: 0.0
 Propane: 0.0 H2S: 0.0
 n-Butane: 0.0 Water: 0.0
 i-Butane: 0.0 Helium: 0.0
 n-Pentane: 0.0 Oxygen: 0.0
 i-Pentane: 0.0 CO: 0.0
 Hexane: 0.0 Hydrogen: 0.0
 Hexane+: 0.0 Argon: 0.0

Total Mole %: 100.00

Heavy Gas Option
☐ Enter Hexane+

Gas Quality
☐ Constant ☒ Live

Normalization Type
☒ Methane Adjust
☐ Full Normalization

Heating Value Basis
☒ Dry ☐ Wet ☐ As Deliv

Heating Value
 1027.189 BTU/CF

Specific Gravity
 0.573538

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 5-2. Station – Gas Quality (ROC800-Series)

Enter the mole percent of each **Gas Component** present in the gas for this Station. This value is required to calculate the compressibility of gas using the AGA 8 detailed method.

If the AGA 8 detailed method is selected, the **Total Mole %** should equal 100% after all the component mole percentages have been entered.

Select the **Heavy Gas Option** to separate the heavy gas percentage (C6+) into individual components in the mole percentages for n-Hexane, n-Heptane, n-Octane, n-Nonane, and n-Decane. To enter Heavy gases, enable the Heavy Gas option, and enter the percentage of Heavy Gases under Hexane+. Then go to the Advanced tab, and enter the amount of each Heavy Gas.

The mole percentages in the Heavy Gas Distribution fields on the Advanced tab **must equal 100%**. If the total % of the distribution among the five heavier components is less than 100%, hexane is increased to make the total add up to 100%. If the total % of the distribution is greater than 100%, Decane is reduced first, then Nonane, then octane, then Heptane, then hexane until the total is equal to 100%.

The **Gas Quality** field determines where to get Gas Quality readings. Live indicates readings come from a gas chromatograph and changes to the gas composition, specific gravity, and heating value will not be logged to the Event Log or force a historical event. Constant indicates the readings will be entered in the Event Log.

Select the **Normalization Type** to determine what action is taken if the Total of the gas mole percentages do not add up to 100%.

- ◆ Select **Methane Adjust** to have the Methane component automatically adjusted up or down to compensate for the difference if the Total does not equal 100%.
- ◆ Select **Full Normalization** to have each component adjusted if the Total does not equal 100%.

Select between Dry (no water vapor present in the gas), Wet (saturated water vapor present in the gas), or As Delivered (may contain some water vapor) for the **Heating Value Basis**. This selection indicates on what basis the entered Heating Value was determined and is for accounting purposes only and does not affect the flow or energy calculations.

Enter the gross volumetric **Heating Value** of the measured fluid at base conditions in lb/ft³ or kg/m³. For gas, this value represents the real Heating Value, rather than the ideal Heating Value.

For gas, enter the **Spec Gravity** as the real gas relative density that is defined as the ratio of the real density of the gas to the real density of dry air at the same reference conditions of pressure and temperature.

For liquids, enter the Spec Gravity as the ratio of the density of the liquid to the density of water at the same reference conditions of pressure and temperature.

5.2.3 Station – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

To configure a Station, select a Station icon in the Configuration Tree menu or select Meter > Setup > Stations.

The Advanced tab of the Station Configuration contains a number of additional parameters that affect the flow calculation.

The screenshot shows the 'Station Setup' dialog box with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two fields: 'Station:' with a dropdown menu showing '1 - Station 1' and 'Tag:' with a text field containing 'Station 1'. Below these are four tabs: 'General', 'Gas Quality', 'Advanced' (selected), and 'Alarms'. The 'Advanced' tab contains several sections: 'FPV Method' with radio buttons for 'Detailed', 'Gross1', 'Gross2' (selected), and 'User'; 'Units' with radio buttons for 'US' (selected) and 'Metric'; 'Atmospheric Pressure' with radio buttons for 'Calculate' and 'Enter' (selected), and a text field for '14.45' with 'PSIA' units; 'Local Gravitational Acceleration' with radio buttons for 'Calculate' (selected) and 'Enter', and a text field for '32.14398' with 'Ft/Sec2' units. Below these are four more fields: 'Base Pressure:' (14.73 PSIA), 'Base Temperature:' (60.0 Deg F), 'Elevation:' (500.0 Feet), and 'Latitude:' (35.0 Deg). To the right of these is a 'Heavy Gas Distribution (C6+)' section with five text fields for '% Hexane:', '% Heptane:', '% Octane:', '% Nonane:', and '% Decane:', all containing '0.0', and a 'Total %:' field containing '100.00'. At the bottom of the dialog are five buttons: 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', and 'Cancel', followed by an 'Apply' button with an exclamation mark icon.

Figure 5-3. Station – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

For flow calculations, select **FPV Method** of Detailed, Gross I, Gross II, or User methods of calculating the compressibility factor. The Detailed method provides the highest accuracy in a broader range of measurement conditions; however, one of the Gross methods can be used when:

- ◆ Temperature is between 0 and 54°C (32 and 130°F).
- ◆ Pressure is between 0 and 8274 kPa (0 and 1200 psia).
- ◆ Gas composition is within the normal range as defined in the 1992 AGA8 report.

Briefly, the three **FPV Methods** are:

Detailed – Requires the natural gas composition in mole percent to be entered for all components.

Gross I

- ◆ Specific Gravity (relative density).
- ◆ Real gas gross heating value per unit volume.
- ◆ The mole % of CO₂.

Gross II

- ◆ Specific Gravity (relative density).
- ◆ The mole % of CO₂.
- ◆ The mole % of N₂.
- ❖ **Note:** If either Gross Method is chosen, manually enter the Specific Gravity and Heating Value in the Gas Quality screen. For Gross Method II, the Heating Value is required only for calculating the gas energy flow.

User – Requires the base compressibility, standard compressibility, flowing compressibility, base density, and flowing density values to be entered. These values become Read/Writable and may be obtained from a non-calculated source. The values may come from a User C program, FST, host computer, DS800 program, or a custom display. If none of these sources provide values, the last value will be held.

Select either US (English) or Metric **Units** for calculations. If Metric units are selected, then the AGA calculation expects all inputs to be in the indicated units (such as kPa for the static pressure input); keep in mind that any existing entered values are not converted.

Select either Calculate or Enter **Atmospheric Pressure** for the value of the atmospheric pressure (absolute) at the metering location. If Calculate is selected, the value is calculated based on the Elevation. If Enter is selected, type a value for the pressure. The units of measurement are in PSIA or kPa for Metric. If entered, the value must be greater than zero.

Select Calculate or Enter **Local Gravitational Acceleration** for the gravitational acceleration at the metering location. If Calculate is selected, the value is calculated from the Elevation and Latitude. If Enter is selected, type a value for the acceleration. The units of measurement are in ft/sec² or M/sec². If entered, the value must be greater than zero.

Enter the flow measurement **Base Pressure** specified in the gas contract. The pressure units are in PSIA, or kPa for Metric.

Enter the flow measurement **Base Temperature** specified in the gas contract. The temperature units are in degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius.

Enter the **Elevation** or altitude of the metering location. The units are in feet or meters.

Enter the geographic **Latitude** of the metering location. The units are in degrees and minutes, separated by a decimal point. For example: 46.15.

If Heavy Gas Option was enabled on the Gas Quality tab, the mole percentages of **Heavy Gas Distribution** (hydrocarbons Hexane and heavier) should be entered here. The mole percentages in the Heavy Gas Distribution fields **must equal 100%**. If the Total % of the distribution among the 5 heavier components is **less than 100%**, hexane is increased to make the total add up to 100%. If the Total % of the distribution is **greater than 100%**, Decane is reduced first, then Nonane, then octane, then Heptane, and then hexane, until the total is equal to 100%.

5.2.4 Station – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

To configure a Station, select a Station icon in the Configuration Tree menu or select Meter > Setup > Stations.

The Alarms tab allows you to configure Station-wide alarming parameters.

You can either enable or disable alarming for each Station. Alarms can be configured for the individual Meter Runs and/or the Stations, generating meter-specific and/or Station-wide alarm conditions.

If you enable alarms, the alarms can be configured using the Alarms tab and are logged to the Alarm Log. To conserve log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. If you disable alarms, no alarm generates for this point, regardless of the Alarm configuration. Alarm conditions display in the Active Alarms fields located in the Station Configuration General tab.

Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

The screenshot shows the 'Station Setup' dialog box with the 'Alarms' tab selected. The 'Station' dropdown is set to '1 - Station 1' and the 'Tag' text box contains 'Station 1'. The 'Alarms' tab is active, showing the 'Alarming' section with three radio buttons: 'Disabled' (selected), 'Alarm on Volume/Day', and 'Alarm on Mass/Day'. To the right, there are three input fields for 'High Alarm' (10000.0 MCF/day), 'Low Alarm' (1000.0 MCF/day), and 'Alarm Deadband' (100.0 MCF/day). Below these is the 'RBX' section with two checkboxes: 'On Alarm Set' and 'On Alarm Clear', both of which are unchecked. At the bottom of the dialog, there are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 5-4. Station – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

Select **Alarming** as:

- ◆ **Disabled** – No alarms occur for this Station.
- ◆ **Alarm on Volume / Day** – Alarm values occur based on volumetric flow rate per day.
- ◆ **Alarm on Mass / Day** – Alarm values occur based on mass flow rate per day.

Enter the **High Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the Volumetric or Mass Flow Rate value must rise to generate a High Alarm. The Mass units assumed for the input are MCF per day (1000 ft³/day) or cubic meters per day (m³/day). The Volumetric units assumed for the input are MLb per day (1000 lb/day) or tonnes per day (100kg/day).

Enter the **Low Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the Volumetric or Mass Flow Rate value must fall to generate a Low Alarm. The units assumed for the input are MCF per day (1000 ft³/day) or cubic meters per day (m³/day). The Volumetric units assumed for the input are MLb per day (1000 lb/day) or tonnes per day (100kg/day).

Alarm Deadband is the value, in engineering units that the flow value must be above the Low Alarm limit and below the High Alarm limit before the alarm clears. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit.

Select the **RBX Alarming** option to configure Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception (SRBX) alarming for this point.

- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – The point enters an alarm condition, the ROC generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – The point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

5.3 Meter Setup Configuration

For **ROC800-Series units**, once the Station has been configured, the individual Meter Runs that are a part of the Station should be configured. Select Meter > Setup > Orifice Meter or Turbine Meter. You may also click on the meter in the Configuration Tree to open the Meter Setup screen that sets parameters unique to that meter.

For **FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units**, select Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree to open the screen that sets parameters unique to that meter.

❖ **Note:** For the FloBoss 104, Rotary Meter configuration is identical to Turbine Meter configuration.

Configure the parameters on each tab as pertains to your application.

1. Select:
 - ◆ Meter > Setup > Orifice Meter or Turbine Meter or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for a ROC800-Series device.
 - ◆ Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units.
2. The **General** tab sets the basic parameters for the meter.
3. The **Inputs** tab lets you define the field inputs for differential pressure (AGA3), uncorrected volume or mass (AGA7), static pressure, and temperature to be used in the flow calculation.
4. For FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, the **Gas Quality** tab defines the mole percentages of twenty gas components, as well as the Heating Value Basis, the Heating Value, and the Specific Gravity. If other Stations have similar characteristics, use Copy and Paste to create Gas Quality configurations.
 - ❖ **Note:** For information on the Gas Quality tab in the Station Setup for a ROC800-Series, refer to the Station Gas Quality Tab (ROC800-Series).
5. The **Advanced** tab specifies additional parameters for the meter.
6. The FloBoss 100-Series uses the fields in the **Sampler** tab to enable you to set up the Discrete Output (DO2) of the FloBoss to send a pulse output to another device, such as an odorizer, and control a gas sampler for a Meter Run. To use this feature, select the Enabled option under Sampler Control.
7. The FloBoss 100-Series use the **Instrument Calibration** tab to calibrated devices.
8. The **Calibration Factors** tab displays a dialog box containing a number of parameters that allow select and calculation of optional flow adjustment factor to compensate for the difference in condition between the meter location and the location where the calibration instruments were certified.

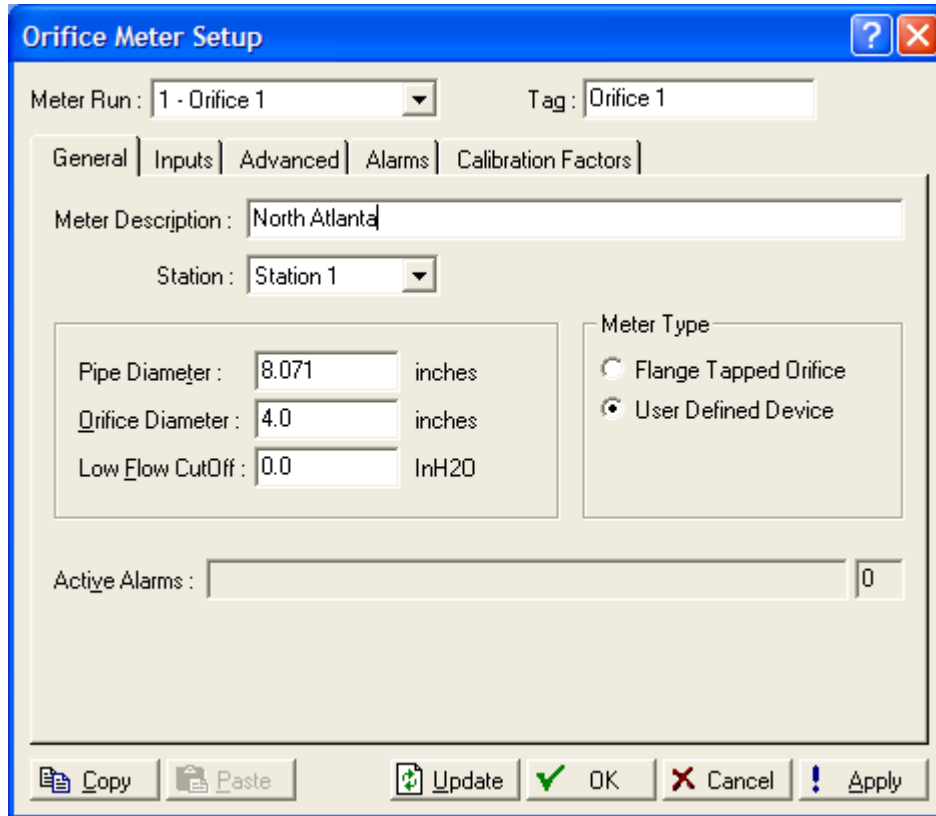
Selecting the Meter > Setup Orifice or Turbine > **Calibration Factors** tab (ROC800-Series) displays a dialog box containing a number of parameters that allow select and calculation of optional flow adjustment factor to compensate for the difference in condition between the meter location and the location where the calibration instruments were certified.
9. The **Alarms** tab sets Alarm parameters for the meter.
10. If the Turbine Meter Input Type on the General tab was configured to Mass, the **Mass Meter Press Effect** tab appears.
11. After configuring all point parameters, click Apply. Use **Flash Memory Save Configuration** in the ROC > Flags to save configuration to permanent memory in case you perform a Cold Start.

5.3.1 Meter – General

The General tab sets the basic parameters for the meter.

Select:

- ♦ Meter > Setup > Orifice Meter or Turbine Meter or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for a ROC800-Series device.
- ♦ Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units.



The image shows a software dialog box titled "Orifice Meter Setup". It has a blue title bar with a question mark icon and a close button. The dialog is divided into several sections. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: "Meter Run" set to "1 - Orifice 1" and "Tag" set to "Orifice 1". Below these are five tabs: "General", "Inputs", "Advanced", "Alarms", and "Calibration Factors", with "General" being the active tab. The "General" tab contains a "Meter Description" text field with "North Atlanta" entered, and a "Station" dropdown menu set to "Station 1". Below these are three input fields: "Pipe Diameter" (8.071 inches), "Orifice Diameter" (4.0 inches), and "Low Flow CutOff" (0.0 InH2O). To the right of these is a "Meter Type" section with two radio buttons: "Flange Tapped Orifice" (unselected) and "User Defined Device" (selected). At the bottom of the dialog is an "Active Alarms" section with a text field and a numeric field set to "0". The bottom of the dialog features a row of buttons: "Copy", "Paste", "Update", "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Figure 5-5. Meter – General (Orifice – ROC800-Series)

Turbine Meter Setup

Meter Run : 1 - Turbine 1 Tag : Turbine 1

General | Inputs | Advanced | Alarms | Calibration Factors | Mass Meter Press Effect

Meter Description : South Turnpike

Station : Station 1

Meter Type
☐ Volume ☒ Mass

Active Alarms : 0

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 5-6. Meter – General (Turbine – ROC800-Series)

Meter Setup

Meter Number : 1 - AGA1 Meter Tag : AGA1

General | Inputs | Gas Quality | Advanced | Alarms

Meter Description :

Meter Type
☒ Orifice ☐ Turbine

Calculation Standard
☒ 1992 AGA3

Alarming
☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Scan Period : 1 Seconds

Pipe Diameter : 8.071 inches
 Orifice Diameter : 4.0 inches
 Low Flow CutOff : 1.0 InH2O

Active Alarms : 0

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 5-7. Meter – General (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series)

Select the number of the Meter Run (**Point Number**) to be configured.

Enter a unique **Tag** (Meter ID or **Meter Tag**) for the meter of up to 10 characters.

Select the **Station** (ROC800-Series) in which this meter belongs.

Enter a unique **Meter Description**, up to 30 characters, to further identify this meter, or to provide information about the meter.

Select the **Meter Type**. For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, select Orifice or Turbine. Select Orifice when measuring flow through an Orifice Plate and select Turbine when measuring flow through a turbine, Positive Displacement (PD), or other linear meter.

For the ROC800-Series with an orifice meter type, the selections are Flange Tapped Orifice or User Defined Device.

For a ROC800-Series with a turbine meter type, the selections are Volume (volume metering device like a turbine meter) or Mass (Micro Motion Coriolis Mass Meter or similar mass meter).

The **Calculation Standard** is used for calculations. The calculation of flow in a Meter Run depends on the type of FloBoss or ROC being configured. Calculation methods include:

- ◆ **AGA3 (1992)** – Orifice metering.
- ◆ **AGA7 (1996)** – Turbine, Rotary, or other linear meters. **AGA8** compressibility method.
- ◆ **ISO (1992)** – Turbine, Rotary, or other linear meters. **AGA8** compressibility method.

You can either enable or disable **Alarming** for this point.

- ◆ For the ROC800-Series, Alarming is Enabled or Disabled in the Meter > Setup > Orifice or Turbine > Alarms tab.
- ◆ For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, Alarming is Enabled or Disabled in the Meter > Setup > General tab.

If you enable alarms, the alarms can be configured using the Alarms tab in the Meter Setup screen. If Enabled, alarms are also logged to the Alarm Log. If you disable alarms, no alarm generates for this point, regardless of the Alarm configuration. Alarm conditions display in the Active Alarms field.

Enter the **Scan Period** (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) value in seconds to determine how often the orifice or turbine meter flow calculation is to be performed.

Enter the inside **Pipe Diameter** of the pipe near the orifice plate in this Meter Run. The units are inches or millimeters.

Enter the **Orifice Diameter** of the orifice plate in this Meter Run. The units are inches or millimeters.

Enter the **Low Flow Cutoff** when the differential pressure value of the metering device is less than the Low Flow Cutoff value, the calculated flow rate is set to zero. A No Flow alarm is recorded in the Alarm Log if Alarming is Enabled. For the AGA3 calculation method, this value is in terms of inches of water column or kPa.

Enter the **Integral Multiplier Period** (IMP) (FloBoss 103) to indicate the frequency of calculation in minutes of the Integral Multiplier Value (IMV) in the flow orifice equation. Note that the Integral Value (IV) portion of the flow equation is calculated once per second.

The Integral Multiplier Period is the amount of time in minutes between calculations of the combined correctional factors, called the **Integral Multiplier Value** (IMV) in the API measurement standard Section 21, Section 1.

The IMP can be no more than 60 minutes in length; the default is 15 minutes and cannot be less than 1 minute.

For a FloBoss 100-Series unit, enter the **Base Multiplier Period (BMP)** to indicate the frequency of calculations. The Base Multiplier Period is the amount of time in minutes between turbine calculations of the combined correctional factors, called the Base Multiplier Value (BMV) in the API measurement standard Section 21, Section 1. The BMV is multiplied by the actual (uncorrected) volume to arrive at the quantity accumulated for the period.

To determine if flow was occurring over the Base Multiplier Period, the number of counts over the period is viewed. If there is an absence of counts or the BMP is set shorter than the normal time it takes to get a pulse, the following occurs:

- ◆ Meter run is defined in a No Flow condition.
- ◆ Accumulated flow is stored as zero for historical data over that time period.
- ◆ Accumulated Energy is stored as zero for historical data over that time period.

The BMP can be no more than 60 minutes in length; the default is 15 minutes and cannot be less than 1 minute.

Enter the **Static K Factor** (FloBoss 100-Series) for the Turbine linear meter constant in counts/pulses per unit volume, such as 4 pulses per cubic foot or 235 pulses/ft³. The English measurement is in ft³ and the cubic meter is in m³. The K factor is used in AGA 7 calculations and may be specified by the user for various low/high flow conditions, as received from a specified input. The K Factor cannot be less than zero. If the Variable K Factor is disabled, a static factor will be used.

The **Variable K Factor** (FloBoss 100-Series), if enabled, allows the user to enter the K Factor values over a range to be measured. If the Variable K Factor is disabled, a static factor will be used.

The K factor is used in AGA 7 calculations, and the Variable K Factor may be specified by the user to keep the **K Factor** value more linear by equating them to an **EU value**, as received from a specified **Input**. The K Factor values cannot be less than zero. Up to five K Factor and EU values can be entered.

The **Active Alarms** field indicates any alarm currently activated. For example, Low indicates that the calculated flow is below the Low Alarm limit. Other alarms can include High, No Flow, and Manual Mode.

5.3.2 Meter – Inputs

The Inputs tab lets you define the field inputs for differential pressure (AGA3), uncorrected volume (AGA7), static pressure, and temperature to be used in the flow calculation.

Select:

- ◆ Meter > Setup > Orifice Meter or Turbine Meter or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for a ROC800-Series device.
- ◆ Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units.

Orifice Meter Setup

Meter Run: 1 - Orifice 1 Tag: Orifice 1

General Inputs Advanced Alarms Calibration Factors

I/O Definition		Values	
Differential Pressure:	FST 1, R5	0.0	InH2O
Static Pressure:	Manual	0.0	PSI
Temperature:	Manual	0.0	Deg F

Stacked DP
☒ Enabled
☐ Disabled

Low DP Input: Manual

Low DP SetPoint: 0.0 InH2O

High DP SetPoint: 0.0 InH2O

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 5-8. Meter – Inputs (Orifice – ROC800-Series)

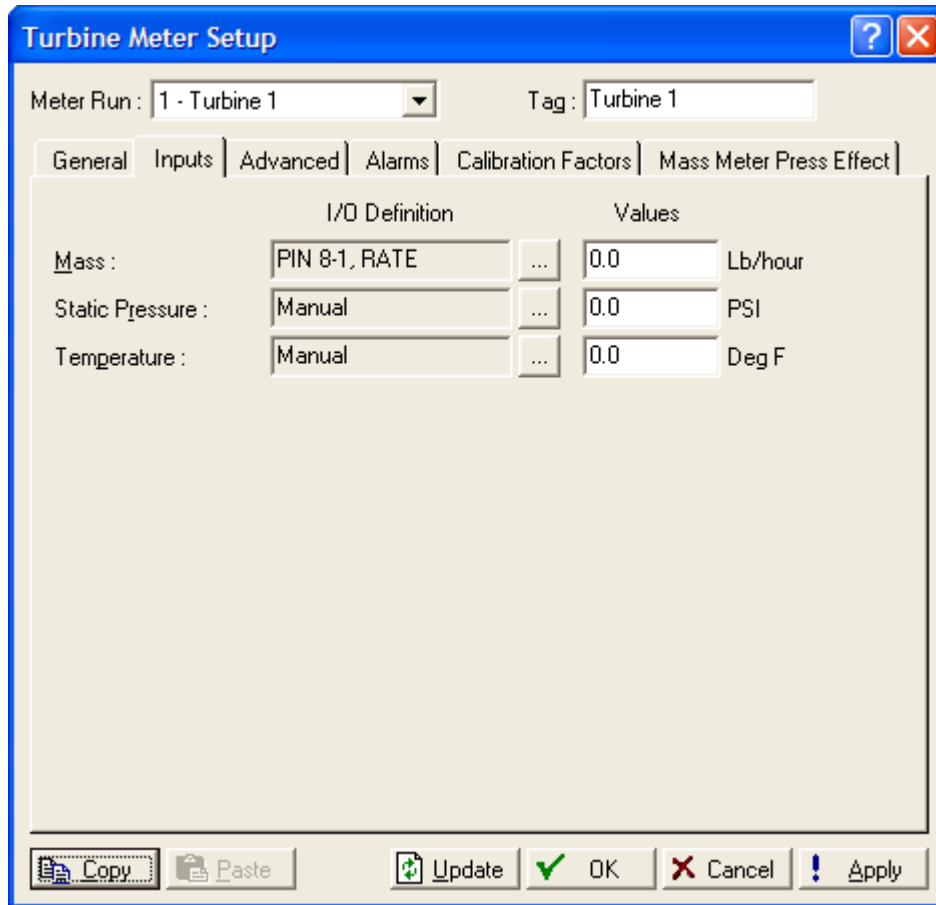


Figure 5-9. Meter – Inputs (Turbine – ROC800-Series)

For Orifice: Click the **Differential Pressure** TLP button to assign the input that senses the differential pressure (high differential pressure, if Stacked Dp is Enabled). The units assumed for the input are inches of water column (In. H₂O) or kPa. If Manual appears, the Values field can be used to enter an engineering units value for the meter input. Otherwise, the Values field indicates the current input value.

For Turbine: Click the **Uncorrected Volume** TLP button to assign the input that senses the input from a turbine meter (typically pulses). The units assumed for the input are MCF per day (1000 ft³/day) or 1000 cubic meters per day (kM³/day). The Values field indicates the current input value, based on non-adjusted pulses from the turbine meter. If Manual appears, the Values field can be used to enter an engineering units value for the meter input.

Click the **Static Pressure** TLP button to assign the input that senses the static pressure. The units assumed for the input are PSIG / PSIA or kPaG / kPaA. If Manual appears, the Values field can be used to enter an engineering units value for the Static Pressure input. Otherwise, the Values field indicates the current input value.

Click the **Temperature** TLP button to assign the input that senses the temperature of the flowing gas. The units assumed for the input are degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius. If Manual appears, the Values field can be used to enter an engineering units value for the Temperature input. Otherwise, the Values field indicates the current input value.

Enable **Stacked DP** to use stacked differential pressure transmitters used for low and high pressure ranges.

Click the **Low DP Input** TLP button to assign the input for monitoring low differential pressure. The Stacked DP parameter must be Enabled for this input to be used. This input may be left in Manual Mode when Stacked DP is disabled.

Enter the **Low DP SetPoint** to determine when switchover to the low differential pressure input occurs. When High DP input is active and the High DP reading drops below this value, the Low DP input becomes the active input. The units assumed for the input are inches of water column (In H₂O) or kPa.

Enter the **High DP SetPoint** to determine when switchover to the high differential pressure input occurs. When the Low DP input is active and the Low DP reading rises above this Setpoint, the High DP input becomes the active input. The units assumed for the input are inches of water column (In. H₂O) or kPa.

Select an **Averaging Technique** (FloBoss 100-Series) for the Meter Run.

- ◆ **Flow Dependant Linear** – This is the simplest and most commonly used method. This method discards samples for periods when there is no measurable flow, and performs a straightforward (linear) average of the remaining samples to compute the minute and hour values. The value specified in the Low Flow Cutoff of the Meter setup determines the values. When no flow occurs, all values are sampled.
- ◆ **Flow Dependant Formulaic** – This method discards samples for periods when there is no flow. However, in calculating the average, this method typically takes the square root of each sample before averaging the samples together, and then squares the result. This formulaic method produces a slightly lower value than the linear method.
- ◆ **Flow Weighted Linear** – This method does not discard any samples; instead, it "weights" each sample by multiplying it by a flow value (square root of the differential pressure measured during the sample period). Next, a linear average is calculated by dividing the sum of the flow-weighted sample by the sum of the flow values. This result includes minute and hourly values that are more reflective of short periods of high flow.
- ◆ **Flow Weighted Formulaic** – This method combines the flow-weighting action with the formulaic averaging technique, both of which were described previously.

5.3.3 Meter – Gas Quality (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407)

For FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, the Gas Quality tab defines the mole percentages of twenty gas components, as well as the Heating Value Basis, the Heating Value, and the Specific Gravity. If other meter runs have similar characteristics, use Copy and Paste to create Gas Quality configurations.

Select Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units.

Meter Setup

Meter Number: 1 - Meter #1 Meter Tag: Meter #1

General | Inputs | **Gas Quality** | Advanced | Sampler | Instrument Calib. | Alarms

Nitrogen	1.0	Heptane	0.0
CO2	0.0	Octane	0.0
Methane	96.0	Nonane	0.0
Ethane	3.0	Decane	0.0
Propane	0.0	H2S	0.0
n-Butane	0.0	Water	0.0
i-Butane	0.0	Helium	0.0
n-Pentane	0.0	Oxygen	0.0
i-Pentane	0.0	CO	0.0
Hexane	0.0	Hydrogen	0.0

Total Mole %: 100.00

Log Methane Adjust
☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Heating Value Basis
☒ Dry ☐ Wet ☐ As Deliv

Heating Value
☒ Calculate ☐ Enter
 1027.152 ☐ BTU/Lb ☒ BTU/CF

Specific Gravity
☐ Calculate ☒ Enter
 0.5735421

Gas Quality
☒ Constant ☐ Live

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 5-10. Gas Quality (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407)

Enter the mole percent of each **Gas Component**, or use the default values of 96% Methane, 3% Ethane, and 1% Nitrogen. This value is required to calculate the compressibility of gas using the AGA 8 detailed method. If the AGA 8 detailed method is selected, the **Total Mole %** should equal 100% after all the component mole percentages have been entered.

The **Gas Quality** field (FloBoss 100-Series) determines where to get Gas Quality readings. Live indicates readings come from a gas chromatograph or periodically downloaded from a host and will not be entered in the Event Log. Constant indicates that the readings will be entered in the Event Log.

This field indicates the total (sum) of all gas component mole percentages. The ROC or FloBoss will adjust the Methane level and ensure this value is 100%.

If the percentages are automatically adjusted to total 100 and you would like to log this adjustment, select Enabled in the **Log Methane Adjust** field. If you select Disable, this does not prevent the ROC or FloBoss from automatically adjusting the Methane, but does prevent an Event Log entry.

Select between Dry (no water vapor present in the gas), Wet (saturated water vapor present in the gas), or As Delivered (may contain some water vapor) for the Heating Value Basis. This selection indicates on what basis the entered Heating Value was determined and affects the flow or energy calculations.

When the Wet Gas option is selected, the ROC or FloBoss calculates the mole percentage of water based on the algorithm from IAPWS – IF97 standards and adjusts the other mole percentages accordingly.

Select either Calculate or Enter for the **Heating Value** of a specified quantity of gas. If you choose Calculate, then the Heating Value is calculated from the gas composition data. If you choose Enter, the value entered will be used in the energy calculation. Use the Units parameter on the Advanced tab to toggle between volume or mass measurement of English units represented as BTU/Cf or BTU/Lb and the metric unit values as MJ/M³ or MJ/Kg.

Select either Calculate or Enter for the **Spec Gravity** ratio of the molar mass of the gas to the molar mass of air. The value entered for standard conditions is used in the flow calculation. The Specific Gravity value cannot be less than 0.07.

If Calculate, the ROC or FloBoss calculate the Specific Gravity value to be used in the flow calculations.

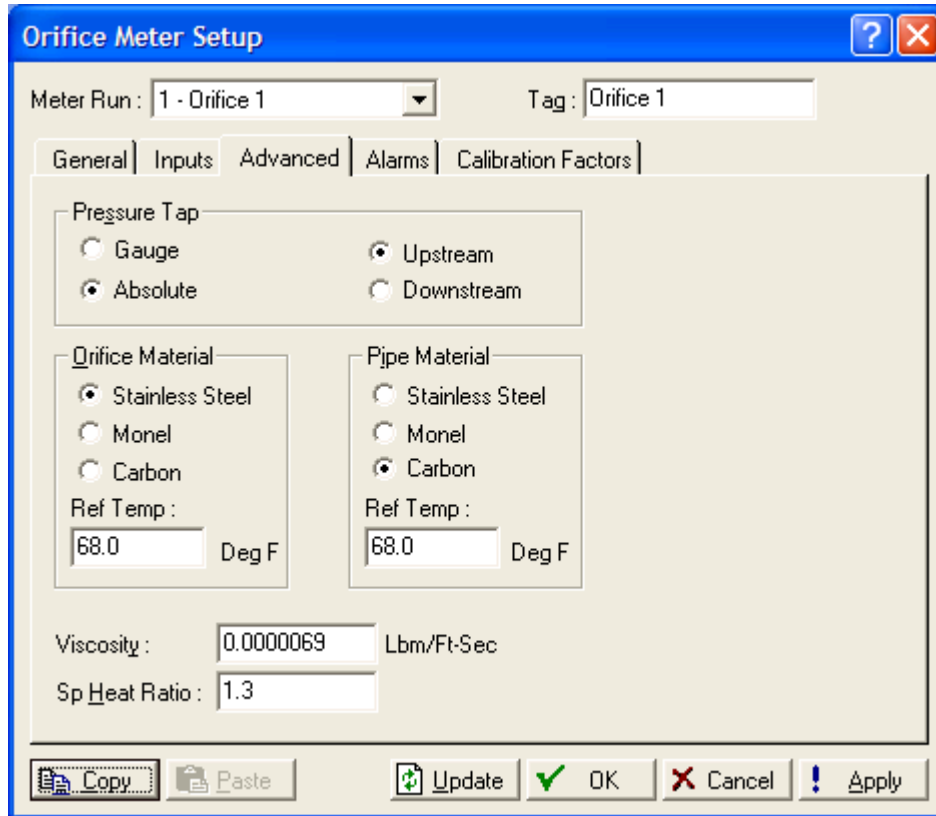
If Enter, the value entered is used in the flow calculation. The Specific Gravity should be entered for the gas at standard conditions and cannot be less than 0.07.

5.3.4 Meter – Advanced

The Advanced tab specifies additional parameters for the meter.

Select:

- ◆ Meter > Setup > Orifice Meter or Turbine Meter or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for a ROC800-Series device.
- ◆ Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units.



The image shows a software dialog box titled "Orifice Meter Setup". At the top, there are two fields: "Meter Run:" with a dropdown menu showing "1 - Orifice 1" and "Tag:" with a text field containing "Orifice 1". Below these are five tabs: "General", "Inputs", "Advanced" (which is selected), "Alarms", and "Calibration Factors". The "Advanced" tab contains several sections: "Pressure Tap" with radio buttons for "Gauge", "Absolute" (selected), "Upstream" (selected), and "Downstream"; "Orifice Material" with radio buttons for "Stainless Steel" (selected), "Monel", and "Carbon"; "Pipe Material" with radio buttons for "Stainless Steel", "Monel", and "Carbon" (selected); "Ref Temp:" fields for both orifice and pipe materials, both set to "68.0 Deg F"; "Viscosity:" set to "0.0000069 Lbm/Ft-Sec"; and "Sp Heat Ratio:" set to "1.3". At the bottom, there are buttons for "Copy", "Paste", "Update", "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Figure 5-11. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – ROC800-Series)

Turbine Meter Setup [?] [X]

Meter Run : 1 - Turbine 1 Tag : Turbine 1

General | Inputs | **Advanced** | Alarms | Calibration Factors | Mass Meter Press Effect

Static Pressure Units

☒ Gauge
☐ Absolute

Miscellaneous

Static K Factor : 1.0 Pulses/Lb
No Flow Time : 5 Secs
Low Flow Cutoff : 0.0 Lb/hour

Speed of Sound

☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Measured : 0.0 Ft/Sec
Calculated : 0.0 Ft/Sec

Variable K Factors

☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

	K Factor	Frequency
1	1.0	0.0
2	1.0	0.0
3	1.0	0.0
4	1.0	0.0
5	1.0	0.0
6	1.0	0.0
7	1.0	0.0
8	1.0	0.0
9	1.0	0.0
10	1.0	0.0
11	1.0	0.0
12	1.0	0.0

[Copy] [Paste] [Update] [OK] [Cancel] [Apply]

Figure 5-12. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – ROC800-Series)

Meter Setup

Meter Number : 1 - Meter #1 Meter Tag : Meter #1

General | Inputs | Gas Quality | **Advanced** | Sampler | Instrument Calib. | Alarms

☒ Detailed
☐ Gross1
☐ Gross2

☒ US
☐ Metric

☐ Calculate ☒ Enter
 14.45 PSIA

☒ Calculate ☐ Enter
 32.11478 Ft/Sec2

Base Pressure : 14.73 PSIA
 Base Temperature : 60.0 Deg F
 Elevation : 500.0 Feet
 Latitude : 35.0 Deg
 Viscosity : 0.010268 Cp
 Sp Heat Ratio : 1.3

☒ Stainless Steel
☐ Monel
☐ Carbon
 Ref Temp : 68.0 Deg F

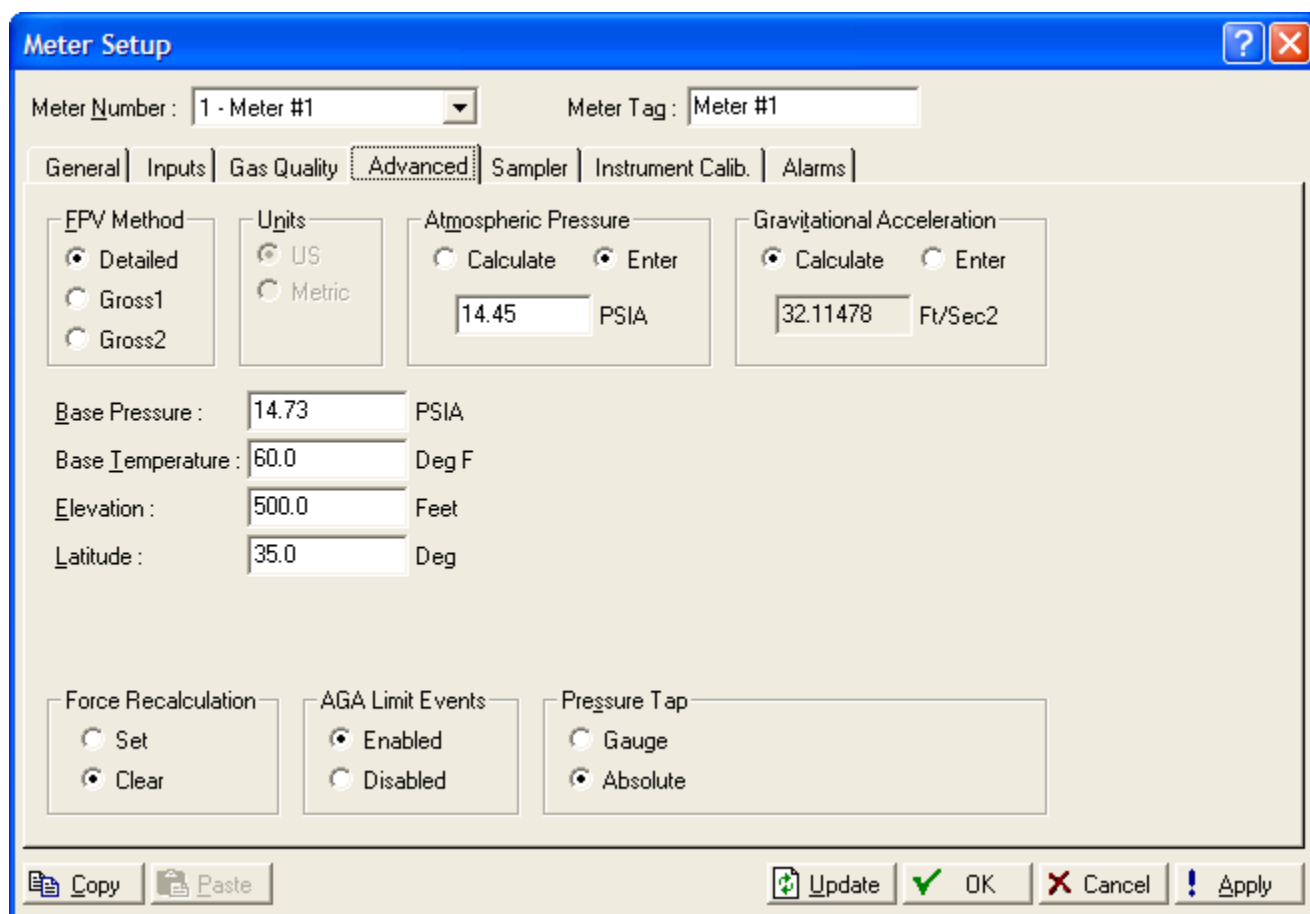
☐ Stainless Steel
☐ Monel
☒ Carbon
 Ref Temp : 68.0 Deg F

☐ Set
☒ Clear

☒ Enabled
☐ Disabled

☐ Gauge ☒ Upstream ☒ Flange
☒ Absolute ☐ Downstream ☐ Pipe

Figure 5-13. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – FloBoss 100-Series)



Meter Setup

Meter Number : 1 - Meter #1 Meter Tag : Meter #1

General | Inputs | Gas Quality | **Advanced** | Sampler | Instrument Calib. | Alarms

FPV Method
☒ Detailed
☐ Gross1
☐ Gross2

Units
☒ US
☐ Metric

Atmospheric Pressure
☐ Calculate ☒ Enter
 14.45 PSIA

Gravitational Acceleration
☒ Calculate ☐ Enter
 32.11478 Ft/Sec2

Base Pressure : 14.73 PSIA
 Base Temperature : 60.0 Deg F
 Elevation : 500.0 Feet
 Latitude : 35.0 Deg

Force Recalculation
☐ Set
☒ Clear

AGA Limit Events
☒ Enabled
☐ Disabled

Pressure Tap
☐ Gauge
☒ Absolute

Figure 5-14. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – FloBoss 100-Series)

Meter Setup

Meter Number : 1 - AGA1 Meter Tag : AGA1

General Inputs Gas Quality Advanced Alarms

☒ Detailed
☐ Gross1
☐ Gross2

Atmospheric Pressure
☐ Calculate ☒ Enter
 14.45 PSIA

Units
☒ US
☐ Metric

Base Pressure : 14.73 PSIA
 Base Temperature : 60.0 Deg F
 Elevation : 500.0 Feet
 Latitude : 35.0 Deg
 User Correction Factor : 1.0
 Viscosity : 0.0000069 Lbm/Ft-Sec
 Sp Heat Ratio : 1.3

Orifice Material
☐ Stainless Steel
☒ Monel
☐ Carbon
 Ref Temp : 68.0 Deg F

Pipe Material
☐ Stainless Steel
☐ Monel
☒ Carbon
 Ref Temp : 68.0 Deg F

Pressure Tap
☐ Gauge ☒ Upstream ☐ Flange
☒ Absolute ☐ Downstream ☐ Pipe

Figure 5-15. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – ROC300-Series)

Meter Setup

Meter Number : 1 - AGA1 Meter Tag : AGA1

General | Inputs | Gas Quality | **Advanced** | Alarms

☒ Detailed
☐ Gross1
☐ Gross2

Atmospheric Pressure
☐ Calculate ☒ Enter
 14.45 PSIA

Units
☒ US
☐ Metric

Base Pressure : 14.73 PSIA
 Base Temperature : 60.0 Deg F
 Elevation : 500.0 Feet
 Latitude : 35.0 Deg
 User Correction Factor : 1.0

Pressure Tap
☐ Gauge
☒ Absolute

Figure 5-16. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – ROC300-Series)

Meter Setup

Meter Number : 1 - AGA1 Meter Tag : AGA1

General Inputs Gas Quality Advanced Alarms

☒ Detailed
☐ Gross1
☐ Gross2

Atmospheric Pressure
☐ Calculate ☒ Enter
 14.45 PSIA

Units
☒ US ☐ Metric
☐ CCF/MBTU
☒ MCF/MMBTU
☐ 10MCF/MMMBTU

Base Pressure : 14.73 PSIA
 Base Temperature : 60.0 Deg F
 Elevation : 500.0 Feet
 Latitude : 35.0 Deg
 User Correction Factor : 1.0
 Viscosity : 0.0000069 Lbm/Ft-Sec
 Sp Heat Ratio : 1.3

Orifice Material
☒ Stainless Steel
☐ Monel
☐ Carbon
 Ref Temp : 68.0 Deg F

Pipe Material
☐ Stainless Steel
☐ Monel
☒ Carbon
 Ref Temp : 68.0 Deg F

Pressure Tap
☐ Gauge ☐ Upstream ☒ Flange
☒ Absolute ☒ Downstream ☐ Pipe

Figure 5-17. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – FloBoss 407)

Meter Setup

Meter Number : 1 - AGA1 Meter Tag : AGA1

General | Inputs | Gas Quality | **Advanced** | Alarms

FPV Method

- ☒ Detailed
- ☐ Gross1
- ☐ Gross2

Atmospheric Pressure

- ☐ Calculate
- ☒ Enter

14.45 PSIA

Units

- ☒ US
- ☐ Metric

- ☐ CCF/MBTU
- ☒ MCF/MMBTU
- ☐ 10MCF/MMMBTU

Base Pressure : 14.73 PSIA

Base Temperature : 60.0 Deg F

Elevation : 500.0 Feet

Latitude : 35.0 Deg

User Correction Factor : 1.0

Meter Factor : 1.0

Pressure Tap

- ☐ Gauge
- ☒ Absolute

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 5-18. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – FloBoss 407)

For AGA calculations, select **FPV Method** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) Detailed, Gross I, and Gross II (methods of calculating the compressibility factor). The Detailed method provides the highest accuracy in a broader range of measurement conditions; however, one of the Gross methods can be used when:

- ◆ Temperature is between 0 and 54°C (32 and 130°F).
- ◆ Pressure is between 0 and 8274 kPa (0 and 1200 psia).
- ◆ Gas composition is within the normal range as defined in the 1992 AGA8 report.

Briefly, the three **FPV Methods** are:

Detailed – Requires the natural gas composition in mole percent to be entered for all components. Refer to the information on the Gas Quality.

Gross I – Uses the Specific Gravity of the natural gas, its heating value, and the quantity of non-hydrocarbon components as follows:

- ◆ Specific Gravity.
- ◆ Real gas gross heating value per unit volume.
- ◆ The mole % of CO₂.

Gross II – Uses the Specific Gravity of the natural gas, as well as the quantity of non-hydrocarbon components as follows:

- ◆ Specific Gravity.
- ◆ The mole % of CO₂.
- ◆ The mole % of N₂
- ❖ **Note:** If either Gross Method is chosen, manually enter the Specific Gravity and Heating Value in the Gas Quality screen. For Gross Method II, the Heating Value is required only for calculating the gas energy flow.

Select either US or Metric **Units** for calculations (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407). If Metric units are selected, then the AGA calculation expects all inputs to be in the indicated units (such as kPa for the static pressure input); keep in mind that any existing entered values are not converted.

For the FloBoss 407, select the Units to be output by the flow calculation. This also defines the Units archived in history. The US Units selections are CCF/MBTU, MCF/MMBTU, and 10MCF/MMMBTU. The cubic Metric Units selections are 100M³/MJoules, km³/GJoules, and 10km³/TJoules. The default value is MCF/MMBTU and km³/Gjoules.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, units are selected on the ROC > Information screen.

Select either Calculate or Enter **Atmospheric Pressure** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) for the value of the atmospheric pressure (absolute) at the metering location. If Calculate is selected, the value is calculated from Elevation. If Enter is selected, type a value for the pressure. The units of measurement are in PSIA or kPaA. If entered, the value must be greater than zero.

Select Calculate or Enter **Gravitational Acceleration** (FloBoss 100-Series) for the value at the metering location. If Calculate is selected, the value is calculated from Elevation and Latitude. If Enter is selected, type a value for the acceleration. The units of measurement are in ft/sec² or M/sec². If entered, the value must be greater than zero.

Enter the flow measurement **Base Pressure** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) specified in the gas contract. The pressure units are in PSIA or kPaA.

Enter the flow measurement **Base Temperature** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) specified in the gas contract. The temperature units are in degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius.

Enter the **Elevation** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) of the metering location. The units are in feet or meters. Elevation is required for the calculation of atmospheric pressure and gravitational acceleration.

Enter the geographic **Latitude** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) of the metering location. Latitude is required for calculation of gravitational acceleration. The units are in degrees and minutes, separated by a decimal point. For example: 46.15.

Specify the **User Correction Factor** as desired. This need not be limited to gravitational adjustments.

- ❖ **Note:** For a FloBoss 100-Series or ROC800-Series, the Gravity Correction factor may be calculated. A manually entered **User Correction Factor** is available on the Calibration Factors tab.

Enter the dynamic **Viscosity** of the flowing gas. The units of measure for the ROC800-Series and the FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series will be either lb/ft-sec for US Units or cP for Metric units and for the FloBoss 100-Series will always be cP (centipoise).

Enter the Specific Heat Ratio (**Sp Heat Ratio**) of the gas (defined as the specific heat of the gas at constant pressure divided by the specific heat of the gas at constant volume). Accepted practice for natural gas applications is to use a value of 1.3, which was used to develop the expansion factor tables in the AGA 3 Report – Part 3. If entered, the value must be greater than zero.

For turbine meters, enter a **Meter Factor** (FloBoss 407) value to adjust for inaccuracies associated with the meter's performance as determined at the time of proving.

For orifice meters, select the **Orifice Material**: Stainless Steel, Monel, or Carbon Steel. Nearly all natural gas applications use stainless steel orifice plates.

For orifice meters, enter a value for the **Reference Temp** of the orifice plate. This is the temperature at which the bore diameter of the orifice plate was measured. The units of measurement are in degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius.

For orifice meters, select the meter tube material (**Pipe Material**): Stainless Steel, Monel, or Carbon Steel. Nearly all natural gas applications use carbon steel meter tubes.

For orifice meters, enter a value for the **Reference Temp** of the pipe. This is the temperature at which the internal diameter of the pipe was measured. The units of measurement are in degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius.

Enter the **Static K Factor** (ROC800-Series) for the Turbine linear meter constant in counts/pulses per unit volume or mass, such as 4 pulses per cubic foot or 235 pulses/ft³. The volume units are in pulses ft³ or pulses m³. The mass units are pulses lb or pulses kg. The Static K Factor cannot be less than zero.

The **Variable K Factor** (ROC800-Series), if enabled, allows the user to enter the K Factor values at multiple input frequencies. If the Variable K Factor is disabled, a static factor will be used.

The K factor is used in the flow calculations to convert raw pulses to either Volume or Mass. This conversion may vary with flow rate and Variable K Factors allow you to specify flow rates as indicated by Frequency. The K Factor values cannot be less than zero. Up to twelve K Factor and Frequency values can be entered.

When the value of the uncorrected volume input is less than or equal to the **Low Flow Cutoff** value (ROC800-Series), the calculated flow is set equal to zero. A No Flow alarm is recorded in the Alarm Log if Alarming is Enabled. The units are MCF/Day (1000 cubic feet per day) and the Metric units are km³/Day (1000 cubic meters per day). This parameter is only used if the uncorrected volume input selected is NOT a pulse input point type.

Enter the **No Flow Time** (ROC800-Series). This is the amount of time without a pulse after which the ROC declares a No Flow condition. The flow cutoff is the analog signal lower limit; below this limit a no flow condition exists.

When the **Speed of Sound** (ROC800-Series) calculation is Enabled, the Speed of Sound is calculated per AGA10 feet per second or meter per second based on the Pressure, Temperature, and Gas Composition. AGA8 Detail Method must be selected and a full Gas Composition entered to calculate the Speed of Sound.

For diagnostic purposes, the measures Speed of Sound may be read through a serial connection to an ultrasonic flow meter and stored under the measured Speed of Sound to be compared to the calculated value.

Enable the **AGA Limit Events** (FloBoss 100-Series) if the FloBoss unit is to log AGA events. An AGA limit event is logged when an input to the AGA calculation is outside the specified limits or the calculation fails. Disable this parameter if the FloBoss should ignore AGA calculation related events. Disabling this parameter will prevent the Event Log from filling with AGA limit type events.

Select **Force Recalculation** (FloBoss 100-Series) and click Apply to cause a full recalculation of the flow without waiting for the next normal recalculation. Normal recalculation periods are established in Meter Setup screen using the Integral Multiplier Period or the Base Multiplier Period. Upon forcing a recalculation, the accumulations are zeroed and the flow value is logged as a new entry. The Force Recalculation parameter is automatically set to Clear after the recalculation completes.

Up to three selections can be made for the **Pressure Tap** used in this Meter Run.

- ◆ **Gauge or Absolute** – Select either Gauge or Absolute as the pressure tap type. This choice must match the static pressure type is actually measured by the sensor. The MVS sensor, DVS sensor, or other pressure transmitter can be ordered to provide either absolute or gauge measurements.
- ◆ **Upstream or Downstream** – For an orifice run, select either Upstream or Downstream to indicate the location of the static pressure tap in relation to the orifice and normal flow. Upstream is the default.
- ◆ **Flange or Pipe** – (ROC300-Series) For an orifice run, this indicates either Flange or Pipe type of pressure taps in this Meter Run. For a 1992 AGA calculation, only Flange is selected.

5.3.5 Meter – Sampler (FloBoss 100-Series)

The FloBoss 100-Series uses the fields in the Sampler tab to enable you to set up the Discrete Output (DO) of the FloBoss to send a pulse output to another device, such as an odorizer, and control a gas sampler for a Meter Run. To use this feature, select the Enabled option under Sampler Control.

Select Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree for FloBoss 100-Series.

The screenshot shows the 'Meter Setup' dialog box with the 'Sampler' tab selected. The 'Meter Number' is set to '1 - Meter #1' and the 'Meter Tag' is 'Meter #1'. The 'Sampler Control' section has the 'Enabled' radio button selected. The 'Sampler Volume Accum' is set to '1000.0' with units 'Ft3'. The 'Sampler Duration' is set to '1.0' with units 'Seconds'. The bottom of the dialog features buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 5-19. Meter – Sampler (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select Enabled in the **Sampler Control** field for the Sampler to override the built-in DO located at Point Number B4 (for 4 point I/O) or at Point Number B5 DO-2 (for 6 point I/O).

Enter the **Sampler Volume Accum** (number of cubic feet) of gas to be metered between pulses. For example, if an odorizer needs to track every 100 cubic feet of gas being metered, enter 100. The units are cubic meters m^3 (Ft^3). The Sampler Volume Accum value is based upon the instantaneous flowrate.

Enter the **Sampler Duration** to specify how long (in seconds) the pulse to the device needs to be. This is how long it stays ON. The Discrete Output (DO2 on termination board) is turned on for the amount of time set in the Sampler Duration every time the Sampler Volume Accum value is exceeded.

5.3.6 Meter – Instrument Calibration (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select Meter > Setup > Instrument Calibration tab to calibrated devices.

The screenshot shows the 'Meter Setup' dialog box with the 'Instrument Calib.' tab selected. The 'Meter Number' is set to '1 - Meter #1' and the 'Meter Tag' is 'Meter #1'. The 'General' tab is also visible. The 'Instrument Calibration' section contains four sub-sections: 'Dead Weight Calibration', 'Water Manometer Calibration', 'Mercury Manometer Instrument', and 'User'. In 'Dead Weight Calibration', 'Static Press' and 'Diff Press' are both set to 'No'. In 'Water Manometer Calibration', 'Diff Press' is set to 'No'. In 'Mercury Manometer Instrument', 'Mercury Manometer Used' is set to 'No'. The 'User' section shows a 'User Correction Factor' of 1.0. The 'Calibrated Grav. Accel.' is 32.174 Ft/Sec2. The 'Calibrated H2O Temp' and 'Calibrated Air Temp' are both 60.0 Deg F. The 'Ambient Hg Temp' and 'Calibrated Hg Temp' are both 60.0 Deg F. The bottom of the dialog has buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 5-20. Meter – Instrument Calibration (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select the **Dead Weight Calibration** option (FloBoss 100-Series). If a deadweight tester is used to calibrate the Differential Pressure or the Static Pressure, select the respective Yes option. Enter the **Calibrated Grav. Accel.** value.

Select the **Mercury Manometer Instrument Used** option (FloBoss 103). If a mercury manometer is used, select the Yes option.

Enter the **Ambient Hg Temp** option (FloBoss 103). If the Ambient or Calibrated temperature of the mercury is different from the indicated values, enter the correct values. The default is 60 degrees Fahrenheit or 60 degrees Celsius.

Enter the **Calibrated Hg Temp** option (FloBoss 103). If the Ambient or Calibrated temperature of the mercury is different from the indicated values, enter the correct values. The default is 60 degrees Fahrenheit or 60 degrees Celsius.

Select the **Water Manometer Calibration** option (FloBoss 103). If a water manometer is used to calibrate the differential pressure (Diff Press), select the Yes option.

Enter the **Calibrated H₂O Temp** option (FloBoss 103). If the calibrated temperature of the water is different from the indicated values, enter the correct values. The default is 60 degrees Fahrenheit or 60 degrees Celsius.

Enter the **Calibrated Air Temp** option (FloBoss 103). If the calibrated temperature of the air is different from the indicated values, enter the correct values. The default is 60 degrees Fahrenheit or 60 degrees Celsius.

Enter the **User Correction Factor** value that is multiplied by the base volume flow equation, allowing you to make any desired adjustment to the flow. If you use the default value of 1, no correction is applied.

5.3.7 Meter – Calibration Factors (ROC800-Series)

The Calibration Factors tab displays a dialog box containing a number of instrument-specific parameters that can affect calibration of the meter inputs.

Selecting the Meter > Setup Orifice or Turbine > Calibration Factors tab (ROC800-Series) displays a dialog box containing a number of instrument-specific parameters that can affect calibration of the meter inputs. The options allow you to set calibration parameters for the Analog Inputs for this flow calculation.

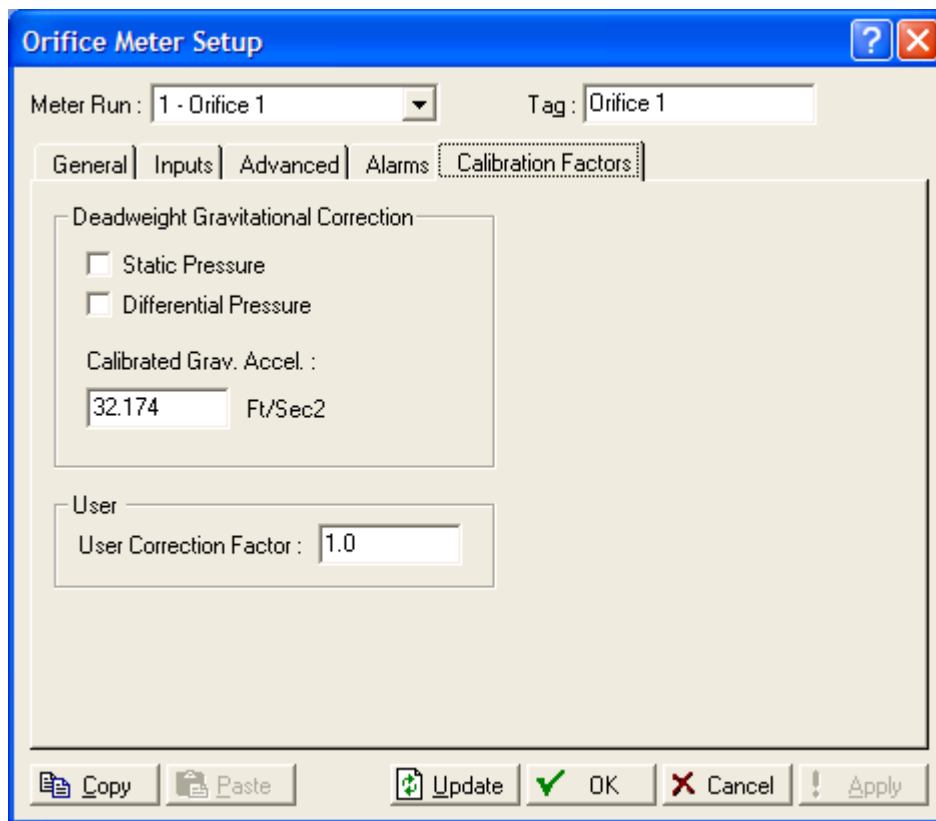


Figure 5-21. Meter – Calibration Factors (Orifice – ROC800-Series)

Select whether or not to correct for local gravity effect on deadweight calibration for **Static Pressure** and/or **Differential Pressure**. The factor Fpwl is multiplied by the base volume flow equation once for each selection.

The factor F_{pwl} is used to correct for the effect of local gravity on the weights of a deadweight calibrator. The calibrator weights are usually sized for use at a standard gravitational force or at some specified gravitational force. A correction factor must then be applied to correct the calibrations to the local gravitational force. When a deadweight calibrator is used for the differential pressure and the static pressure, both must be corrected for local gravity. This involves using F_{pwl} twice.

Enter the **Calibrated Grav. Accel.** (Calibrated Gravitational Acceleration) used to calibrate the weights of the deadweight tester being used. The units assumed for the input are Ft/Sec^2 or m/Sec^2 .

Enter the **User Correction Factor** value that is multiplied by the base volume flow equation, allowing you to make any desired adjustment to the flow. If you use the default value of 1, no correction is applied.

5.3.8 Meter – Alarms

The **Alarms** tab allows you to configure Station-wide alarming parameters.

For the ROC800-Series, Alarming is Enabled or Disabled for each meter in the Meter > Setup > Orifice or Turbine > Alarms tab. Enabled Alarms can be based on either the Corrected Volume Flow Rate per Day, the Corrected Volume Flow Rate per Hour, the Mass Flow Rate per Day, or the Mass Flow Rate per Hour.

Meter > Setup or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units.

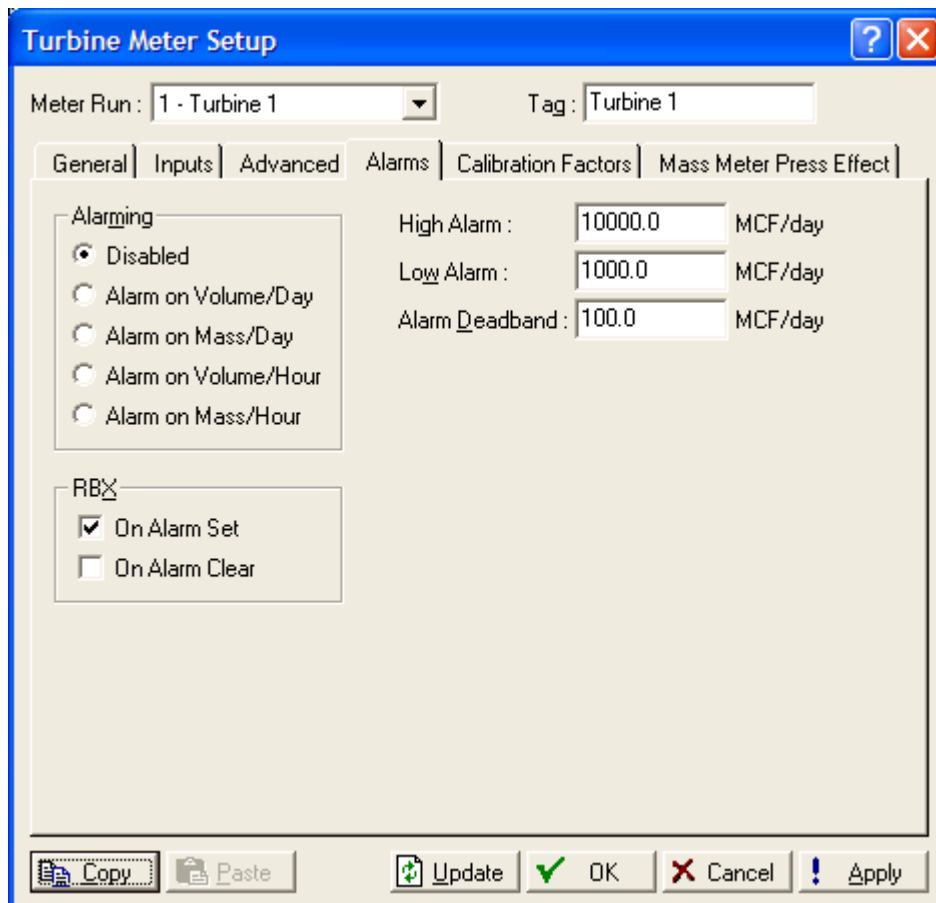


Figure 5-22. Meter – Alarms (ROC800-Series)

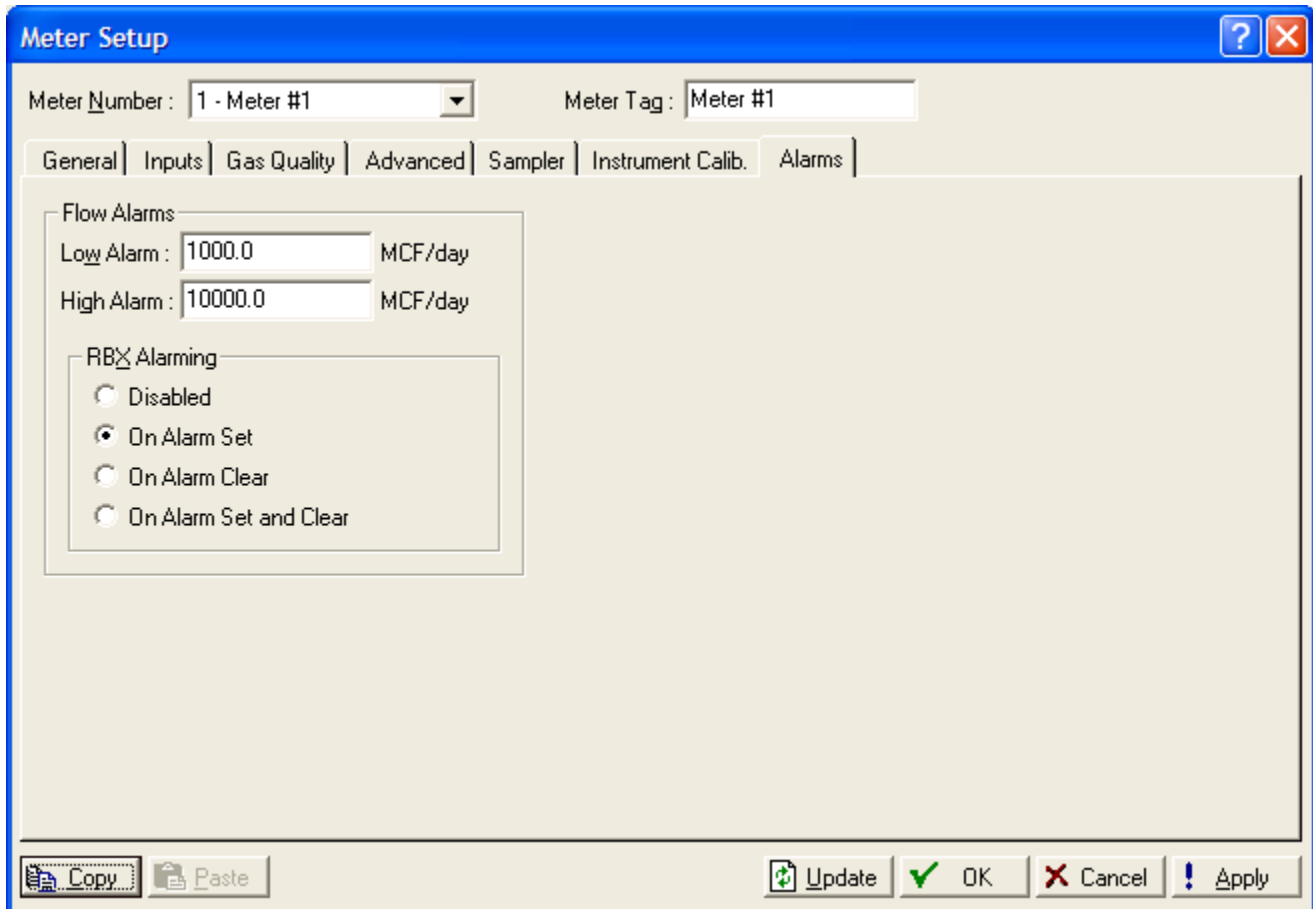


Figure 5-23. Meter – Alarms (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, ROC300-Series)

You can either enable or disable alarming for each meter run or Station in a ROC800-Series. Alarms can be configured for the individual Meter Runs and/or the Stations, generating meter-specific and/or Station-wide alarm conditions.

If you enable alarms, the alarms can be configured using the Alarms tab and are logged to the Alarm Log. To conserve log space, alarms should be enabled only when necessary. If you disable alarms, no alarm generates for this point, regardless of the Alarm configuration. Alarm conditions display in the Active Alarms fields located in the Meter Setup General tab or the ROC800-Series Station Configuration General tab.

Even if you do not plan to use all the alarms, check and adjust the value of each one so that no false alarms generate.

For a ROC800-Series, select the **Alarming** option:

- ◆ **Disabled** – No alarms occur for this Station.
- ◆ **Alarm on Volume / Day** – Alarm values occur based on volume per day.
- ◆ **Alarm on Mass / Day** – Alarm values occur based on mass per day.
- ◆ **Alarm on Volume / Hour** – Alarm values occur based on volume per hour.
- ◆ **Alarm on Mass / Hour** – Alarm values occur based on mass per hour.

For the ROC800-Series, Alarming is Enabled or Disabled for each meter in the Meter > Setup > Orifice or Turbine > Alarms tab. Enabled Alarms can be based on either the Corrected Volume Flow Rate per Day, the Corrected Volume Flow Rate per Hour, the Mass Flow Rate per Day, or the Mass Flow Rate per Hour.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, Alarming is Enabled or Disabled in the Meter > Setup > General tab.

Enter the **High Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the calculated Flow Rate value must rise to generate a High Alarm. For the ROC300-Series, FloBoss 100-Series or FloBoss 407, units assumed for the input are MCF per day (1000 ft³/day) or cubic meters per day (m³/day). For a ROC800-Series, the units are depended upon the alarm selected.

Enter the **Low Alarm** limit value, in engineering units, to which the calculated Flow Rate value must fall to generate a Low Alarm. For the ROC300-Series, FloBoss 100-Series or FloBoss 407, units assumed for the input are MCF per day (1000 ft³/day) or cubic meters per day (m³/day). For a ROC800-Series, the units are depended upon the alarm selected.

For a ROC800-Series, the Low Alarm and High Alarm units are depended upon the alarm selected.

Units	US	Metric
Vol/Day	MCF/Day	km ³ /Day
Vol/Hour	Ft ³ /Hr	m ³ /Hr
Mass/Day	Mlb/Day	Tones/Day
Mass/Hour	Lb/Hr	Kg/Hr

Alarm Deadband (ROC800-Series) is the value, in engineering units, that is an inactive zone above the Low Alarm limits and below the High Alarm limits. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit. This also prevents the Alarm Log from being over-filled with data.

The **Alarm Deadband Time** (ROC800-Series) is the amount of time, in seconds, that is an inactive zone before and after the sensor alarm is triggered. The purpose of the Alarm Deadband Time is to prevent the alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the alarm limit. This also prevents the Alarm Log from being over-filled with data.

Select the **SRBX Alarming** or **RBX Alarming** option to configure Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception (SRBX or RBX) alarming for this point.

- ◆ **Disabled** – The RBX Alarming is turned OFF.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set** – When the point enters an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Clear** – When the point leaves an alarm condition, the ROC or FloBoss generates a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception message to the host.
- ◆ **On Alarm Set and Clear** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) – In either condition, an RBX message generates to the host.
 - ❖ **Note:** SRBX Alarming requires the ROC > Comm Ports > RBX or SRBX to be properly configured.

5.3.9 Meter – Mass Meter Pressure Effect (ROC800-Series)

If the Turbine Meter Input Type on the General tab was configured to Mass, the Mass Meter Press Effect tab appears.

Meter > Setup > Orifice Meter or Turbine Meter or click on the meter in the Configuration Tree, for a ROC800-Series device.

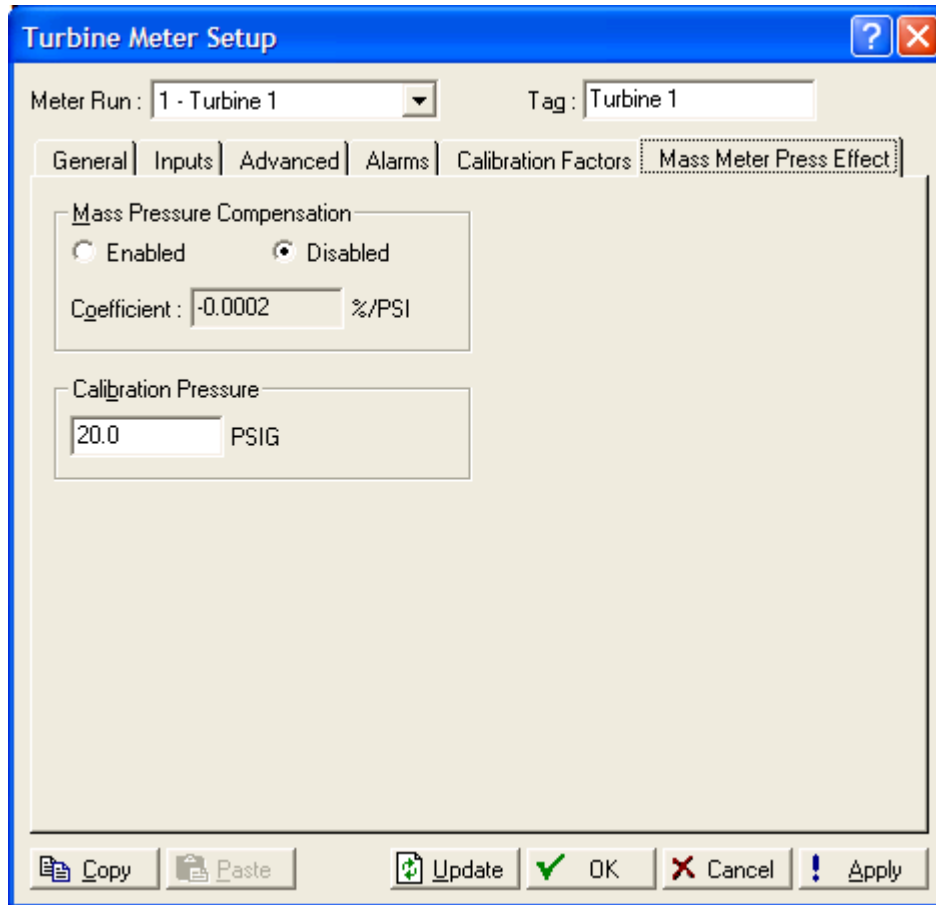


Figure 5-24. Meter – Mass Meter Pressure Effect (Turbine – ROC800-Series)

Enable **Mass Pressure Compensation** when the mass input requires compensation for pressure effect on the Coriolis tube. If enabled, enter a pressure correction **Coefficient** in percent per PSI. This value is supplied by the manufacturer of the mass meter.

The pressure of the mass meter as calibrated in PSI.

SECTION 6 – CONFIGURING AND VIEWING HISTORY

This section describes the history databases in the ROC and FloBoss flow computers. It also describes the history collection configuration process for the ROC and FloBoss units and associated reports.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
6.1 History.....	6-1
6.2 History Setup (FloBoss 100-Series).....	6-3
6.3 History Setup (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407).....	6-6
6.4 Configuring History Segments (ROC800-Series)	6-8
6.5 Configuring History Points	6-10
6.6 Configuring History for EFM Reporting	6-13
6.7 EFM Reports.....	6-17
6.8 History, Alarm, and Event Log Reports	6-31
6.9 Device Memory	6-35

6.1 History

The Configure > **History Points** option allows you to setup the History Points for any numeric Parameter in the ROC or FloBoss to archive and to select which archiving method to use for each Parameter.

The Meter > **History** (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407) option allows you to setup History Points for meter Parameters.

For the ROC300-Series, FloBoss 100-Series, and FloBoss 407, 35 days of hourly and daily data are stored for each point. For a ROC800-Series, you can configure the amount of storage.

The historical database can be configured to log only the values that need to be logged. The values are logged in the standard (minute-hourly-periodic-daily) time base of the ROC or FloBoss, unless FST control is used. By using the FST Editor utility, the period at which the data is logged can be placed under FST program control. The ROC800-Series Periodic history can be configured for 1 to 6 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, or in 60-minute frequencies.

The ROC and FloBoss maintains several types of historical databases:

- ◆ Minimum/Maximum (Min/Max) Database.
- ◆ Minute Database.
- ◆ Periodic Database (ROC800-Series).
- ◆ Hourly Database.
- ◆ Daily Database.
- ◆ Extended History (FloBoss 100-Series).

The Min/Max Database is for viewing only and cannot be saved to a disk file.

- ❖ **Note:** The time stamp used for standard logging of historical values reflects the time at the end of the period, not at the beginning. For example, data collected from 8:00 to 9:00 is time-stamped 9:00.

History values can be collected from the ROC or FloBoss via ROCLINK 800 or other third-party host systems. From the View > History selection the user can view history directly from the device or from a previously saved disk file.

FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units have several History Points that are pre-configured (defaults). In the ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, these may be changed by the user to suit the application.

For ROC800-Series, the required History Points for AGA3 and AGA7 calculation methods are not pre-configured. You should begin the configuration of an AGA calculated Meter Run by configuring those points. Make sure that the History Points for each Meter Run are configured to allow the EFM Report utility to properly access data. Refer to Configuring History for EFM Reporting.

- ❖ **Note:** In the ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407, History Points configured in the Meter > History screen overwrite History Points configured in Configure > History Point screen.

Several options are available for the type of history values archived (Archive Type). Linear averaging is available for all Parameters. Meter run and Station Parameters may be averaged using one of the four averaging techniques recommended in API Section 21.1 (flow dependent linear, flow dependent formulaic, flow weighted linear, and flow weighted formulaic). Parameters that represent a rate (engineering units/time period) may be accumulated (integrated) to give total values when the time period of the rate is specified. Parameters that represent an accumulated total can be totalized to give total values by taking the difference between the value at the end of the current logging period and the value at the end of the previous logging period. Finally, the current value of any Parameter can be logged at the end of each logging period.

- ❖ **Note:** In previous products, the totalize Archive Type was intended to be used for Parameters that return to zero at contract hour. In the ROC800-Series, the Totalize Archive Type is intended to be used for Parameters that represent on-going accumulators.

6.2 History Setup (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select Configure > **History Points**. History is saved to two databases: Standard and Extended History. Historical Configuration for the FloBoss 100-Series units occurs on three tabs: Setup, Standard History, and Extended History. The number of entries/logs available to Standard and Extended History is configurable within boundaries. The first eight Standard History Points are pre-configured. Refer to Figure 6-1.

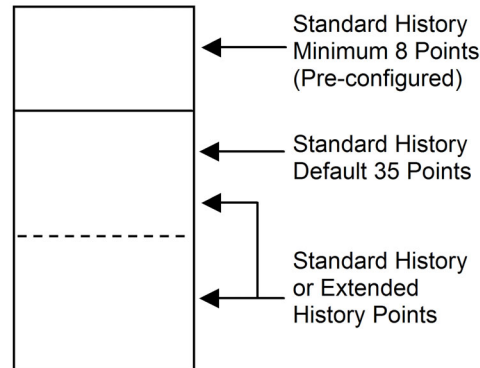


Figure 6-1. History Memory (FloBoss 100-Series)

Standard History

The first eight Standard History Points are pre-configured. This is the minimum number of Standard History Points. The maximum number of Standard History Points is 35. The default number of Standard History Points is 35. Refer to Figure 6-1.

The Standard History database logs entries for each point at three intervals: minute, hour, day. Every day at the contract hour, a min/max entry is also logged.

Point	Archive Type	Archive Point
1	Accumulate/Hour	ERN 1, MINTDY
2	Totalize	AIN A1, ALARM
3	Avg - Flow Dependant Linear	FLW 1, CURFP
4	Avg - Flow Dependant Linear	FLW 1, CURTMP
5	Avg - Linear	FLW 1, IMV/BMV
6	Accumulate/Hour	ERN 1, UCCTDY
7	Accumulate/Hour	FLW 1, CURFLO
8	Accumulate/Hour	FLW 1, ENERGY
9	Avg - Linear	Undefined
10	Undefined	Undefined
11	Undefined	Undefined
12	Undefined	Undefined
13	Undefined	Undefined
14	Undefined	Undefined
15	Undefined	Undefined

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 6-2. History Setup – Standard History (FloBoss 100-Series)

Extended History

The minimum number of Extended History Points is 0. The maximum number of Extended History Points is 15. The default number of Extended History Points is 4. The default interval for Extended History is 10 minutes. Refer to Figure 6-1.

The Extended History database creates 1 entry for each point at the user-specified interval. The intervals are 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 12, 15, 20, 30, and 60 minutes. All the points in the Extended History will be logged at the same interval.

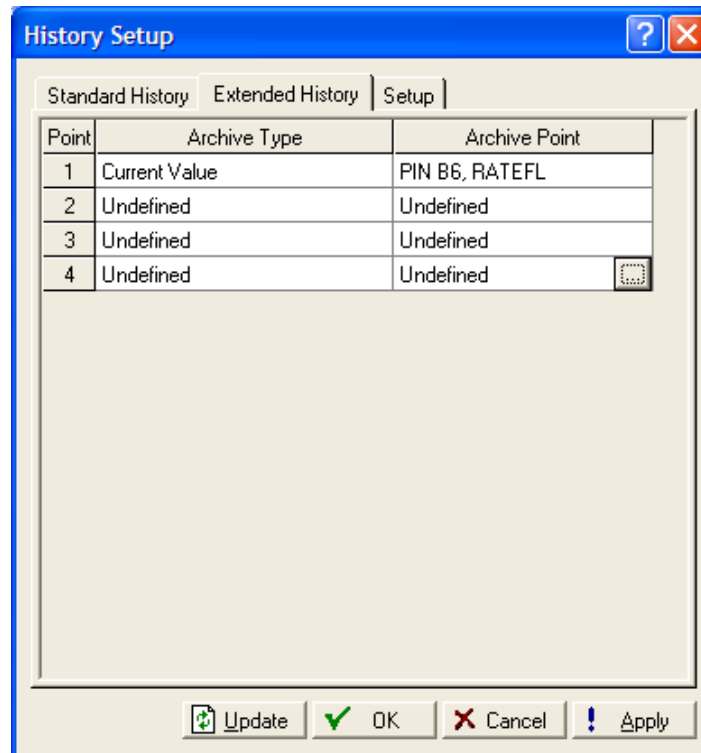


Figure 6-3. History Setup – Extended History (FloBoss 100-Series)

6.2.1 Configuring FloBoss 100-Series History

Select Configure > **History Points**. History is saved to two databases: Standard and Extended History. Historical Configuration for the FloBoss 100-Series units occurs on three tabs: Setup, Standard History, and Extended History. The number of entries/logs available to Standard and Extended History is configurable within boundaries.

1. Verify that you are **on-line** with the FloBoss 100-Series unit.
2. Select Configure > History Points > **Setup** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'History Setup' window with the 'Setup' tab selected. The 'Standard History' section has a 'Number of Points' field set to 35. The 'Extended History' section has a 'Number of Points' field set to 4, a 'Sample Interval' dropdown set to 5 Minutes, a 'Number of Entries' field set to 2016, and a 'Number of Days' field set to 7.00. A 'Note' section at the bottom states: 'Note: Number of Standard History Points: 8 - 35, Number of Extended History Points: 0 - 15'. The bottom of the window contains four buttons: 'Update' (with a refresh icon), 'OK' (with a green checkmark), 'Cancel' (with a red X), and 'Apply' (with an exclamation mark).

Figure 6-4. History Setup – Points Setup (FloBoss 100-Series)

3. Enter the number of **Standard History Points** required.
 - ❖ **Note:** Be sure to specify enough points in history to accommodate your present application and any foreseeable changes. Changing the number of points later will cause a Cold Start & Clear History function. If you must change the number of points later, make a back-up of the history log before making changes.
4. Enter the number of **Extended History Points** needed. The Note above also applies to this step.
 - ❖ **Note:** The Extended History has a maximum number of 5040 entries per point. The total is divided by the Extended History Points.
5. Enter the **Sample Interval** for the Extended History Points.
 - ❖ **Note:** The Sample Interval drop-down list box for Extended History Points permits various rates of historical sampling. The more frequent the samples, the smaller the number of days.
 - ❖ **Note:** If replacing a chart recorder, select a 10 minute interval for 4 points.

6. Determine whether the **Number of Days** are adequate for your application. If not, adjust the Extended History Number of Points and Sample Interval.
7. Enter the **Sample Interval** for the Extended History Points.
 - ❖ **Note:** The Sample Interval drop-down list box permits various rates of historical sampling. The more frequent the samples, the smaller the number of days.
8. Click the **Standard History** tab, select **Archive Types**, and assign **Archive Points**, if you are configuring more than the eight pre-configured points.
9. Click **Apply**. Changes in Standard History cause ROCLINK 800 to prompt to save changes. This saves the changes to Flash Memory. Saving at this point is recommended.
10. Click the **Extended History** tab, select **Archive Types**, and assign **Archive Points**.
11. Click the **Apply** button.

6.3 History Setup (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

For the ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407, configure Meter > **History** and then Configure > **History Points**.

Meter History – Use Meter History (Meter > History) to associate History Points with a Meter Run (meter inputs or flow rates).

Standard History – History Points not associated with a specific Meter Run (input voltage or MPU loading) should be defined in Standard History (Configure > History Points).

Meter History and Standard History share a common database. The ROC300-Series has 87 Historical Points and the FloBoss 407 has 50 Historical Points. A History Point cannot be defined in both Meter History and Standard History.

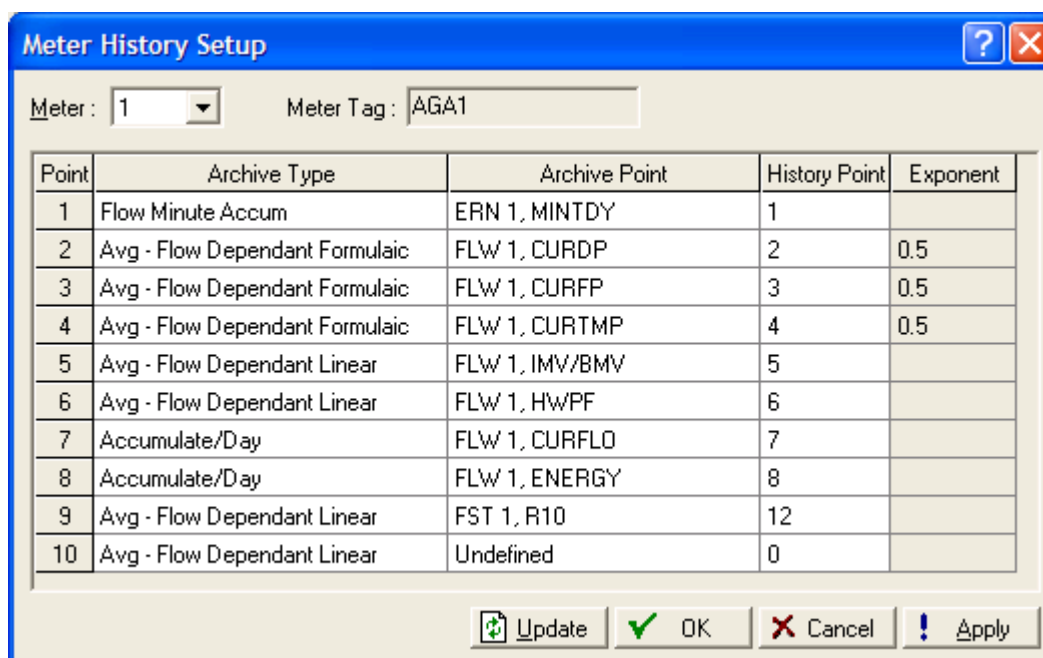
- ❖ **Note:** History Points configured in the Meter > History screen overwrite History Points configured in the Configure > History Point screen.

Use the screens to setup the History Points by selecting which Parameters in the ROC or FloBoss to archive and which archiving method to use for each Parameter. In Meter History, each meter run can have up to ten History Points configured for a FloBoss 407 and up to sixteen History Points can be configured for a ROC300-Series.

- ❖ **Note:** The first eight (Orifice) or six (Turbine) History Points or the first flow run are pre-configured with the default values used in EFM Reporting. Do not change these values except for the Averaging Type or Accumulation Basis or your EFM Reporting may not be complete.

The historical database can be configured to log only the required values. The values are logged in the standard (minute, hourly / periodic, daily) time base of the FloBoss or ROC, unless FST control is used. By using the FST Editor utility, the period in which the data is logged can be placed under FST program control.

- ❖ **Note:** Make sure that the History Points for each Meter Run are configured to allow the EFM Report utility to properly access data.



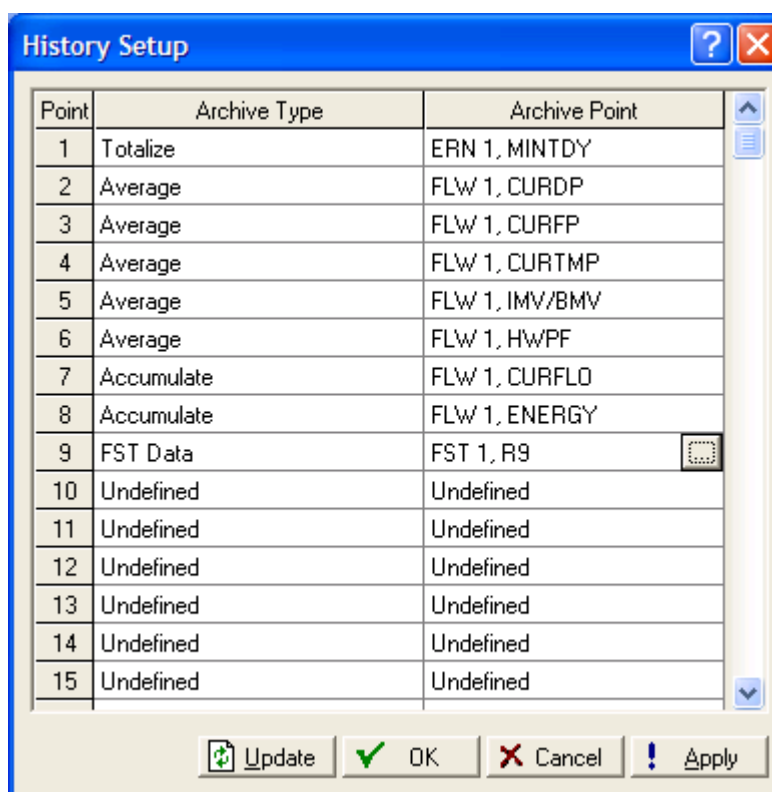
Meter History Setup

Meter : 1 Meter Tag : AGA1

Point	Archive Type	Archive Point	History Point	Exponent
1	Flow Minute Accum	ERN 1, MINTDY	1	
2	Avg - Flow Dependant Formulaic	FLW 1, CURDP	2	0.5
3	Avg - Flow Dependant Formulaic	FLW 1, CURFP	3	0.5
4	Avg - Flow Dependant Formulaic	FLW 1, CURTMP	4	0.5
5	Avg - Flow Dependant Linear	FLW 1, IMV/BMV	5	
6	Avg - Flow Dependant Linear	FLW 1, HWPF	6	
7	Accumulate/Day	FLW 1, CURFLO	7	
8	Accumulate/Day	FLW 1, ENERGY	8	
9	Avg - Flow Dependant Linear	FST 1, R10	12	
10	Avg - Flow Dependant Linear	Undefined	0	

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 6-5. Meter > History Setup (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series – Meter)



History Setup

Point	Archive Type	Archive Point
1	Totalize	ERN 1, MINTDY
2	Average	FLW 1, CURDP
3	Average	FLW 1, CURFP
4	Average	FLW 1, CURTMP
5	Average	FLW 1, IMV/BMV
6	Average	FLW 1, HWPF
7	Accumulate	FLW 1, CURFLO
8	Accumulate	FLW 1, ENERGY
9	FST Data	FST 1, R9
10	Undefined	Undefined
11	Undefined	Undefined
12	Undefined	Undefined
13	Undefined	Undefined
14	Undefined	Undefined
15	Undefined	Undefined

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 6-6. Configure > History Points (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series – Standard)

6.4 Configuring History Segments (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > **History Segments**. The number of History Points available in each Segment (ROC800-Series) is determined by the History Segment Configuration screen. Once the History Segment has been configured, you may configure the History Points in each Segment.

For the ROC800-Series, History Points can be distributed among History Segments 1 through 10 and the General History Segment. For each History Segment, you can configure the number of periodic history values archived, the frequency of archiving the periodic values, the number of daily values archived, and the contract hour. The number of minute values is fixed at 60. Additionally, you can enable or disable logging and force the logging of daily values on a per Segment basis.

In History Segments 1 through 10, the number of points in the Segment is configurable. The maximum total number of points available for all History Points in all Segments is 200, but may be less depending on the number of periodic and daily values configured. The number of points in the general History Segment will be determined by the system, based on remaining memory. All History Points in a Segment share the same time stamps, with one time stamp allotted for each of the minute, periodic, and daily logs available in that Segment.

The History Segments 1 through 10 can be tied to meter Stations by configuring the History Segment under Meter > Setup > **Station**. This allows the History Segment to inform the Station, when the contract hour has occurred so that the Station can maintain daily and monthly accumulations, and to retrieve the appropriate flow dependency and flow weighting factors. This also allows the Station to inform the History Segment that a configuration Parameter has changed, and therefore periodic values need to be logged, per API Section 21.1.

The maximum number of 200 points is based on 60 minute values, 840 periodic values logged hourly (35 days x 24 hours per day) and 35 daily values for a total of 187,000 history values. Each Segment also has storage allotted for the time stamp values with a default of 935 time stamps per Segment (60 minute times stamps + 840 periodic time stamps + 35 daily time stamps) x 11 Segments for a total of 10,285 time stamp values.

The 197,285 Available Space shown on the ROCLINK 800 History Segment Configuration screen indicates the total of history and time stamp values.

$$\text{Space Allocated} = (\text{Number of Points} + 1) \times (\text{Minute Entries} + \text{Periodic Entries} + \text{Daily Entries})$$

The Configure > **History Segments** option allows you to setup the division of points among the History Segments 1 through 10 and the general History Segment. It also allows you to assign the number and frequency of periodic logs, the number of daily logs, and the contract hour for each Segment. In addition, you can enable or disable logging and force the logging of a daily value on a per Segment basis.

Once the History Segment has been configured, you may configure the points in each Segment.

- ❖ **Note:** In the ROC800-Series, the required points for AGA3 and AGA7 calculation methods are not pre-configured. You should begin the configuration of an AGA calculated Meter Run by configuring those points. Refer to Configuring History for EFM Reporting.

Segment	Tag	Number of Points	Minute Entries	Periodic Entries	Daily Entries	Space Allocated	Periodic Sample Rate	Contract Hour	Enable Logging	Force End of Day
General	General 00	200	60	840	35	187935	12	3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
1	Segment 01	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
2	Segment 02	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
3	Segment 03	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
4	Segment 04	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
5	Segment 05	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
6	Segment 06	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
7	Segment 07	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
8	Segment 08	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
9	Segment 09	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now
10	Segment 10	0	60	840	35	935	60	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Now

Available Space 197285 - Total Space Allocated 197285 = Available Space to Allocate 0

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 6-7. History Segment Configuration (ROC800-Series)

Enter a **Tag** for each Segment that will identify the group of historical points that will be archived there.

For Segments 1 through 10, enter the **Number of Points** (history) required in that Segment.

Enter the desired number of **Periodic Entries** in the Periodic log. The Number of Entries (in the Periodic log) multiplied by the Periodic Sample Rate (listed in minutes) will give the number of minutes before the periodic log begins to write over itself.

Enter the desired number of **Daily Entries** in the Daily log.

Enter the **Periodic Sample Rate** (listed in minutes). This indicates how often a time-stamped value will be written to the periodic log. If this Segment is tied to a meter Station, an entry will also be written whenever a configuration change is made to a Station or meter that is part of that Station. All options for Periodic Sample Rates are evenly distributed into 60, and logging will be synchronized with the top of the hour.

Enter the **Contract Hour**. At this time, the daily values are logged. If this Segment is tied to a meter Station, this will also be the contract hour for the Station and will be the time that daily and monthly (if it is the first of the month) accumulations will be reset. Additional entries will be made if the Force End of Day option is exercised for this Segment.

For each Segment, an option is available to **Enable Logging** for all History Points in the Segment. Deselect the checkbox to disable logging.

For each Segment, a **Force End of Day** option is available to force logging of entries in the daily log for all History Points in the Segment.

The **Minute Entries** read-only field defines the number of entries in the minute log for this Segment.

The **Space Allocated** read-only field displays how many history and time stamp entries are currently allocated by this Segment.

The **Available Space** read-only field displays the total number of history and time stamp entries possible. Factory default is 197,285.

The **Total Space Allocated** read-only field displays the number of history and time stamp entries allocated to all the Segments.

The **Available Space to Allocate** read-only field displays the number of entries unallocated. This number is the Available Space minus the Space Allocated.

6.5 Configuring History Points

The History options allow data values and calculated variables stored in the current value database to be copied and stored for up to a month in the historical database. The historical database can be configured to log only the values that need to be logged. The values are logged in the standard (minute, hourly / periodic, daily) time base of the FloBoss or ROC, unless FST control is used. By using the FST Editor utility, the period in which the data is logged can be placed under FST program control.

- ❖ **Note:** Make sure that the History Points for each Meter Run are configured to allow the EFM Report utility to properly access data.

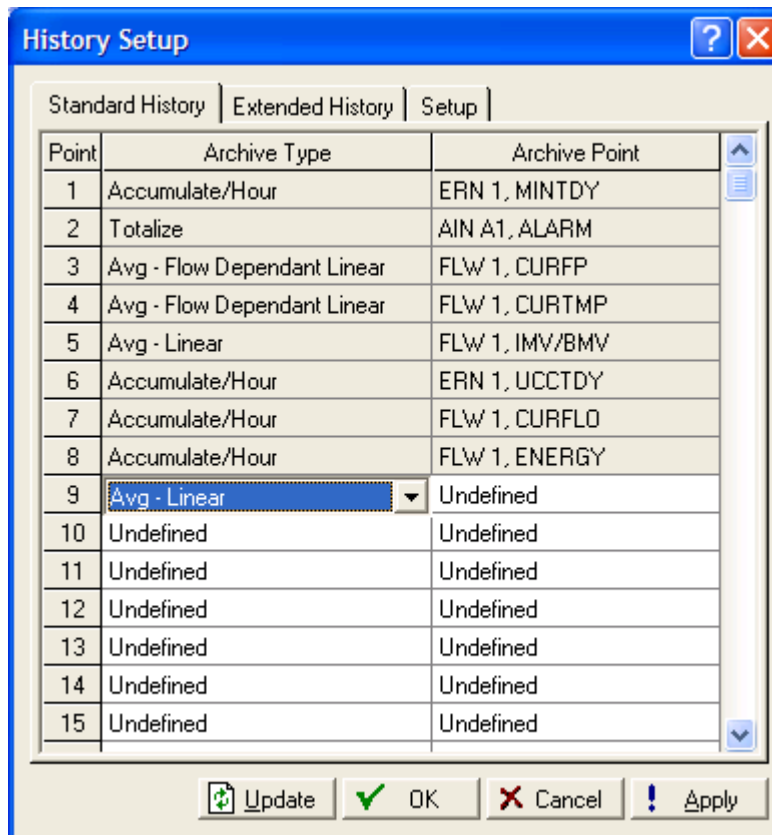


Figure 6-8. Configure > History Points (FloBoss 100-Series)

History Setup

Point	Archive Type	Archive Point
1	Totalize	ERN 1, MINTDY
2	Average	FLW 1, CURDP
3	Average	FLW 1, CURFP
4	Average	FLW 1, CURTMP
5	Average	FLW 1, IMV/BMV
6	Average	FLW 1, HWPF
7	Accumulate	FLW 1, CURFLO
8	Accumulate	FLW 1, ENERGY
9	FST Data	FST 1, R9
10	Undefined	Undefined
11	Undefined	Undefined
12	Undefined	Undefined
13	Undefined	Undefined
14	Undefined	Undefined
15	Undefined	Undefined

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 6-9. Configure > History Points (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

History Segment Point Configuration

General | Seg 1 | Seg 2 | Seg 3 | Seg 4 | Seg 5 | Seg 6 | Seg 7 | Seg 8 | Seg 9 | Seg 10

Point	Archive Type	Archive Point	Point Tag	User Description	Current Value	Last Daily Value
1	Avg - Linear	HART 4-1, EU			0.0	0.0
2	Avg - Linear	SFP 1, DATA6			0.0	0.0
3	Avg - Flow Weighted Linear	UDP63 1, YESOILPD			0.0	0.0
4	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
5	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
6	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
7	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
8	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
9	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
10	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
11	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
12	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
13	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0
14	Undefined	Undefined			0.0	0.0

OK Cancel Apply

Figure 6-10. Configure > History Points (ROC800-Series)

Choose the **Archive Type** to specify how the logged value is calculated; included are some special purpose types for FST control.

- ◆ **Disabled** – Point not configured.
- ◆ **Avg – Flow Dependant Linear** – This is the default method for calculating the average for the flow input. It is the simplest and most commonly used method. This method discards samples when there is no measurable flow and performs a straightforward (linear) average of the remaining samples to compute the minute and hour values.

For orifice or turbine meters with Analog Input values, no flow conditions are defined as the differential pressure meter input less than or equal to the Low Flow Cutoff.

For turbine meters with a Pulse Input values, no flow conditions are defined as the no flow time elapsing without receiving a pulse. A linear average of all samples is performed if there is no flow during the logging period.
- ❖ **Note:** In the FloBoss 100-Series, Flow Dependent and Flow Weighted Averaging Techniques are located in Meter > Setup > Inputs tab. The first eight History Points are archived appropriately and should not be changed or your EFM Reports will be inaccurate.
- ❖ **Note:** The Average Flow Archive Types can be changed; however, the History Points cannot be changed.
- ◆ **Avg – Flow Dependant Formulaic** – Like the Flow-Dependent Linear method, this method discards samples for periods when there is no flow. However, in calculating the average, this method typically takes the square root of each sample before averaging the samples together and then squares the result. This formulaic method typically produces a slightly lower value than the linear method.
- ◆ **Avg – Flow Weighted Linear** – This method does not discard any samples. Instead, it “weights” each sample by multiplying it by a flow value (square root of the differential pressure measured during the sample period), and then performs a linear average by dividing the sum of the flow-weighted sample by the sum of the flow values. This results in minute and hourly values that are more reflective of short periods of high flow.
- ◆ **Avg – Flow Weighted Formulaic** – This method combines the flow-weighting action with the formulaic averaging technique, both of which were described previously.
- ◆ **Avg – Linear** – One second samples are averaged to compute minute, periodic, and daily values.
- ◆ **Accumulate/Second** – The one second samples of a per second rate value are summed over the logging interval to compute the archived value. This Archive Type should be selected when the History Point being archived is a rate in EUs / second.
- ◆ **Accumulate/Minute** – The one second samples of a per minute rate value are converted to a per second rate and summed over the logging interval to compute the archived value. This Archive Type should be selected when the History Point being archived is a rate in EUs / minute.
- ◆ **Accumulate/Hour** – The one second samples of a per hour rate value are converted to a per second rate and summed over the logging interval to compute the archived value. This Archive Type should be selected when the History Point being archived is a rate in EUs / hour.
- ◆ **Accumulate/Day** – The one second samples of a per day rate value are converted to a per second rate and summed over the logging interval to compute the archived value. This Archive Type should be selected when the History Point being archived is a rate in EUs / day.
- ◆ **Current Value** – A snapshot of the current sampled value is logged.

- ◆ **Totalize** – The difference between the current value at the end of the period and the current value at the last logging interval is logged.
- ◆ **FST Time** – This Archive Type allocates space for the FST to write time-stamps to the periodic archive using the WTM command. The number of time-stamps that can be written is determined by the number of periodic entries in the Segment. The format of the value will be MM:DD:HH:MM or DD:HH:MM:SS. The FST determines which index in the periodic archive to write to independently of the current index for the Segment.
- ◆ **FST Data** – This Archive Type allocates space for the FST to write values to the periodic archive using the WDB command. The number of values that can be written is determined by the number of periodic entries in the Segment. The FST determines, which index in the periodic archive to write to, independently of the current index for the Segment.
- ◆ **User Program Time** – This Archive Type should only be used as instructed in the respective user program documentation. (ROC800-Series)
- ◆ **User Program Data** – This Archive Type should only be used as instructed in the respective user program documentation. (ROC800-Series)

For a FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series, select the **Meter History Point** to reserve space for history archival. The ROC300-Series has 1 to 87 Historical Points and the FloBoss 407 has 1 to 50 Historical Points. A History Point cannot be defined in both Meter History (Meter > History) and Standard History (Configure > History).

For a FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series, select the **Exponent** used in formulaic averaging techniques. This value is set by the unit and is typically 0.5 for orifice applications and 1.0 for turbine applications.

This displays the **Point Tag** for the Archive Point selected.

You may enter a **User Description** (ROC800-Series) of the selected archive point for identification purposes.

Current and Last Daily Value display the values for the Archive Point selected for a ROC800-Series.

Specify the **Archive Point**. Click the TLP button to specify a Point Type, Logical Number, and Parameter to be archived.

6.6 Configuring History for EFM Reporting

ROCLINK 800 software has the ability to create an EFM (Electronic Flow Measurement) Report file that contains all the configuration, alarms, events, and history logs associated with the Stations and Meter Runs in the ROC or FloBoss device. This file then becomes the custody transfer audit trail. In order to collect the periodic and daily history logs required for the EFM Report file, a specific list of Station and Meter Run Parameters must be configured for historical archiving. The **History Points must be configured for each Meter Run**. The required Parameters to archive vary depending on the type of meter run (orifice or turbine).

- ❖ **Note:** The first eight History Points are pre-configured (defaults) in the FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series with FlashPAC units for Meter Run #1 only. When using a FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series, the History Points can be changed if required. A ROC300-Series with a FlashPAC always defaults to AGA3.
- ❖ **Note:** ROC800-Series units do not have any flow Parameters factory-configured into History Points.

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

For a ROC800-Series Station that has live inputs for gas quality data, the heating value, specific gravity, and the gas composition of any components that are being updated should be configured as History Points. The Archive Type should be any of the four meter averaging techniques: Flow Weighted Linear, Flow Weighted Formulaic, Flow Dependent Linear, or Flow Weighted Formulaic. For a ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407, additional gas chromatograph History Points can be configured for detailed EFM Reporting. Refer Table 6-1, Optional History Configuration per Meter Run, on page 6-14.

For a ROC800-Series, all History Points for a Station and the Meter Runs that belong in that Station must reside in the same History Segment. The order or database number of these History Points is not critical; the EFM Reports utility will search for them.

The following table shows how the **History Points must be configured for each Meter Run**, depending on whether it is AGA3 or AGA7 metered.

Table 6-1. Optional History Configuration per Meter Run

Description	Parameter	Description	Parameter	Description	Parameter
Specific Gravity	SPGR	C2H6 Ethane	ETHANE	C7H16 n-Heptane	NHEPTA
Heating Value	GASHV	C3H8 Propane	PROPAN	C8H18 n-Octane	NOCTAN
N2 Nitrogen	NITROG	C4H10 n-Butane	NBUTAN	C9H20 n-Nonane	NNONAN
CO2 Car. Diox	CARBDI	C4H10 i-Butane	IBUTAN	C10H22 n-Decane	NDECAN
H2S Hyd Sf	HYDSUL	C5H12 n-Pentane	NPENTA	O2 Oxygen	OXYGEN
H2O Water	WATER	C5H12 i-Pentane	IPENTA	CO Car Monoxide	CARBMO
He Helium	HELIUM	C6H14 n-Hexane	NHEXAN	H2 Hydrogen	HYDROG
CH4 Methane	METHAN	—	—	—	—

*All points in this table are for both AGA3 and AGA7, AGA Flow Parameters type, and Average Archive Type.

Table 6-2. Orifice EFM History Point for ROC800-Series

Archive Type	Point Type	Parameter	Description
Totalize	ORFV (Orifice Meter Run Values)	MINACC (Minutes Accumulated)	Flowing Minutes
Avg (Flow Dependent Linear)	ORF (Orifice Meter Run Configuration)	CURDP (DP)	Differential Pressure
Avg (Flow Dependent Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)	ORF (Orifice Meter Run Configuration)	CURSP (SP)	Static Pressure
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Linear)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)	ORF (Orifice Meter Run Configuration)	CURTMP (TMP)	Temperature
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Archive Type	Point Type	Parameter	Description
Avg (Flow Dependent Linear)	ORFV (Orifice Meter Run Values)	HWPF (Pressure Extension)	Pressure Extension
Avg (Flow Dependent Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Linear)	ORFV (Orifice Meter Run Values)	MULVAL (Multiplier Value)	Multiplier Value
Avg (Flow Dependent Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			
Totalize	ORFV (Orifice Meter Run Values)	FLOACC (Flow Accumulated)	Volume
Totalize	ORFV (Orifice Meter Run Values)	ENGACC (Energy Accumulated)	Energy

- ❖ **Note:** For a ROC800-Series Orifice Meter Run, the following History Points must be configured for EFM Reports. For each of the eight Parameters listed, select one Archive Type and Point Type.

Table 6-3. Turbine EFM History Points for ROC800-Series

Archive Type	Point Type	Parameter	Description
Totalize	TRBV (Turbine Meter Run Values)	MINACC (Minutes Accumulated)	Flowing Minutes
Totalize	TRBV (Turbine Meter Run Values)	PULSETDY (Pulses Accumulated)	Raw Pulses
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)	TRB (Turbine Meter Run Configuration)	CURSP (SP)	Static Pressure
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Linear)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)	TRB (Turbine Meter Run Configuration)	CURTMP(TMP)	Temperature
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Linear)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Weighted Linear)	TRBV (Turbine Meter Run Values)	MULTVAL (Multiplier Value)	Multiplier Value
Avg (Flow Weighted Formulaic)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Linear)			
Avg (Flow Dependent Formulaic)			

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Archive Type	Point Type	Parameter	Description
Totalize	TRBV (Turbine Meter Run Values)	UNACC (Uncorrected Accumulated)	Uncorrected Volume
Totalize	TRBV (Turbine Meter Run Values)	FLOACC (Flow Accumulated)	Volume
Totalize	TRBV (Turbine Meter Run Values)	ENGACC (Energy Accumulated)	Energy

- ❖ **Note:** For a ROC800-Series Turbine Meter Run, the following History Points must be configured for EFM Reports. For each of the eight Parameters listed, select one Archive Type and Point Type.

Table 6-4. EFM History Points for a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407

AGA3	AGA7	History Point Description	Point Type ¹	Parameter	Archive Type
Yes	Yes	Minutes Today (Flowing Minutes)	ERN	MINTDY	FlowMinAccum
Yes	No	Meter Input (Differential Pressure)	FLW	CURDP	Average
Yes	Yes	Static Pressure	FLW	CURFP	Average
Yes	Yes	Temperature	FLW	CURTMP	Average
Yes	Yes	C Prime (C') (IMV or BMV)	FLW	CPRIME	Average
Yes	No	hwPf (Pressure Extension)	FLW	HWPf	Average
Yes	Yes	Instantaneous Flow	FLW	FLOW	Accumulate
Yes	Yes	Instantaneous Energy	FLW	ENERGY	Accumulate
No	Yes ²	Accumulated Value (Raw Pulses)	PIN	ACCUM	Totalize
No	Yes ²	Today's Total (Uncorrected Flow)	PIN	TDYTOT	Totalize

1. ERN stands for the Extra Run Parameters Point Type; FLW stands for the Flow Calculation Point Type; PIN stands for Pulse Input Point.

2. For the FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series, this point is set in Standard History (Configure > History). All others are set in the Meter History (Meter > History).

3. For a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, the points indicated by a "Yes" are pre-configured. The ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 allow you to change the default history point to suit the application.

6.7 EFM Reports

You can generate printed and on-screen reports of the configuration, alarms, events, and historical flow data for a meter point. EFM (Electronic Flow Measurement) Reports is used in conjunction with the AGA flow calculation capabilities of the ROC or FloBoss to display or print previously collected flow data. This flow data is contained in an EFM Report file, which includes the operational characteristics of all the configured Meter Runs. The operational characteristics consist of Configuration Parameters, History, Events, and Alarms associated with each measured Meter Run.

- ❖ **Note:** In order for the EFM Reports utility to work, the historical database in the ROC or FloBoss must be configured so that certain flow calculation values can be retrieved from memory.

6.7.1 Collecting ROC Data

Select ROC > **Collect Data** to save various ROC and FloBoss data to disk files. Data includes:

- ◆ Configuration data.
- ◆ Hourly (Periodic) volume data.
- ◆ Daily volume data.
- ◆ Alarm Log data.
- ◆ Event Log data.

This screen may only be accessed when you are on-line with the already configured ROC from which you will be gathering data.

Use the Save As field and Browse button to either accept the default File name or enter a new File name.

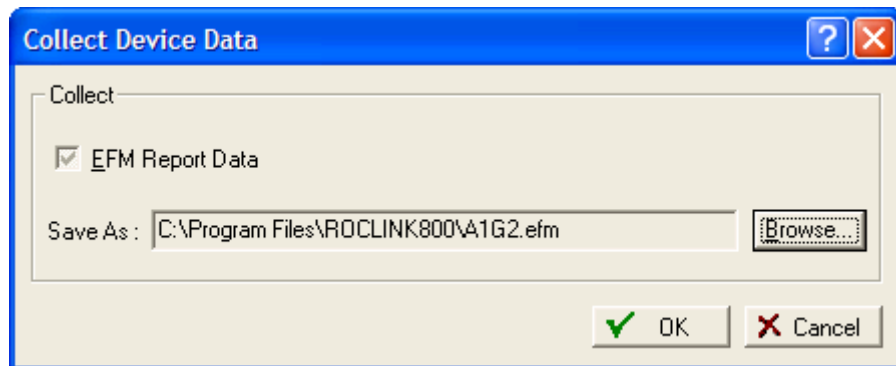


Figure 6-11. Collect Device Data

When you select EFM Report Data, the Collect Data function saves all the values for EFM Parameters. The file has the **.efm** extension.

- ❖ **Note:** You can create an EFM Report from this data by selecting View > EFM Report. The file has the **.EFM** extension.

6.7.2 Displaying EFM Reports

You can choose to view the report or print the report.

1. Select View > **EFM Reports**.

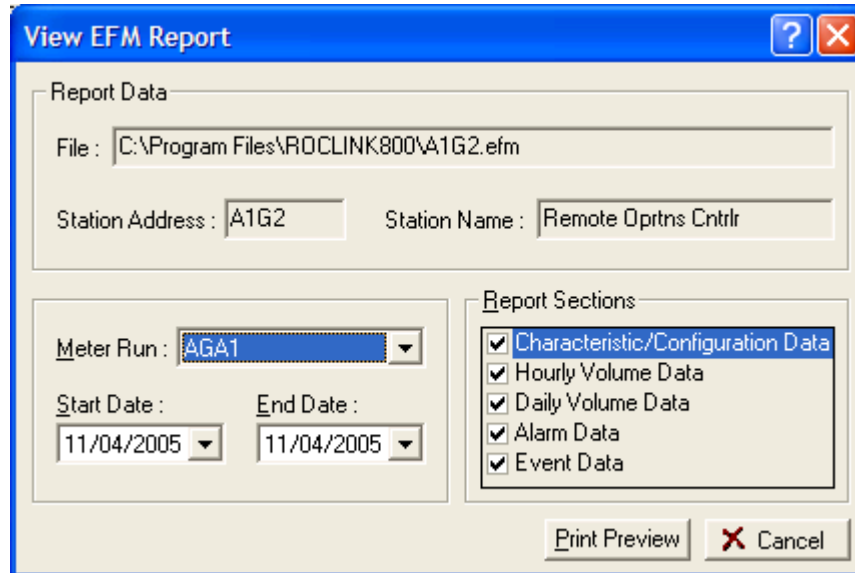


Figure 6-12. View EFM Report

2. Navigate to the files that have the **.EFM** extension (created by using the Collect Data function). Select the desired file and click **Open**.
3. Select the **Meter Run** from drop-down list box to select the Meter Run on which you desire to report.
4. Enter the **Start Date**.
5. Enter the **End Date**. These are the dates for the period of the report you desire to cover.
 - ❖ **Note:** Click the drop-down list arrow to view a calendar and select the report dates.
6. Select the **Report Sections** on which you desire to report.
7. Click **Print Preview** to see a copy of the report.
 - ❖ **Note:** Select Utilities > Convert EFM File to convert the data to PGAS, Coastal Flow, AGA or DET data formats.

6.7.3 Converting EFM Files

Select Utilities > **Convert EFM File** to convert a EFM Report files (.EFM database file) to the report file format you select. ROCLINK 800 version 1.60 or greater supports batch conversion of EFM files to PGAS and Flow-Cal formats.

1. Select Utilities > **Convert EFM File**.

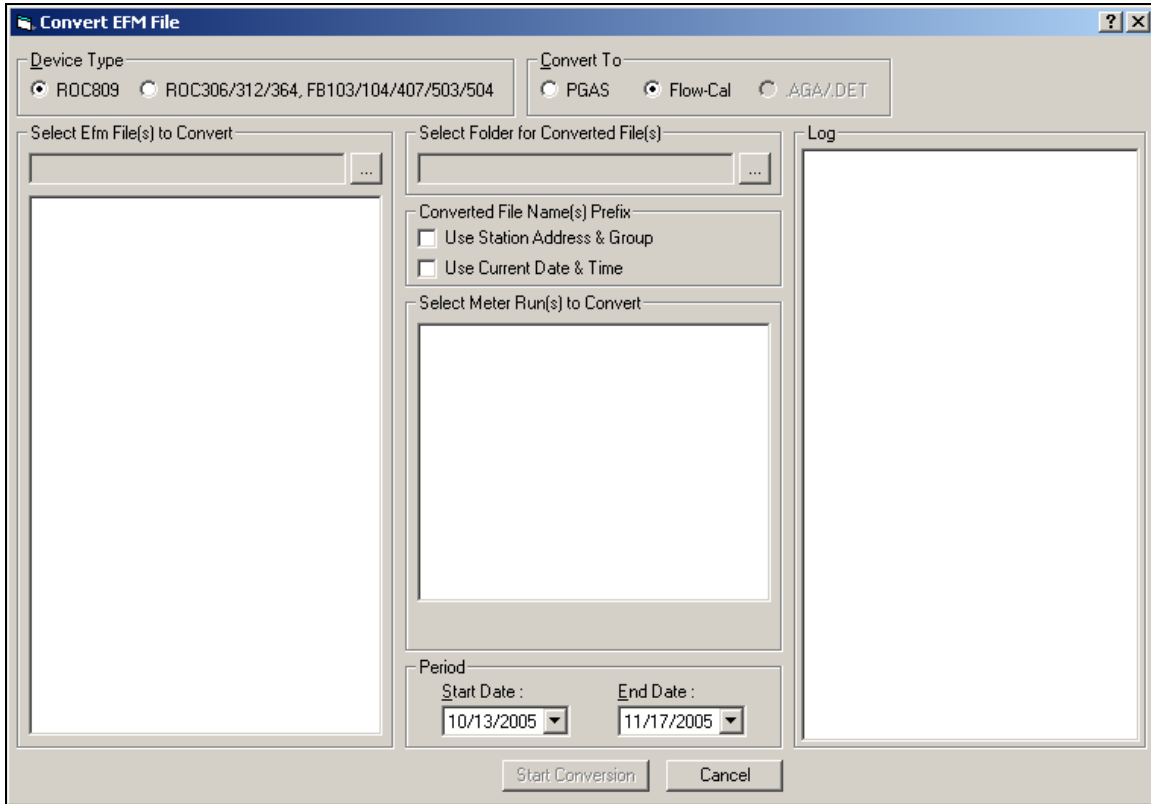


Figure 6-13. Convert EFM File

2. Select a **Device Type** the **ROC809** or **ROC306/312/364, FB103/104/407/503/504** radio button.
3. Select the **Convert to** format: **PGAS**, **Flow-Cal**, or **AGA / DET**.
 - ◆ .EVT, .ANA, .ARM, and .VOL are ROC800-Series device files available for PGAS (EMS Pipeline Services).
 - ◆ .CFX is the ROC800-Series device file available for Flow-Cal (Coastal Flow Measurement, Inc.).
 - ◆ .AGA are FloBoss 100-Series files and contain only the eight standard History Points for the Meter Run.
 - ◆ .DET are ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 files are formatted to contain gas composition, specific gravity (relative density), and heating value averages.
4. Click the **Browse** button next to the **Select Efm File(s) to Convert** field.

5. **Navigate** to the **path** where the EFM files are located.
6. **Select the EFM files you desire to convert.** You can individually select files using the checkboxes or you can click Select All to select all of the EFM files in the folder. Click Deselect All to deselect all files in the folder. Click **OK**.

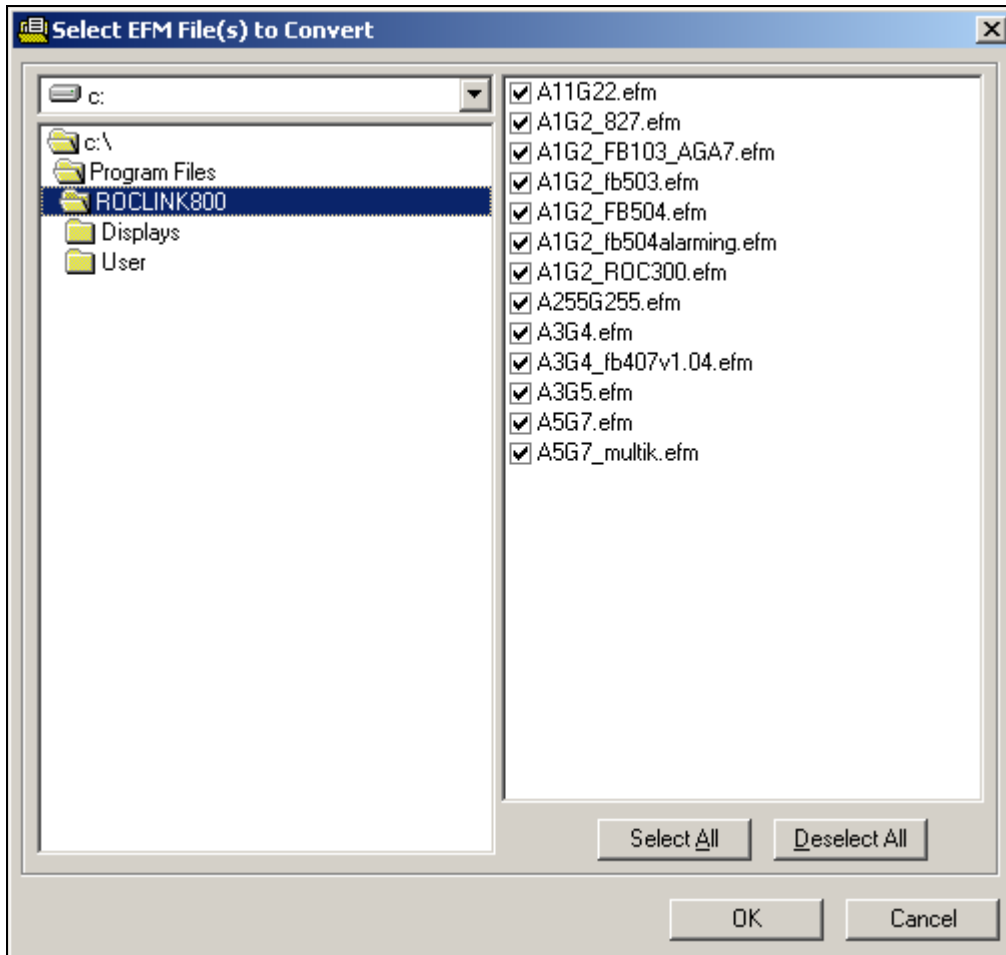


Figure 6-14. Select EFM Files(s) to Convert

An internal verification of each file is performed very if that file type is valid. If any of the files are invalid, a notification displays. Refer to Figure 6-15.

7. Click **OK**. If this error message displays, the invalid files are automatically removed and display in the Log frame. Refer to Figure 6-16.

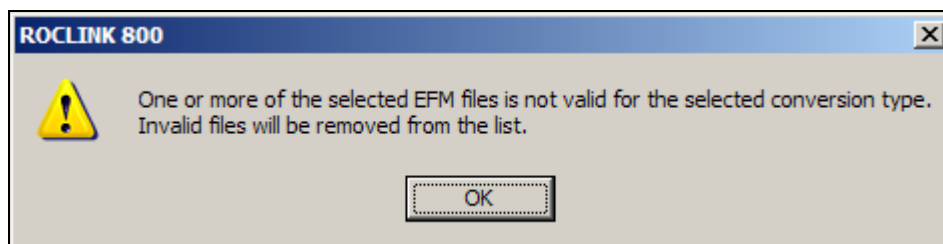


Figure 6-15. Invalid EFM File Alert

8. Select the files from the **Select Meter Runs(s) to Convert** list that you desire to convert. You can individually select files using the checkboxes or you can click Select All to select all of the EFM files in the folder. Click Deselect All to deselect all files in the folder. Refer to Figure 6-16.

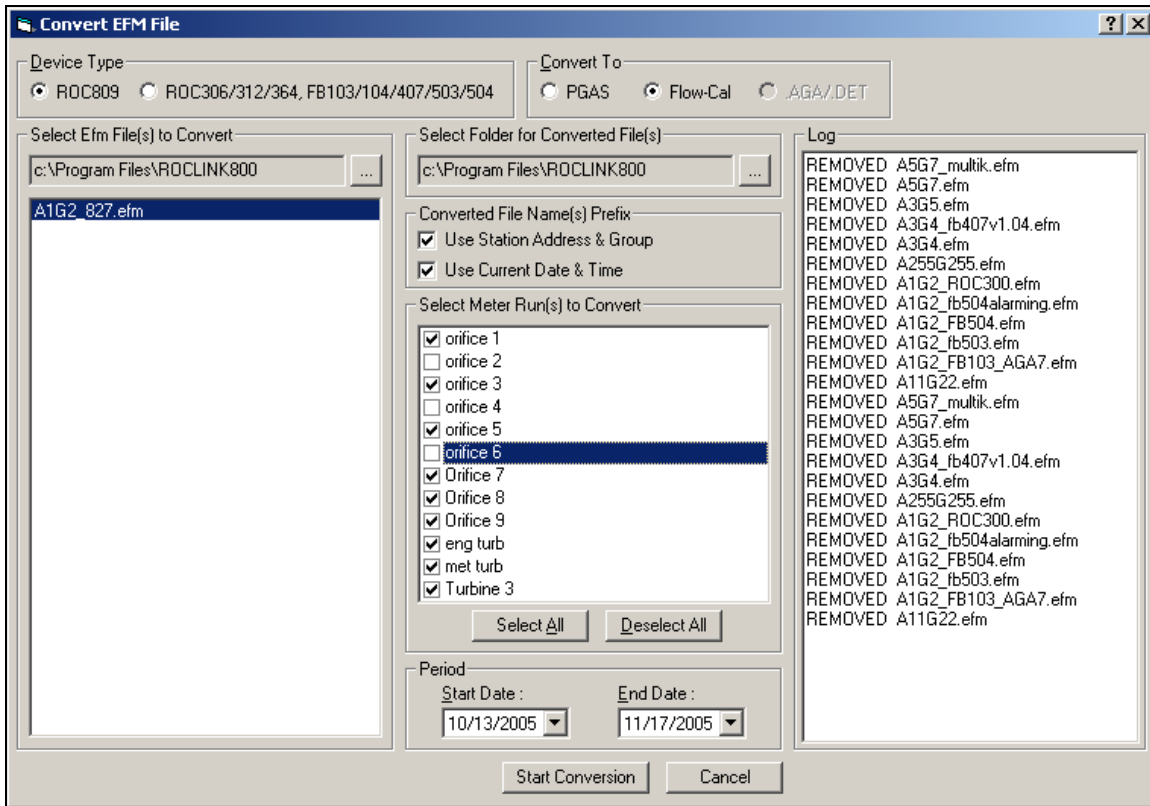


Figure 6-16. EFM Files Select for Conversion and Invalid Files

10. Click the **Browse** button next to the **Select Folder for Converted File(s)** field, select the **path** where you desire the converted files to be stored, and click **OK**.

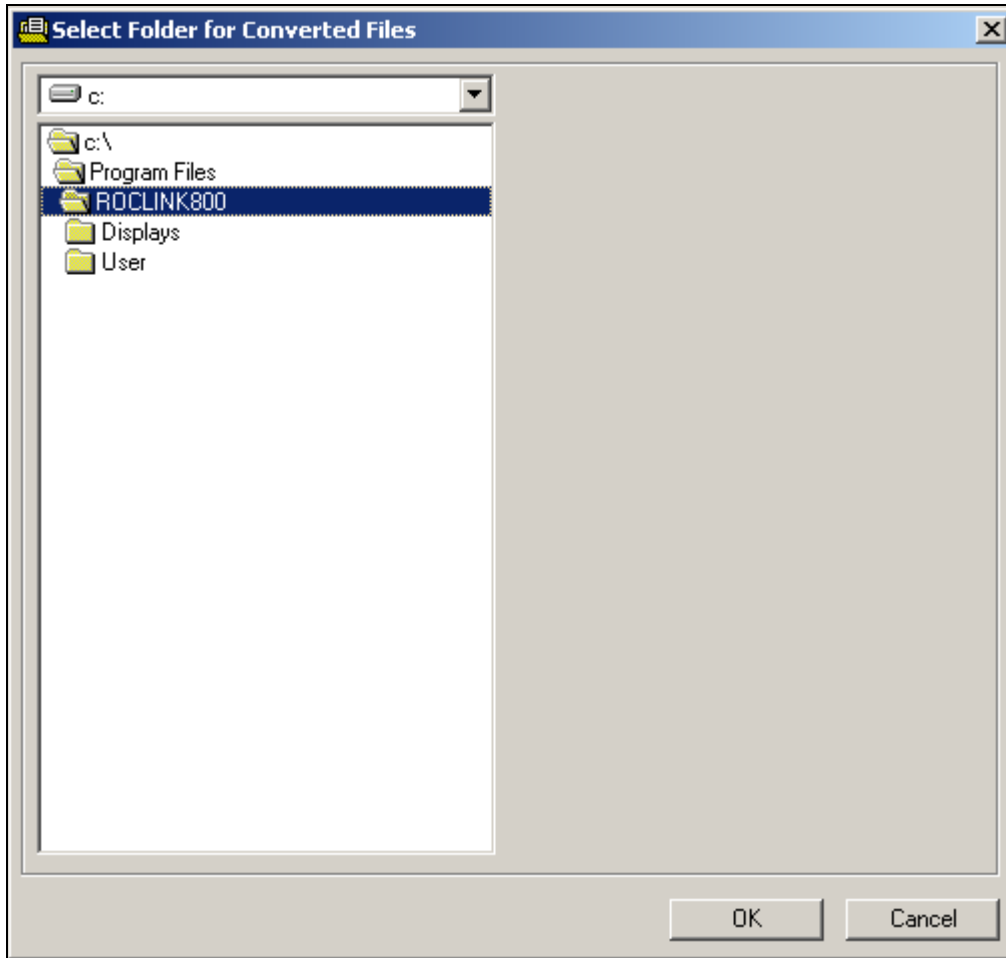


Figure 6-17. Select Folder for Converted Files

11. Select the **Converted File Name(s) Prefix** options to determine the converted file name format. Refer to Figure 6-16.
 - ◆ **Use Station Address & Group** – Includes the Station Address and Group in the file name.
 - ◆ **Use Current Data & Time** – Includes the current data and time in the file name.
12. Select the **Period Start Date** and **End Date** to define the time frame for which the conversion of data is performed. The Start Date is automatically post dated thirty-five days prior to the end date. The End Date is defaults to the current date. You can manually enter a date or click the drop-down arrow box to display a calendar and make your date selections. Refer to Figure 6-16.
13. Click **Start Conversion**.
14. Click **OK** when the conversion is complete.
 - ❖ **Note:** If you click Cancel any time during the conversion, click OK to acknowledge that the conversion process has been canceled.

6.7.4 PGAS Conversions

The PGAS exports the EFM file data to four files. The PGAS event file (.EVT) lists all of the events in the Event Log that are related in any way to a Meter Run. The exception is Gas Quality events that are included in the PGAS quality file (.ANA)

6.7.4.1 PGAS Event Files (.EVT)

#	Column Name	Data Type	Description
1	METER_ID	char(16)	Identification number for the measurement point in the field. This must be the tag id of the orifice or turbine point associated with the event.
2	EVENT_DATE	Datetime	Date and time the event occurred in mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss format.
3	METER_CALC_COLUMN_NAME	char(32)	Actual column name within the METER_CALC table. This information is only required for events that are to trigger record insertion into the METER_CALC table.
4	NEW_VALUE	char(16)	New value to be used in the METER_CALC record. This is the ASCII representation of the number.
5	OLD_VALUE	char(16)	Old value to be used in the METER_CALC record. This is the ASCII representation of the number. The event name, new value, and old value appear in the Comment for the new METER_CALC record.
6	PRIORITY_LEVEL	U8	This represents the importance of the event: 0 = Alarm will not affect volume calculations. 1 = Alarm will affect volume calculations. This is redundant. If METER_CALC_COLUMN_NAME exists for the event, the PRIORITY_LEVEL will be a 1, if not, it will be a 0.
7	DESCRIPTION	varchar(64)	Text description of the event.
8	COMMENT	varchar(100)	Comment (optional)

6.7.4.2 Meter Related Events

Meter related events include changes to Meter and Station Points, Parameters, and Calibration Verification events for points configured as inputs to meter points, changes to the number of active Stations, orifice, or turbine points, changes to the clock, system events, and Parameter change events for history points when the old or new point being archived is a Meter or Station point.

Events such as Warm Starts, Cold Starts, system initializations, and clock changes duplicate for every Meter Run in the unit. Station Parameter change events duplicate for every Meter Run in that Station. Events used by the PGAS system to recalculate meter values are indicated by including a METER_CALC_COLUMN_NAME in the PGAS event record. The Point Types and Parameters map to PGAS METER_CALC events.

Description	METER_CALC_COLUMN_NAME	Data Type	Point Types	Parameters
Orifice Diameter	ORIFICE_SIZE	Float	Orifice Config (113)	15
Pipe Diameter	TUBE_DIAMETER	Float	Orifice Config (113)	12
Base Temperature	TEMP_BASE	Float	Station (112)	14
Base Pressure	CONTRACT_PRES_BASE	Float	Station (112)	13
Atm Pressure	SITE_ATMOS_PRES	Float	Station (112)	16
Orifice Material	PLATE_MATERIAL	U8	Orifice Config (113)	17
Pipe Material	TUBE_MATERIAL	U8	Orifice Config (113)	14
Tap Location	STAT_TAP_LOCA	U8	Orifice Config (113)	3
Diff Press Span ¹	DIFF_HI_RANGE	Float	Orifice Config (113)	25
Static Press Span ²	STATIC_HI_RANGE	Float	Orifice Config (113) or Turbine Config (115)	27 or 15
Temp 0% EU ³	TEMP_LO_RANGE	Float	Orifice Config (113) or Turbine Config (115)	29 or 17
Temp Span ³	TEMP_HI_RANGE	Float	Orifice Config (113) or Turbine Config (115)	29 or 17

¹ The ROC Point Type and Parameter listed for this entry contains a 3-byte value that is the Point Type, Point Number, and Parameter to use for the differential pressure value. If the Point Type of the differential pressure input is MVS (108) or Analog Input (103), the differential pressure span will be the same Point Type and Point Number as the differential pressure value and (coincidentally) the Parameter will be 17 for both of these Point Types. If the Point Type is any other type, a span will not be available.

² The ROC Point Type and Parameter listed for this entry contains a 3-byte value that is the Point Type, Point Number, and Parameter to use for the static pressure value. If the Point Type of the static pressure input is MVS (108), the static pressure span will be the same Point Type and Point Number as the static pressure value and the Parameter will be 33. If the Point Type of the static pressure input is Analog Input (103), the static pressure span will be the same Point Type and Point Number as the static pressure value and the Parameter will be 17. If the Point Type is any other type, a span will not be available.

³ The ROC Point Type and Parameter listed for this entry contains a 3-byte value that is the Point Type, Point Number, and Parameter to use for the temperature value. If the Point Type of the temperature input is MVS (108), Analog Input (103), or RTD (106), the temperature zero and span will be the same Point Type and Point Number as the temperature value and the Parameters will be as follows:

Point Type	Zero Parameter	Span Parameter
MVS (108)	44	48
AIN (103)	13	17
RTD (106)	9	13

6.7.4.3 PGAS Alarm Files (.ARM)

All alarms in the Alarm Log that are related in anyway to a Meter Run are included in the PGAS .ARM file. These alarms include High, Low, and No Flow alarms for Meter Run and Station Flows, Low, Low Low, High, High High, Rate, Manual Mode, and Point Fail alarms for points configured as inputs to meter points, including communication alarms for an MVS points configured as inputs to a meter point. Station alarms duplicate for each Meter included in the Station.

#	Column Name	Data Type	Description
1	METER_ID	char(16)	Identification number for the measurement point in the field. Tag of the orifice or turbine point associated with the alarm.
2	ALARM_DATE	datetime	Date and time the alarm occurred in mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss format.
3	PRIORITY_LEVEL	U8	This represents the importance of the event: 0 = Alarm will not affect volume calculations. 1 = Alarm will affect volume calculations.
4	ALARM_TEXT	varchar(64)	Text description of the alarm.
5	TRIGGER_VALUE	char(16)	Value that triggered the alarm.
6	ALARM_VALUE	char(16)	Alarm Value.

6.7.4.4 PGAS Gas Quality Files (.ANA)

All Gas Quality data converts to an .ANA file. The Gas Quality data is retrieved from the ROC or FloBoss in the form of Parameter change events to the Gas Quality Parameters if the Gas Quality type (Point Type 112, Parameter 24) is configured for entered values (0). The Event Log scans for Gas Quality events and any group of unique Gas Quality events that occur within a five minute period appear as one record. Use the date and time stamp for the latest event for the SAMPLE_DATE.

The Gas Quality data is retrieved from the ROC or FloBoss in the form of hourly historical averages of the Gas Quality Parameters if the Gas Quality (Point Type 112, Parameter 24) is configured for live values (1).

#	Column Name	Data Type	Description
1	METER_ID	char(16)	Identification number for the measurement point in the field. Tag of the orifice or turbine point associated with the alarm.
2	SAMPLE_DATE	datetime	Actual date and time of the sample in mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm format and is the date and time of the event excluding the seconds.
3	EFFECTIVE_DATE	datetime	Optional date and time for which the sample should be considered "effective" in mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm format. Not used for the Gas Quality events.
4	GAS_SAMPLE_TYPE	char(2)	Sample Type: CO = Continuous if the Gas Quality type in the ROC (Point Type 112, Parameter 24) is equal to 1 for live Gas Quality values. SP = Spot if the Gas Quality type is equal to 0 for entered Gas Quality values.
5	SAMPLE_ID	char(2)	Not used by PGAS or ROC (informational only).
6	METHANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 28
7	ETHANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 29
8	PROPANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 30
9	IBUTANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 32
10	NBUTANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 31
11	IPENTANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 34

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

#	Column Name	Data Type	Description
12	NPENTANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 33
13	NHEXANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 35
14	NHEPTANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 36
15	NOCTANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 37
16	NNONANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 38
17	NDECANE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 39
18	N2_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 26
19	CO2_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 27
20	H2O_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 41
21	H2S_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 40
22	H2_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 45
23	CO_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 44
24	O2_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 43
25	HE_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 42
26	AR_MOL	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 62
27	GRAVITY	float	ROC Point Type 112 (Station), Parameter 23
28	SAMPLE_PRESSURE_BASE	float	Pressure base at which the BTU value was measured. This is left blank as the ROC does not have a Parameter for this.
29	DRY_ENERGY_FACTOR	float	This field is for heating value (ROC Point Type 112, Parameter 22) if "Dry" (0) is selected for the Heating Value Basis (ROC Point Type 112, Parameter 21).
30	SAT_ENERGY_FACTOR	float	This field is for heating value (ROC Point Type 112, Parameter 22) if "Wet" (1) is selected for the Heating Value Basis (ROC Point Type 112, Parameter 21).
31	AS_DELIVERED_ENERGY_FACTOR	float	This field is for heating value (ROC Point Type 112, Parameter 22) if "As Delivered" (2) is selected for the Heating Value Basis ROC Point Type 112, Parameter 21).
32 to 53	N/A	N/A	These fields are not used by the ROC and will be left blank.

The PGAS system does not support Stations. All Gas Quality data is part of the Station point in the ROC, all .ANA files duplicate for each Meter Run in the Station, the only difference being the METER_IDS.

6.7.4.5 PGAS Volume Files (.VOL)

The PGAS .VOL file contains the hourly volume data related to a Meter Run including the Meter Run ID, report information, general Meter Flow Parameters, and Calculated Factors.

The Archive Type and TLP of the History Points expected for the hourly volume report display.

History Configuration for Orifice Meter				
Description	Archive Type	Averaging / Rate Type	Point Type	Parameter
Flowing Minutes	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Orifice Values (114)	Minutes Accumulated (28)
Differential Pressure	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Orifice Configuration (113)	DP (26)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Orifice Configuration (113)	DP (26)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Orifice Configuration (113)	DP (26)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Orifice Configuration (113)	DP (26)
Static Pressure	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Orifice Configuration (113)	SP (28)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Orifice Configuration (113)	SP (28)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Orifice Configuration (113)	SP (28)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Orifice Configuration (113)	SP (28)
Temperature	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Orifice Configuration (113)	TMP (30)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Orifice Configuration (113)	TMP (30)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Orifice Configuration (113)	TMP (30)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Orifice Configuration (113)	TMP (30)
Pressure Extension	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Orifice Values (114)	Pressure Extension (4)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Orifice Values (114)	Pressure Extension (4)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Orifice Values (114)	Pressure Extension (4)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Orifice Values (114)	Pressure Extension (4)
C Prime	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Orifice Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Orifice Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Orifice Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Orifice Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

History Configuration for Orifice Meter				
Description	Archive Type	Averaging / Rate Type	Point Type	Parameter
Volume	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Orifice Values (114)	Flow Accumulated (23)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Day (13)	Orifice Values (114)	Flow Rate Per Day (0)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Hour (12)	Orifice Values (114)	Flow Rate Per Hour (2)
Energy	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Orifice Values (114)	Energy Accumulated (33)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Day (13)	Orifice Values (114)	Energy Rate Per Day (1)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Hour (12)	Orifice Values (114)	Energy Rate Per Hour (3)

History Configuration for Turbine Meter				
Description	Archive Type	Averaging / Rate Type	Point Type	Parameter
Flowing Minutes	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Turbine Values (116)	Minutes Accumulated (21)
Raw Pulses	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Turbine Values (116)	Pulses Accumulated (9)
Static Pressure	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Turbine Configuration (113)	SP (16)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Turbine Configuration (113)	SP (16)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Turbine Configuration (113)	SP (16)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Turbine Configuration (113)	SP (16)
Temperature	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Turbine Configuration (113)	TMP (18)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Turbine Configuration (113)	TMP (18)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Turbine Configuration (113)	TMP (18)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Turbine Configuration (113)	TMP (18)
C Prime	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Linear (1)	Turbine Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)
	Average (128)	Flow Dependent Formulaic (2)	Turbine Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Linear (3)	Turbine Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)
	Average (128)	Flow Weighted Formulaic (4)	Turbine Values (114)	Multiplier Value (12)
Uncorrected Volume	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Turbine Values (114)	Uncorrected Accumulated (31)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Hour (12)	Turbine Configuration (113)	Uncorrected Flow Rate (14)
Volume	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Turbine Values (114)	Flow Accumulated (16)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Day (13)	Turbine Values (114)	Flow Rate Per Day (0)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Hour (12)	Turbine Values (114)	Flow Rate Per Hour (2)

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

History Configuration for Turbine Meter				
Description	Archive Type	Averaging / Rate Type	Point Type	Parameter
Energy	Totalize (134)	None (0)	Turbine Values (114)	Energy Accumulated (26)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Day (13)	Turbine Values (114)	Energy Rate Per Day (1)
	Accumulate (129)	Per Hour (12)	Turbine Values (114)	Energy Rate Per Hour (3)

The format of a PGAS volume file is:

#	Column Name	Data Type	Description
1	METER_ID	char(16)	Identification number for the measurement point in the field. Tag of the orifice or turbine point associated with the alarm.
2	PRODUCTION_DATE_START	datetime	Start date and time of the record in mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm format. Since date and time stamps of ROC history are for the end of the record, this will be the date and time stamp of the previous record.
3	PRODUCTION_DATE_END	datetime	Ending date and time of the record in mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm format. This will be the history date and time stamp from the ROC.
4	FLOW_TIME_MINUTES	float	Hourly value for the meter run flow minutes.
5	EFM_VOLUME	float	Hourly accumulation of volume for the meter run in MCF.
6	EFM_ENERGY	float	Hourly accumulation of energy for the meter run in MMBTU.
7	FLOW_EXTN	float	Hourly value for hwpf (Orifice only).
8	DIFF_PRESS	float	Hourly average of differential pressure in Inches H2O (Orifice only).
9	STAT_PRESS	float	Hourly average of static pressure in PSI.
10	FLOW_TEMP	float	Hourly average of the flowing temperature in Deg F.
11	ROTARY_CURR_UNCO_VOL	float	Hourly accumulation of uncorrected volume at flowing conditions in MCF (Turbine only).
12	ROTARY_PREV_UNCO_VOL	float	N/A
13	ROTARY_AVG_FREQ	float	Hourly accumulation of raw pulses (Turbine only).
14	C_PRIME	float	Hourly average of the multiplier value (Orifice or Turbine).
15	FA	float	N/A
16	FB	float	N/A
17	FG	float	N/A
18	FPB	float	N/A
19	FPM	float	N/A
20	FPV	float	N/A
21	FR	float	N/A
22	FTB	float	N/A
23	FTF	float	N/A
24	Y	float	N/A
25	F_MASS	float	N/A
26	C_D_FT	float	N/A
27	RHO_T_P	float	N/A
28	RHO_B_GAS	float	N/A
29	EFM_N2_MOL	float	N/A
30	EFM_CO2_MOL	float	N/A
31	EFM_GRAVITY	float	N/A

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

#	Column Name	Data Type	Description
32	EFM_ENERGY_FACTOR	float	N/A
33	DP_MAN_OVR	U8	N/A
34	DP_LO_ALM	U8	N/A
35	DP_HI_ALM	U8	N/A
36	DP_TX_FAIL	U8	N/A
37	SP_MAN_OVR	U8	N/A
38	SP_LO_ALM	U8	N/A
39	SP_HI_ALM	U8	N/A
40	SP_TX_FAIL	U8	N/A
41	TEMP_MAN_OVR	U8	N/A
42	TEMP_LO_ALM	U8	N/A
43	TEMP_HI_ALM	U8	N/A
44	TEMP_TX_FAIL	U8	N/A
45	VOL_MAN_OVR	U8	N/A
46	VOL_LO_ALM	U8	N/A
47	VOL_HI_ALM	U8	N/A
48	VOL_TX_FAIL	U8	N/A
49	N/A	float	N/A
50	N/A	float	N/A
51	COMMENT	char(100)	N/A
52	EFM_PRESSURE_BASE	float	N/A
53	BACK_FLOW	float	N/A
54	LITHIUM_ALARM_FLAG	U8	N/A
55	BATTERY_VOLTAGE	U8	N/A
56	AVG_METHANE	float	N/A
57	AVG_ETHANE	float	N/A
58	AVG_PROPANE	float	N/A
59	AVG_H2O	float	N/A
60	AVG_H2S	float	N/A
61	AVG_H2	float	N/A
62	AVG_CO	float	N/A
63	AVG_O2	float	N/A
64	AVG_IBUTANE	float	N/A
65	AVG_NBUTANE	float	N/A
66	AVG_IPENTANE	float	N/A
67	AVG_NPENTANE	float	N/A
68	AVG_NHEXANE	float	N/A
69	AVG_NHEPTANE	float	N/A
70	AVG_NOCTANE	float	N/A
71	AVG_NNONANE	float	N/A
72	AVG_NDECANE	float	N/A
73	AVG_HELIUM	float	N/A
74	AVG_ARGON	float	N/A

❖ **Note:** For additional information on the PGAS and the .EVT, .ANA, .ARM, .VOL file formats, refer to the documentation provided with your PGAS and the web site www.pgas.com

6.7.5 Flow-Cal (.CFX) Conversions

Selecting Flow-Cal performs conversion of EFM files to the Flow-Cal (Coastal Flow) .CFX format. For additional information on the Flow-Cal and the .CFX file format, refer to the documentation provided with your Flow-Cal product and the web site www.flowcal.com.

6.8 History, Alarm, and Event Log Reports

Use the View menu to display the History, Alarm, and Event Log Reports.

6.8.1 Viewing the History Log

Select View > **History** to display the Minute, Hourly (Periodic), and Daily History Log reports. History to be viewed can be retrieved either from the device, if ROCLINK 800 is currently connected to a device, or from a previously saved disk file.

Once the History to View has been selected, the history log will be displayed. Perform one of the following:

- ◆ **Plot** – Click the Plot button to view a graphical display of the report. Refer to Plot.
- ◆ **Select New** – Return to the Select History Points screen and make a new selection.
- ◆ **Save** – Save the history archives to a file.
- ◆ **Print Preview** – Show a preview of what will be sent to the printer and allow printing of the history log.
- ◆ **Close** – Close the screen.

6.8.2 Viewing the Alarm Log

Select View > **Alarms** to view the **Alarm Logs**. Alarms to be viewed can be retrieved either from the device, if ROCLINK 800 is currently connected to a ROC or FloBoss, or from a previously saved disk file.

Once the alarms are displayed, the following options are available:

- ◆ **Save** – Save the Alarm Log to a file.
- ◆ **Print Preview** – Show a preview of what will be sent to the printer and allow printing of the Alarm Log.
- ◆ **Close** – Close the screen.

6.8.3 Viewing the Event Log

Select View > **Events** to view the **Event Logs**. Events to be viewed can be retrieved either from the device (if ROCLINK 800 is currently connected to a ROC or FloBoss) or from a previously saved disk file.

Once the events are displayed, the following options are available:

- ◆ **Save** – Save the Event Log to a file.
- ◆ **Print Preview** – Show a preview of what will be sent to the printer and allow printing of the Event Log.
- ◆ **Close** – Close the screen.

6.8.4 Viewing Report Logs From the Device

A report is generated based on your Search Criteria from the currently connected ROC or FloBoss device.

1. Select View menu > History, Alarm, or Event > **From Device**.
2. Select or de-select the **History Points** (History only). Deselect All and Select All allow you to mass select or deselect History Points. The Search Criteria selections change depending on the Frequency.
3. Select the **History Type** frequency at which you desire to view the report. You can view Minute, Hourly (Hour or Periodic), Daily (Day), Minimum/Maximum, or Extended History (FloBoss 100-Series) values.
4. Click **OK**.

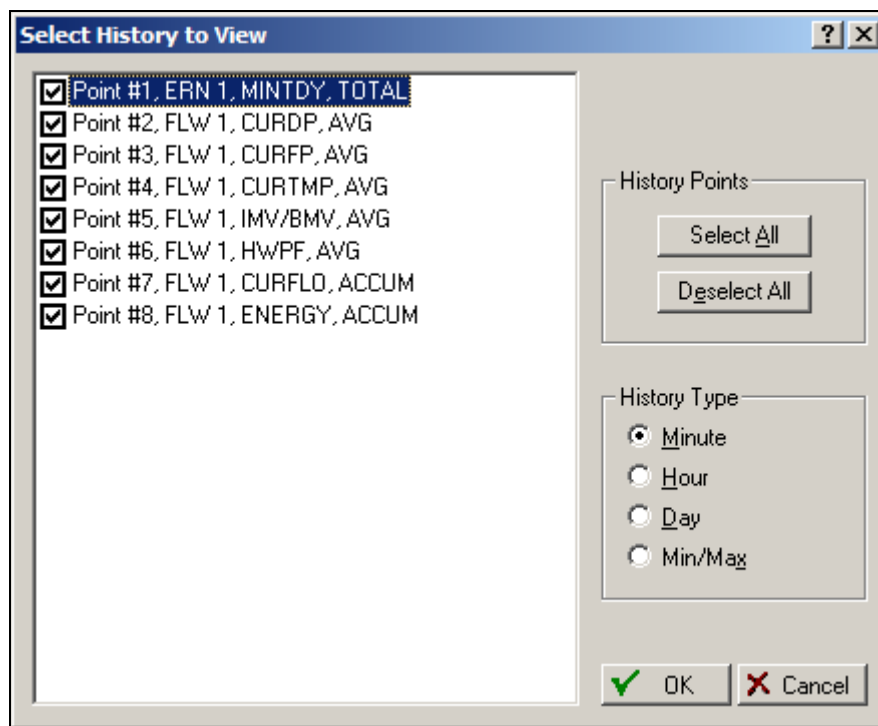


Figure 6-18. History From Device Example (FloBoss 407)

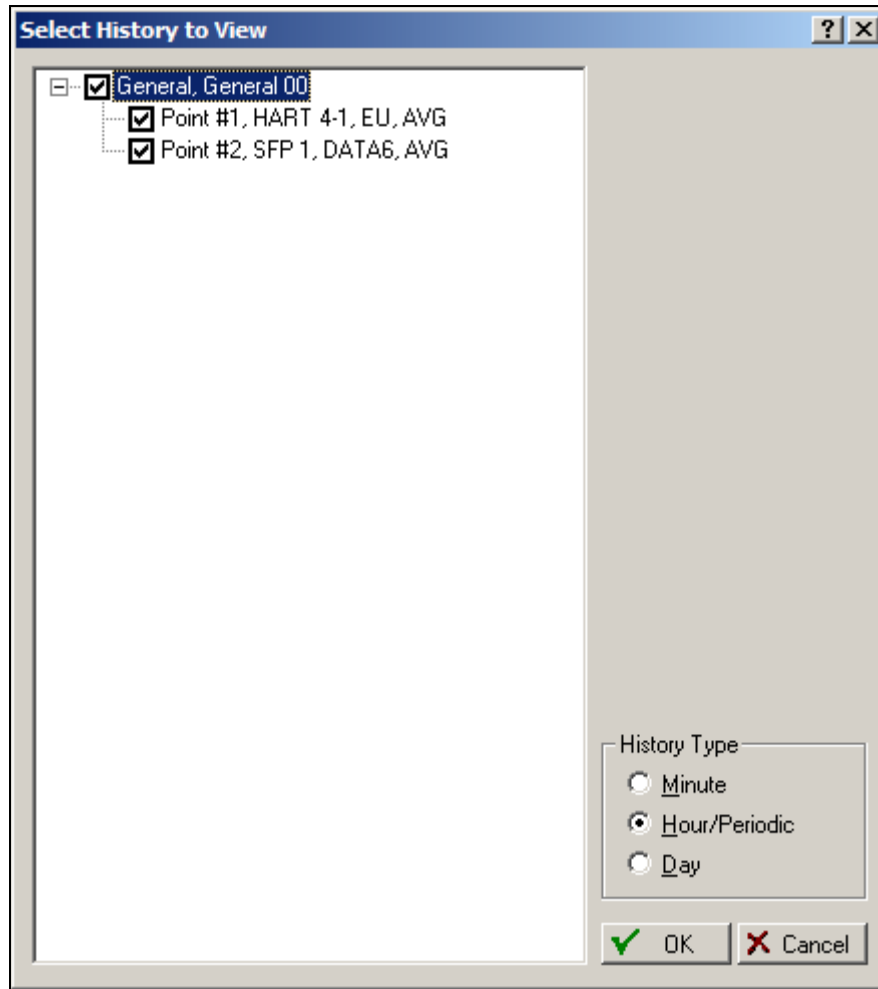


Figure 6-19. Select History to View (ROC800-Series)

6.8.5 Viewing Report Logs From a File

A report is generated based on your Search Criteria from a disk file.

1. Select View menu > History, Alarm, or Event Log > **From File**.
2. Select the file and click **Open**.
3. Perform one of the following:
 - ◆ **Select New** – Return to the Select History Points to be shown screen and perform a new search.
 - ◆ **Invert** – View the log in reverse order (default is newest to oldest). This changes the time order of the Alarm, or Event Log.
 - ◆ **Plot** – View a graphical display of the report.
 - ◆ **Save** – Save the report to a file.
 - ◆ **Print Preview** – Print the report.
 - ◆ **Close** – Close the screen.

6.8.6 Viewing the History Log Report Graphically (Plot)

After selecting View > History > From ROC or From File, the history report displays. Click the Plot button to view a graphical display the first four points of the History Report. The plot chart displays each series of lines as connected points of data, based on the time the data was archived and the current value at that time.

The Plot chart displays the type of history, device type, date, time, and the Operator ID name in the header. The left Y-axis displays the value and the bottom X axis displays the date and time the value was read. A legend at the bottom of the graph corresponds with the lines within the graph.

Use the scroll bar to the left of the graph to change the Y-axis.

Graphics zoom enlarges the selected area of a chart, while not necessarily showing the axes.

Axis zoom changes the minimum and maximum data values to those selected and redraws only that data with the axes.

To Scale the Chart:

1. <Ctrl>, and press down both mouse buttons (or middle button on 3-button mouse).
2. Move the mouse down to increase chart size, or move the mouse up to decrease chart size.

To Move the Chart:

1. Press <Shift>, and press down both mouse buttons (or the middle button on 3-button mouse).
2. Move the mouse to change the positioning of the chart.

To Graphics Zoom an Area of the Chart:

1. Press <Ctrl>, and hold down left mouse button.
2. Drag the mouse to select zoom area and release the mouse button.

To Axis Zoom the Chart:

1. <Shift>, and hold down left mouse button.
2. Drag the mouse to select the zoom area and release the mouse button.

To Reset Scale and Position:

1. Press <r> to remove all effects.

6.9 Device Memory

Select ROC > **Memory**. A display appears that allows you to specify the memory address as **Segment**, and **Offset** for FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series units or as a single hexadecimal **Address** for FloBoss 100-Series units. When you enter numbers within the valid ranges of memory location and use the Update button, the display updates to show the contents of 240 bytes of memory. The hexadecimal values are shown on the left and the ASCII character equivalents are shown on the right.

Use the Prev Block and Next Block buttons to view the previous or next block (240 bytes) of memory. If you are viewing data that may be changing, click the Update button to refresh the screen with the most recent values from the FloBoss or ROC.

Click Close to exit the Device Memory screen.

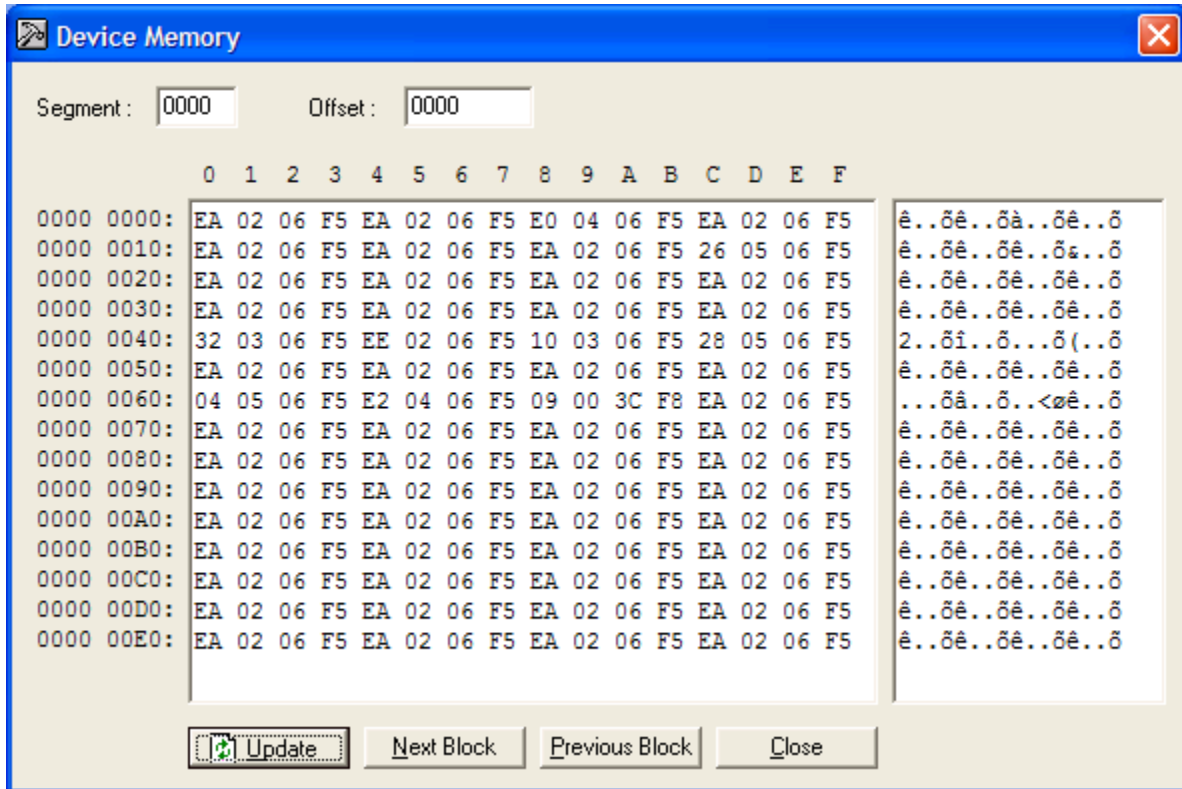


Figure 6-20. Device Memory (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

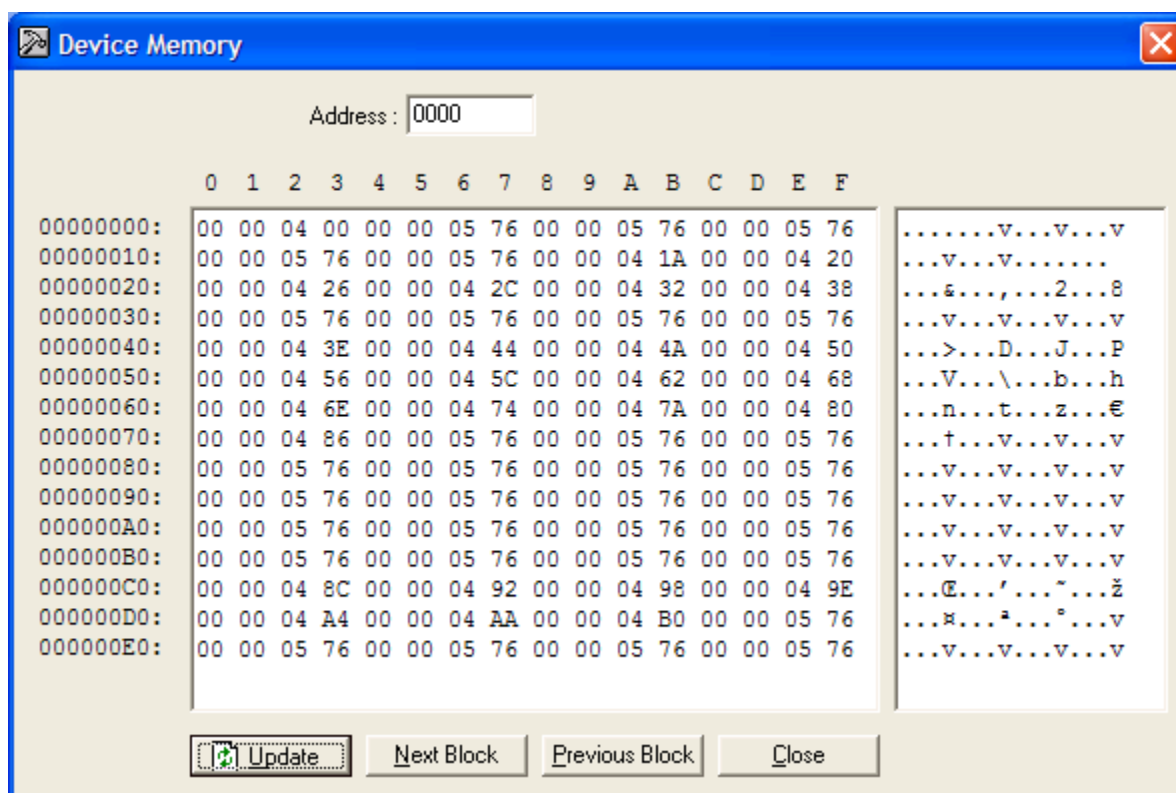


Figure 6-21. Device Memory (FloBoss 100-Series)

SECTION 7 – EXTENDED FUNCTIONS

This section describes how to configure a ROC or FloBoss to perform extended functions: Softpoints, Opcodes, Samplers, Odorizers, PID, Radio Power Control, DS800 Development Suite programs, and User Programs.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
7.1 Soft Points.....	7-1
7.2 Opcode Table.....	7-3
7.3 Sampler/Odorizer (ROC800-Series).....	7-4
7.4 Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID)	7-5
7.5 Radio Power Control.....	7-18
7.6 DS800 Development Suite Software (ROC800-Series)	7-21
7.7 User Program Administrator.....	7-22
7.8 User Data	7-25

7.1 Soft Points

Select Configure > I/O > **Soft Points**. Softpoints are global storage areas for data that can be used by any ROC or FloBoss application. For example, a Softpoint may store the results of a specified calculation by an FST or store an intermediate result of a specified value acquired by an FST. Softpoints consist of a Tag identifier, one integer value, and twenty floating values. For the ROC800-Series, thirty-two Softpoints provide storage for over 1200 variables.

Softpoints consist of:

ROC800-Series:

- ◆ 1 tag (10 character string)
- ◆ 20 floats (floating point values)
- ◆ 2 longs (32-bit)
- ◆ 10 shorts (16-bit)
- ◆ 10 bytes (8-bit)

FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407:

- ◆ 1 tag (10 character string)
- ◆ 20 floats (floating point values)
- ◆ 1 Unassigned Integer (16-Bit)

Soft Point

Softpoints: 1 - Soft Pt 1 Tag: Soft Pt 1

Data

Integer Flag: 0

Data #1: 0.0 Data #11: 0.0

Data #2: 0.0 Data #12: 0.0

Data #3: 0.0 Data #13: 0.0

Data #4: 0.0 Data #14: 0.0

Data #5: 0.0 Data #15: 0.0

Data #6: 0.0 Data #16: 0.0

Data #7: 0.0 Data #17: 0.0

Data #8: 0.0 Data #18: 0.0

Data #9: 0.0 Data #19: 0.0

Data #10: 0.0 Data #20: 0.0

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 7-1. Soft Points (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407)

Soft Point

Softpoints: 1 - Soft Pt 01 Tag: Soft Pt 01

Parameters

Float		Long		Short		Byte	
1	0.0	11	0.0	1	0	1	0
2	0.0	12	0.0	2	0	2	0
3	0.0	13	0.0			3	0
4	0.0	14	0.0			4	0
5	0.0	15	0.0			5	0
6	0.0	16	0.0			6	0
7	0.0	17	0.0			7	0
8	0.0	18	0.0			8	0
9	0.0	19	0.0			9	0
10	0.0	20	0.0			10	0

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 7-2. Soft Points (ROC800-Series)

1. Select the **Softpoint** you desire to configure or view.
2. Enter the **Tag** as a 10-character identification name for the Softpoint.
3. Enter **Float** or **Data #1 to Data #20** parameters to provide storage for IEEE floating point values.
4. Enter **Long** (ROC800-Series) parameters to provide storage for 32-bit unsigned integer values.
5. Enter **Short** (ROC800-Series) parameters to provide storage for 16-bit unsigned integers.
6. Enter **Byte** (ROC800-Series) parameters to provide storage for 8-bit unsigned values.

7. When finished, configuring all parameters click **Apply**. Save the Softpoint configuration to Flash memory, using the **Flash Memory Save Configuration** function in the ROC > Flags screen.

The **Integer Flag** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) is a 16-bit unsigned integer value used as a flag to denote the validity of the floating point data or as a counter. The value may be under the control of an FST or a User Program.

7.2 Opcode Table

Use the Opcode Table to group data being polled for more efficient communications. Parameters from different point types can be assigned to the Opcode Table data points, which can substantially reduce the number of polls from a host computer.

- ❖ **Note:** Use of the term Opcode in this context does not refer to the operator identification codes in ROC and ROC Plus protocols.

Select Configure > **Opcode Table**.

Table No.	Version No.	Data			
1	#TLP#	SYS 1, ROCAADR	...	12	#TLP#
2	#TLP#	DIN 6-1, STATUS	...	13	#TLP#
3	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	14	#TLP#
4	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	15	#TLP#
5	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	16	#TLP#
6	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	17	#TLP#
7	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	18	#TLP#
8	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	19	#TLP#
9	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	20	#TLP#
10	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	21	#TLP#
11	#TLP#	#TLP#	...	22	#TLP#
				23	#TLP#
				24	#TLP#
				25	#TLP#
				26	#TLP#
				27	#TLP#
				28	#TLP#
				29	#TLP#
				30	#TLP#
				31	#TLP#
				32	#TLP#
				33	#TLP#
				34	#TLP#
				35	#TLP#
				36	#TLP#
				37	#TLP#
				38	#TLP#
				39	#TLP#
				40	#TLP#
				41	#TLP#
				42	#TLP#
				43	#TLP#
				44	#TLP#

Figure 7-3. Opcode Table Settings

Select the **Table No.** for the Opcode screen. For the FloBoss 100-Series, four tables are available. For the FloBoss 407, eight tables are available. For the ROC800-Series, sixteen tables are available.

The **Version No.** field attaches a version number to an Opcode table configuration. If the configuration of data points is changed, update the version number. The version number is a floating point number.

Each Opcode **Data** point has a TLP box for mapping TLP values into the Opcode Table Data point. If a host computer asks for a specific Opcode Data point, the ROC or FloBoss returns the value that is referred by the mapped TLP.

7.3 Sampler/Odorizer (ROC800-Series)

Use the Sampler/Odorizer to set up a Discrete Output (DO) channel of the ROC800-Series to send and control the timing and duration of a pulse output to another device, such as an odorizer (odor injector). It can also control a gas sampler.

- ◆ For the ROC800-Series, select Configure > Control > **Sampler/Odorizer**.
- ◆ For the FloBoss 100-Series, select Meter > Setup > **Sampler** tab.

Figure 7-4. Sampler / Odorizer (ROC800-Series)

Select the specific number of the Sampler or Odorizer (**Sampler/Odorizer**) to configure. This field will be grayed out, if the number of Sampler points on the ROC > Information screen is zero. (ROC800-Series).

If **Mode** is Enabled, the DO sends a signal when the specified flow conditions are met (ROC800-Series).

Use the **Input Rate Point** TLP box to select an input point from which to get the rate (ROC800-Series).

Input Rate Value displays the current value of the Input Rate Point selected. The unit of measure for the Input Rate Value and Unit Accumulation will be the same as the unit of the input point selected for Input Rate Point (ROC800-Series).

The **Time Basis** determines the time base for which the Input Rate Point is integrated: every second, minute, hour, or day. (ROC800-Series)

The **Unit Accumulation** field determines when an output pulse generates. The Input Rate Value is integrated over the Time Basis. When the total matches the Unit Accumulation value, a pulse is generated for the duration specified in the duration field (ROC800-Series).

The **Duration** is how long (in seconds) the output pulse will be on. This is how long the DO stays ON. The DO is turned on for the amount of time set in the Duration field every time the Unit Accumulation value is exceeded (ROC800-Series).

Use the **Output Point** TLP box to select which DO point is to be used (ROC800-Series).

7.4 Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID)

Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**. Closed-loop Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID) control is used to provide smooth and stable operation of the feedback control loops employing a regulating device, such as a control valve or a motor. The typical use for PID is to control a Process Variable to a Setpoint.

- ❖ **Note:** To enable PIDs, select ROC > Information > **Points**. Enter the number of PIDs you desire in the Point PIDs Active field and click **Apply**. The maximum number of PID loops is sixteen for the ROC800-Series, one for the FloBoss 100-Series, four for the FloBoss 407, six for a ROC306/ROC312, and sixteen for a ROC364.

In a given PID point, two separate PID loops are available: Primary and Override. In Primary Only mode, the Override Control loop is disabled, leaving only the Primary Control loop active.

In Override Only mode (ROC800-Series), the Primary loop is disabled, leaving only the Override loop active.

In Override Control mode (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series), both loops are active, and a change in output is selected based on either a low or high limit selection, as configured by you.

In a FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series, on the selected loop is active. The selected loop is determined by the switch parameter setting. Each of the maximum PID loops can have Override Control.

Each active PID loop acquires the Process Variable input and calculates the change in output required to maintain its Setpoint. The change output of the selected loop is applied to the appropriate output.

The PID control loop can use either one Analog Output or two Discrete Outputs to control the regulating device. If Discrete Output control is to be used, one DO will provide open/forward control and the other DO provides close/reverse control.

If the Output Type is Analog, the selected change in output is added to the current value of the output. If the Output Type is Discrete, the change in output is sent to one of the two Discrete Outputs. The magnitude of the correction determines the amount of time that an output is energized. If the correction is positive, it is routed to the open/forward DO. If the correction is negative, it is sent to the close/reverse DO.

To set up a PID loop, configure the input for the Process Variable. Then configure the one AO or the two DO points, each of which must be configured as TDO (Timed Duration Output) points. Then, select Configure > Control > **PID** to configure the parameters associated with PID Control Loops.

1. To enable PIDs in a ROC or FloBoss, select ROC > Information > **Points**.
2. Enter the number of PIDs you desire in the **Point PIDs Active** field. The maximum number of PID loops is sixteen for the ROC800-Series, one for the FloBoss 100-Series, four for the FloBoss 407, six for a ROC306/ROC312, and sixteen for a ROC364.
3. Click **Apply**.
4. Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**.

7.4.1 PID (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**. In a given PID point, two separate PID loops are available: Primary and Override. In Primary Only mode, the Override Control loop is disabled, leaving only the Primary Control loop active.

In Override Only mode(ROC800-Series), the primary loop is disabled, leaving only the override loop active.

In Override Control mode (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series), both loops are active, and a change in output is selected based on either a low or high limit selection, as configured by you. Each of the maximum PID loops can have Override Control (in which both primary and Override Control algorithms are active).

The PID control loop can use either one Analog Output or two Discrete Outputs to control the regulating device. If Discrete Output control is to be used, one DO will provide open/forward control and the other DO provides close/reverse control.

Each active PID loop acquires the Process Variable input and calculates the change in output required to maintain its Setpoint. If Override Control is enabled, the calculation result that is applied to the output depends upon whether the High or Low Override Type Select is chosen for a ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series.

If the Output Type is Analog, the selected change in output is added to the current value of the output. If the Output Type is Discrete, the change in output is sent to one of the two Discrete Outputs. The magnitude of the correction determines the amount of time that an output is energized. If the correction is positive, it is routed to the open/forward DO. If the correction is negative, it is sent to the close/reverse DO.

One application of Override PID control allows pressure control to override flow control when the pressure exceeds a Setpoint value. For example: The output of the primary flow control loop would be selected until the pressure input approaches the Override Setpoint of 700 psig. As the pressure input approaches its Setpoint, the pressure loop tries to close the valve and take over control at the point when the output calculated by the pressure loop is less than the output calculated by the flow loop. Control returns to the primary flow control loop, when the change in output required to maintain the override Setpoint no longer outweighs the flow loop's attempts to maintain its Setpoint.

Through the use of an FST, you may implement a switchover algorithm. When the input exceeds a predetermined switchover value, the FST can switch the mode to Override only. When the FST determines that the input value is no longer in a critical range, the PID mode can be switched back to Primary only.

PID Loop

PID : 1 - PID 1 Tag : PID 1

General | Tuning | Status

Control Type

☐ Primary Only ☒ Override Control

☐ Override Only

Output

☐ Analog ☒ Discrete

Mode

☒ Disabled ☐ Auto

☐ Manual ☐ Remote SP

Loop Status : Disabled

Loop Period : 1.5 Secs

Actual Period : 0.0 Secs

Primary

	I/O Definition	Value
Setpoint :	Local	0.0
Process Variable :	RTD 9-1, EU	0.0

Override

	I/O Definition	Value
Setpoint :	Local	0.0
Process Variable :	Undefined	0.0

Output

DO Open Point :	SFP 2, DATA12	0.0
DO Close Point :	SFP 1, DATA16	0.0
Output Low Limit :	0.0	Output High Limit : 100.0

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 7-5. PID Loop (ROC800-Series)

1. To enable PIDs in a ROC or FloBoss, select ROC > Information > **Points**.
2. Enter the number of PIDs you desire in the **Point PIDs Active** field.
3. Click **Apply**.
4. To set up a PID loop, configure the input for the Process Variable.
5. Configure the one AO or the two DO points, each of which must be configured as TDO (Timed Duration Output) points.
6. Select Configure > Control > **PID** to configure the parameters associated with PID Control Loops.

7.4.2 PID (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**. Closed-loop Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID) control is used to provide smooth and stable operation of the feedback control loops employing a regulating device, such as a control valve or a motor. The typical use for PID is to control a Process Variable to a Setpoint.

In a given PID point, two separate PID loops are available: Primary and Override. In Primary Only mode, the Override Control loop is disabled, leaving only the Primary Control loop active.

The ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 units implement Override PID as a switchover algorithm. At any given point in time, only the selected loop (Primary or Override) is active. The loop selected is based on comparison of an input to a configured Switch Setpoint. Both the Primary and Override Control Loop have independent Switch Inputs, Switch Setpoints, Switch Modes, and Outputs.

One application of Override PID Control allows pressure control to Override flow control when the pressure exceeds a Switch Setpoint.

For example: The flow control loop is active until the pressure (Switch Input) exceeds the Switch Setpoint of 700 Psig. At that point, the pressure control loop (Override Loop) becomes active and begins controlling the pressure to the Override Setpoint.

Through the use of an FST, you can implement an Override algorithm by configuring flow and pressure control loops as two separate Primary Control Loops and writing the outputs to the Softpoints or FST Registers. The FST then manages the high / low selection.

The screenshot shows the 'PID Loop' configuration window. It is divided into several sections:

- General:** PID: 1 - PID #1, Tag: PID #1.
- Control Type:** Radio buttons for Primary Only, **Override Control** (selected), and Discrete.
- Output Type:** Radio buttons for Analog (selected) and Discrete.
- Scanning:** Radio buttons for Enabled and Disabled (selected).
- Mode:** Radio buttons for Manual and Auto (selected).
- Loop Status:** 0.
- Calc Time:** 1.5 Seconds.
- Primary Loop:**
 - I/O Definition:**

I/O Definition	Value
Setpoint :	970.1626
Process Variable :	Undefined ... 0.0
Primary Switch PV :	Undefined ... 0.0
Switch to Override if :	> 0.0
- Override Loop:**
 - Setpoint : 0.0
 - Process Variable : Undefined ... 0.0
 - Override Switch PV : Undefined ... 0.0
 - Switch to Primary if : > 0.0
- Output:**
 - Primary Output : Undefined ... 0.0
 - Override Output : Undefined ... 0.0
- Tuning:**

	Primary	Override
Loop Period :	1.5	1.5
Gain :	0.5	0.5
Reset :	4.0	4.0
Rate :	0.0	0.0
Scale Factor :	-1.0	-1.0
Integral Deadband :	0.0	0.0
SP Ramp Rate :	0.0	0.0
- Manual Tracking:** Radio buttons for Disabled (selected) and Enabled.
- Halt PID On Reset:** Radio buttons for Disabled (selected) and Enabled.
- Min Control Time:** 0 Secs.

At the bottom, there are buttons for Copy, Paste, Update, OK, Cancel, and Apply.

Figure 7-6. PID Loop (ROC300-Series)

1. To enable PIDs in a ROC or FloBoss, select ROC > Information > **Points**.
2. Enter the number of PIDs you desire in the **Point PIDs Active** field.
3. Click **Apply**.
4. To set up a PID loop, configure the input for the Process Variable.
5. Configure the one AO or the two DO points, each of which must be configured as TDO (Timed Duration Output) points. If Override Control is selected, Discrete Control will not be available.
6. Select Configure > Control > **PID** to configure the parameters associated with PID Control Loops.

7.4.3 PID – General

Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**.

The screenshot shows the 'PID Loop' configuration window with the 'General' tab selected. The window has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two dropdown menus: 'PID : 1 - PID 1' and 'Tag : PID 1'. The main area is divided into several sections:

- Control Type:** Three radio buttons: 'Primary Only', 'Override Control' (selected), and 'Override Only'.
- Output:** Two radio buttons: 'Analog' and 'Discrete' (selected).
- Mode:** Four radio buttons: 'Disabled' (selected), 'Auto', 'Manual', and 'Remote SP'.
- Loop Status:** A dropdown menu set to 'Disabled'.
- Loop Period:** A text box with '1.5' and the unit 'Secs'.
- Actual Period:** A text box with '0.0' and the unit 'Secs'.
- Primary:** A section with two rows. The first row is 'Setpoint : Local' with a value of '0.0'. The second row is 'Process Variable : RTD 9-1, EU' with a value of '0.0'.
- Override:** A section with two rows. The first row is 'Setpoint : Local' with a value of '0.0'. The second row is 'Process Variable : Undefined' with a value of '0.0'.
- Output:** A section with three rows. The first row is 'DO Open Point : SFP 2, DATA12' with a value of '0.0'. The second row is 'DO Close Point : SFP 1, DATA16' with a value of '0.0'. The third row is 'Output Low Limit : 0.0' and 'Output High Limit : 100.0'.

At the bottom of the window, there is a toolbar with buttons: 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 7-7. PID – General (ROC800-Series)

Select the **PID** control loop point to be configured.

Enter a unique 10-character alphanumeric **Tag** for this PID point.

Select the **Control Type**:

- ◆ **Primary Only** – The Primary loop is the only loop active and the output calculated by the Primary loop is used to adjust the control output.
- ◆ **Override Only** – (ROC800-Series) The Override loop is the only loop active and the output calculated by the Override loop is used to adjust the control output. This Control Type is used mainly for tuning the Override loop or when loop selection is controlled by an FST or other logic external to the PID algorithm.
- ◆ **Override Control** – (ROC800-Series) Both the Primary and Override loops are active and the outputs from the two loops are compared and either the lesser or greater of the two outputs is used to adjust the control Output.

Select the type of **Output**:

- ◆ **Analog** – The PID output is written to the assigned Analog Output point EU value.
- ◆ **Discrete** – The PID output is written to the assigned DO Open point EU value if the change in output is positive and is written to the assigned DO Close Point EU value if the change in output is negative. The Discrete Outputs must be configured as Timed Duration Outputs (DOUT).

Set **Scanning** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 units) to Enabled or Disabled to control the ON and OFF status for scanning the PID loop. If Off, no new output is calculated and no update is sent to the output point.

Select the **PID Mode**:

- ◆ **Disabled** – (ROC800-Series) No loops are active and the PID output parameter is not written to the assigned control output.
- ◆ **Manual** – No loops are active and the PID output parameter is written to the assigned control output, allowing you to adjust the output as required.
- ◆ **Auto** – PID loops are active as configured under Control Type. You enter the Setpoint of the loops. Any change in the calculated output is automatically sent to the configured output point.
- ◆ **Remote SP** – (ROC800-Series) PID loops are active as configured under Control Type. The Setpoint of the loops are read from the Setpoint I/O Definition.

Loop Status displays Primary or Override to indicate which loop is currently selected or disabled, if the loop is in Disabled or in Manual Mode. (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series)

For a ROC300-Series or FloBoss 407:

- ◆ 0 – Disabled.
- ◆ 1 – Primary.
- ◆ 2 – Override.

Enter the **Calc Time** (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407) to indicate the actual period of time (in seconds) between executions of the PID algorithm. This is the amount of time measured between executions from the beginning of one execution to the beginning of the next and should equal the value entered for the Loop Period on the Tuning screen when the unit is not overloaded.

Enter the **Loop Period** (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series) to set the period of time (in seconds) between executions of the PID algorithm. This is the amount of time between executions from the beginning of one execution to the beginning of the next. If Override Control is selected, both loops will be executed in this time period.

The **Actual Period** (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series) read-only field displays the actual amount of time (in seconds) from the beginning of the last execution of the loop to the beginning of the current execution of the loop.

Use the PID Loop **Primary** fields to setup the Primary PID Loop's configuration.

- ◆ For a ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series, select an input or enter a **Setpoint** around which the Primary Process Variable is controlled.
- ◆ For a ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407, enter a **Setpoint** around which the Primary Process Variable is controlled.

Select the input point defined as the **Process Variable** for the Primary loop of the PID algorithm.

The **Value** is used for comparison to the Setpoint.

Select the **Primary Switch PV** (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407) input point assigned for comparison with the Primary Variable. This value determines when switchover to the Override Control loop occurs.

Enter a **Switch to Override if:** (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407) Direction entered to be compared with the assigned input (Override Switch PV) to determine when switchover to the Primary Control loop occurs. The type of comparison is: (>) greater than or (<) less than.

Use the PID Loop **Override** fields to setup the Override PID Loop's configuration.

- ◆ For a ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series, select an input or enter a **Setpoint** around which the Override Process Variable is controlled.
- ◆ For a ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407, enter a **Setpoint** around which the Override Process Variable is controlled.

Select the input point defined as the **Process Variable** for the Override loop of the PID algorithm.

The **Process Variable** is used for comparison to the Setpoint.

Select the **Override Primary PV** (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407) input point assigned for comparison with the Override Switch Setpoint. This value determines when switchover to the Primary Control loop occurs.

Enter a **Switch to Override if** (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407) as the direction the entered Switch to Primary Setpoint is to be compared with the assigned input (Override Switch PV) to determine when switchover to the Primary Control loop occurs. The type of comparison is (>) greater than or (<) less than.

Use the PID Loop's **Output** fields to set the point and limits for the Analog Output or Discrete Output.

- ◆ If Control Type is set to Analog, select the **Output Point** (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series) to be assigned as the PID control output.
- ◆ Enter an **Output Low Limit** (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series). If the change in output calculated by the loop causes the current value of the output to go below this value, the output is set to the value entered here.
- ◆ Enter an **Output High Limit** (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series). If the change in output calculated by the loop causes the current value of the output to go above this value, the output is set to the value entered here.
- ◆ Enter a **Primary Output** (FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series). This is the output that will be assigned as the control output for the Primary Control loop of the PID algorithm.
- ◆ Enter a **Override Output** (FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series). This is the output that will be assigned as the control output for the Override Control loop of the PID algorithm.
- ◆ If Control Type is set to Discrete, select the Discrete Output point (**DO Open Point**) to open the valve or other device and the Discrete Output point (**DO Close Point**) to close the valve or other device.
 - ❖ **Note:** These Discrete Output points must be configured as TDO (Time Duration Output) Discrete Output Mode.

7.4.4 PID – Tuning

Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**.

PID Loop

PID : 1 - PID 1 Tag : PID 1

General Tuning Status

	Primary	Override
Gain :	0.5	0.5
Reset :	4.0	4.0
Rate :	0.0	0.0
Scale Factor :	-1.0	-1.0
Control Deadband :	0.0	0.0
SP Ramp Rate :	0.0	0.0
SP Low Limit :	0.0	0.0
SP High Limit :	1000000.0	1000000.0
Change in Output :	0.0	0.0

Manual Tracking

☐ Enabled

☒ Disabled

Halt PID On Reset

☒ Enabled

☐ Disabled

Override Type Select

☐ High

☒ Low

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 7-8. PID Tuning (ROC800-Series)

Figure 7-9. PID Loop (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

For a FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series, set the **Loop Period** time in seconds between execution of the PID algorithm.

Enter the Proportional **Gain** as the ratio of the change in output to the change in the error (Process Variable – Setpoint).

Enter the **Reset** (Integral Gain) as the ratio of the change in output to the change in the integral of the error (Process Variable – Setpoint) with respect to time. This value is in terms of repeats per minute.

Enter the **Rate** (Derivative Gain) as the ratio of the change in output to the change in the error (Process Variable ÷ Setpoint) with respect to time. This value is in terms of minutes.

Enter the **Scale Factor** number representing the ratio of the output span to input (Process Variable) span. The sign of the number specifies the action of the loop: negative for reverse action (the default), or positive for direct action. Reverse action causes the PID loop point to produce a “decrease” in output (to close a valve, for example) when the Process Variable exceeds the Setpoint.

Enter the **Integral Deadband** as a “window” around the Setpoint. When the Process Variable is within this window, no change in output is calculated. For example, if you enter “5,” there is a region of 5 units above and 5 units below the Setpoint in which the Process Variable can move without affecting the output.

Enter the **SP Ramp Rate** as the maximum rate at which the Setpoint is allowed to ramp to a new value. Maximum rate is in EU per minute where engineering units are the units of the Process Variable.

For a ROC800-Series, enter the **SP Low Limit** as the lowest allowed value for the Setpoint.

For a ROC800-Series, enter the **SP High Limit** as the highest allowed value for the Setpoint.

For a ROC800-Series, the **Change in Output** displays the calculated change in output from the associated loop.

Select **Manual Tracking** Enabled to have the primary loop Setpoint set equal to the Primary Process Variable when the PID point is in Manual Mode. This is typically used to eliminate a “bump” when transferring back to the Automatic Mode.

Select **Halt PID On Reset** Enabled to have the PID control loop mode set to disabled upon a reset of the ROC or FloBoss, such as a power restart or a Warm Start.

For a FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series, enter the **Min Control Time** as the minimum amount of time that the Primary or Override Control loop must maintain control before switching occurs back to the other control loop.

For the ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series, set the **Override Type Select** to Low or High (Override Control only). If Low Override Type is selected, the lesser of the primary change in output and the override change in output will be selected as the control output. If High Override Type is selected, the greater of the primary change in output and the override change in output will be selected as the control output.

7.4.5 PID – Status (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**.

Figure 7-10. PID Loop Status (ROC800-Series)

When a PID loop is enabled, the **Output Low Limit Status** field indicates whether the output of the primary PID loop has been clipped by the low output limit. Either Limited or Not Limited displays.

When a PID loop is enabled, the **Output High Limit Status** field indicates whether the output of the primary PID loop has been clipped by the high output limit. Either Limited or Not Limited displays.

When a PID loop has been enabled, the **Primary PV Status** field indicates the status of the primary loop's Process Variable data. Either OK, Questionable Data, or Invalid TLP displays.

The **Primary SP Low Limit Status** field indicates whether the Setpoint of the primary PID loop has been clipped by the low Setpoint limit. Either Limited or Not Limited displays.

The **Primary SP High Limit Status** field indicates whether the Setpoint of the primary PID loop has been clipped by the high Setpoint limit. Either Limited or Not Limited displays.

The **Primary SP Rate Limited Status** field indicates whether the Setpoint of the primary PID loop is currently being limited by the maximum Setpoint change rate (SP Ramp Rate on Tuning tab).

When a PID loop has been enabled, the **Override PV Status** field indicates the status of the override loop's Process Variable data. Either OK, Questionable Data, or Invalid TLP displays.

The **Override SP Low Limit Status** field indicates whether the Setpoint of the override PID loop has been clipped by the low Setpoint limit. Either Limited or Not Limited displays.

The **Override SP High Limit Status** field indicates whether the Setpoint of the override PID loop has been clipped by the high Setpoint limit. Either Limited or Not Limited displays.

The **Override SP Rate Limited** field indicates whether the Setpoint of the override PID loop is currently being limited by the maximum Setpoint change rate (SP Ramp Rate on Tuning tab).

7.4.6 PID – Example

Select Configure > Control > **PID Loop**.

The following configuration example describes how to configure a PID point and associated inputs and outputs to implement flow control with pressure override to protect against over-pressuring the line.

In this example, the Primary Process Variable (Primary PV) is obtained from an orifice Meter Run point, specifically, the volumetric flow rate per day. The Override Process Variable (Override PV) is obtained from the pressure value on an MVS point. Setpoints for both the primary and override loops are entered by you. A description is given for setting up either discrete or analog control for the control output.

See MVS Sensor (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 407) for properly configuring the orifice Meter Run point and the MVS point.

If the control valve is controlled by a 4 to 20 mA signal to an I/P converter, configure an Analog Output with the appropriate Low and High Reading EU (engineering units). The units can either be in terms of the valve position (0 to 100%) or in terms of flow capacity (0 to 1000 MCF/Day). Set the Output type on the PID screen to Analog. Under Output Point, select a TLP: Point Type of Analog Outputs, the desired Logical Number, and EU Value parameter.

If the control valve is controlled by a motorized actuator on the valve, configure two Discrete Output points for the open and close contacts. Each of these Discrete Output points must be configured as TDO (time duration output) DOUT types. Set the Low Reading Time to the minimum amount of time (in seconds) the TDO can be energized to move the motor. Set the High Reading Time to the amount of time (in seconds) the TDO must be energized for full travel. Set the Low and High Reading EU values. The units can either be in terms of the valve position (0 to 100%) or in terms of flow capacity (0 to 1000 MCF/Day). Set the Output type on the PID screen to Discrete. Under DO Open Point and DO Close Point, select a TLP: Point Type of Discrete Outputs, the desired logical number, and EU Value parameter.

- ❖ **Note:** The FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series cannot perform Override Control and Discrete Output Control at the same time.

Configure the PID point with a Control Type of Override Control. This causes available fields to appear on the PID screen to enter the I/O definition of the Process Variable and Setpoint for both the Primary and Override loops. Select a TLP: Point Type of “Orifice Meter Run Values”, the desired Logical Number, and a Parameter of “Flow Rate Per Day” for the Primary Process Variable. Select a TLP: Point Type of “MVS”, the desired Logical Number, and a Parameter of “SP Reading” for the Override Process Variable. The Setpoint I/O Definition (ROC800-Series only) remains undefined, because you enter the values. The Setpoint for the Primary loop will be the desired amount of flow per day. The Setpoint for the Override loop will be the pressure value where control should switch to the override loop. Set the Loop Period in seconds. This is typically set to one-fourth of the time required for the actuator to move the valve from fully open to fully closed.

On the Tuning tab, select the Override Type Select of “Low”. This causes the lower of the change in outputs from the primary and secondary loops to be selected. As the pressure approaches the Override Setpoint, the pressure (Override) loop will pinch back the output. At the point that the pressure loop requests an output change less than the flow (primary) loop, the output from the pressure loop will be selected and control the valve. Set the Scale Factor for each of the Primary and Override loops as (span of output) / (span of input).

Both loops have negative scale factors, in order to have the control action close the valve when the Process Variable is above the Setpoint. With the scale factor set per the above formula, the initial settings for gain, reset, and rate will, under most circumstances, produce stable control. The gain controls the magnitude of the initial change in output for a given change in the Process Variable (or Setpoint). The reset controls the magnitude of the change in output based on the continuing difference between the Process Variable and the Setpoint over time. Then these may be then adjusted to give the desired control actions.

7.5 Radio Power Control

Select Configure > Control > **Radio Power Control** to conserve battery power to a radio or any other communicating device.

Radio power is controlled either by the DTR signal or by a Discrete Output. Because there are separate Radio Control points for COM1 and COM2, radio power cycling for COM1 can be configured differently from that for COM2, including independent timer values and separate output controls using the Output Definitions options.

When using a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, two modes of Power Control are possible: Seconds and Minutes. In **Seconds** mode, the time base for the timers is in 0.1 second (1.0 seconds for a FloBoss 100-Series) increments, primarily used with radios. In **Minutes** mode, the time base for the timers is in one-minute increments, primarily used with cellular telephones.

For each Radio Power Control point, the power cycling can be configured to automatically change three times a day. During each of these three periods, called Zone 1, Zone 2, and Zone 3, the ON and OFF times can be set up to operate at various intervals to conserve battery power. The figure below is a graphical depiction of how the power control operates within each time “zone.”

Radio Power Control

Radio Power Control: 1 - PWR_CTRL_0 Tag: PWR_CTRL_0

Radio Power Status: Power Disabled Active Zone: 1

Radio Power Control: ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Zone	Zone1	Zone2	Zone3
Start Time (HHMM):	9999	9999	9999
On Time (Secs):	0.000	0.000	0.000
Off Time (Secs):	0.000	0.000	0.000

Hold Time: 10.000 Secs On Counter: 85 Secs

Low Battery Shutoff: 11.0 Volts Off Counter: 0 Secs

Low Battery Deadband: 1.0 Volts

Power Timer: 0.000 Secs Remaining

Discrete Output: Undefined

Copy Paste Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 7-11. Radio Power Control (ROC-800-Series)

During the ON time:

- ◆ The power output DO is switched to **ON**. DTR signal for the Comm Port is activated.
- ◆ Communications may occur.
- ◆ During the OFF time:
- ◆ The power output DO is set to **OFF**. DTR signal for the Comm Port is in-activated.
- ◆ Communications may not occur.

If communications occur during the ON time, the ON time is extended by the Hold Time. The DO and DTR signal remains ON and receive interrupts remain enabled for the duration of the Hold Time.

- ❖ **Note:** The FloBoss 100-Series units use the Power on the terminal block using LOI Power (3.3 volts) and COM2 Power (6.2 volts).

When the Radio Power Control parameter is Enabled, radio power cycling is activated. The Low Battery Shutoff parameter allows power cycling to be automatically disabled whenever the input voltage to the ROC or FloBoss falls below the specified threshold.

To use Radio Power Control, select Configure > **Radio Power Control**.

After configuring the Radio Control points, click **Apply**. Save the configuration to programmable memory using the **Flash Memory Save Configuration** function in the ROC > Flags screen.

Select the **Radio Power Control** point you desire to configure.

Enter the **Tag** as a 10-character name to identify this point with its respective Comm Port.

Set **Radio Power Control** to **Enabled** to activate the Radio Power Control function.

Use the **Time Units** to switch between Seconds and Minutes. In **Seconds** mode, the time base for the timers is in 0.1 second increments, primarily used with radios. In **Minutes** mode, the time base for the timers is in one-minute increments, primarily used with cellular telephones.

Enter the **Zone** parameters to indicate when Radio Power Control is active and inactive for various Zones.

Start Time in hours and minutes (HHMM) that the respective Zone begins. Time is expressed in local time, 24-hour clock. For example: “1500” under Zone 2 means that the associated On Time and Off Time are used beginning at 3:00 p.m. The Zone is active until the start time for the next zone is encountered.

On Time during a control cycle when the output is in the ON state.

Off Time during a control cycle that the output is in the OFF state.

❖ **Note:** The On Time and Off Time alternate throughout the period the zone is active.

Enter the **Hold Time** that the output remains ON after detection of communications activity in Seconds or Minutes depending on the Time Units mode. This value applies to all Zones. When communications occur during the On Time, the On Time is extended by the Hold Time. The DTR signal and Discrete Output remain in the ON state.

If a Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception (SRBX) message needs to be sent to the host computer, the radio power will be turned on for the Hold Time allowing the SRBX message to be transmitted. The Hold Time should be configured for a length of time long enough to allow the ROC or FloBoss to receive a response back from the host.

Enter the **Low Battery Deadband** for the ROC800-Series. The Low Battery Deadband value is added to the Low Battery Shutoff to determine when the Radio Power Control function is enabled again and allows the DO to turn on when needed.

Enter a **Low Battery Shutoff** value that specifies the voltage at which Power Control is automatically disabled. The voltage being sensed is the System AI Battery Input voltage (0 to 1 for the ROC800-Series and E2 for the FloBoss 100-Series). The Low Battery Shutoff parameter allows power cycling to be automatically disabled whenever the input voltage to the ROC or FloBoss falls below the specified threshold. The default value is 11 volts.

Radio Power Control is automatically enabled again when the input voltage rises up to this value.

Select which **Discrete Output** point used to power the radio.

Not available for the FloBoss 100-Series.

Select Inverted (**Inverted** / **Normal**) to define the action of Discrete Output value. Normal output is energized in On Time and Inverted output is energized in Off Time.

Not available for the FloBoss 100-Series.

The **Power Timer** counts down the amount of time (On Time, Off Time, or Hold Time) that the Radio Control is currently using. The value is the number of seconds or minutes remaining.

The **On Counter** value indicates the cumulative time that the Power Control has been in the ON state in seconds or minutes.

The **Off Counter** value indicates the cumulative time that the Power Control has been in the OFF state in seconds or minutes.

The **Radio Power Status** indicates the current status of the Power Control function of ON, OFF, or RBX.

The **Active Zone** indicates which zone is currently activated for determining the Start Time, On Time, and Off Time.

Some of the On Time is also used by the radio during power-up initialization of the receiver, causing part of the On Time to be unavailable for receiving requests.

7.6 DS800 Development Suite Software (ROC800-Series)

This screen provides parameters related to the DS800 application. It is good practice to check these settings prior to downloading a DS800 application. For more information on DS800 programs, refer to the DS800 Development Suite on-line help or the DS800 Development Suite User Manual.

Select Configure > Control > **DS800**.

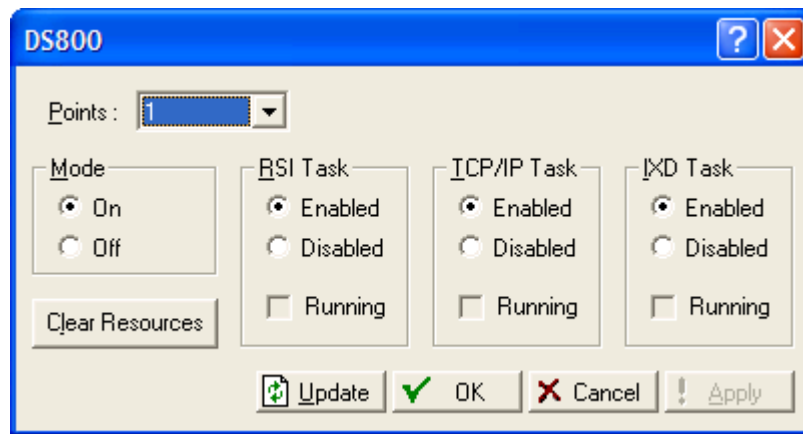


Figure 7-12. DS800 Development Suite Software (ROC800-Series)

The **Points** number is always set to 1, the number of DS800 programs allowed.

The **Mode** enables the execution of all DS800 resources loaded into the ROC.

Enable **RSI Task** if you will be communicating via serial communications for downloading and debugging DS800 applications. Distributed applications (multiple resource projects) are not supported over serial links.

Enable **TCP/IP Task** if you will be communicating via Ethernet.

The **IXD Task** parameter must be Enabled to download resources to a ROC. This would only be Disabled to save processor time, if there were NO bindings between resources using the HSD network.

The **Clear Resources** button removes all downloaded resources from the ROC800-Series unit's permanent storage. This, however, does not affect or stop a currently executing resource, because this resource is copied to RAM before it is started. The resources will be resident in RAM until a restart is performed or until a Warm Start occurs at the ROC800-Series, or the Mode radio button on the DS800 window is set to Off. When the **Mode** radio button is set back to On or the ROC800-Series is restarted, only resources downloaded to the ROC after the Clear Resources button was pressed will attempt to start.

7.7 User Program Administrator

The User Program Administrator allows you to download extended functions and applications to a ROC or FloBoss. Select Utilities > **User Program Administrator**.

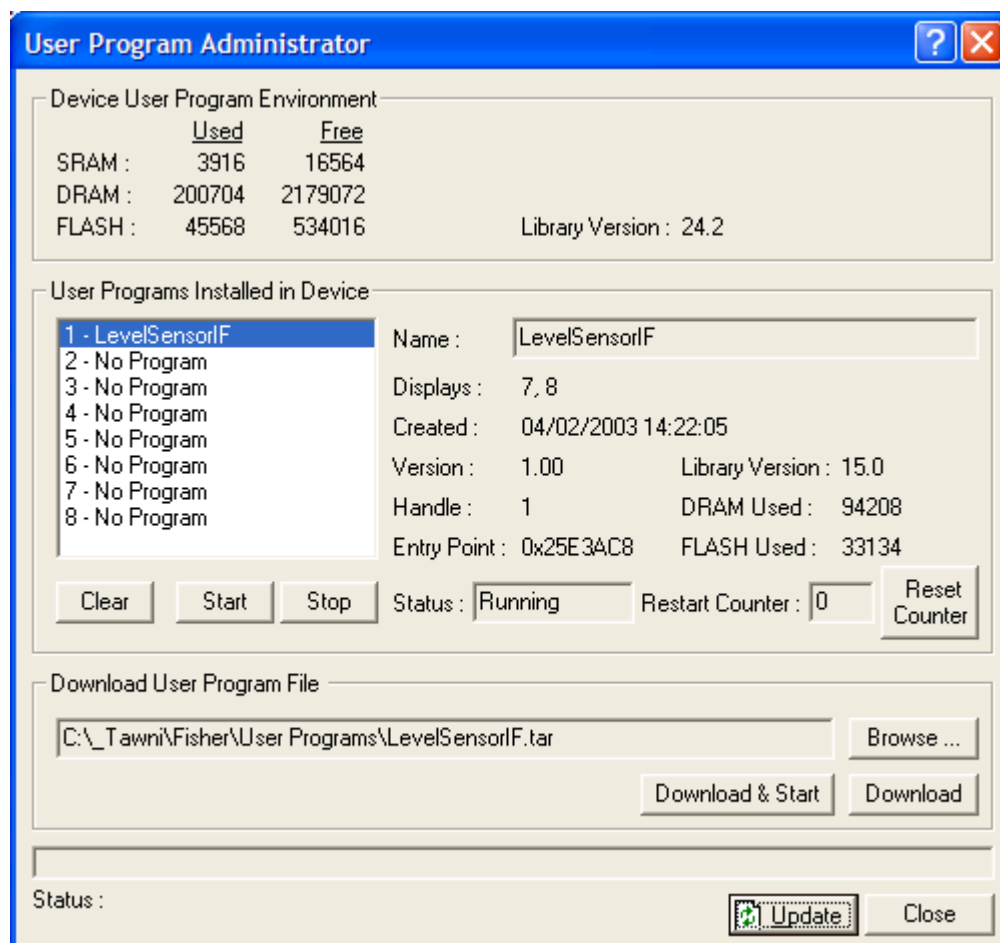


Figure 7-13. User Program Administrator (ROC800-Series)

User Program Administrator

User Programs Installed in Device

User Program Name and Version :

Status	Code	Data
Start Addr :	Start Addr :	Start Addr :
End Addr :	End Addr :	End Addr :

Clear Enable Disable

Memory Usage

Segment #	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
Code (0x790000) :	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Data (0x46C000) :	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

☐ = Unused ☒ = Used ☒ = Used by Selected Program

Download User Program File

C:_Tawni\Fisher\User Programs\FB100\Mb103_2.bin Browse ...

Title	Modbus Host COM2	1.00	Code	Data
Type	User Comm Pgm 3 (COM2)		Start Segment : 7	Start Segment : 17
Size	27584		Segments : 1	Segments : 3

Download & Start Download Close

Figure 7-14. User Program Administrator (FloBoss 100-Series)

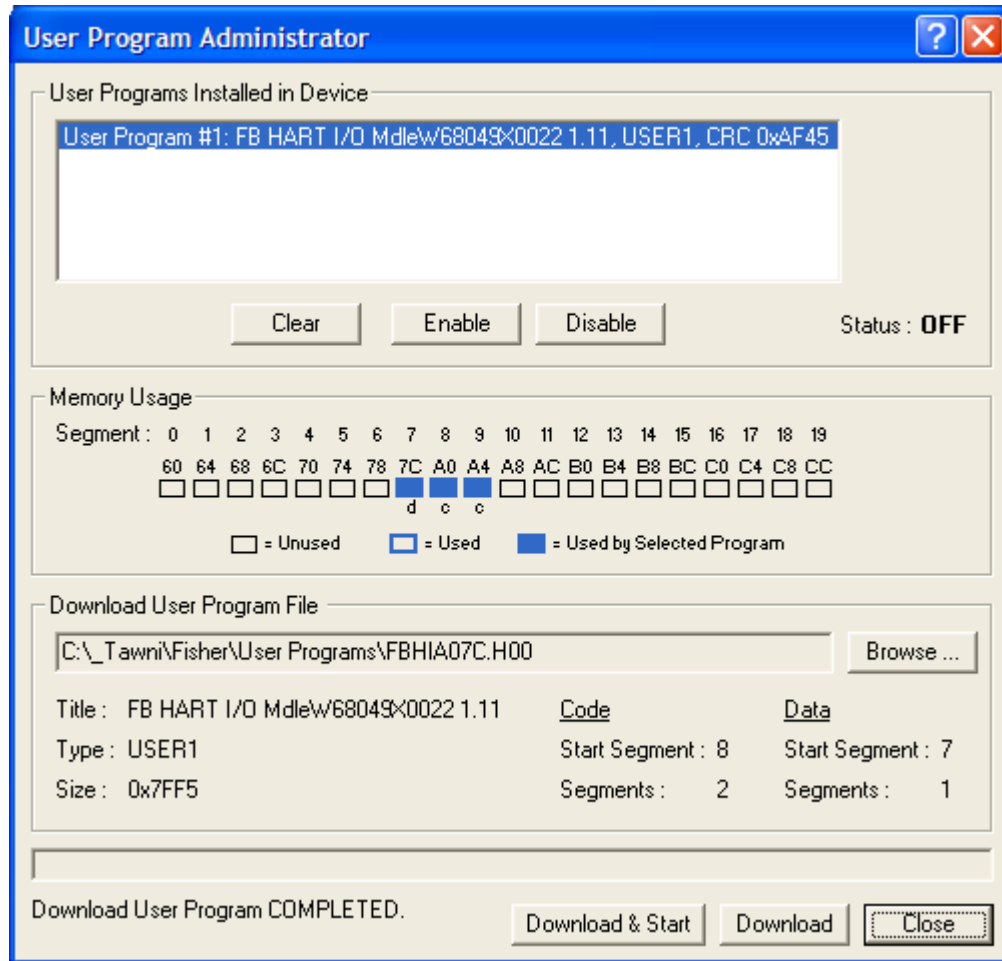


Figure 7-15. User Program Administrator (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

7.7.1 User Program Download Steps

To download a User Program:

1. Select Utilities > **User Program Administrator**.
2. Determine the amount of memory available in **Memory Usage** (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407) or Device User Program Environment (ROC800-Series). The memory location must be available for the specific User Program that you are loading.
3. When using a ROC800-Series, click **Reset Counter** to clear the value that indicates how many times the User Program has been restarted.
4. Click **Browse** and select the User Program file to download from the CD-ROM or PC. User Program files are typically located in the Program Files folder. The Open File dialog displays the names of all the files that have the .tar (ROC800-Series), .bin (FloBoss 100-Series), or .H00 (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) extension.
5. Select the **File name** you desire to load and click **Open**.
6. Click **Download & Start** to download the selected User Program and automatically start the program. Click **Download** to download the User Program, but not start the program.

7. When using a FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series, select System > Flags. Click Flash Memory Save Configuration and click **Yes**. This ensures that the program automatically restarts after a Cold Start.

8. Click **OK**.

❖ **Note:** User Program information displays under the Configuration Tree. For the FloBoss units, User Program information also displays under select Configure > User Data.

The **Status** field (in User Programs Installed in Device area) displays ON or OFF indicating the status of the User Program selected in the User Programs Installed in Device field.

The **Status** field at the bottom of the screen displays the status of the Download User Program File.

Determine the amount of memory available in **Memory Usage** (FloBoss 100-Series and FloBoss 407) or **Device User Program Environment** (ROC800-Series). The memory location must be available for the specific User Program that you are loading.

When using a ROC800-Series, click **Reset Counter** to clear the value that indicates how many time the User Program has been restarted.

Select the User Program in the **User Program Installed in Device** field, click **Start** or **Enable**.

The **Status** field displays ON or OFF indicating the status of the User Program selected in the User Programs Installed in Device field.

Click **Browse** and select the User Program file to download from the CD-ROM. Program files are typically located in the Program Files/ROCLINK Files folder. The Open File dialog displays the names of all the files that have the .tar (ROC800-Series), .bin (FloBoss 100-Series), or .H00 (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series) extension.

Select the **File name** you desire to load and click **Open**. Click **Download** to download the selected User Program. Only install one User Program.

7.8 User Data

Configure > **User Data** lists User Program configuration screens for User Programs loaded. These User Data screens are used to configure the parameters needed for each User Program. After you install a User Program, the User Data drop-down menu then lists the menu options associated with the program. Refer to the user manual supplied with your User Program for details concerning these configuration screens.

Well Test Flow Table

Point Number : 1

	+/- MCFD	Flow SP
Hr 0	0.0	0.0
Hr 2	34.0	0.0
Hr 4	0.0	0.0
Hr 6	0.0	0.0
Hr 8	0.0	0.0
Hr 10	0.0	0.0
Hr 12	0.0	0.0
Hr 14	0.0	0.0
Hr 16	0.0	0.0
Hr 18	0.0	0.0
Hr 20	0.0	0.0
Hr 22	0.0	0.0

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 7-16. User Data Example (ROC300-Series)

After you select a User Program option from the User Data drop-down menu, the screen associated with that option displays. You can then proceed to configure the parameters shown on the screen.

SECTION 8 – MODBUS COMMUNICATIONS

Select Configure > Modbus > **Configuration**. This section describes how to configure a ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series to communicate using the Modbus protocol for integration of the ROC and Modbus devices into the same Host / Slave system.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
8.1 Modbus Configuration (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)	8-2
8.2 Modbus Configuration – History	8-8
8.3 Modbus Events and Alarms Functionality	8-13
8.4 Modbus Registers (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)	8-18
8.5 Modbus Master Table (ROC800-Series)	8-29
8.6 Modbus Master Modem (ROC800-Series)	8-31
8.7 Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)	8-32

FloBoss 100-Series

The FloBoss 100-Series can act as a Slave device. Modbus Master (host) functionality is only available through the use of a User Program.

The Local Port, COMM1, and COMM2 ports all support Modbus communications. The Modbus mapping on the Modbus Registers screen and Modbus History Access Registers screen defines access to Modbus Registers on any communication port on which Modbus Host or Slave is enabled.

When a communications port is set up as a slave, the FloBoss 100-Series can automatically detect whether the incoming communication request is in ROC protocol or Modbus protocol. If the Modbus User Program is installed, and a communications port is configured as a host, the communications port can only support Modbus host functionality.

ROC800-Series

The ROC800-Series can act as a Slave or a Host device and does not require a User Program.

The Modbus Master mode of operation, which is enabled by selecting the correct port owner designation in the ROC > Comm Ports screen, allows the ROC800-Series to simulate a master device that can poll other Modbus devices for data and stores the data in TLP locations within the ROC800-Series. The TLPs can be virtually any location within the ROC, such as Softpoints, FST Registers, User Program TLPs, and point types (AGA or I/O).

You can map Modbus Registers to any TLP with the correct data types and conversions configurations. The ROC800-Series can also send commands to set outputs and write data to a slave device. Modbus Host in the ROC800-Series is only supported by COMM2, COMM3, COMM4, and COMM5. Modbus Host is not supported on the Ethernet port (COMM1) or on the LOI (Local Port).

In slave mode, the data link between the host device and the ROC800-Series can use any of the communications ports. Serial ports and a communications port with a dialup modem card installed can only be designated to switch between ROC or Modbus slave. The Ethernet port can always recognize Modbus messages.

- ❖ **Note:** For more information about Modbus communications on the Ethernet port, refer to Configuring TCP/IP Communications on the Ethernet Port (ROC800-Series).

Any serial or modem communications port configured with a Port Owner of ROC Plus Protocol/Modbus Slave will automatically determine if the incoming communication request is in ROC protocol or Modbus protocol. The ROC responds using the same protocol as the incoming request.

The Ethernet communications port will automatically determine if the incoming communications request is in ROC protocol, Modbus RTU encapsulated in TCP/IP, or Modbus TCP/IP protocol. The ROC responds using the same protocol as the incoming request.

ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407

The ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 require the Modbus Protocol Emulation User Program to provide Modbus communications.

8.1 Modbus Configuration (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

The General tab sets the basic communication parameters. The Scale Values tab allows you to enter eight low and high floating point scale values and one low and high integer values for converting floating point numbers to a scaled integer. The History Access Registers tab (FloBoss 100-Series) allows a single register to contain one or more History Points for retrieval of Periodic and Daily Historical Archives, as well as the Register number for retrieving the Event Log and Alarm Log.

8.1.1 Configuring a ROC800-Series or FloBoss 100-Series as a Modbus Slave

1. Set up the ROC > **Comm Port**. Refer to Section 2, Communication Ports on the ROC and FloBoss.
2. Define the **Modbus Registers**. Refer to Section 8.4, Modbus Registers (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series), on page 8-18.
3. Configure all **Conversion Codes**. Refer to Table 8-9, Modbus Convert Codes, on page 8-23.
4. Select Configure > Modbus > **Configuration** and configure the Modbus to format the data correctly. Refer to Section 8.1.3, Modbus Configuration – General, on page 8-3.

8.1.2 Configuring a ROC800-Series as a Modbus Host

1. Set up the ROC > **Comm Port**. Refer to Section 2, Communication Ports on the ROC and FloBoss.
2. Define the **Modbus Registers** within the Host by mapping them to TLPs. Define Modbus Registers that will “hold” the information that will be transmitted and received by the Host. Refer to Section 8.4, Modbus Registers (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series), on page 8-18.
3. Define the polling sequence to designate with which Modbus devices (**RTU Addresses**) are communicated and what **Slave Registers** will be read to and which **Master Registers** (Host) will be written out by the Host. Refer to Section 8.5, Modbus Master Table (ROC800-Series), on page 8-29.
4. Select Configure > Modbus > **Configuration** and configure the Modbus to format the data correctly. Refer to Section 8.1.3, Modbus Configuration – General, on page 8-3.
5. Initiate the polling by setting the **Modbus Master Modem** parameters. Refer to Section 8.6, Modbus Master Modem (ROC800-Series), on page 8-31.

8.1.3 Modbus Configuration – General

Select Configure > Modbus > **Configuration**. The General tab sets the basic communication parameters.

The image shows the 'Modbus Configuration' dialog box for the ROC800-Series, with the 'General' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Inside, there are two tabs: 'General' and 'Scale Values'. The 'General' tab contains several sections: 'Comm Port' with a dropdown menu set to '1 - Local Port'; 'Comm Mode' with radio buttons for 'RTU' (selected) and 'ASCII'; 'Byte Order' with radio buttons for 'Least Significant Byte First' (selected) and 'Most Significant Byte First'; 'Slave Mode' with an 'Exception Status' field set to '0'; 'Event Logging' with radio buttons for 'Enabled' (selected) and 'Disabled'; 'Master Mode' with a 'Start Polling' checkbox (unchecked), 'Starting Request' field set to '1', 'Timeout' field set to '30' seconds, 'Number of Requests' field set to '0', 'Retries' field set to '2', 'Continuous Polling' with radio buttons for 'Enabled' and 'Disabled' (selected), and 'Request Delay' field set to '0.0' seconds. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 8-1. Modbus Configuration – General (ROC800-Series)

The image shows the 'Modbus Configuration' dialog box for the FloBoss 100-Series, with the 'General' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Inside, there are three tabs: 'General', 'Scale Values', and 'History Access Registers'. The 'General' tab contains several sections: 'Status' field set to 'OK'; 'Modbus Type' with radio buttons for 'ASCII' and 'RTU' (selected); 'Log Modbus Events' with radio buttons for 'Disabled' and 'Enabled' (selected); 'Byte Order' with radio buttons for 'Least Significant Byte First' (selected) and 'Most Significant Byte First'; 'EEM Modbus' with radio buttons for 'Disabled' and 'Enabled' (selected); and 'Date/Time Registers' with 'Date Register' field set to '7046' and 'Time Register' field set to '7047'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure 8-2. Modbus Configuration – General (FloBoss 100-Series)

Select the **Comm Port** (ROC800-Series) that you desire to configure.

Select the **Comm Mode** or **Modbus Type**. The Modbus protocol supports two modes of transmission: ASCII and RTU. All devices in the same communications network must be configured with the same mode of transmission.

- ◆ **ASCII** (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) mode represents each 8-bit byte of data as two ASCII characters that are the hexadecimal representation of the value. This allows the messages to be read with the use of a dumb terminal, but uses twice as many characters as the RTU mode. Each character sent is composed of a Start bit, 7 or 8 Data bits, and one or two Stop bits with Even, Odd, or No parity. ASCII mode uses Longitudinal Redundancy Checking (LRC) error checking.
- ◆ **RTU** (Remote Terminal Unit) mode allows for greater character density and better data throughput than ASCII for the same baud rate. Each message is transmitted in a continuous stream. Data is sent in 8-bit binary characters. RTU mode uses Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) error checking. By default, RTU is enabled.

In either mode, ASCII or RTU, a Modbus message is placed by the transmitting device into a frame that has a known beginning and ending point.

ASCII Message Framing

Begin of Frame	Address	Function	Data	LRC Error Check	End
:	2 Characters	2 Characters	N Characters	2 Characters	CRLF

RTU Message Framing

Begin of Frame	Address	Function	Data	CRC Error Check	End
T1-T2-T3-T4	1 Byte	1 Byte	N * 1 Byte	2 Bytes	T1-T2-T3-T4

Byte Order of data bytes in a transmission or requests can be reversed. This only affects the Data field of a Modbus message and has no effect on the data bytes for Function Codes 01, 02, and 05.

- ◆ **Least Significant Byte First** – Selecting this check box places the Least Significant Byte first. This is the default value.
- ◆ **Most Significant Byte First** – Selecting this check box places the Most Significant Byte first.

Select **Event Logging** or **Log Modbus Events** Enabled to log all parameter changes made via Modbus to the Event Log or select Disabled to allow parameters to be changed via Modbus without being logged. By default, Event Logging or Log Modbus Events is Enabled.

The **Exception Status** field (FloBoss 100-Series) displays the status codes returned from the modem.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, enter the **Date Register** and **Time Register** for the time period in which you would like to acquire the data.

Enable **EFM Modbus** to use the FloBoss 100-Series EFM Reporting option for date and time format. When disabled, standard Modbus reporting will be used.

The **Slave Mode Exception Status** field (ROC800-Series) displays the error code for the last Modbus message received. This field is applicable only in slave mode.

- 0 = No error
- 1 = Illegal function
- 2 = Illegal data address
- 3 = Illegal data value

If Modbus Master has been selected as the Port Owner on the General tab of the ROC > Comm Ports screen, **Start Polling** (ROC800-Series) controls the initiation of a Modbus Master polling sequence. It will begin polling at the Starting Request entry from the Modbus Master Table and then proceed through the entries in the table. The checkbox will be reset when the polling sequence is complete.

Enter a **Starting Request** (ROC800-Series) value to enable a Modbus Master polling sequence to begin polling with the request number (entry), which represents the line entry, from the Modbus Master Table and then proceed through the entries in the table.

Enter the total **Number of Requests** (ROC800-Series) of Modbus Master requests to be made in this polling sequence. This represents the lines in the polling table on which to execute the polls.

Enable **Continuous Polling** (ROC800-Series) to control whether the Modbus Master polling sequence is executed on a continuous basis. The sequence is defined in the Modbus Master Table.

When Continuous Polling has been enabled, the **Request Delay** (ROC800-Series) sets a delay time, in seconds, between polling request sequences. Each line in the Modbus Master Table is considered a request.

The **Retries** parameter can be set from “0” to “25” to control the number of times after the initial try that the Master ROC800-Series attempts to establish communications with the specified device before reporting a timeout error. Adjust the amount of time between retries using the Timeout parameter.

The **Timeout** parameter defines the amount of time that the Master ROC800-Series waits to receive a valid message after it sends a request to a device. Do not enter 0 (zero) in the Timeout field.

8.1.4 Modbus Configuration – Scale Values

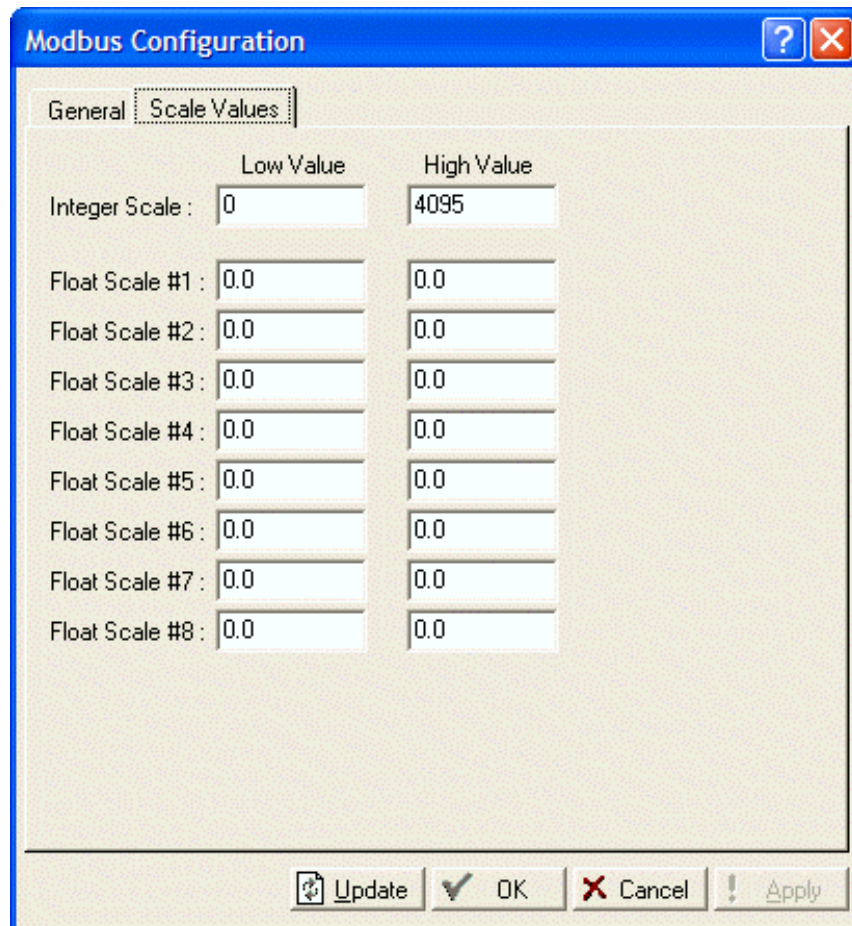
Select Configure > Modbus > **Configuration**. The Scale Values tab allows you to enter eight low and high floating point scale values and one low and high integer values for converting floating point numbers to a scaled integer.

For a ROC800-Series, the Integer Scale values and the Float scale values are used in conjunction with one another whenever you use the Convert Code 1 through 8. In older Modbus devices, data was exchanged with no scaling applied, just raw A/D counts were sent between devices. These scaling factors allow values to be exchanged between Modbus emulating raw, unscaled values.

As an example, a 4 to 20 mA loop might have a raw A/D value where 4 mA = 800 counts and 20 mA = 4095 counts. At midrange, or 12 mA, the raw A/D count would be 2448. If this AI signal was representative of a 0 to 250 pound pressure, 4 mA = 800 counts = 0 PSIG and 20 mA = 4095 counts = 20 mA and midrange would be 12 mA = 2448 counts = 125 PSIG.

In older Modbus Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs), it was typical to send and receive the A/D counts and the conversion was performed by host systems. The Scaling Values allow you to emulate this functionality. For instance, if a host system required information contained in a Softpoint that represented a level between 20 and 120 inches and the host required the same value scaled between 1000 and 7000, (where the host would convert it back into an engineering scale of 20 to 120). In this example, the Integer Scale would be set to 1000 and 7000, the Float Scale would be set up for 20.0 and 120.0. Thus, if the Conversion Code 1 was used, and the actual value in the Softpoint was 70, the host would actually be presented with the Integer Scaled Value of 4000. If the Softpoint was 20, the host would receive 1000. If the Softpoint was 120, the host would receive a value of 7000.

In the ROC800-Series, this is supported for both reads and writes. For the FloBoss 100-Series, Convert Codes 1 to 8 are for reads and 17 to 24 are for writes.



The image shows a 'Modbus Configuration' dialog box with a 'Scale Values' tab selected. The dialog has a table with two columns: 'Low Value' and 'High Value'. The first row is for 'Integer Scale' with values 0 and 4095. The next eight rows are for 'Float Scale #1' through 'Float Scale #8', all with values 0.0. At the bottom are buttons for 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

	Low Value	High Value
Integer Scale :	0	4095
Float Scale #1 :	0.0	0.0
Float Scale #2 :	0.0	0.0
Float Scale #3 :	0.0	0.0
Float Scale #4 :	0.0	0.0
Float Scale #5 :	0.0	0.0
Float Scale #6 :	0.0	0.0
Float Scale #7 :	0.0	0.0
Float Scale #8 :	0.0	0.0

Figure 8-3. Modbus Configuration – Scale Values (ROC800-Series)

Enter the **Integer Scale** values. The Low Value determines the Low Integer Scaling that represents the data and the High Value represents the Highest Integer Valued used to scale the date.

Enter the **Low Value** and the **High Value**. The **High Value** and **Low Value** fields are signed integers, so they can range from –32768 to 32767. These data fields can also be used to scale the Analog I/O to integer values with an implied decimal point.

Enter the **Float Scale #** in the Low Value Float Scale and High Value Float Scale fields. This is use by the ROC to scale the data in conjunction with the Low and High Integer Values.

In host systems that do not accept floating point numbers, eight sets of floating point ranges for values can be specified. This allows floating point values, such as PID Setpoints, Softpoint values, and flow values, to be read and set by the host as integer values. The floating point values are converted to integers by configuring a register or range of registers with the Conversion field set in the Modbus Registers definition configuration to a Convert Code from 1 to 8.

The equations used to convert **floating point values to integers** to enable the reading of floating point values are:

$$\text{Float Range} = \text{High Value Float Scale} - \text{Low Value Float Scale}$$

$$100.0 = 120.0 - 20.0$$

$$\text{Integer Range} = \text{High Value Integer Scale} - \text{Low Value Integer Scale}$$

$$6000 = 7000 - 1000$$

$$\text{Adjusted Reading} = \text{Float Reading} - \text{Low Value Float Scale}$$

$$50.0 = 70.0 - 20.0$$

$$\text{Integer} = \frac{\text{Integer Range} \times \text{Adjusted Reading}}{\text{Float Range}} + \text{Low Value Integer Scale}$$

$$3500 = (6000 \times 50.0) \div 100.0 + 1000$$

The equations used to convert **integers to floating point values** are:

$$\text{Float Range} = \text{High Value Float Scale} - \text{Low Value Float Scale}$$

$$100.0 = 120.0 - 20.0$$

$$\text{Integer Range} = \text{High Value Integer Scale} - \text{Low Value Integer Scale}$$

$$6000 = 7000 - 1000$$

$$\text{Adjusted Integer} = \text{Integer Sent} - \text{Low Value Integer Scale}$$

$$3000 = 4000 - 1000$$

$$\text{Float Value} = \frac{\text{Adjusted Integer} \times \text{Float Range}}{\text{Integer Range}} + \text{Low Value Float Scale}$$

$$70.0 = (3000 \times 100) \div 6000 + 20$$

8.2 Modbus Configuration – History

Select Configure > Modbus > Modbus Configuration and select the **History Access Registers** tab. Communications functionality in the ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series allows the Periodic/Hourly and Daily history values and Event/Alarm records to be retrieved through Modbus Protocol using Function Code 03. FloBoss 100-Series units can also send the Extended History.

Group	Periodic History Register	Daily History Register	History Segment	Start History Point	End History Point	Conversion
1	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	0	0
12	0	0	0	0	0	0
13	0	0	0	0	0	0
14	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 8-4. Modbus History Example (ROC800-Series)

Each historical record contains a time and date stamp and all of the history archives or values for which the Register Number is configured.

The Modbus Function Code 03 and the History Archive Register are used to collect the archived data. Two separate Modbus registers indicate the current Hourly and Daily history index. These can be configured on the Modbus Registers screen as the Hourly History Index Register and the Daily History Index Register for the Segment being referenced (subtract 1 to get the last archived values). These indexes identify the current history archive at which data is about to be logged.

When the ROC or FloBoss unit receives a Function Code 03 request referencing the Periodic History Index (commonly register 7161) or Daily History Index (commonly register 7160), the value returned is interpreted as an index into the specified history log. The Host reads the indexes and then compares the index to the last polled history index that the host maintains and decides whether to request history.

If the Host decides to request history, the reply message contains the date and time stamp and historical values configured for the specified register for that index.

For the ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series, the response message contains two floating point values for the time and date stamp of the history archive (FloBoss 100-Series time stamp = HHMMSS and date stamp = MMDDYY) (ROC800-Series time stamp = HHMM and date stamp = MMDDYY) and floating point values for each of the defined History Points for that History Archive Register. The date stamp for history uses the current year and does **not** figure the number of years since 1980. For example, if the current year is 2007, the year (YY) for the date stamp would be 07.

- ❖ **Note:** For the FloBoss 100-Series, when in Modbus with EFM extensions mode, two changes occur. The time stamp is in the HHMM format, and the date stamp is returned before the time stamp. The ROC800-Series is always in this format.

For the **ROC800-Series**, History collection is mapped on the Modbus History Table.

For the **FloBoss 100-Series**, History collection is mapped on the Modbus History Access Registers tab of the Modbus Configuration screen.

Table 8-1 summarizes the function calls and their associated register and data fields.

Table 8-1. Modbus History, Event, and Alarm Functionality

Function Code	Register Field	Data Field	Description
03	7160 – Daily Index	Ignored ¹	FloBoss 100-Series only. Response contains current daily index.
03	7161 – Hourly Index	Ignored ¹	FloBoss 100-Series only. Response contains current hourly index.
03	32 – Event/Alarm Register	Ignored ¹	Response contains Event and Alarm records ² . Maximum number of bytes returned is 240 (12 records of 20 bytes each). Events are returned before Alarms are returned. The format is displayed in the Modbus Events and Alarms Log Contents table.
05	32 – Event/Alarm Register	Ignored	After Events and Alarms have been returned, there must be an acknowledgment made so that the same Events and Alarms are not returned on the next request.
03	703 – Daily History	Daily History Archive Register Index (0 to 34)	Response contains two floating point values for the time and date stamp of the history archive (time stamp = HHMMSS and date stamp = MMDDYY) and floating point values for each of the defined History Points for that History Archive Register.
03	704 – Hourly History	Hourly or Periodic History Archive Register Index (0 to 839)	Response contains two floating point values for the time and date stamp of the history archive (time stamp = HHMMSS and date stamp = MMDDYY) and floating point values for each of the defined History Points for that History Archive Register.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Periodic Index, Daily Index, and Event/Alarm data fields are used to address a history index number. 2. The Event and Alarm Log record consists of the bytes shown in Table. Modbus Events and Alarms Log Contents. A breakdown of the bit map in Byte 1-2 is given in Table. Event & Alarm Change Bit Map Contents. 			

8.2.1 Modbus Configuration – History Access Registers (FloBoss 100-Series)

The History Archive Registers tab (FloBoss 100-Series) allows a single register to contain one or more History Points for retrieval of the Historical Archives using Function Code 03. Up to 15 Hourly, Daily, or Extended registers can be defined. The FloBoss 100-Series can store up to 35 days of hourly data for each of its History Points. The Points mapped on this tab are configured on the Configure > History Points screen. Refer to the Configure > History Points screen if you are unsure of the point numbers.

The Register Number field is used to address the individual History Archive Register. The Daily Index, Hourly Index, and Event/Alarm data fields are used to address a history index number.

Select Configure > Modbus > Modbus Configuration and select the **History Access Registers** tab.

Register Number	Starting History Point	Ending History Point	Archive Type	Conversion
703	1	8	<input type="radio"/> Hourly <input checked="" type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
704	1	8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
705	1	4	<input type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input checked="" type="radio"/> Extended	0
0	0	0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
0	0	0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
0	0	0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
0	0	0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
0	0	0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
0	0	0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0
0	0	0	<input type="radio"/> Hourly <input checked="" type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Extended	0

Figure 8-5. Modbus History Access Registers (FloBoss 100-Series)

Enter the Modbus Register Number used to acquire the **Daily Index** values.

Enter the Modbus Register Number used to acquire the **Hourly Index** values.

Enter the Modbus Register Number used to acquire the **Extended Index** for Extended History values.

Enter the Modbus Register Number used to acquire the **Events \ Alarms** logs. Refer to Modbus Events & Alarms Functionality.

Enter the Modbus **Register Number** used to acquire the group of History Points defined in the Starting History Point and Ending History Point fields without having to define each history point separately.

Enter the **Starting History Point** to acquire a group of History Points without having to define each history point separately. Enter values in both the Starting History Point and Ending History Point fields. The Starting History Point and Ending History Point values must be different, with the Starting History Point value being the smaller of the two. The group of History Points is specified by the Modbus register value set in the Register Number field. The Starting History Point value is the first history point to be retrieved.

Enter the **Ending History Point** to acquire a group of History Points without having to define each history point separately. Enter values in both the Starting History Point and Ending History Point fields. The Starting History Point and Ending History Point values must be different with the Starting History Point value being the smaller of the two. The group of History Points is specified by the Modbus register value set in the Register Number field. The Ending History Point is the last history point to be retrieved.

Select the **Archive Type** to indicate or return Hourly, Daily or Extended values. Hourly and Daily will return values from Standard History Points. Extended will return values from Extended History Points.

Select the **Conversion** field to specify the type of conversion required, if any, on the data before it is sent to the host or before it is written to the FloBoss. The conversions are used to allow integer values instead of floating point values to be transmitted and received. Refer to Table 8-9, Modbus Convert Codes, on page 8-23.

8.2.1.1 Modbus History Table (ROC800-Series)

To configure the Modbus History, select Configure > Modbus > **History**. The Modbus History Table allows the Periodic and Daily history values and Event/Alarm records to be configured for retrieval through Modbus Protocol, using Function Code 03. Three registers are defined to retrieve the current date in the ROC, the current time in the ROC, and the Event/Alarm records. The Modbus History Table also allows the Periodic and Daily registers to be defined for up to twenty groups of History Points.

Before configuring the Modbus History, be sure the History Segment and History Point configuration is complete.

Modbus History Table

Registers:

Current Date : 7046 Events/Alarms : 32

Current Time : 7047

History Index Mode

☒ EFM Extensions Mode

☐ Override Mode

Group	Periodic History Register	Daily History Register	History Segment	Start History Point	End History Point	Conversion
1	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	0	0
12	0	0	0	0	0	0
13	0	0	0	0	0	0
14	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	0	0	0	0	0	0

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 8-6. Modbus History Table (ROC800-Series)

The **Event/Alarm Registers** are Modbus Register Numbers used to acquire the **Current Date** value, **Current Time** value, and **Event/Alarm** Logs. You may enter registers or use the defaults. Using the defaults is highly recommended. The Current Date and Current Time values identify the current date and time from the unit and may be most useful to users who want the date and time as floating point numbers in the format of DDMMYY and HHMM. For more information on the Modbus retrieval of the Event/Alarms log, refer to Modbus Events and Alarms Functionality.

In the Modbus History Table, each **Group** defines a contiguous group of History Points from a single Segment whose values can be accessed through a Modbus Function Code 03 request for a user-defined Modbus register. Twenty groups are available.

Enter the Modbus Register Number, in either the **Periodic History Register** or **Daily History Register** fields, used to acquire the group of History Points defined in the Start History Point and End History Point fields. One register (commonly register 704) can retrieve periodic data and another register (commonly register 703) can retrieve daily data for the group of History Points. The time Period for the Periodic history is set on the History Segment configuration screen (if the Period is set as 60, this will be Hourly history).

Select a **History Segment** from which the history is to be acquired. Make sure this Segment is configured through the Configure > History Segments screen. The General Segment is listed on this table as 0.

Enter the **Start History Point** for this group of history point values. The Starting History Point value is the first history point to be retrieved. Refer to the Configure > History Segments screen for a full list of the points assigned to this History Segment. The first history point in the Segment is listed on this table as 0.

Enter the **End History Point** for this group of history point values. The Ending History Point number should be greater than or equal to the Starting History Point number. The Ending History Point is the last history point to be retrieved. Refer to the Configure > History Segments screen for a full list of the points assigned to this History Segment. The first history point in the Segment is listed on this table as 0.

Select the **Conversion** field to specify the type of conversion required, if any, on the data. The values will be returned as floating point numbers by default. Refer to the Event & Alarm Change Bit Map Contents table.

The **Event/Alarm Registers** are Modbus Register Numbers used to acquire the **Current Date** value, **Current Time** value, and **Event/Alarm** Logs. You may enter registers or use the defaults. Using the defaults is highly recommended. The Current Date and Current Time values identify the current date and time from the unit and may be most useful to users who want the date and time as floating point numbers in the format of DDMMYY and HHMM. For more information on the Modbus retrieval of the Event/Alarms log, refer to Modbus Events & Alarms Functionality.

8.3 Modbus Events and Alarms Functionality

To view the Modbus Event Log and Alarm Log, select Configure > Modbus > **History**.

The record formats for the Event Log and Alarm Log are the same size and have similar contents. The first word in a record is a bit map in which bit 9 indicates if the log record is an Event (1) or an Alarm (0). The meanings of the other bits are specific to either the Event or the Alarm Log records. Refer to Table 8-6, Event and Alarm Change Bit Map Contents, on page, 8-17.

The ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series support the Modbus with EFM extensions method for retrieving alarms and events. When the ROC or FloBoss receives a Function Code 03 request referencing defined Events/Alarms Register (usually 32), the ROC or FloBoss begins to collect records from first the Event Log and then the Alarm Log, starting where the last poll left off. The ROC or FloBoss will collect records, until either there are not any more new events/alarms or the maximum of twelve records have been collected. The ROC or FloBoss unit sends the information back to the host, which in return replies with Function Code 05, referencing the same Events/Alarms Register, indicating that the points have been received and that the Host is ready for the next twelve records.

8.3.1 Modbus Events and Alarms (ROC800-Series)

The following details how the Event Log and Alarms Log information is placed in Modbus Event and Alarm messages and how or what is generated upon the Event or Alarm condition.

Normal Event Record

A normal Event record format:

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Old Value as float				New Value as float			
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

System Text Events

When you set the System Command Change Bit (bit 7) in the Operator Change Bit Map of the Event, the Register number for all System Command Change events will be set to the Event/Alarm Register number (default is 32).

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Code	Text						
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

The above format will be used for the following event codes:

- ◆ 144 Initialization Sequence
- ◆ 146 Initialize From Defaults
- ◆ 147 ROM CRC Error
- ◆ 148 Database Initialization
- ◆ 150 Program Flash
- ◆ 248 Text Message
- ◆ 249 Download Configuration
- ◆ 250 Upload Configuration
- ◆ 251 Calibration Timeout
- ◆ 252 Calibration Cancel
- ◆ 253 Calibration Success

FST Events

For FST Events, the Code will be the FST number (1 to 6). Unused will be set to zero.

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Code	Unused	Value as float					
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

Time Related System Events

The time is the number of seconds since January 1, 1970. Unused will be set to zero.

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Code	Unused	Time as time_t					
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

Events are formatted as:

- ◆ 145 All Power Removed
- ◆ 200 Clock Set

Alarms

Use the Alarms table to determine the alarming source. The Register number for all unmapped Alarms will be set to the Event/Alarm Register number (default is 32).

A normal Alarm record format:

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Value as float				Unused			
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

Unmapped Parameter Alarms

If the alarming point is not mapped to a Modbus Register, identifying the point using the following table. The TLP will be the source TLP of the alarm. The type will be set to 1.

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Value as float				TLP		Type	
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

FST Alarms

If the Alarm is an FST Alarm, the above following will be used. The FST # will be the source FST Number that generated the alarm. Unused will be set to zero and the type will be set to 2.

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Value as float				FST#	Unused		Type
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

User Text Alarms

If the Alarm is a User Text Alarm, the following format will be used. Text is filled in with seven bytes of User Text and the Type will be set to 3.

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Text							Type
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

User Value Alarms

If the alarm is a User Value Alarm, the following format will be used. Unused will be set to zero and the Type will be set to 4.

Bit Map		Register		Time as float				Date as float				Value as float				Unused		Type	
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

8.3.2 Reading Modbus Events and Alarms Register

The Modbus request to read the Event Log and Alarm Log uses the standard read Function Codes 03 or 04 and the Register Number defined in the History Access configuration. In this request, the number of Registers is included to maintain format compatibility, but is ignored by the receiving ROC or FloBoss unit.

Twenty bytes are returned for each event/alarm in the response. Up to 12 Events and Alarms can be returned in a single response. If no events/alarms have occurred since the last collection, the response contains zero data bytes.

For the date stamp in the events and alarms returned, the year (YY) is really the number of years since 1980 (for example, if the current year is 2007, the year (YY) for the date stamp would be 27).

Following is an example of a request for Events and Alarms with the history access event/alarm register defined as 32 (0x0020 hex).

Table 8-2. Host Events and Alarms Request Example Message

Message Field	Device Address	Function Code	Register Offset	Num Reads (ignored)		Error Check	
Bytes	1	1	2	2		2	
TX Order			MS LS	MS	LS	LS	MS
Value	01H	03H	00H 20H	00H	01H	CRC-16	

The following example shows a response returning three events/alarms.

Table 8-3. Events and Alarms Response Example Message

Message Field	Device Address	Function Code	Byte Count	Data		Error Check	
Bytes	1	1	1	(20 bytes per event/alarm)		2	
TX Order				Integers — MS	LS	LS	MS
				Floats — Selectable			
Value	01H	03H	3CH			CRC-16	

8.3.3 Acknowledging Modbus Events and Alarms

After the host has correctly received event/alarms data, it transmits an acknowledgement message to the ROC to clear these Events and Alarms from the Modbus buffer. Until acknowledged, the ROC continues to send the same Event and Alarm records to the host. The Modbus acknowledgement (to clear the event/alarm log buffer) uses Function Code 05 and the register number defined in the history access configuration. In this request the data value is always one (1).

Table 8-4. Events and Alarms Acknowledgement Response Example Message

Message Field	Device Address	Function Code	Register						Data	Error Check
Bytes	1	1	2						2	2
TX Order			MS	LS	MS	LS	MS	LS		
Value	01H	05H	00H	20H	FFH	00H	CRC-16			

Table 8-5. Modbus Events and Alarms Log Contents

Byte	Contents of Event Log Record	Contents of Alarm Log Record
1 to 2	Operator change (Event Log) bit map (16-bit integer) – Refer to Table. Event & Alarm Change Bit Map Contents.	Alarm change bit map (16-bit integer) – Refer to Table. Event & Alarm Change Bit Map Contents.
3 to 4	Modbus Register number of variable (16-bit integer)	Modbus Register number of variable (16-bit integer)
5 to 8	Time Stamp (HHMMSS; 32-bit floating point)	Time Stamp (HHMMSS; 32-bit floating point)
9 to 12	Date Stamp (MMDDYY; 32-bit floating point)	Date Stamp (MMDDYY; 32-bit floating point)
13 to 16	Previous value of variable (32-bit floating point)	Current (alarmed) value of variable (32-bit floating point)
17 to 20	Current (New) value of variable (32-bit floating point)	Unused at the current time (zero filled when transmitted to the master)

Table 8-6. Event and Alarm Change Bit Map Contents

Bit	Operator Change Bit Map	Alarm Change Bit Map
0	Fixed value – change to an EU value on an I/O point in Manual Mode	Not Used
1	Zero scale – change to the 0% Adjusted on an AO or AI	Not Used
2	Full scale – change to the 100% Adjusted on an AO or AI	Not Used
3	Operator entry work value – change to any parameter other than those described	Not Used
4	Boolean fixed bit – change to Status in DO or DI	Not Used
5	Fixed/variable flag – change to Manual Mode for an I/O point	Manual Alarm
6	Table entry change – change to Modbus Function Tables	Status Change Alarm
7	System command change – events logged by system (Power up)	No Flow Alarm
8	Not Used	Point Fail Alarm
9	Operator change (Event Log) identifier bit	0 for Alarm
10	Low Low Limit – change to Low Low Alarm parameter	Low Low Alarm
11	Low Limit – change to Low Alarm parameter	Low Alarm
12	High Limit – change to High Alarm parameter	High Alarm
13	High High Limit – change to High High Alarm parameter	High High Alarm
14	Rate of Change Limit – change to Rate Alarm parameter	Rate Alarm
15	Not Used	Set/Clear Alarm (1 = Set or 0 = Clear)

8.4 Modbus Registers (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

Select Configure > Modbus > **Registers**. Modbus Register tables allow you to map Modbus Registers to Point Type, Logical, and Parameter (TLP) numbers. One line in the Modbus Register table can be used to map more than one register to TLP pair by using either Point Indexing or Parameter Indexing.

- ◆ **Point Indexing** means that the Start Register is mapped to the selected TLP. Subsequent registers, through the End Register, are mapped to the same point type and parameter and increment the point logical number.
- ◆ **Parameter Indexing** means that the Start Register is mapped to the selected TLP. Subsequent registers, through the End Register, are mapped to the same point type and point logical number, and increment the parameter number.

Example:

When using **Point Indexing** the configuration of

Starting Register	Ending Register	Device Parameter(s)	Indexing	Conversion
100	103	AIN, 4-1, EU	Point	0

specifies four Registers (100, 101, 102, and 103) that are mapped to a group of Analog Input (AIN) values in engineering units (EU) starting at the Analog Input in the fourth module location, first position (4-1).

- ◆ Register 100 = EU of AIN point in location 4-1.
- ◆ Register 101 = EU of AIN point in location 4-2.
- ◆ Register 102 = EU of AIN point in location 4-3.
- ◆ Register 103 = EU of AIN point in location 4-4.

Example:

When using **Parameter Indexing** the configuration of

Starting Register	Ending Register	Device Parameter(s)	Indexing	Conversion
109	114	FST 1, R1	Parameter	1

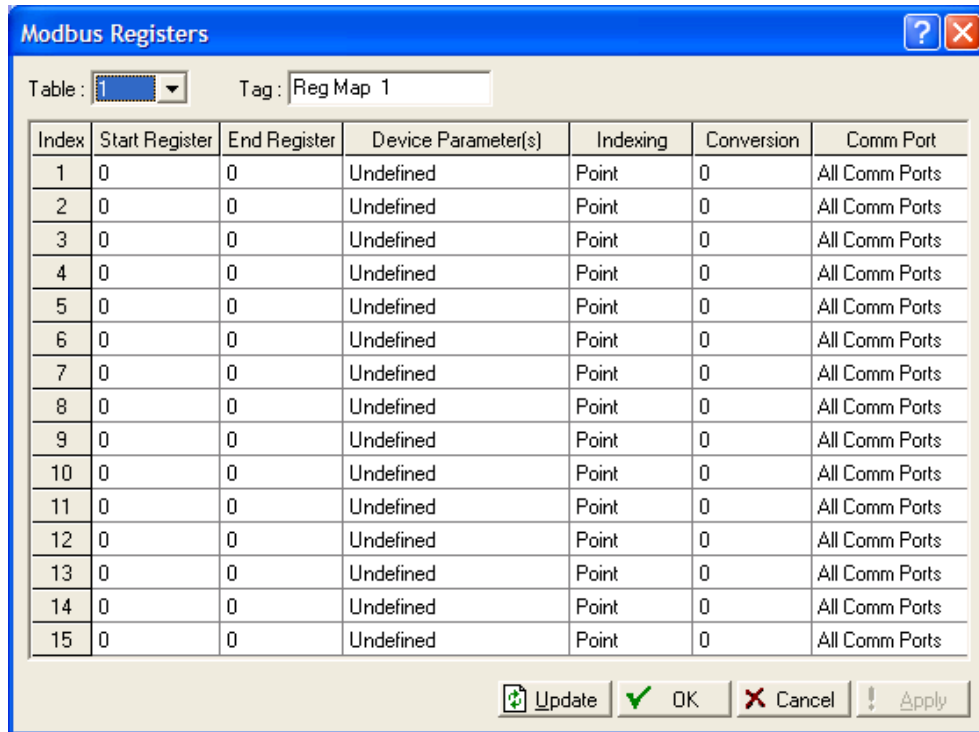
specifies six Registers (109, 110, 111, 112, 113, and 114) that are mapped to a group of FST 1 parameters starting at FST Register 1.

- ◆ Modbus Register 109 = Register 1 of FST Point Number 1.
- ◆ Modbus Register 110 = Register 2 of FST Point Number 1.
- ◆ Modbus Register 111 = Register 3 of FST Point Number 1.
- ◆ Modbus Register 112 = Register 4 of FST Point Number 1.
- ◆ Modbus Register 113 = Register 5 of FST Point Number 1.
- ◆ Modbus Register 114 = Register 6 of FST Point Number 1.

Conversion Code 1 (Float to Integer, Float Scale 1) is used to convert the floating point value to an integer before the response message is returned to the Host. Once a register is mapped, it can be referenced by any Modbus request, providing the data type of the TLP is appropriate for the Function Code.

- ❖ **Note:** If the native ROC or FloBoss data type does not meet the requirements of the Modbus host device, Conversion Codes are available to convert the data to the required data type. For more information, refer to Modbus Conversion (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series).
- ❖ **Note:** For the ROC800-Series, you can select to have the mapping apply to all ROC communication ports or on a selected port only.

When a Modbus request is received, a search is performed for the referenced register(s). If a register number match is found, a response is built based on the device point type and parameter configured in the table. If no register number match is located, an error message is returned.



Index	Start Register	End Register	Device Parameter(s)	Indexing	Conversion	Comm Port
1	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
2	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
3	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
4	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
5	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
6	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
7	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
8	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
9	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
10	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
11	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
12	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
13	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
14	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports
15	0	0	Undefined	Point	0	All Comm Ports

Figure 8-7. Modbus Registers (ROC800-Series)

	Starting Register	Ending Register	Device Parameter(s)	Indexing	Conversion
1	1070	1070	DOU , STATUS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
2	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
3	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
4	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
5	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
6	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
7	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
8	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
9	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
10	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
11	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
12	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
13	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
14	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0
15	0	0	Undefined	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Point <input type="radio"/> Param	0

Figure 8-8. Modbus Registers (FloBoss 100-Series)

For a **ROC800-Series**, twenty-four register tables are available, each containing fifteen table entries. Each table entry can define multiple registers by using either point indexing or parameter indexing. By making the registers continuous (when the Start Register address of a new line is one greater than the End Register address of the previous line) a continuous data table can be created up for Modbus Function 3, 4, or 16 up to the limit of 240 bytes. This type of data table allows access to all its data with one request.

❖ **Note:** The ROC800-Series has no Modbus Register definition defaults.

Periodic or Daily History index registers should be mapped to the TLP for the Periodic Index (Point Type 124, Parameter 5) or Daily Index (Point Type 124, Parameter 6). In this TLP, the Logical number is the History Segment number. Remember to create an index for each History Segment from which you need to request history.

For a **FloBoss 100-Series**, up to fifteen different lines can be configured for Modbus Functions 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 15, and 16. Up to thirty different lines can be configured for Modbus Function 3, split into tables 3A and 3B.

By making the registers continuous (when the Starting Register address of a new line is one greater than the Ending Register address of the previous line) a continuous data table can be created up for Modbus Function 03, 04, or 16 up to the limit of 240 bytes. This type of data table allows access to all its data with one request.

For Function Codes 01, 02, 05, and 15, the parameter specified should be a single-byte parameter type, preferably a status parameter (only bit 0 is used), because this function packs the data into a binary format for transmission. Each address span must be unique within the function for proper operation. If not, the first valid address is used.

Refer to Table 8-7, Modbus Register Definition Defaults (FloBoss 100-Series), concerning Modbus Register Definition defaults for the FloBoss 100-Series.

Table 8-7. Modbus Register Definition Defaults (FloBoss 100-Series)

Function Code	Row	Starting Register	Ending Register	Device Parameter	Indexing	Conversion
1	1	1070	1070	2, 19, 3 (DOU, STATUS)	Point	0
2	1	0	0	0, 0, 0	Point	0
3	1	7052	7060	3, 0, 14 (AIN, EU)	Point	0
	2	7100	7102	46, 0, 51 (AGANEW1, CURDP)	Param	0
	3	7103	7107	47, 0, 0 (FLWNEW1, FLOWDY)	Param	0
	4	7108	7127	47, 0, 36 (FLWNEW1, FLOTDY)	Param	0
	5	7262	7288	46, 0, 15 (AGANEW1, ATMPRS)	Param	0
4	1	0	0	0, 0, 0	Point	0
5	1	1070	1070	2, 19, 3 (DOU, STATUS)	Point	0
6	1	7052	7060	3, 0, 14 (AIN, EU)	Point	0
	2	7100	7102	46, 0, 51 (AGANEW1, CURDP)	Param	0
	3	7103	7107	47, 0, 0 (FLWNEW1, FLOWDY)	Param	0
	4	7108	7127	47, 0, 36 (FLWNEW1, FLOTDY)	Param	0
	5	7262	7288	46, 0, 15 (AGANEW1, ATMPRS)	Param	0
15	1	0	0	0, 0, 0	Point	0
16	1	8000	8053	46, 0, 0 (AGANEW1, TAG)	Param	0
	2	8054	8063	45, 0, 0 (SMP1, OPTION)	Param	0

Select the **Table** to which you wish to map registers. The ROC800-Series has 24 register tables available.

Select the **Function Index** to which you wish to map registers. The FloBoss 100-Series has 9 Function Indexes available, each corresponding to a Function Code displayed in the Function name field.

Enter a 10-character alphanumeric **Tag** (ROC800-Series) to identify this table.

Function Name is by default the Function Code that corresponds to the Function Index selected. Changing the Function Name is not recommended.

Table 8-8. Modbus Function Codes

Code	Meaning	Action
01	Read Logic Coil Status	Obtain current status (ON/OFF) of a group of logic coils (outputs).
02	Read Discrete Input Status	Obtain current status (ON/OFF) of a group of Discrete Inputs.
03	Read Output Registers (Holding)	Obtain current binary value in one or more holding registers.
04	Read Input Registers	Obtain current binary value in one or more input registers.
05	Force Single Logic Coil	Force logic coil to a state of ON or OFF. Acknowledge Alarm or Event request.
06	Preset Single Holding Register	Place a specific binary value into a holding register.
15	Force Multiple Logic Coils	Force a series of consecutive logic output coils to defined ON or OFF states.
16	Preset Multiple Holding Registers	Place specific binary values into a series of consecutive holding registers.

Enter a **Start Register** or **Starting Register** to represent the first data register in the address span.

A Start Register of 0 is a valid address. Any number from 0 to 65535 is valid. Register numbers can be duplicated as long as they are assigned to separate communication ports. The tables should be numbered from smallest to largest.

In certain Modbus Host devices, the register 40101 is actually transmitted as “100.” The value “100” should be placed in the Start address field because the ROC or FloBoss uses the actual number sent by the Host.

For example, the host device requests the Starting Register 500 through Ending Register 700. The Starting Register is 400 and the Ending Register is 700. All register numbers requested by the host (500 through 700) are valid and would be responded to because the requested register numbers match or fall in between the Start Register and Ending Register numbers (400 through 700).

Specify the **End Register** or **Ending Register** to represent the last register in the address span. The value for this number is computed by:

$$\text{End Register address} = (\text{Start Register address} + \text{Number of Registers}) - 1.$$

Select the type of **Indexing** to define the block of Register values as successive Logical Point Numbers or Parameters without having to define each separately.

- ◆ **Point** Indexing means that the Start Register is mapped to the selected Device Parameter. Subsequent registers, through the End Register, are mapped to the same Point Type and Parameter and increment the point Logical Number.
- ◆ **Parameter** Indexing means that the Start Register is mapped to the selected Device Parameter. Subsequent registers, through the End Register, are mapped to the same Point Type and point Logical Number, and increment the Parameter number.

Select the **Device Parameter** to specify the parameter of the Point Types you desire to set or acquire data. Be aware of the different data types (Character, Integer, Long, Float) and the size of the data types. Use the TLP button to select parameters.

The Device Parameter field denotes the type of data associated with an address (Starting Register through Ending Register). When the Host requests a valid range of register numbers, the Function Code tells the Slave what to do and between which registers (Starting Register through Ending Register). The Device Parameter defines what data is collected or which parameter is set.

Specify the type of **Conversion** required, if any, on the data before it is sent to the host or before it is written to the ROC or FloBoss device. The conversions are used to allow for differences in data types between the master and slave devices. Refer to the Modbus Register Definition Defaults (FloBoss 100-Series) table.

Conversion codes affect Function Codes 3, 4, 6, 8, and 16.

Select the **Communication Port** (ROC800-Series) for use with this entry.

Register numbers should be unique for any given communications port. Registers may be duplicated, as long as they are assigned to separate ports. If a register number is duplicated within the port, the first occurrence is used.

8.4.1 Modbus Conversion (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series)

Conversion codes convert the data into a format that is compatible to a Modbus device.

Select the **Conversion** field, on the Modbus Registers or Modbus History screen, to specify the type of conversion required, if any, on the data before it is sent to the host or before it is written to the ROC or FloBoss device. The conversions are used to account for differences in data types between the master and slave devices.

Conversion Codes 65 to 72 allows a four-byte IEEE formatted floating point number to be sent or received in two Modbus registers with the byte orders configurable. A check is made to ensure that an even number of registers is requested, that the Start Register number does not begin in the middle of a register pair, and that the number of registers does not exceed the number of registers configured.

Table 8-9. Modbus Convert Codes

Convert Code	Description	Slave Function	Definition
0	No Conversion	N/A	N/A
1	Float to integer, Float Scale 1	3,4	The Float to Integer conversion changes ROC or FloBoss floating point data to an integer for transmission to the host. The number of the Convert Code specifies which floating point scaling value is to be used for the conversion.
2	Float to integer, Float Scale 2	3,4	
3	Float to integer, Float Scale 3	3,4	
4	Float to integer, Float Scale 4	3,4	
5	Float to integer, Float Scale 5	3,4	
6	Float to integer, Float Scale 6	3,4	
7	Float to integer, Float Scale 7	3,4	

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Convert Code	Description	Slave Function	Definition
8	Float to integer, Float Scale 8	3,4	
9	Any type to signed long with 1 implied decimal place	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -12).
10	Any type to signed long with 2 implied decimal places	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -123).
11	Any type to signed long with 3 implied decimal places	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -1234).
12	Any type to signed long with 4 implied decimal places	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10000.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -12345).
13	Any type to signed long with 5 implied decimal places	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -123456).
14	Any type to signed long with 6 implied decimal places	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000000.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -1234567).
15	Any type to signed long with 7 implied decimal places	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10000000.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -12345670).
16	Any type to signed long with 8 implied decimal places	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000000.0 and converted to a signed 32 bit integer. (A value of -1.234567 would be sent as -123456700).
17	Integer to Float, Float Scale 1	6,16	17 to 24 are for the FloBoss 100-Series only. The Integer to Float conversion changes a transmitted integer value to a floating point value for the FloBoss. The number of the Convert Code specifies which floating point scaling value is to be used for the conversion. If no fractional part is coming through on conversion from integer to float, use a float conversion that more closely fits the range of integer to be converted, such as float range 0 to 10 instead of 0 to 1000.
18	Integer to Float, Float Scale 2	6,16	
19	Integer to Float, Float Scale 3	6,16	
20	Integer to Float, Float Scale 4	6,16	
21	Integer to Float, Float Scale 5	6,16	
22	Integer to Float, Float Scale 6	6,16	

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Convert Code	Description	Slave Function	Definition
23	Integer to Float, Float Scale 7	6,16	
24	Integer to Float, Float Scale 8	6,16	
17	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 1	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 12).
18	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 2	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 123).
19	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 1234).
20	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 4	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10000.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 12345).
21	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 5	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 123456).
22	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 6	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000000.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 1234567).
23	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 7	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10000000.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 12345670).
24	Any Type to Unsigned Long Implied 8	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000000.0 and converted to an unsigned 32 bit integer. (A value of 1.234567 would be sent as 123456700).
25	Any type to Float, No Scaling	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. When using Function Code 03 or 04, this conversion changes any data type (unsigned or signed Character, Integer, or Long) in the ROC to a specific point value for transmission to the Host. When using Function Code 6 or 16, this conversion changes a transmitted floating point value to the correct data type for the ROC TLP.
26	Any type to Signed Short Integer	3,4,6,16	
27	Any type to Signed Long Integer	3,4,6,16	
28	Any type to Unsigned Short Integer	3,4,6,16	
29	Any type to Unsigned Long Integer	3,4,6,16	
30 to 32	No Conversion	N/A	N/A
33	Character to Integer	3,4	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Character to Integer conversion changes a FloBoss character data type to an integer for transmission to the host.
34	Integer to Character	6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Integer to Character conversion changes a transmitted integer value to a character data type for the FloBoss.

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Convert Code	Description	Slave Function	Definition
35	Long to Integer	3,4	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Long to Integer conversion changes a FloBoss long data type to an integer for transmission to the host.
36	Integer to Long	6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Integer to Long conversion changes a transmitted integer value to a long data type for the FloBoss.
37	Unsigned Byte to Packed Bit	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is identical that for a function 1 or 2 request. All registers in the range requested must be unsigned integer 8 values and have a conversion code of 37.
38	No Conversion	N/A	N/A
39	Float to Integer, No Scaling	3,4	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Float to Integer conversion changes a FloBoss floating point data type to an integer for transmission to the Host.
40	Integer to Float, No Scaling	3,4,6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Integer to Float conversion changes a transmitted integer value to a floating point data type for the FloBoss.
41	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 1	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.12345 would be sent as -1).
41	Float to Byte, No Scaling	3,4	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Float to Byte conversion changes a FloBoss floating point data type to a byte for transmission to the Host.
42	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 2	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.12345 would be sent as -12).
42	Byte to Float, No Scaling	3,4,6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Byte to Float conversion changes a transmitted byte value to floating point data type for the FloBoss.
43	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.12345 would be sent as -123).
43	Float to Long, No Scaling	3,4	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Float to Long conversion changes a FloBoss floating point data type to a Long Integer for transmission to the Host.
44	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 4	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10000.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.12345 would be sent as -1234).
44	Long to Float, No Scaling	3,4,6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Long to Float conversion changes a transmitted Long Integer value to a floating point data type for the FloBoss.
45	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 5	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.12345 would be sent as -12345).
45	Float to Byte	6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Float to Byte Unsigned Character conversion changes a transmitted floating point value to an unsigned character data type for the FloBoss.
46	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 6	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000000.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.01234567 would be sent as -12345).
46	Float to Unsigned Integer	6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Float to Unsigned Integer conversion changes a transmitted floating point value to an unsigned integer data type for the FloBoss.

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Convert Code	Description	Slave Function	Definition
47	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 7	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.0012345 would be sent as -12345).
47	Float to Unsigned Long	6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Float to Unsigned Long conversion changes a transmitted floating point value to an unsigned long data type for the FloBoss.
48	Any Type to Signed Short Implied 8	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000000.0 and converted to a signed 16 bit integer. (A value of -0.0001234567 would be sent as -12345).
49	Deadband, Float Scale 1	3,4,6,16	FloBoss 100-Series only. The Deadband to Float Scale conversion changes FloBoss Deadband point data to an integer for transmission to the host. The number of the Convert Code specifies which floating point scaling value is to be used for the conversion.
50	Deadband, Float Scale 2	3,4,6,16	
51	Deadband, Float Scale 3	3,4,6,16	
52	Deadband, Float Scale 4	3,4,6,16	
53	Deadband, Float Scale 5	3,4,6,16	
54	Deadband, Float Scale 6	3,4,6,16	
55	Deadband, Float Scale 7	3,4,6,16	
56	Deadband, Float Scale 8	3,4,6,16	
49	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 1	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.1234567 would be sent as 1).
50	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 2	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.1234567 would be sent as 12).
51	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.1234567 would be sent as 123).
52	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 4	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10000.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.1234567 would be sent as 1234).
53	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 5	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.1234567 would be sent as 12345).
54	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 6	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 1000000.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.01234567 would be sent as 12345).
55	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 7	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 10000000.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.001234567 would be sent as 12345).

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Convert Code	Description	Slave Function	Definition
56	Any Type to Unsigned Short Implied 8	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Value within ROC is multiplied by 100000000.0 and converted to an unsigned 16 bit integer. (A value of 0.0001234567 would be sent as 12345).
57	Any type to signed long 0, 1, 2, 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 0-1-2-3. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
58	Any type to signed long 0, 1, 2, 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 1-0-3-2. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
59	Any type to signed long 0, 1, 2, 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 2-3-0-1. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
60	Any type to signed long 0, 1, 2, 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 3-2-1-0. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
61	Any type to signed long 0, 1, 2, 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 0-1-2-3. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
62	Any type to signed long 0, 1, 2, 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 1-0-3-2. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
63	Any type to unsigned long	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 2-3-0-1. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
64	Any type to signed long 0, 1, 2, 3	3,4,6,16	ROC800-Series only. Response is similar to dual register floating point conversions. Dual register – byte order 3-2-1-0. Note: 0 = Byte MSB and Byte 3 = LSB
65	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	Code 65 places byte 0 and byte 1 in register xxxxx; byte 2 and byte 3 are placed in register xxxxx + 1. This places a 4-byte floating point value into two, 2-byte registers to allow integer values to be transmitted. Code 66 does the same as Code 65 regardless of the Byte Order field in the Modbus Configuration screen. Register xxxxx byte 0, byte 1 Register xxxxx + 1 byte 2, byte 3
66	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	
67	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	Code 67 reverses byte 0 and byte 1 order in register xxxxx; reverses byte 2 and byte 3 order in register xxxxx + 1. This places a 4-byte floating point value into two, 2-byte registers to allow integer values to be transmitted. Code 68 does the same as Code 67 regardless of the Byte Order field in the Modbus Configuration screen. Register xxxxx byte 1, byte 0 Register xxxxx + 1 byte 3, byte 2
68	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	
69	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	Code 69 places byte 2 and byte 3 in register xxxxx; byte 0 and byte 1 are placed in register xxxxx + 1. This places a 4-byte floating point value into two, 2-byte registers to allow integer values to be transmitted. Code 70 does the same as Code 69 regardless of the Byte Order field in the Modbus Configuration screen. Register xxxxx byte 2, byte 3 Register xxxxx + 1 byte 0, byte 1
70	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	

Convert Code	Description	Slave Function	Definition
71	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	Code 71 reverses byte 2 and byte 3 order in register xxxxx; reverses byte 0 and byte 1 order in register xxxxx + 1. This places a 4-byte floating point value into two, 2-byte registers to allow integer values to be transmitted. Code 72 does the same as Code 71 regardless of the Byte Order field in the Modbus Configuration screen. Register xxxxx byte 3, byte 2 Register xxxxx + 1 byte 1, byte 0
72	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,16	
73	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,6,16	FloBoss 100-Series Only. Convert Codes 73 and 74 send the IEEE formatted floating point number as four bytes with a single register request. Only the byte order is changed: Function Code 73 loads register xxxxx in byte 2, byte 3, byte 0, byte 1 order. Function Code 74 does the same as Function Code 73 regardless of the Byte Order field in the Modbus Configuration screen.
74	IEEE Floating Point Number	3,4,6,16	
75 to 255	No Conversion	N/A	N/A

8.5 Modbus Master Table (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > Modbus > **Master Table**. The Modbus Master mode of operation allows the ROC800-Series to simulate a master device that can poll other devices for data and to store that data within the ROC in any valid TLP. The ROC800-Series can also send commands to set outputs and write data to a slave device.

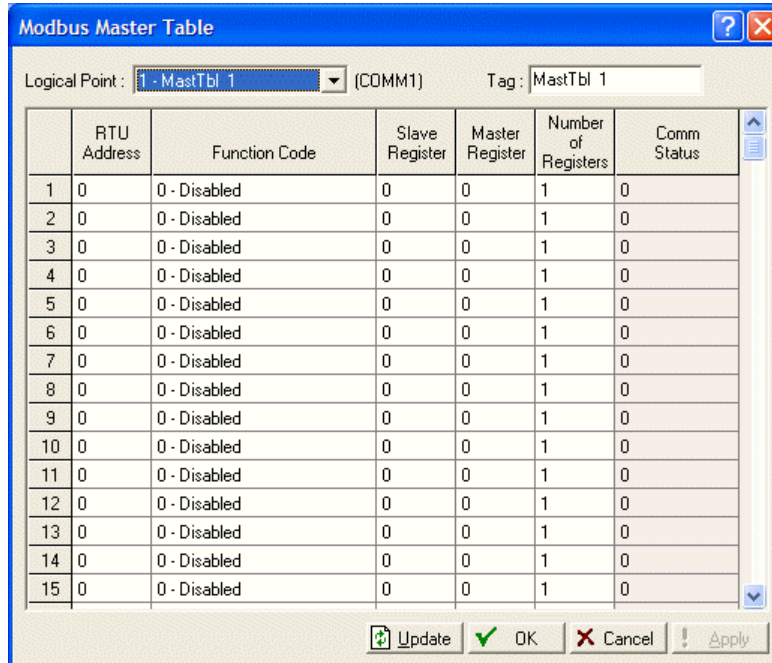
- ❖ **Note:** The Modbus Master Table only applies to the ROC800-Series. When the FloBoss 100-Series has the special User Program installed to act as a host device, the Modbus Master parameters are configured on the user data screen.

The Modbus Master functionality can be configured on the EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-485 (RS-485) and modem communications ports (COMM2 to COMM5). The LOI and Ethernet (COMM1) ports will not support Modbus Master communications. Up to 200 different master requests/commands can be configured across communication ports COMM2 to COMM5. Each command can transmit or receive up to 240 bytes of data. Modbus Function Codes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 15, and 16 are supported. Function Codes 1 to 4 request data from slaves, while 5, 6, 15, and 16 transmit data to a slave device.

Each master request configured uses data read from or written to registers defined in the Modbus Registers table. When using Modbus Function Codes 1 to 4, the ROC800-Series will be reading data from a slave device and writing it to the TLP specified in the Modbus Registers table. When using Modbus Function Codes 5, 6, 15, and 16, the ROC800-Series will be reading data from the TLP specified in the Modbus Registers table and write it to the slave device.

As a Modbus Master, the ROC800-Series may have to communicate to multiple slave devices through modems and phone lines. The Modbus Master Modem screen will provide the necessary parameters to configure the modems and map RTU Addresses to phone numbers. One Communication Port will have the ability to dial-up 6 different Modbus slaves. The ROC800-Series will retry three times to establish a connection with a slave.

An FST, User C Program, or DS800 application can be used to schedule Modbus Master requests. The Master Activity status parameter may be used to determine if the communication port is available for use. The Start Polling checkbox (Configure > Modbus > Configuration) will need to be set by you if continuous polling will be enabled or master polling can be managed, enabled, and disabled by a control application. Using FSTs, the ROC800-Series can dial other Modbus Slave devices at regular intervals.



	RTU Address	Function Code	Slave Register	Master Register	Number of Registers	Comm Status
1	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
2	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
3	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
4	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
5	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
6	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
7	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
8	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
9	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
10	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
11	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
12	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
13	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
14	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0
15	0	0 - Disabled	0	0	1	0

Figure 8-9. Modbus Master Table (ROC800-Series)

Select the **Logical Point** of the communication port location that you desire to host. The Modbus Master functionality can be configured on the EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-485 (RS-485) and modem communications ports (COMM2 to COMM5).

Enter a 10-character identification **Tag** for the Master Table.

Enter the **RTU Address** of the slave device to be queried.

Enter the **Modbus Function Code** to be sent to the slave device.

Enter the starting Modbus **Slave Register** number for this query on the slave device.

Enter the starting **Master Register** number where the queried data will be stored on the master ROC800-Series device.

Enter the **Number of Registers** for the master ROC800-Series device to either read or write.

Comm Status displays the status of the query.

Table 8-10. Status of Host Request or Command

Status	Description
0	Inactive or start of transmission
1	Receive timeout error
2	Received Address check
3	Received Function Number check
4	Number of expected bytes check
5	Receiving slave response
6	CRC or LRC check
7	CRC or LRC check

Status	Description
8	Valid slave response
128	Write Device Data error
129	Access Device Data error
130	Host Function Table error
131	Transmit Timeout error
144	Transmit or Receive buffer overflow
145	Invalid Function Number in request

8.6 Modbus Master Modem (ROC800-Series)

Select Configure > Modbus > **Master Modem**. As a Modbus Master, the ROC800-Series may have to communicate to multiple slave devices through modems and phone lines. The Modbus Master Modem screen provides the necessary parameters to configure the modems and map RTU Addresses to phone numbers.

Only COMM2 to COMM5 support Modbus functionality, the Local Port and COMM1 (Ethernet) port will not. Each communications port can access to six RTU addresses. This point associates Modbus Slave RTU Addresses to their respective phone numbers. Up to six different Modbus Slaves can be dialed up through one communication port. The ROC800-Series will retry three times to establish a connection with a slave.

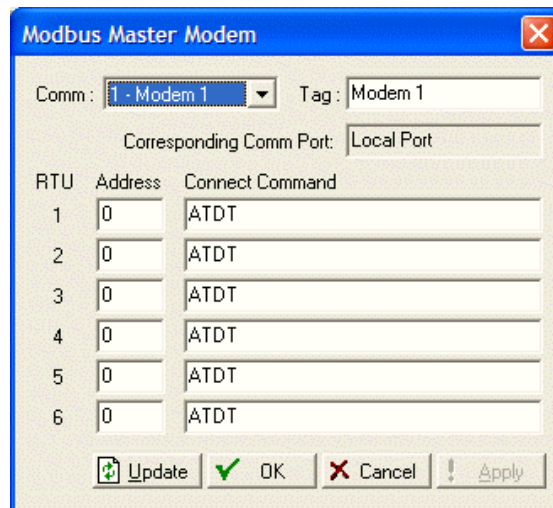


Figure 8-10. Modbus Master Modem (ROC800-Series)

Select the **Comm** port location that you desire to host. The Modbus Master functionality can be configured on the EIA-232 (RS-232), EIA-485 (RS-485), and modem communications ports. Only COMM2 to COMM5 support Modbus functionality; the Local Port and COMM1 (Ethernet) port will not.

Enter a 10-character identification **Tag** for the Master Modem.

Enter the **RTU Address** of the slave device to be associated with the Connect Command. Up to six different Modbus Slaves can be dialed up through one communication port.

Enter the **Connect Command** (telephone number) to be sent to the slave device.

8.7 Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

Select ROC > **Comm Ports**. Click the Modbus Host Parameters tab.

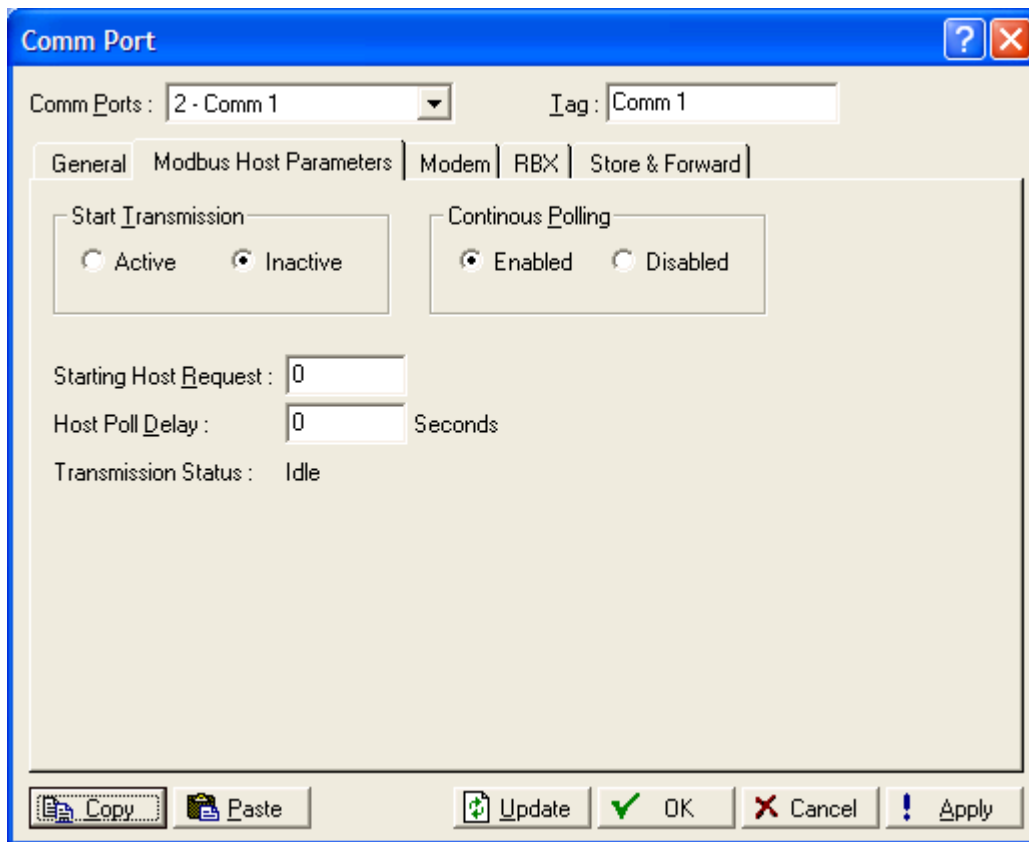


Figure 8-11. Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)

- ❖ **Note:** Modbus functionality is not resident in the FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series firmware. The Modbus user program must be loaded and enabled in the FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series for this tab to be available.
- ❖ **Note:** Modbus Registers functions are available for the FloBoss 407 or ROC300-Series through the use of a user program. Refer to the *Modbus Protocol Emulation Program Manual* (Form A4606).

To enable Modbus transmission, select Active for the **Start Transmission**.

Enable **Continuous Polling** to control whether the Modbus Master polling sequence is executed on a continuous basis.

Enter the **Starting Host Request** number defining where in the Host Config table to begin the transmission. The default is 0, which tells the Host to start at message 0. If another value is entered, the Host begins at that number and skips prior messages defined in the host table. For example, if you enter 10 as a Starting Register, the transmission begins at Request Number 10.

The messages that are transmitted begin with the Request Number set in the Starting Register. Subsequent Request Numbers are transmitted until a Function Code 0 or Address 0 is encountered or the last Request Number (39) has been transmitted. If Continuous Polling is Enabled, the Host starts the transmission sequence over again.

In certain Modbus Host devices, the register 40101 is actually transmitted as “100”. The value “100” should be placed in the Starting Register field because the FloBoss uses the actual number sent by the Host.

Any number from 0 to 65535 is valid. A Starting Register of 0 is a valid address. Register numbers can be duplicated as long as they are in separate Modbus Function configuration tables. The tables should be numbered from smallest to largest.

When Continuous Polling has been enabled, the **Host Poll Delay** sets a delay time, in seconds, between polling request sequences.

Transmission Status displays the current status of the Modbus program.

SECTION 9 – SAVING AND RETRIEVING CONFIGURATIONS

This section describes how to save configurations, download configurations to the ROC or FloBoss and save ROC or FloBoss data to files for reports.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
9.1 Saving a ROC User File	9-1
9.2 Saving a Configuration.....	9-2
9.3 Downloading a Configuration	9-3

9.1 Saving a ROC User File

In addition to keeping backup copies of the configuration file, it is also good practice to keep a backup copy of the ROC_USER.mdb file. This file contains the communications, security, and password settings for the ROC.

To create a backup copy of the file:

1. Open **Windows Explorer** and **navigate** to the folder where **ROCLINK 800 software** is located. Typically, this folder is C:\Program Files\ROCLINK800.
2. Create a **Copy** of the ROC_USER.mdb file.
3. **Paste** the Copy into another folder on the PC or a disk.

9.2 Saving a Configuration

The Save option saves the current configuration of a connected device to a disk file. This feature is useful when creating a backup, when configuring similar ROC or FloBoss units for the first time, or when making configuration changes off-line. Once a backup configuration file is created, it can be loaded into a device by using the Download function.

1. Select File > **Save Configuration**. The Save As dialog box appears.
2. Type the desired **File name** of the backup file.
3. Click **Save**.

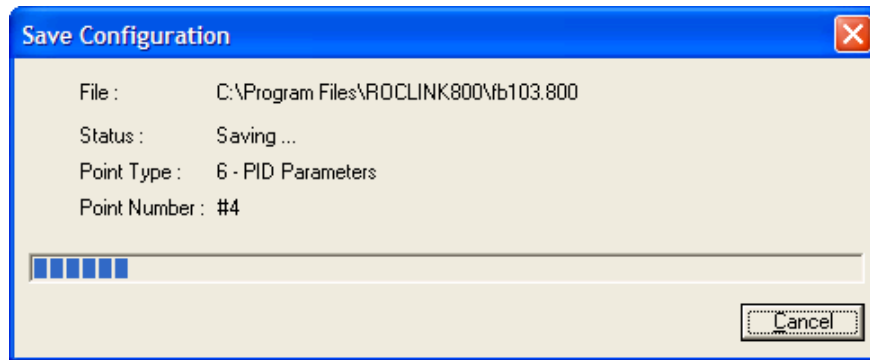


Figure 9-1. Saving Configuration

ROCLINK 800 configuration files have the extension **.800**.

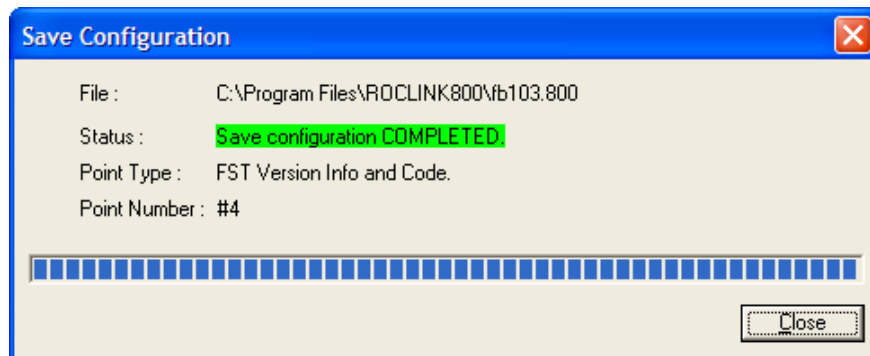


Figure 9-2. Saving Configuration Complete

9.3 Downloading a Configuration

Use the Download option in the File menu to download a saved configuration to a ROC or FloBoss device. Configuration files are created using the New Configuration function. To download a saved configuration, do the following:

1. **Connect** to the ROC or FloBoss unit.
2. Select File > **Download**.
3. Select the configuration **File name**. ROCLINK 800 files have the extension **.800**.
4. Click **Open**.
5. Select only the **Configuration Points** you desire to download. The items that are not configured in your configuration will be grayed out.

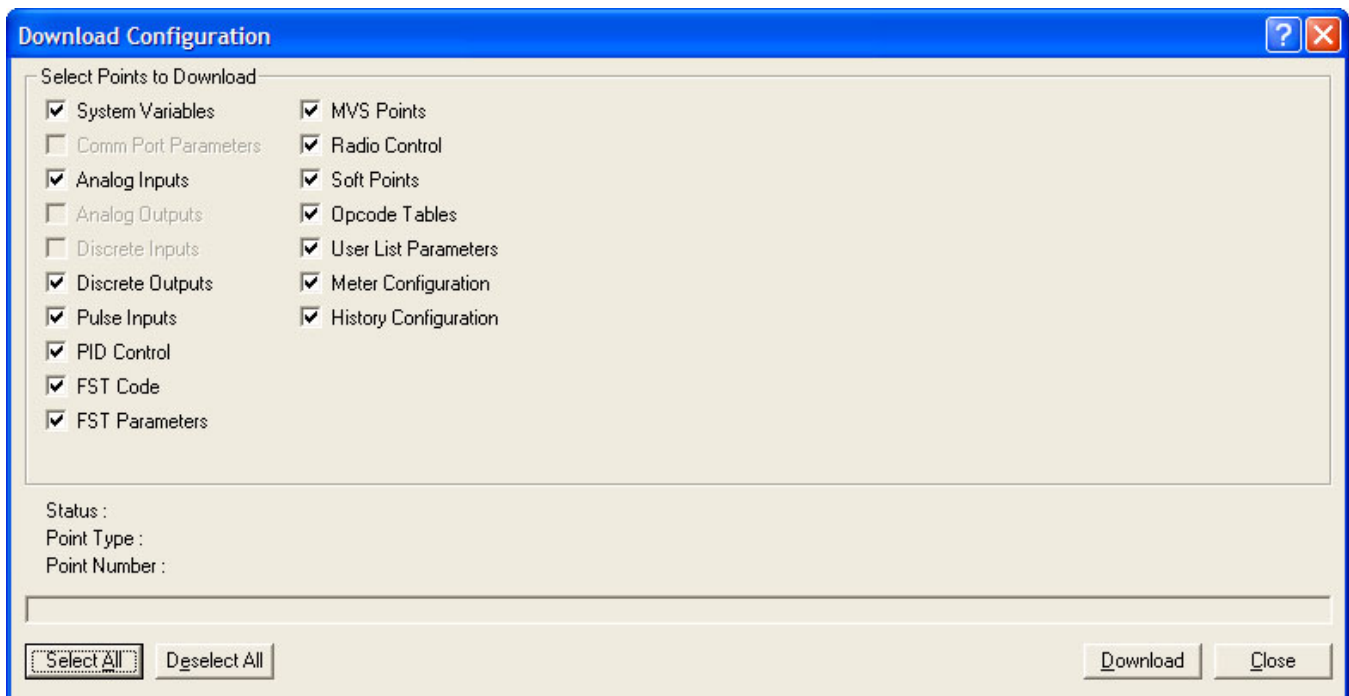


Figure 9-3. Download Configuration

6. Click **Download**. The Configuration Points automatically begin to download.
The Status, Point Type, and Point Number will display how the download is progressing.
7. Click **OK** when the download is complete.
8. Select ROC > Flags and click the **Save Configuration** for Flash Memory button.
9. Select only the **Configuration Points** you desire to download. The items that are not configured in your configuration will be grayed out.

9.3.1 Opening a Configuration

The Open option allows you to open an existing configuration file. Configuration files are created using the Save Configuration function. To open a configuration file:

1. Select File > **Open**.
2. Select the configuration **File name**.
3. Click **Open**.

Once the configuration file is opened, it automatically becomes active and you may edit the file off-line. The configuration file may also be downloaded into a ROC or FloBoss. Refer to Downloading a Configuration.

SECTION 10 – CALIBRATION

This section describes how to calibrate Analog Inputs, RTD Inputs, and Sensor Inputs for orifice meters and turbine meters.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
10.1 Calibration Basics	10-1
10.2 Starting Calibration.....	10-3
10.3 Analog Input Calibration Values	10-16
10.4 RTD Input Calibration Values	10-17
10.5 MVS Input Calibration Values (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 407)	10-19

10.1 Calibration Basics

The Calibration routine provides Verify, Calibrate, and Zero Shift functions for AI, MVS, DVS, and RTD inputs. You can calibrate Differential Pressure (orifice metering may be High or Low Differential Pressure, depending on the device), Static Pressure, or Temperature readings are available for each Meter Run.

- ❖ **Note:** During calibration, the ROC or FloBoss times out and resumes normal processing if it is left idle for an extended period. Calibration values are restored to their previous values, an event is logged, and you must reconnect to start calibration from the beginning.

Calibration parameters include Set Zero, Set Span, and Set Midpoint 1, 2, and 3.

All new calibration values are automatically logged in the Event Log.

- ❖ **Note:** Click **Cancel** to exit the calibration without saving the changes. The previous calibration settings are retained. An event is also logged.

For a ROC800-Series, Meter calibration-related parameters (Gravitational Acceleration and User Factor) are configured on the Calibration Factors tab of the Meter > Setup Orifice or Turbine screen.

For a FloBoss 100-Series, calibration-related parameters (Calibrated Gravitational Acceleration and User Correction Factor) are configured on the Instrument Factors tab of the Meter Setup screen.

CAUTION

If you have an MVS sensor, refer to the Sensor Calibration section in the ROC or FloBoss Accessories Instruction Manual (Form A4637) for the recommended way to remove/restore the MVS from/to working pressure during calibration. Failure to follow recommendations may cause sensor damage.

CAUTION

If you have a DVS Sensor, refer to the Calibration section of the appropriate FloBoss hardware manual for the recommended way to remove/restore the DVS from/to working pressure during calibration. Failure to follow recommendations may cause sensor damage.

10.1.1 Calibration Report

If required, create a Calibration Report to record the calibration procedure.

10.1.1.1 Creating a Calibration Report

1. Click **Freeze** to stop the values of the Analog, MVS, HART, and Temperature (RTD) inputs from being updated during verification or calibration.
2. Click **Yes** in the confirmation dialog to create a Calibration Report.
3. Enter the **File name** of the Calibration Report and use the default extension of **.800** or **.cal** to represent calibration. Click **Save**.
4. The Calibration Report File is created in the default directory C:/Program Files/ROCLINK 800, unless you specify another Directory/Drive.

Once the calibration is complete, the report can be viewed using a text editor or View > Calibration Report.

10.1.1.2 Viewing a Calibration Report

1. Select View > **Calibration Report** from the menu.
2. **Select** the Calibration Report you desire to view.

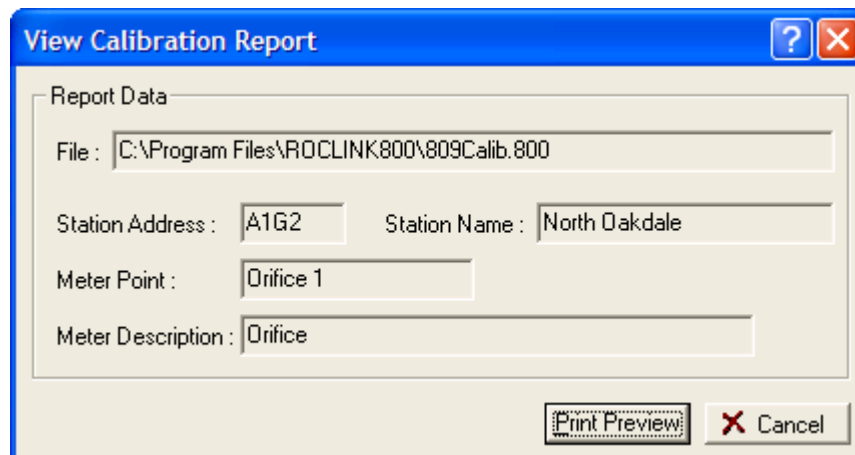


Figure 10-1. View Calibration Report

3. Click **Print Preview**. The Report opens.

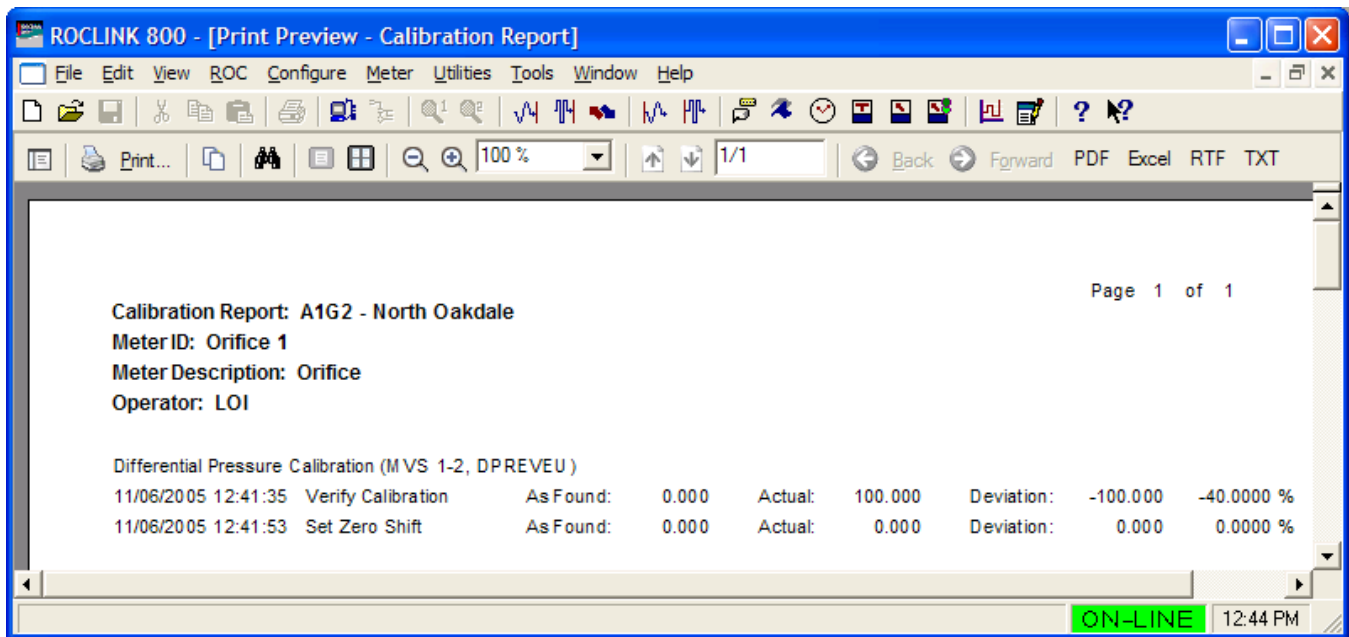


Figure 10-2. Calibration Report Print Preview

10.2 Starting Calibration

Click **Freeze** to stop the values of the Analog, MVS, HART, and Temperature (RTD) inputs from being updated during verification or calibration.

This creates the **Freeze Value** used in ongoing processing, such as flow calculations and history logging, while calibration is being performed. The Calibration **Freeze Value** field displays the value received from the Analog, HART, MVS, or RTD input when the Update button was last pressed.

10.2.1 Verify – Calibration

If the run has been calibrated before, click **Verify** to begin a verification of the last calibration or immediately after a new calibration. Click **Log Verify** to write the data to the Event Log and calibration report.

Verify proceeds with verification of the calibration at a point in the operating range, such as at 0, 25, 50, 75, or 100 percent.

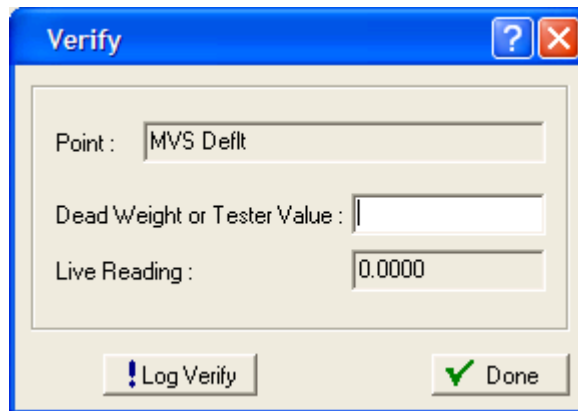
The **Point** field displays the Point you are calibrating or verifying.

Enter the **Dead Weight or Tester Value**. This is the input desired for the test value and is the actual value expected by the test equipment being calibrated against. For example: When calibrating temperature for an RTD input, enter the degrees value associated with the resistance set up in the decade box.

The **Live Reading** field displays actual (Live Reading) value read from the sensor or AI point.

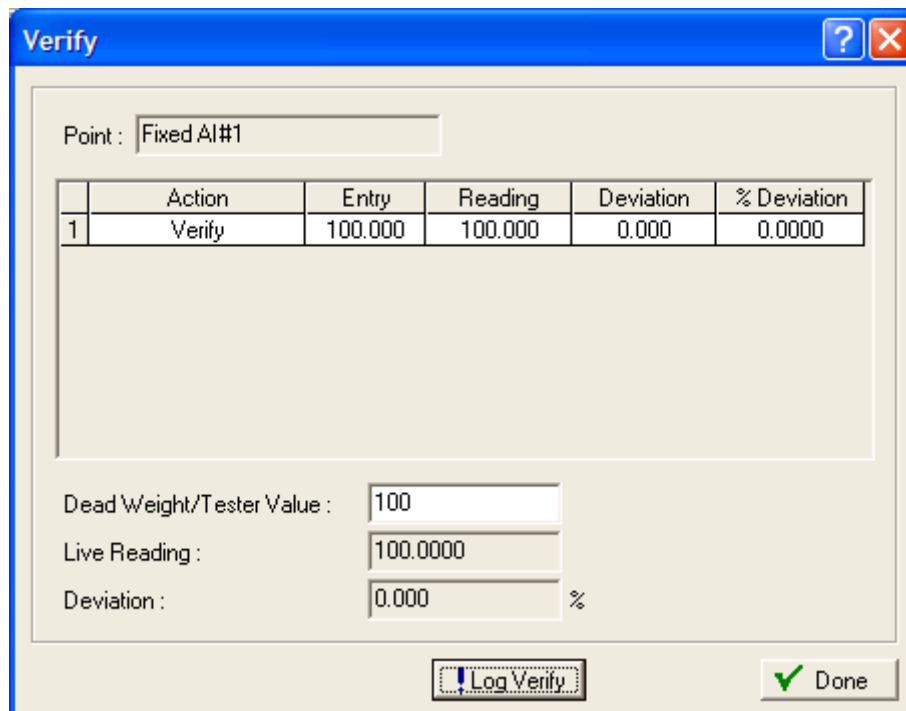
ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 devices display:

- ◆ **Action** – Describes the type of Action. Possible Actions are: Verify, Set Zero, Set Span, Set Mid 1, Set Mid 2, and Set Mid 3.
- ◆ **Entry** –Expected or desired value. This is the entered Dead Weight/Tester value for point being verified/calibrated.
- ◆ **Reading** – The actual (Live Reading) value read from the sensor or AI point.
- ◆ **Deviation** – Difference between expected or entered value and live reading (Deviation = Entry – Reading).
- ◆ **%Deviation** – Deviation as percent of range
(%Deviation = Deviation ÷ (Span EU – Zero EU) x 100%).



The 'Verify' dialog box for ROC800-Series has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. It contains three input fields: 'Point' with the text 'MVS Deflt', 'Dead Weight or Tester Value' which is empty, and 'Live Reading' with the value '0.0000'. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Log Verify' with an exclamation mark icon and 'Done' with a green checkmark icon.

Figure 10-3. Verify Calibration (ROC800-Series)



The 'Verify' dialog box for ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. It contains a 'Point' field with the text 'Fixed AI#1'. Below this is a table with 6 columns: an index column, 'Action', 'Entry', 'Reading', 'Deviation', and '% Deviation'. The table has one data row. Below the table are three input fields: 'Dead Weight/Tester Value' with '100', 'Live Reading' with '100.0000', and 'Deviation' with '0.000' followed by a '%' symbol. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Log Verify' with an exclamation mark icon and 'Done' with a green checkmark icon.

	Action	Entry	Reading	Deviation	% Deviation
1	Verify	100.000	100.000	0.000	0.0000

Figure 10-4. Verify Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

10.2.2 Set Zero – Calibration

After Verifying Calibration, calibrate the Zero value (0% of range) for the in Differential Pressure (orifice only), Static Pressure, or Temperature. This should correspond with the Low Reading EU (0% Count) and is the low value for the Meter input.

1. Enter the **Dead Weight or Tester Value** (in engineering units). This is the input desired for the test value and is the actual value expected by the test equipment being calibrated against. For example: When calibrating temperature for an RTD input, enter the degree value associated with the resistance set up in the decade box or other equipment.

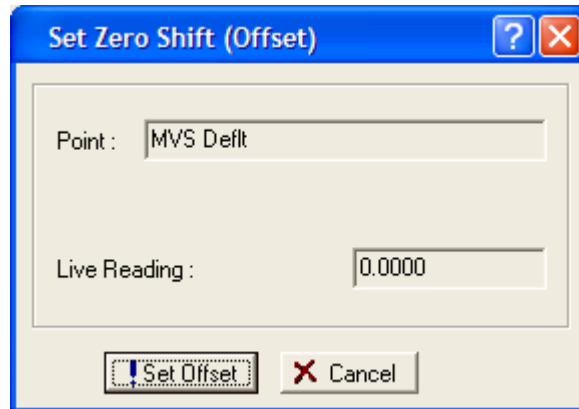


Figure 10-5. Set Zero Calibration (ROC800-Series)

The **Point** field displays the Point you are calibrating or verifying.

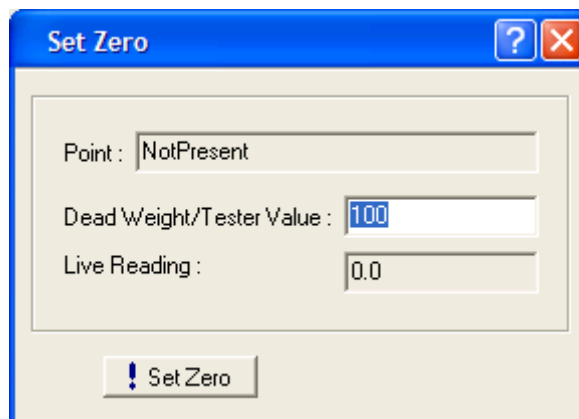
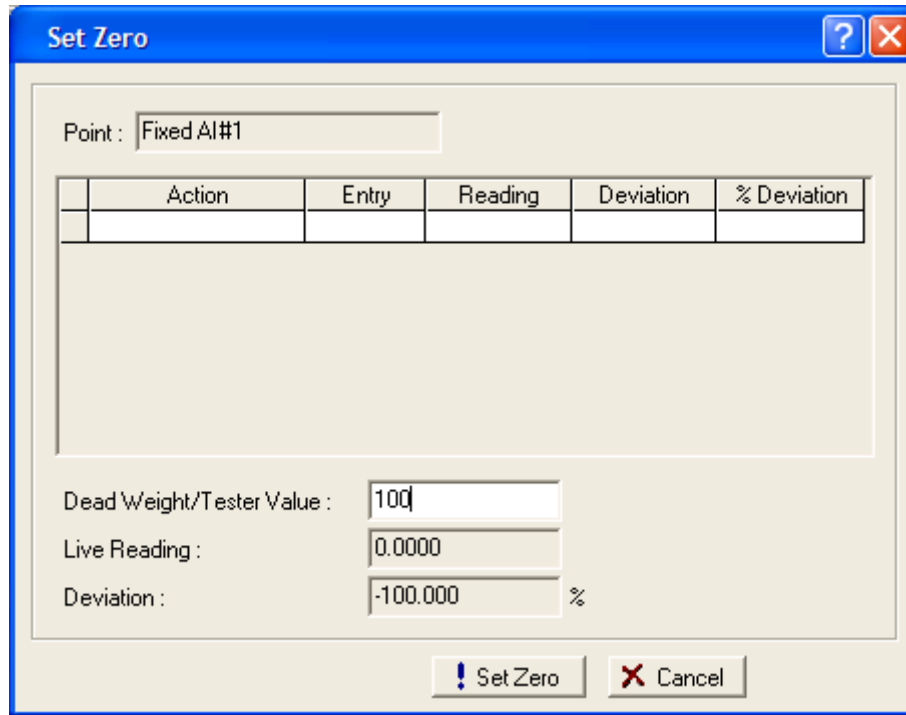


Figure 10-6. Set Zero Calibration (FloBoss 100-Series)



The image shows a 'Set Zero' dialog box with a blue title bar. Inside, there is a 'Point' field set to 'Fixed AI#1'. Below this is a table with five columns: Action, Entry, Reading, Deviation, and % Deviation. The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the dialog, there are three input fields: 'Dead Weight/Tester Value' with '100', 'Live Reading' with '0.0000', and 'Deviation' with '-100.000' followed by a '%' symbol. At the very bottom are two buttons: 'Set Zero' (with an exclamation mark icon) and 'Cancel' (with a red X icon).

Action	Entry	Reading	Deviation	% Deviation

Dead Weight/Tester Value : 100

Live Reading : 0.0000

Deviation : -100.000 %

! Set Zero X Cancel

Figure 10-7. Set Zero Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

2. Compare the Dead Weight or Tester Value with the **Live Reading**. If the value is too far out of tolerance, perform calibration for the input.
3. Click the **Set Zero** button.

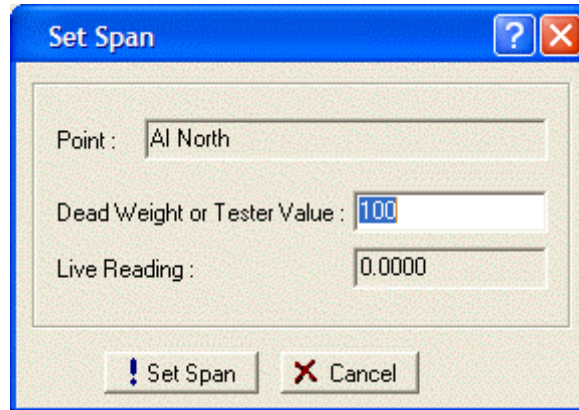
ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 devices display:

- ◆ **Action** – Describes the type of Action. Possible Actions are: Verify, Set Zero, Set Span, Set Mid 1, Set Mid 2, and Set Mid 3.
- ◆ **Entry** –Expected or desired value. This is the entered Dead Weight/Tester value for point being verified/calibrated.
- ◆ **Reading** – The actual (Live Reading) value read from the sensor or AI point.
- ◆ **Deviation** – Difference between expected or entered value and live reading
(Deviation = Entry – Reading).
- ◆ **%Deviation** – Deviation as percent of range
(%Deviation = Deviation ÷ (Span EU – Zero EU) x 100%).

10.2.3 Set Span – Calibration

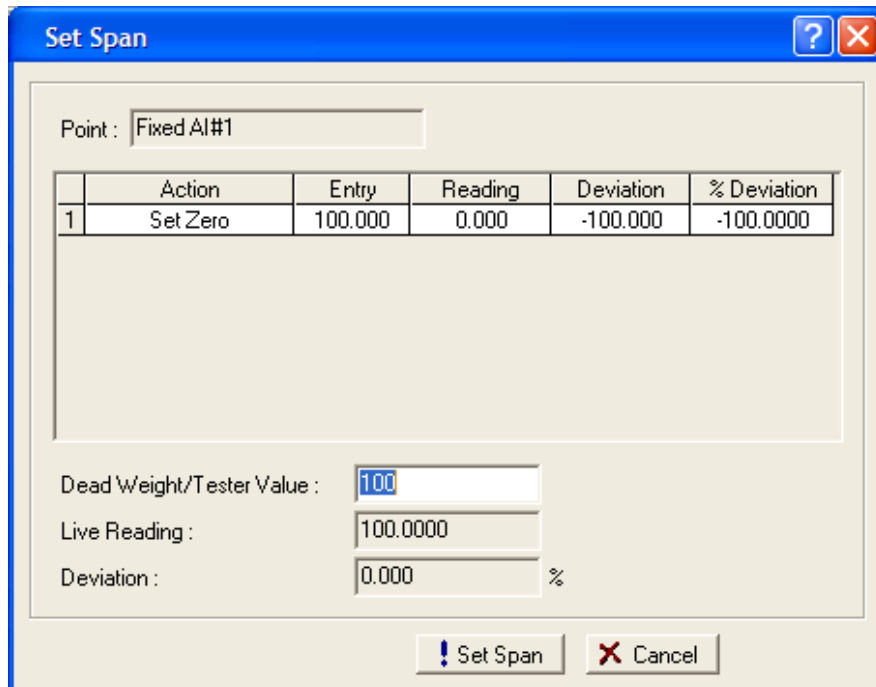
Calibrate the Span value (100% of range) for Differential Pressure (orifice only), Static Pressure, or Temperature. The **Point** field displays the Point you are calibrating or verifying. This corresponds with the High Reading EU (100% Count) and is the **high value** to the input (the top end of the expected operating range).

For **Static Pressure** on an absolute-pressure device, remember to add in the actual atmospheric pressure, for example, 300 + 14.73.



The 'Set Span' dialog box has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. It contains three input fields: 'Point' with the text 'AI North', 'Dead Weight or Tester Value' with the value '100', and 'Live Reading' with the value '0.0000'. At the bottom are two buttons: 'Set Span' with an exclamation mark icon and 'Cancel' with a red X icon.

Figure 10-8. Set Span Calibration



The 'Set Span' dialog box has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. It contains a 'Point' field with the text 'Fixed AI#1'. Below it is a table with the following data:

	Action	Entry	Reading	Deviation	% Deviation
1	Set Zero	100.000	0.000	-100.000	-100.0000

Below the table are three input fields: 'Dead Weight/Tester Value' with the value '100', 'Live Reading' with the value '100.0000', and 'Deviation' with the value '0.000' followed by a '%' symbol. At the bottom are two buttons: 'Set Span' with an exclamation mark icon and 'Cancel' with a red X icon.

Figure 10-9. Set Span Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

The **Live Reading** field displays actual value read from the sensor or I/O point.

1. Enter the **Dead Weight/Tester Value** (in engineering units). This should correspond with the High Reading EU (100% Count) and is the **high value** to the input (the top end of the expected operating range).
2. Click **Set Span**.

ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 devices display:

- ◆ **Action** – Describes the type of Action. Possible Actions are: Verify, Set Zero, Set Span, Set Mid 1, Set Mid 2, and Set Mid 3.
- ◆ **Entry** – Expected or desired value. This is the entered Dead Weight/Tester value for point being verified/calibrated.
- ◆ **Reading** – The actual (Live Reading) value read from the sensor or AI point.
- ◆ **Deviation** – Difference between expected or entered value and the Live Reading. This is the Deviation from the actual versus the expected value in percent of range.
(Deviation = Entry – Reading).
- ◆ **%Deviation** – Deviation as percent of range
(%Deviation = Deviation ÷ (Span EU – Zero EU) x 100%).

10.2.4 Set Midpoints – Calibration

If desired, calibrate Midpoint 1 (such as 25% of range) for the Differential Pressure (orifice only), Static Pressure, or Temperature, otherwise click the Done button. Midpoints allow you to specify the points between the Zero and Span endpoints.

❖ **Note:** You can calibrate Midpoints in any order from low to high or high to low.

The **Point** field displays the Point you are calibrating or verifying.

The **Live Reading** field displays actual (Live Reading) value read from the sensor or AI point.

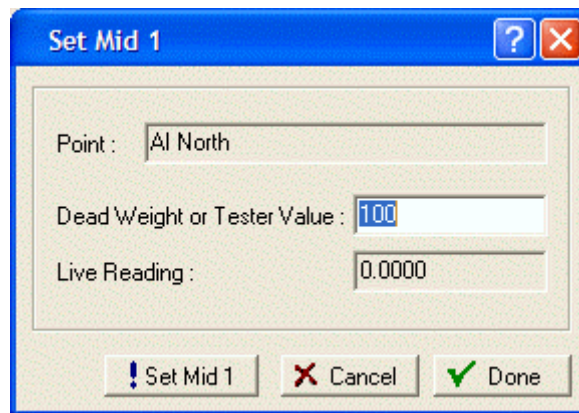
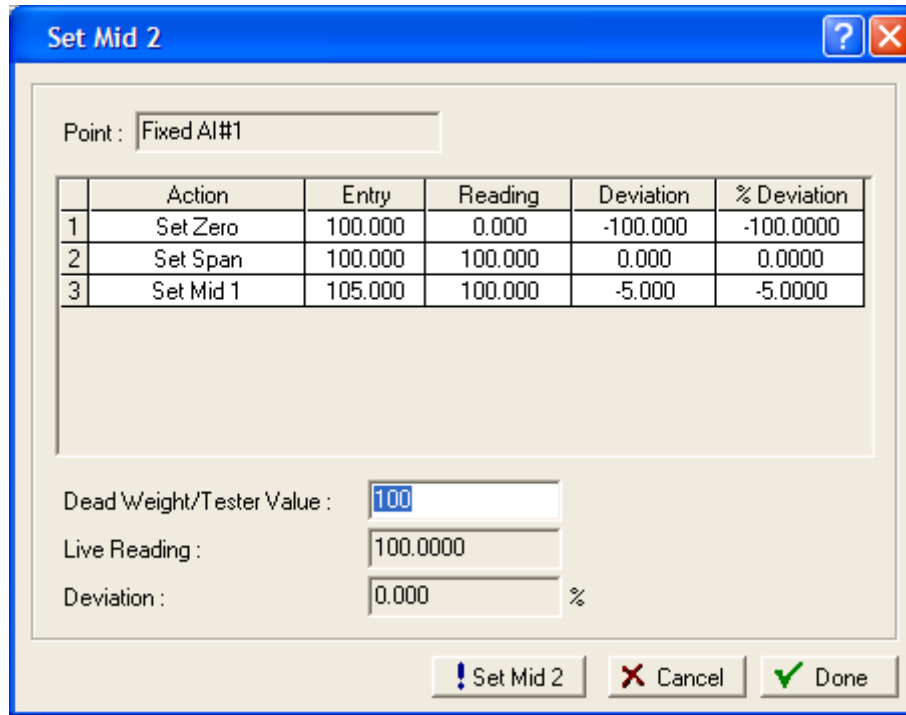


Figure 10-10. Set Midpoints Calibration (ROC800-Series)



	Action	Entry	Reading	Deviation	% Deviation
1	Set Zero	100.000	0.000	-100.000	-100.0000
2	Set Span	100.000	100.000	0.000	0.0000
3	Set Mid 1	105.000	100.000	-5.000	-5.0000

Dead Weight/Tester Value : 100

Live Reading : 100.0000

Deviation : 0.000 %

! Set Mid 2 X Cancel ✓ Done

Figure 10-11. Set Midpoints Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 devices display:

- ◆ **Action** – Describes the type of Action. Possible Actions are: Verify, Set Zero, Set Span, Set Mid 1, Set Mid 2, and Set Mid 3.
- ◆ **Entry** –Expected or desired value. This is the entered Dead Weight/Tester value for point being verified/calibrated.
- ◆ **Reading** – The actual (Live Reading) value read from the sensor or AI point.
- ◆ **Deviation** – Difference between expected or entered value and live reading
(Deviation = Entry – Reading).
- ◆ **%Deviation** – Deviation as percent of range
(%Deviation = Deviation ÷ (Span EU – Zero EU) x 100%).

To set the Midpoints:

1. Click the **Set Mid 1** button.

If desired, calibrate Midpoint 2 (such as 50% of range) for the Differential Pressure (orifice only), Static Pressure, or Temperature. Set Midpoint 2 allows you to specify the middle calibration point between the Zero and Span endpoints. Enter the **Dead Weight/Tester Value** (in engineering units).

2. Click the **Set Mid 2** button.

If desired, calibrate Midpoint 3 (such as 75% of range) for the Differential Pressure (orifice only), Static Pressure, or Temperature. Set Midpoint 3 allows you to specify a third point between the Zero and Span endpoints. Enter the Dead Weight/Tester Value (in engineering units).

3. Click the **Set Mid 3** button.

10.2.5 Zero Shift / Offset / RTD Bias – Calibration

Zero Shift enables you to zero the static pressure effect for the Differential Pressure input

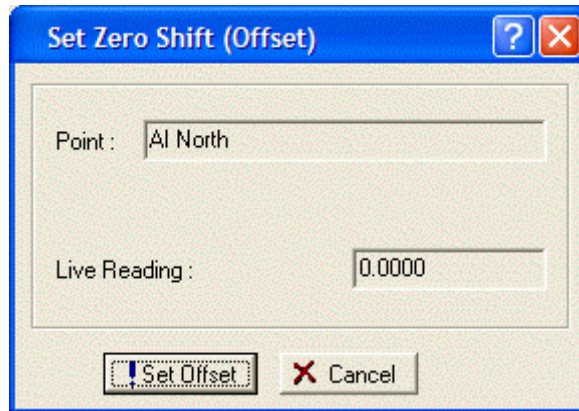


Figure 10-12. Set Zero Shift (Offset) (ROC800-Series)

1. If desired, after you have calibrated Differential Pressure, click **Zero Shift** to zero the static pressure effect for the Differential Pressure input.
The **Point** field displays the Point you are calibrating or verifying.
The **Live Reading** field displays actual (Live Reading) value read from the sensor or point.
2. Apply the typical line pressure to both the high and low side of the sensor.
3. Click **Set Offset** to send the value to the live reading to get the reading as close to zero as possible.
4. Click the **Done** or Cancel button to close the dialog box.
5. For a FloBoss 407 static pressure input, click **Offset** to calibrate the offset (shift) of static pressure, if desired. Enter a value for the Measured Pressure Reading. Click **Set Offset** to send the value to the live reading to get the reading as close to the measured reading as possible. Click the **Done** button to close the dialog box.
6. For a FloBoss 407 temperature input, click **RTD Bias** to calibrate the offset (shift) of temperature throughout the RTD curve, if desired. Enter a value for the Temperature Standard Reading. Click **Set Bias** to send the value to the live reading to get the live reading as close as possible to the standard reading. Click the **Done** button to close the dialog box.

10.2.6 Orifice Meter Calibration

The Differential Pressure, Static Pressure, and Temperature inputs from an orifice meter can be calibrated. When calibrating Stacked Differential Pressure, you may calibrate either the low differential pressure (Low DP) input or the high differential pressure (Diff Pressure) input.

CAUTION

If you have an MVS sensor, refer to the Sensor Calibration section in the ROC or FloBoss Accessories Instruction Manual (Form A4637) for the recommended way to remove/restore the MVS from/to working pressure during calibration. Failure to follow recommendations may cause sensor damage.

CAUTION

If you have a DVS Sensor, refer to the Calibration section of the appropriate FloBoss hardware manual for the recommended way to remove/restore the DVS from/to working pressure during calibration. Failure to follow recommendations may cause sensor damage.

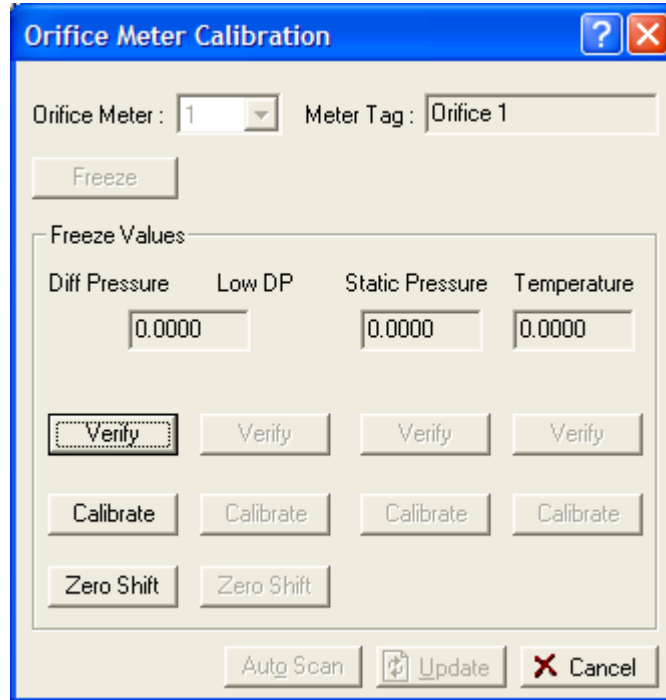


Figure 10-13. Orifice Meter Calibration Example (ROC800-Series)

To calibrate a ROC800-Series unit input, select Meter > Calibration > **Orifice**.

To calibrate a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407 unit input, select Meter > **Calibration**.

1. If you are calibrating a meter, select a specific **Orifice Meter** Run to verify and calibrate. Use the **Meter Tag** to verify the identity of the Meter Run.
2. Click **AutoScan** or **Update**. AutoScan requests values from the meter until the Freeze or StopScan button is pressed. Update requests a single update of new values from the meter.
3. Click **Freeze** to stop the values of the Differential Pressure, Low Differential Pressure (labeled Low DP), Static Pressure, and Temperature (RTD) from being updated during verification or calibration.
4. Click the AutoScan or Update and then the Freeze buttons to create the **Freeze Value** used in ongoing processing, such as flow calculations and history logging, while calibration is being performed. The Calibration **Freeze Values** field displays the values received from the AI, MVS, DVS, or RTD when the Update button was last pressed.



CAUTION

Open the by-pass valve on the valve manifold prior to isolating the sensor from the process, to protect the differential cell of the Dual-Variable Sensor. This keeps one side of the differential sensor from being subjected to high pressure while the other side has no pressure applied. This is required when calibrating either differential or static pressure.

5. If you are calibrating a **pressure input**, **isolate** the Sensor from the process. Set up the pressure calibrator and make the necessary connections to the Sensor.
6. If you are calibrating a **temperature input**, disconnect the RTD sensor and connect a decade box (or comparable equipment) to the RTD terminals of the ROC or FloBoss.
7. Click **Calibrate**.
8. If desired during a meter calibration, select and specify a **Calibration Report** File. Select Yes to create a report text file containing calibration and verification details. Select No to continue without creating a report. If you select Yes, another dialog box appears. Refer to Calibration Report.
9. Enter a value for **Set Zero**.
10. Enter a value for **Set Span**.
11. Enter values for up to three **Midpoints**. You will now return to the main Calibration screen.
12. If calibrating a Differential Pressure input, click **Zero Shift**.
13. For a FloBoss 407 static pressure input, click **Offset**.
14. For a FloBoss 407 temperature input, click **RTD Bias**.
15. Click the **OK** button to close the main calibration window and unfreeze the associated inputs. To calibrate the inputs for another Meter Run (if available), return to Step 1 to calibrate another input for the same Meter Run.

10.2.7 Turbine Meter Calibration

The Static Pressure and Temperature inputs from a turbine meter can be calibrated.

To calibrate a ROC800-Series unit, select Meter > Calibration > **Turbine**.

To calibrate a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407 unit, select Meter > **Calibration**.

1. If you are calibrating a meter, select a specific Meter Run (**Meter or Turbine Meter**) to verify and calibrate. Use the **Meter Tag** to verify the identity of the Meter Run.

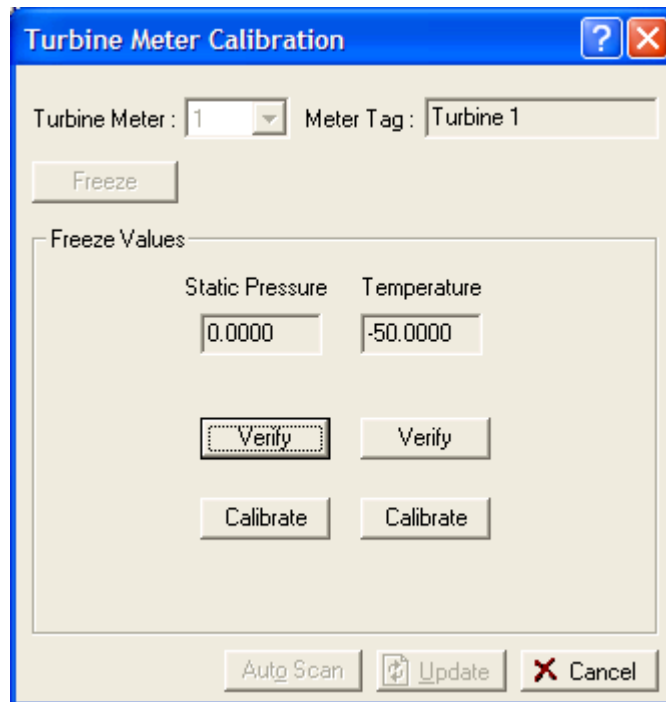


Figure 10-14. Turbine Meter Calibration Example (ROC800-Series)

2. Click **AutoScan** or **Update**. AutoScan requests values from the meter. It will continue to request values until the Freeze or StopScan button is pressed. Update requests a single update of new values from the meter.
3. Click **Freeze** to stop the values of the Static Pressure, and Temperature (RTD) from being updated during verification or calibration.

Press the AutoScan or Update and then the Freeze button to create the **Freeze Values** used in ongoing processing, such as flow calculations and history logging, while calibration is being performed. The Calibration **Freeze Value** field displays the value received from the AI, MVS, DVS, or RTD when the Update button was last pressed.

4. If you are calibrating a **pressure input**, **isolate** the Sensor from the process. Set up the pressure calibrator and make the necessary connections to the Sensor.
5. If you are calibrating a **temperature input**, disconnect the RTD sensor and connect a decade box (or comparable equipment) to the RTD terminals of the ROC or FloBoss.
6. If desired during a meter calibration, select and specify a **Calibration Report File**. Select Yes to create a report text file containing calibration and verification details. Select No to continue without creating a report. If you select Yes, another dialog box appears.

7. Click the **Calibrate** button.
8. Enter a value for **Set Zero**.
9. Enter a value for **Set Span**.
10. Enter values for up to three **Midpoints**. You will now return to the main calibration screen.
11. Click the **OK** button to close the main calibration screen and unfreeze the associated inputs. To calibrate the inputs for another Meter Run (if available), return to Step 1.

10.2.8 AI and RTD Calibration

For FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407 RTD Input calibration, select Configure > I/O > AI Points > Calibration tab.

For ROC800-Series RTD Input calibration, select Configure > I/O > RTD Points > Calibration tab.

1. Select an **RTD Input** or **Analog Input**.
2. Click **Update** to request one value update from the input.
3. Click **Freeze** to stop the values of the input from being updated during verification or calibration.

Click Update and the Freeze button to create the **Freeze Value** used in ongoing processing, such as flow calculations and history logging, while calibration is being performed. The Calibration **Freeze Value** field displays the value received from the AI or RTD input when the Update button was last pressed.

Scan Mode indicates Normal or Manual. Normal indicates that the point scanning is enabled and is being updated each scan period. Manual indicates that the point is not in scanning mode.

4. If you are calibrating a temperature input, disconnect the RTD sensor and connect a decade box (or comparable equipment) to the RTD terminals of the ROC or FloBoss.
5. Press the **Calibrate** button.
6. Enter a value for **Set Zero** after stabilization.
7. Enter a value for **Set Span** after stabilization.
8. Enter values for up to three **Midpoints** one at a time or click Done if you are not configuring Midpoints.
9. Click the **OK** button to close the main calibration window and unfreeze the associated inputs. To calibrate the inputs for another AI or RTD, return to Step 1.

10.2.9 HART Calibration

Select Configure > I/O > **HART Points**. A two point calibration routine can be run on HART inputs. The Calibration routine may only be run on devices when the channel is in Point to Point mode and when the device is in Skip this Device mode.

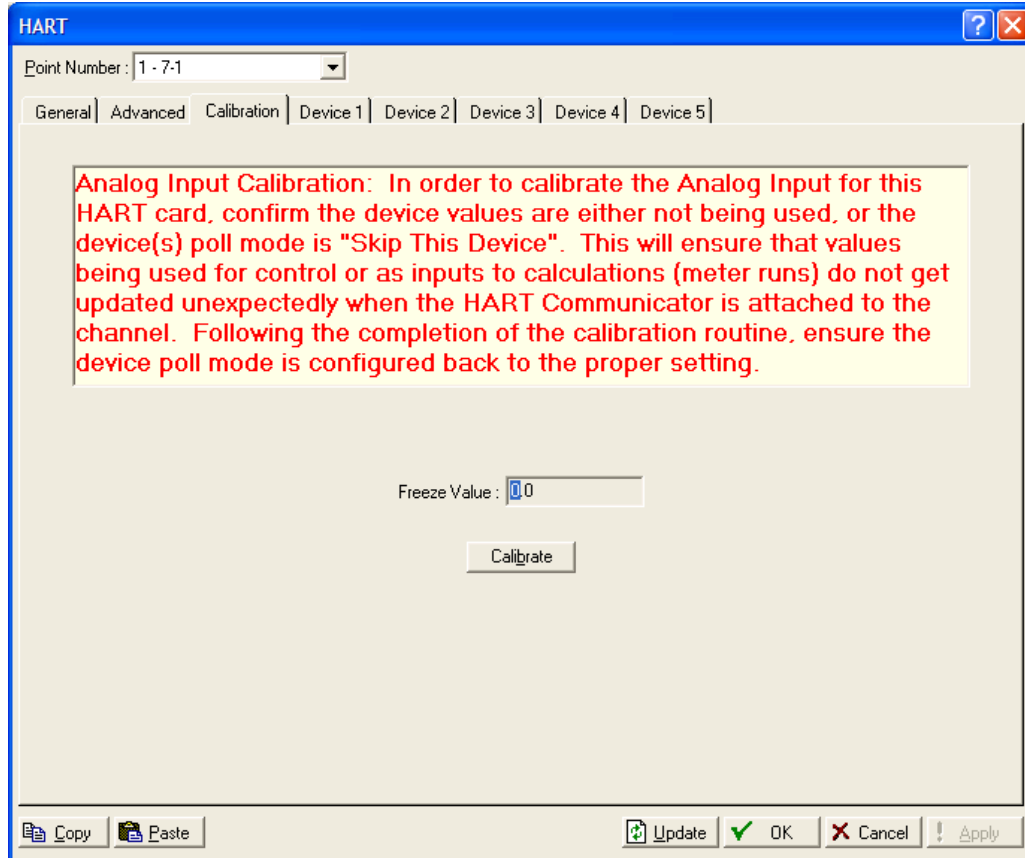


Figure 10-15. HART Calibration

Verify that the Communication Mode on the General tab is set to Point-to-Point. Open the Device tab and verify that the Poll Mode is set to Skip This Device.

1. Select the **Point Number** to calibrate.
2. Select the **Calibration** tab.
3. Click **Calibrate**.
4. Enter a value for **Set Zero**.
5. Enter a value for **Set Span**.

When returned to the Calibration tab, the calibration routine is complete.

10.3 Analog Input Calibration Values

Select Utilities > **AI Calibration Values** to view all the calibration values for a specific Analog Input point, such as the Diff Pres (differential pressure).

Field	Value
Point	1 - AI Default
Raw Value 1	819
Raw Value 2	4095
Raw Value 3	4095
Raw Value 4	4095
Raw Value 5	4095
EU Value 1	0.0
EU Value 2	100.0
EU Value 3	100.0
EU Value 4	100.0
EU Value 5	100.0
Press Effect	0.0
Timer	3600.0
Set EU Value	0.0
Mode	0
Manual EU	0.0
Type	0

Figure 10-16. AI Calibration Values Example (ROC800-Series)

Use the drop-down list box to select the AI **Point** you desire to view.

The **Tag** for that point displays.

Raw Value #1 is the lowest calibrated Raw A/D input, Raw Value #5 is the highest calibrated Raw A/D input.

EU Value #1 to 5 are the five calibration settings in Engineering Units Values, converted from the Raw Values, based on the Low Reading EU and High Reading EU defined for the point. EU Value #1 is the Zero value, EU Value #5 is the Span value, and the rest are Midpoint values.

Press Effect is the Zero Shift adjustment value; it is used as an offset to the calibrated EU Values to compensate for the working Static Pressure effect on a DP transmitter that was calibrated at atmospheric pressure.

For the FloBoss 407, this field represents the static pressure offset for the Static input point and the RTD Bias value for the Temperature input.

Set EU Value is the Tester Value specified for the last calibration value that was set.

Manual EU is the Live Reading for the last calibration value that was set.

The **Timer** field shows the last inactivity count-down in seconds (typically starting from 3600 seconds) that occurred during the last calibration session. Had the countdown reached 0, time-out would have taken place, causing the calibration mode to be automatically ended.

Calibration **Mode** indicates:

- 0 = Use Current Calibration
- 1 = Start Calibration
- 2 = Calibrate
- 3 = Restore Previous Calibration
- 4 = Stop Calibration.

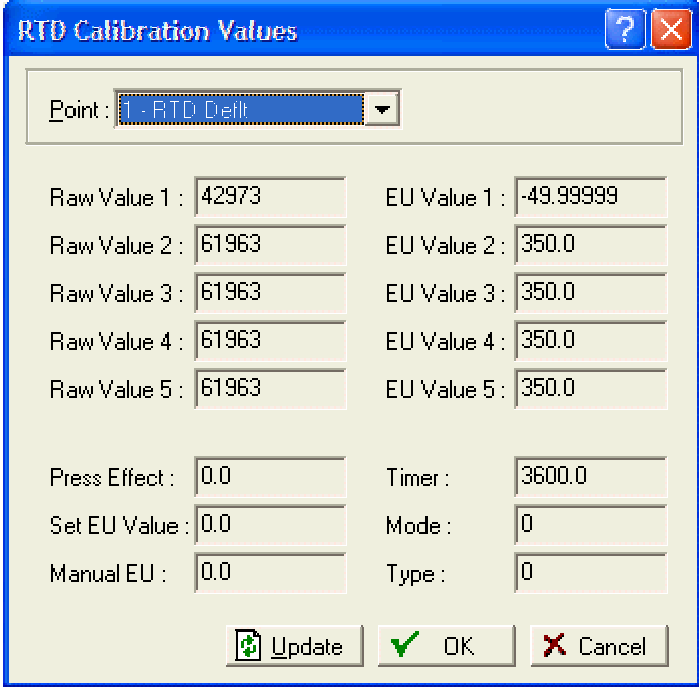
Type indicates which calibration value is currently being set:

- 0 = Inactive (no value)
- 1 = Zero
- 2 = Span
- 3 = Midpoint 1
- 4 = Midpoint 2
- 5 = Midpoint 3
- 6 = Zero Shift.

10.4 RTD Input Calibration Values

For a ROC800-Series, select Utilities > **RTD Calibration Values** to view all the calibration values for a specific RTD input point

Not available for the FloBoss 100-Series.



RTD Calibration Values			
Point :	1 - RTD Delt		
Raw Value 1 :	42973	EU Value 1 :	-49.99999
Raw Value 2 :	61963	EU Value 2 :	350.0
Raw Value 3 :	61963	EU Value 3 :	350.0
Raw Value 4 :	61963	EU Value 4 :	350.0
Raw Value 5 :	61963	EU Value 5 :	350.0
Press Effect :	0.0	Timer :	3600.0
Set EU Value :	0.0	Mode :	0
Manual EU :	0.0	Type :	0
<div>Update OK Cancel</div>			

Figure 10-17. RTD Input Calibration Values

Use the drop-down list box to select the RTD **Point** you desire to view.

The **Tag** for that point displays.

Raw Value #1 to 5 – Raw Value 1 is the lowest calibrated Raw A/D input, Raw Value 5 is the highest calibrated Raw A/D input.

EU Value #1 to 5 – The five calibration settings in Engineering Units values, converted from the Raw Values, based on the Low Reading EU and High Reading EU defined for the point. EU Value 1 is the Zero value, EU Value 5 is the Span value, and the rest are Midpoint values.

Press Effect is the Zero Shift or RTD Bias adjustment value (applies only to points configured as the Differential Pressure input to a Meter Run) or temperature input (FloBoss 407).

Set EU Value is the Tester Value specified for the last calibration value that was set.

Manual EU is the Live Reading for the last calibration value that was set.

The **Timer** field shows the last inactivity count-down in seconds (typically starting from 3600 seconds) that occurred during the last calibration session. Had the countdown reached 0, time-out would have taken place, causing the calibration mode to be automatically ended.

Calibration **Mode** indicates:

- 0 = Use Current Calibration
- 1 = Start Calibration
- 2 = Calibrate
- 3 = Restore Previous Calibration
- 4 = Stop Calibration.

Type indicates which calibration value is currently being set:

- 0 = Inactive (no value)
- 1 = Zero
- 2 = Span
- 3 = Midpoint 1
- 4 = Midpoint 2
- 5 = Midpoint 3
- 6 = Unused.

10.5 MVS Input Calibration Values (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 407)

Select Utilities > **MVS Calibration Values** to view all the current calibration values for MVS Sensor points.

MVS Calibration Values	
MVS Sensor: 1 - MVS Deflt	Sensor Tag: MVS Deflt
<div> <div> Differential Pressure Manual Value: 0.0 Cal Value 1: 0.0 Cal Value 2: 250.0 Cal Value 3: 250.0 Cal Value 4: 250.0 Cal Value 5: 250.0 Pressure Effect: 0.0 </div> <div> Static Pressure Manual Value: 0.0 Cal Value1: 0.0 Cal Value2: 800.6447 Cal Value3: 800.6447 Cal Value4: 800.6447 Cal Value5: 800.6447 </div> <div> Temperature Manual Value: 0.0 Cal Value 1: -459.4 Cal Value 2: 800.6 Cal Value 3: 800.6 Cal Value 4: 800.6 Cal Value 5: 800.6 </div> </div>	
Set To Factory Defaults	
Update OK Cancel	

Figure 10-18. MVS Input Calibration Values

Click the **Set To Factory Defaults** button if you desire to return MVS Calibration values to their original values and reset the MVS.

- ❖ **Note:** The MVS Address will be set to the default value of “1” and “MV Sensor” as the Sensor Tag.

Use the drop-down list box to select the **MVS Calibration** or **MVS Sensor** point (sensor number) you desire to view. The **Tag** for the selected point displays.

Differential Pressure is a display of the Differential Pressure calibration values currently used by the MVS Sensor. Manual Value is the value of the input at the time of the last meter “Freeze.”

Static Pressure is a display of the Static Pressure calibration values currently used by the MVS Sensor. Manual Value is the value of the input at the time of the last meter “Freeze.”

Temperature is a display of the Temperature calibration values currently used by the MVS Sensor. Manual Value is the value of the input at the time of the last meter “Freeze.”

SECTION 11 – UPDATES AND CHANGES

This section describes how to update firmware, upgrade hardware, and change the size of an orifice plate.

To upgrade or re-install ROCLINK 800 software, refer to Software Installation.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
11.1 Update Firmware	11-1
11.2 Upgrade Hardware (FloBoss 100-Series)	11-5
11.3 Plate Change	11-6

11.1 Update Firmware

The Update Firmware option updates the internal software (stored in Flash ROM) of a ROC or FloBoss unit by loading it from a file. This option does not update ROCLINK 800 software. Firmware cannot be updated over an Ethernet connection.

- ❖ **Note:** Use caution as the Update Firmware procedure clears the configuration of the ROC or FloBoss unit and reloads data when the Restore functions are selected. The Event Log, Alarm Log, and History logs are cleared. If you want to preserve the contents of the Event and Alarm Logs, be sure to save them to a file (Collect Data procedure) before starting. Note that the Event and Alarm Logs cannot be reloaded.
- 1. Create a backup copy of the firmware update disk or download the firmware file from the Emerson website.
- 2. Read the **README** text file included with the firmware update.
- 3. Select Utilities > **Update Firmware**.
- 4. Select the **Save Device Configuration Before Firmware Update** checkbox to save the current configuration, calibration, and communication settings, and FSTs to the specified directory.
- 5. Select the **Restore Device Configuration After Firmware Update** checkbox to restore the configuration file after the update. Use the Browse button to define the path and file name in the **Config File** or **File Name** field.
 - ❖ **Note:** The configuration may also be saved during an update by saving the configuration to Flash memory on the ROC > Flags screen before performing the update.
- 6. Navigate to the **File Name** or **Image File** using the Browse button to select the location where you desire to store the Device Configuration.

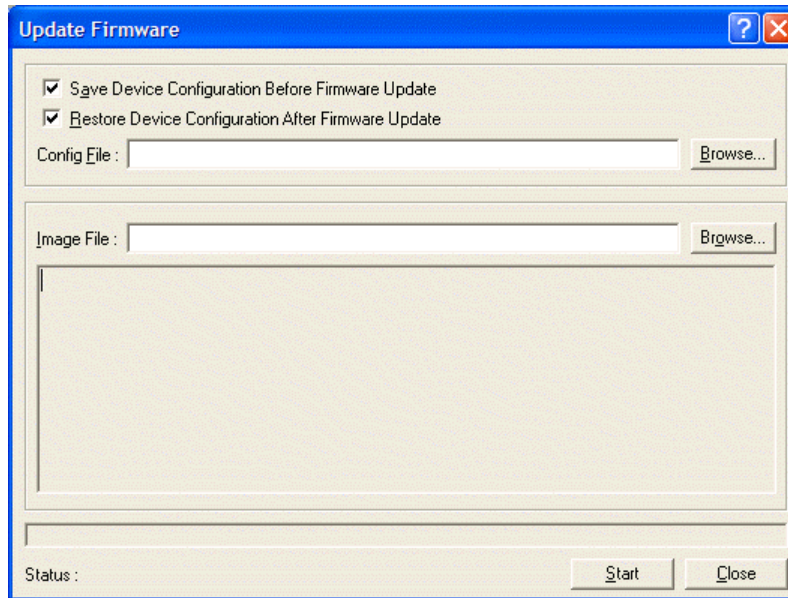


Figure 11-1. Update Firmware Example (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)

7. Use the Browse button to locate and select the proper **Image File** that will be used as the new firmware code in the ROC or FloBoss unit.
 - ❖ **Note:** The ROC800-Series displays a file extension .dli, the FloBoss 100-Series displays a file extension .bin, and the FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series displays a file extension .lst.
8. Click the **Start** button and verify the version number and file name of the firmware file to be replaced and the file to replace it.
9. Click **OK**.
10. For a ROC300-Series, FloBoss 100-Series, or FloBoss 407, click **Yes** to confirm the update.

The loading process typically takes several minutes; do not disturb it during this time. When loading of the firmware is complete, the configuration files are automatically loaded into the ROC or FloBoss (if the restore configuration option was selected) and the actions are recorded in the Event Log.

When re-loading of backups is complete, a message appears saying “Reconnect to Device Completed.” You can verify the upgrade on the Other Information or Revision Info tab of the ROC > Information screen.
11. Perform a **Cold Start** to reload the configuration from Flash memory, if it was saved to Flash memory. Check the configuration and FSTs; and if they are not correct, reload them from the disk files created in Step 4.

11.1.1 Update Firmware – I/O Termination Board

I/O Termination Board allows you to view the currently installed firmware version and download a new Firmware Image.

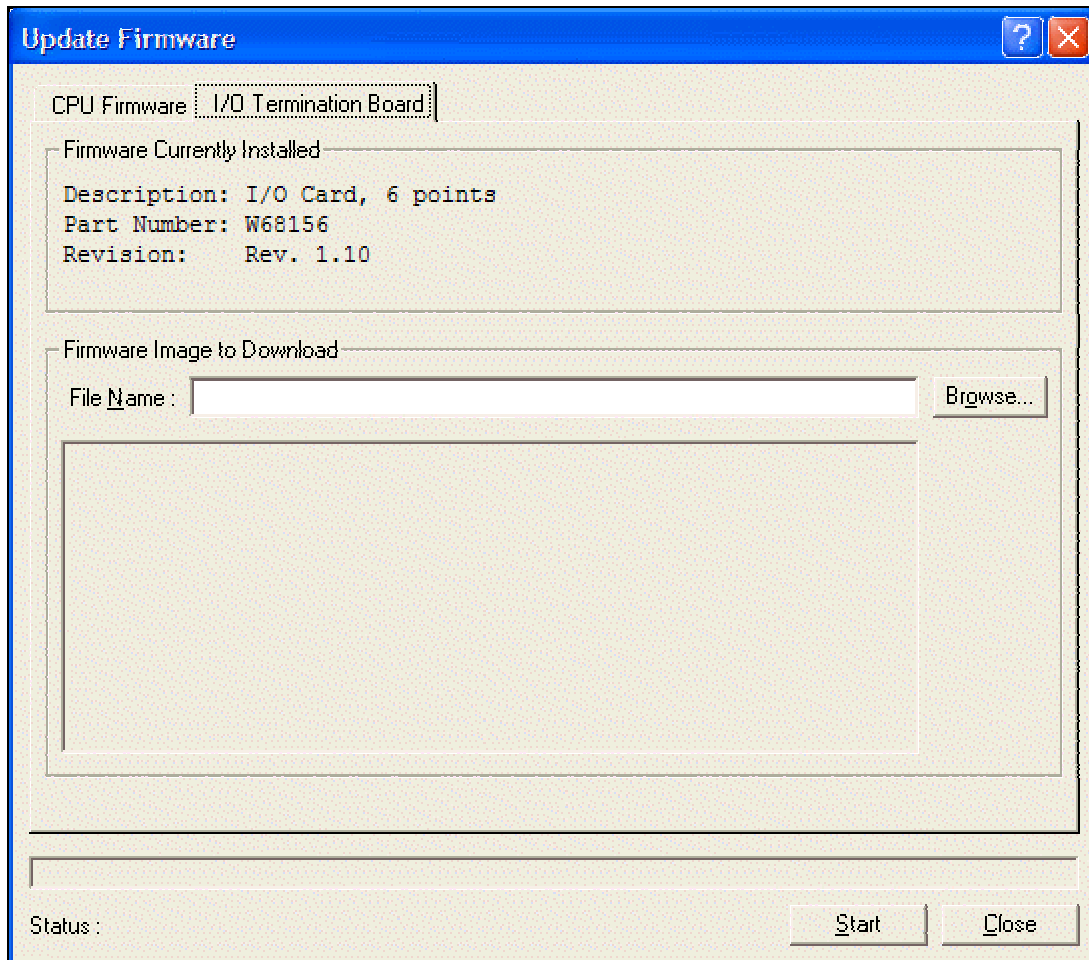


Figure 11-2. I/O Termination Board

Firmware Currently Installed – Displays the currently installed firmware information.

Firmware Image to Download (I/O Termination Board Tab) – The path and name of the Firmware Image to Download. Click the Browse button to locate the Firmware Image.

11.1.2 Update Firmware – Keypad Display (ROC800-Series)

Select Utilities > Update Firmware. Click the **Keypad Display** tab to upgrade the Firmware associated with the ROC800-Series Keypad Display.

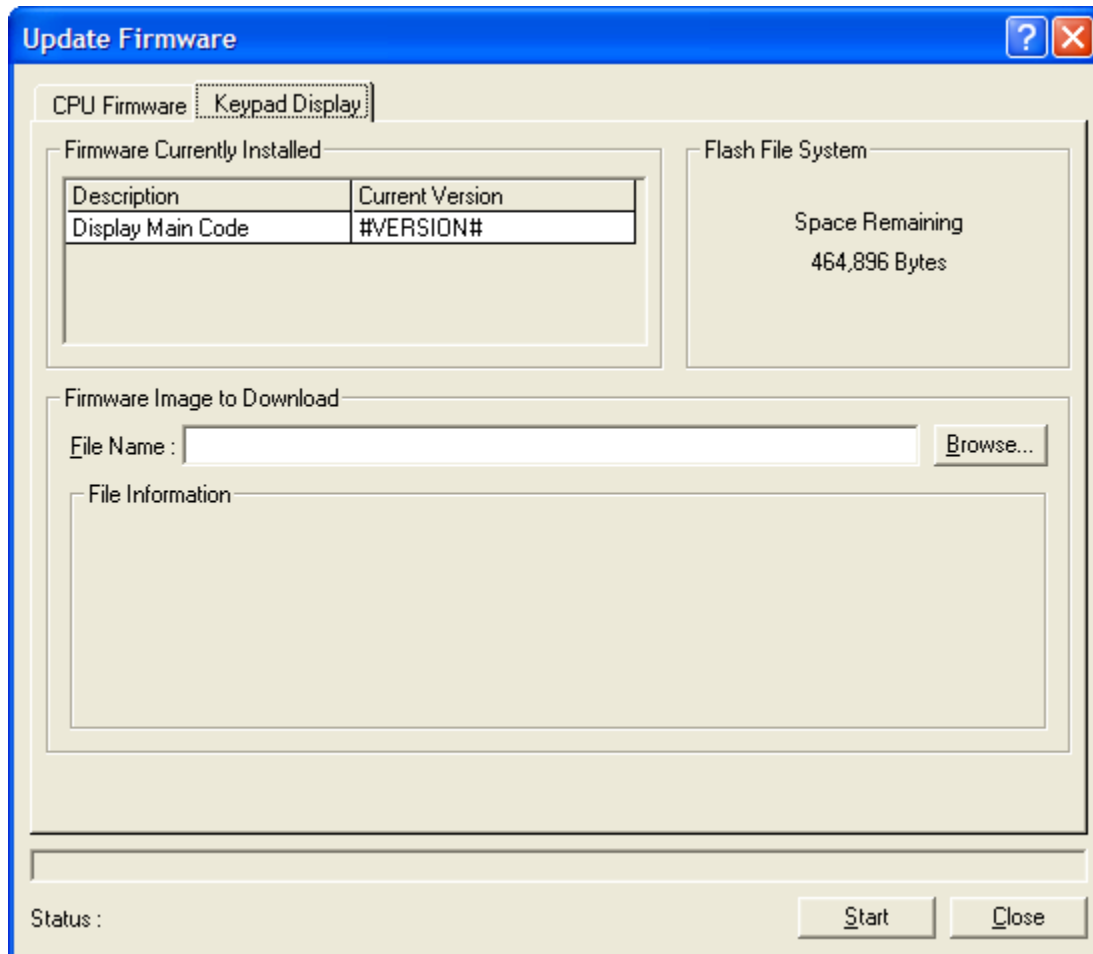


Figure 11-3. Update Firmware – Keypad Display (ROC800-Series)

Firmware Currently Installed – Displays a Description and Current Version of the Firmware stored in the Keypad Display.

Flash File System – Displays the total Space Remaining in Bytes for Firmware storage.

File Name – Click Browse to locate the Firmware Image to Download.

File Information – Display information about the file selected to be downloaded.

Status – Current Status of the download.

11.2 Upgrade Hardware (FloBoss 100-Series)

When you replace the Termination Board in a FloBoss 100-Series unit, you should select Utilities > **Upgrade Hardware** and follow the procedure to save configuration, remove power, remove hardware, install new hardware, connect power, and download configuration.

Check the configuration for that device and the Point Numbers in the FSTs, PID loops, and historical, EFM, Event and Alarm Logs that may be affected.

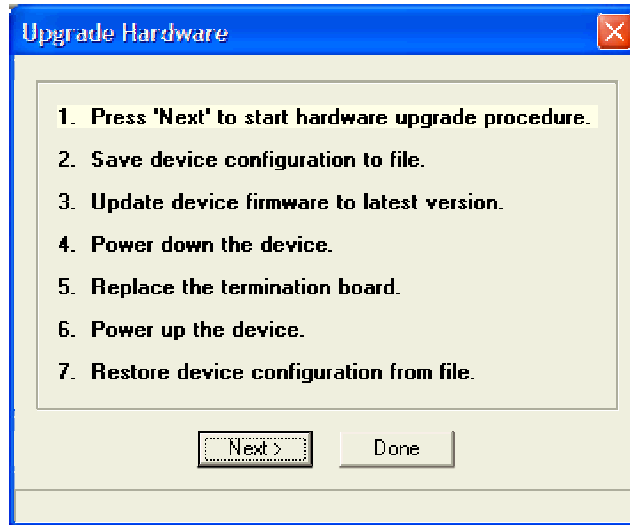


Figure 11-4. Upgrade Hardware

- ❖ **Note:** The I/O Setup screen (FloBoss 100-Series) will display whether the termination board is detected as the 4 point I/O or the 6 point I/O.

11.3 Plate Change

The Plate Change option allows you to change the size of an orifice plate under flowing or non-flowing conditions.

1. Select Meter > **Plate Change** to record an orifice plate change.
2. Select the correct **Meter Number** for the Meter Run you are changing.
3. Select **Yes** if the Plate Change occurs during flowing conditions. You will be allowed to freeze the inputs for the duration of the Plate Change process. Click **No** for non-flowing conditions.
4. Click **Freeze** if you are performing the Plate Change under flowing conditions, the dialog box shows you the Freeze Value of each meter input (for the purpose of calculating gas flow) while the change is being made. All I/O values are held in Manual Mode at the current value. The values are returned to an active state after clicking OK in the Plate Change dialog box.

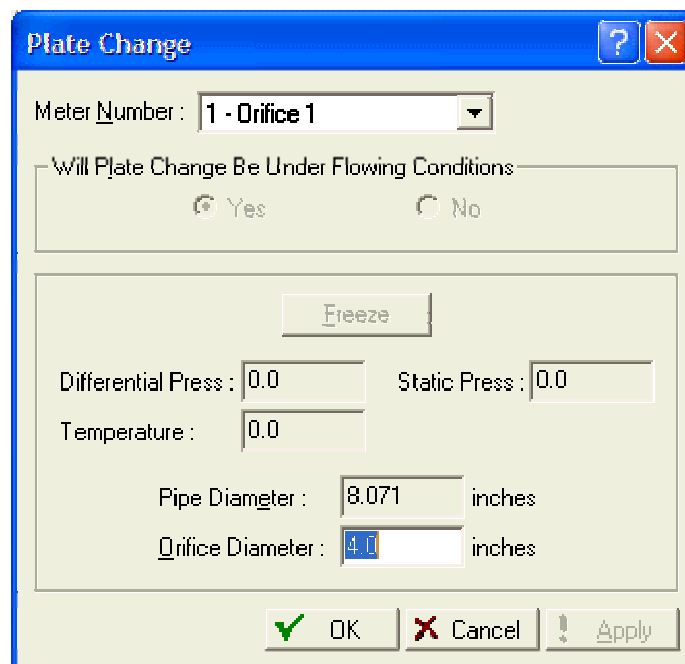
The image shows a software dialog box titled "Plate Change". At the top, there is a "Meter Number" dropdown menu set to "1 - Orifice 1". Below this is a section titled "Will Plate Change Be Under Flowing Conditions" with two radio buttons: "Yes" (which is selected) and "No". In the center, there is a "Freeze" button. Below the "Freeze" button are three input fields: "Differential Press" with a value of 0.0, "Static Press" with a value of 0.0, and "Temperature" with a value of 0.0. Further down are two more input fields: "Pipe Diameter" with a value of 8.071 inches and "Orifice Diameter" with a value of 4.0 inches. At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK" (with a green checkmark icon), "Cancel" (with a red X icon), and "Apply" (with a warning icon).

Figure 11-5. Plate Change

Pipe Diameter displays the size of the pipe diameter for the meter selected.

5. Enter the exact size of the **Orifice Diameter** (inches or millimeters) of the new plate.
6. Click **Apply** to record the change creating a record in the Event Log and restart the flow calculation using the new orifice size data.
7. Click **OK**.

SECTION 12 – DISPLAYS, DIAGNOSTICS, AND MONITORING

This section describes the various methods in ROCLINK 800 software to monitor and run diagnostics on the ROC or FloBoss in your application. The user can configure the LCD on a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407 unit for routine monitoring, print a copy of the configuration to check for error in the configuration file, view a Meter Run Values screen to check parameter values for the meter, view an I/O Monitor screen to check I/O and other operations, view the Pulse Interface Module Data screen to monitor the Pulse Interface Module of a FloBoss 104, or create a custom display to monitor routine or user program operations.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
12.1 Print Configuration	12-2
12.2 I/O Monitor	12-3
12.3 LCD Display Configuration (ROC300-Series).....	12-5
12.4 LCD User List (FloBoss 100-Series and FloBoss 407)	12-6
12.5 Meter Run Values	12-7
12.6 Custom Displays	12-9
12.7 Keypad Display Editor Configuration	12-16

12.1 Print Configuration

The Print Configuration option allows you to specify the Point Types that you desire to Print.

1. Select File > **Print Configuration**.
2. Select the **Point Types** you desire to print. You may either use the Select All or Deselect All buttons for multiple Point Types or select/deselect individual Point Types by clicking with the mouse on the Point Type in the left hand column and selecting specific Parameters in the right hand column.

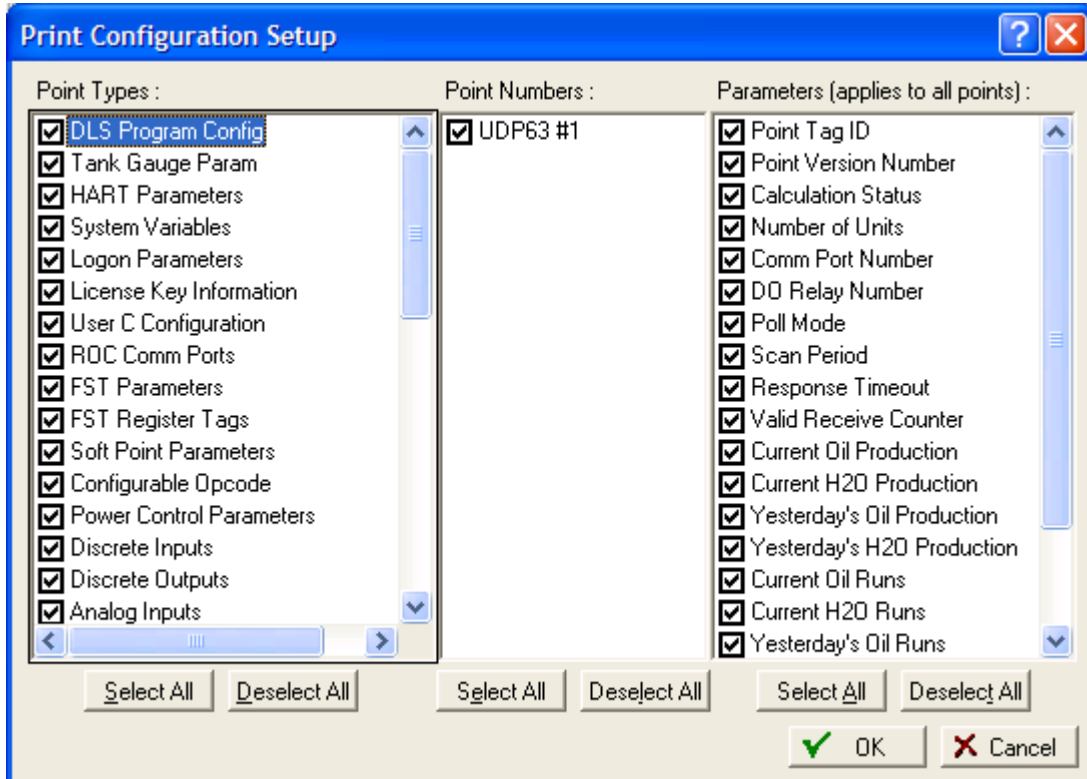


Figure 12-1. Print Configuration

3. Click **OK**. Wait for the information to preview on the screen.
4. When the Print Preview screen appears, you may choose one of the following buttons:
 - ◆ Print to send to a local printer.
 - ◆ PDF to create a .pdf (Portable Document File).
 - ◆ Excel to create an .xls spreadsheet file.
 - ◆ RTF to create an .rtf (Rich Text Format) file.
 - ◆ TXT to create a .txt text file.
 - ◆ HTML to create an .htm Internet browser file. (ROC800-Series)

The Device Group, Device Address, Station Name, Field, and Value information displays in the Print Configuration results window.

12.2 I/O Monitor

Select View > **I/O Monitor**. Use I/O Monitor to view all installed and active I/O points, MVS values, and flow calculations that provide information configured in the ROC or FloBoss and its operating environment.

Select the checkboxes that you desire to monitor.

- ◆ Select All – Selects all checkboxes.
- ◆ Deselect All – Deselects all checkboxes.

After selecting the monitor functions and clicking **OK**, a screen appears that shows the requested point information, such as field I/O values or calculated flow values. These on-screen values are automatically updated by ROCLINK 800 software.

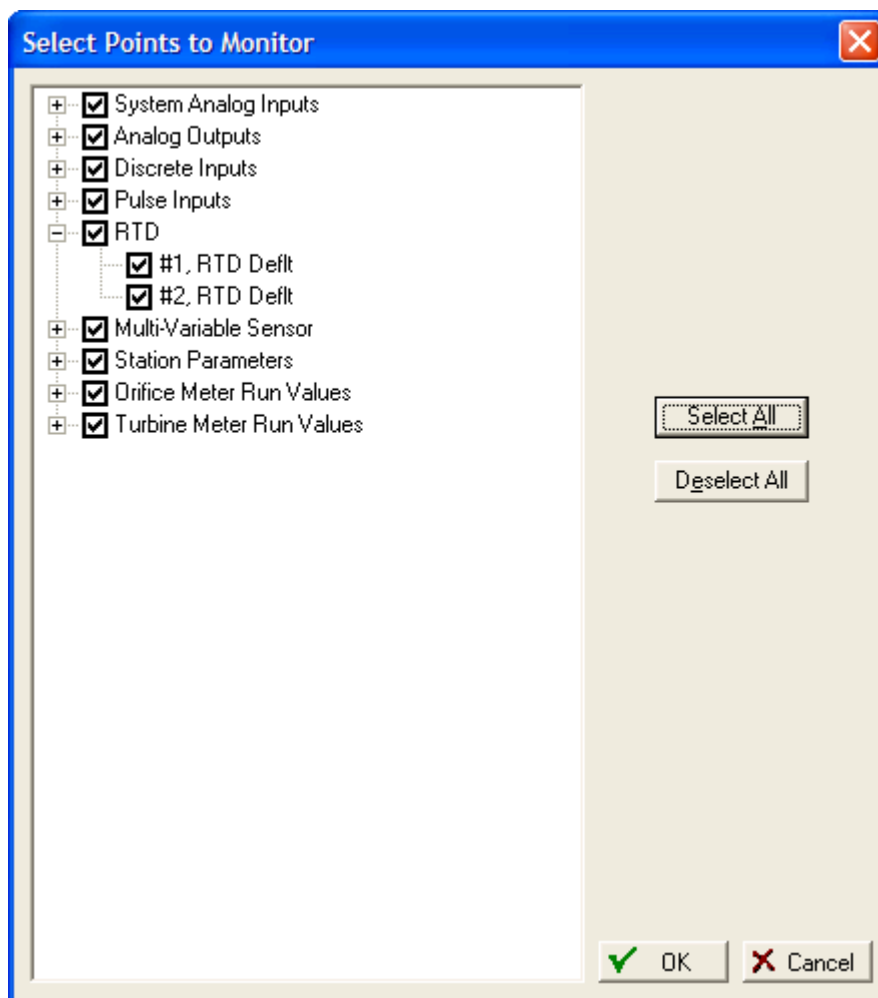


Figure 12-2. I/O Monitor

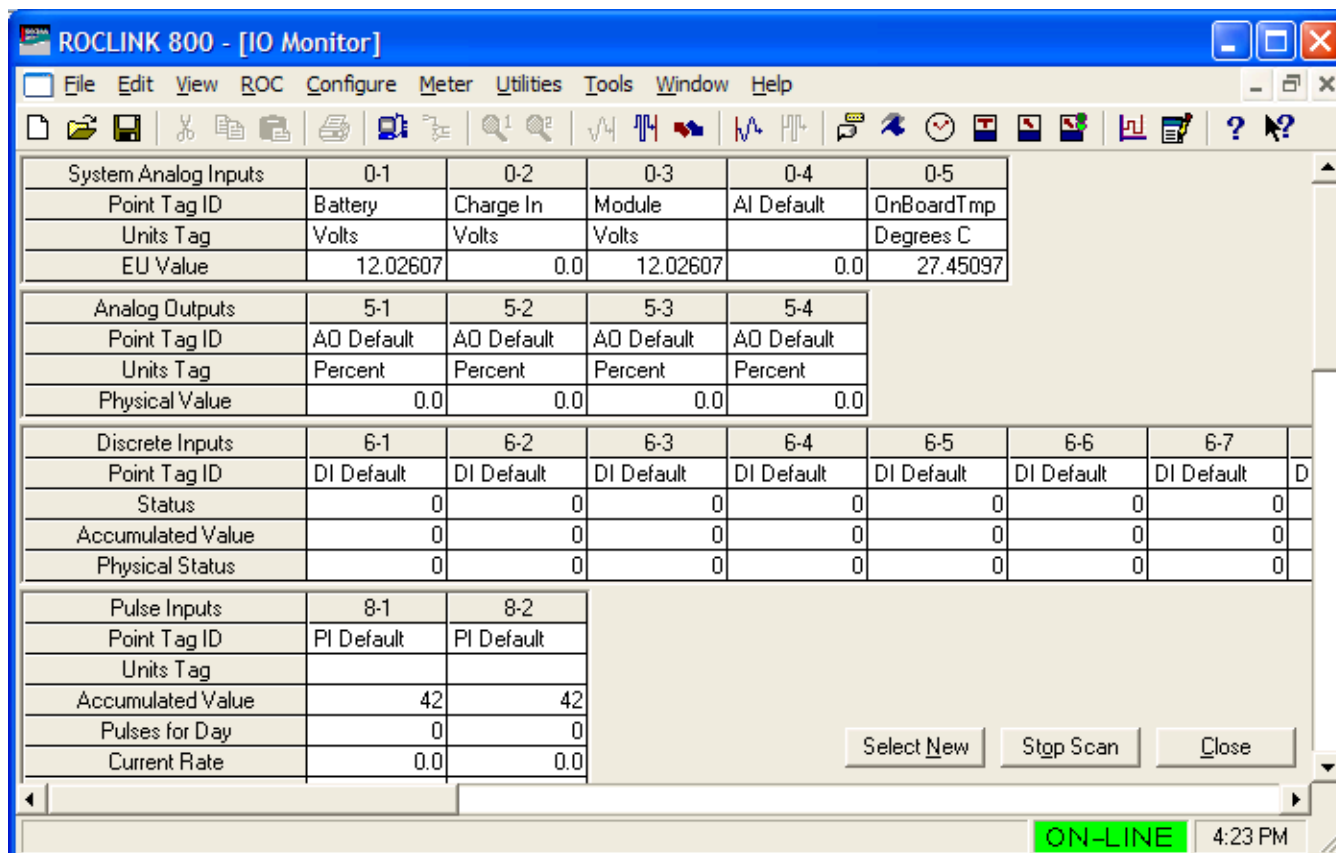


Figure 12-3. I/O Monitor Values

12.3 LCD Display Configuration (ROC300-Series)

Select Configure > **LCD**. The LCD Display Configuration is used to configure the LCD for a ROC300-Series unit with a FlashPAC that has an optional Local Display Panel (LDP) connected to it. The configured parameters may also be changed from the LCD.

When setting up a LCD point, only the top three lines of the display area are configurable. The bottom line is reserved for the function key definition. The first ten characters (columns) of each line are used for text identifiers of the data contained on the rest of the line. The specified data displays, starting at character position (column 12 in the format “n.nn”).

As many as eight displays can be configured to display a variety of function and database parameters.

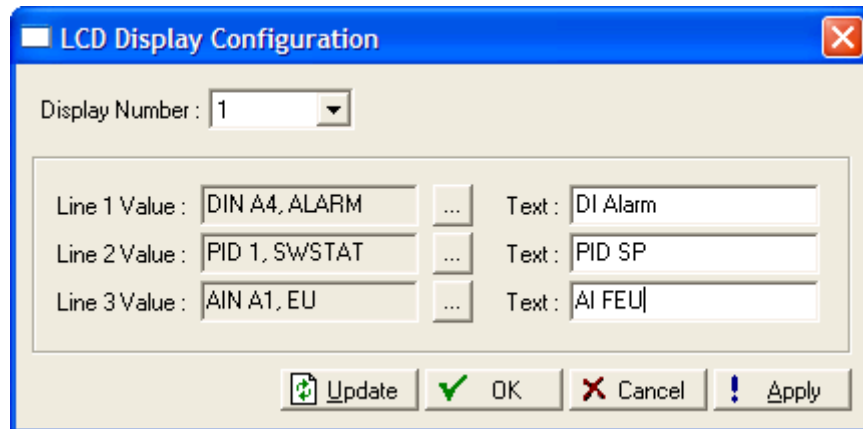


Figure 12-4. LCD Display Configuration (ROC300-Series)

1. Select Configure > **LCD** and select the **Display Number**.
2. Click on the **Line Value** TLP button. Select the parameter for the Value field. Because text characters cannot display in the Value field, select only parameters that return a numeric value.
3. Enter the **Text** (up to ten characters) to appear on the Local Display Panel. The Text should describe the Value selected for this line.

12.4 LCD User List (FloBoss 100-Series and FloBoss 407)

LCD User List Setup allows you to assign up to 16 parameters for viewing on the optional FloBoss display, which shows each parameter for several seconds before continuing on to the next parameter in the sequence.

❖ **Note:** This function is not available for the ROC800-Series.

1. Select Configure > **LCD User List**.

	Text	Device Parameter		Text	Device Parameter
1	METER	AGANNEW 1, CUR DP	9		Undefined
2	PRESS	AGANNEW 1, CUR SP	10		Undefined
3	TEMP	AGANNEW 1, CUR TP	11		Undefined
4	FLOW	FLWNEW 1, FLOWDY	12		Undefined
5	ENGY	FLWNEW 1, ENGDAY	13		Undefined
6	AI ALM	AIN A1, ALARM	14		Undefined
7		Undefined	15		Undefined
8		Undefined	16		Undefined

Update OK Cancel Apply

Figure 12-5. LCD User List

2. Select the **LCD User List Number** that you desire to configure.
3. Enter the **Text** to describe the Parameter to be viewed on the LCD. The description has a 10-character limit. Only 1 through 5 display on a FloBoss 100-Series unit.
4. Select the **Device Parameter** that you desire to view on the LCD. “Undefined” indicates that no parameter has been specified. The Device Parameter must be numeric only. For example, System Variables > SYS 1 > Station Name is not supported.
5. When using a ROC300-Series unit, select the **Line Value** you desire to view on the LCD. “Undefined” indicates that no parameter has been specified.

12.5 Meter Run Values

The Meter Run Values screens display the values from the orifice or turbine meter upon update. These may be used for diagnostics or monitoring.

For the ROC800-Series, select either Meter > Values > **Orifice** or Meter > Values > **Turbine**.

For the FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407, select Meter > **Values**.

Orifice Meter Run Values

Orifice Meter
 Run: 1 - Orifice 1 Tag: Orifice 1
 Description:
 Differential Pressure: 0.0 InH2O
 Static Pressure: 0.0 PSI
 Temperature: 0.0 Deg F

Current Values

Flow Rate		Energy Rate		Mass Rate	
0.0	CF/hour	0.0	BTU/hour	0.0	Lb/hour
0.0	MCF/day	0.0	MMBTU/day	0.0	Mlb/day

Accumulation

	MCF	MMBTU	Minutes	Mass
Today :	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Yesterday :	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Month :	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Prev Month :	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Accumulated :	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0

Factors

hwPf :	0.0	Fpb :	1.0
CdFT :	0.6	Ftb :	1.0
Ev :	1.031575	Multiplier :	0.0
Y :	1.0	Fpwl :	1.0
Zf1 :	1.0	Reynolds :	0.0
Upstream Static Pressure :	0.0	PSIA	
Density :	0.0	Lb/Cf	
Orifice Diameter :	3.997484	inches	
Pipe Diameter :	8.067597	inches	
Beta :	0.4954987		

Autg Scan Update Cancel

Figure 12-6. Meter Run Values Example (ROC800-Series – Orifice)

Turbine Meter Run Values

Turbine Meter
 Run: **1 - Turbine 1** Tag: **Turbine 1**
 Description:

Mass Flow: 0.0 Lb/hour
 Static Pressure: 0.0 PSI
 Temperature: 0.0 Deg F

Current Values

Flow Rate		Energy Rate		Mass Rate	
<input type="text"/> 0.0	CF/hour	<input type="text"/> 0.0	BTU/hour	<input type="text"/> 0.0	Lb/hour
<input type="text"/> 0.0	MCF/day	<input type="text"/> 0.0	MMBTU/day	<input type="text"/> 0.0	Mlb/day

Accumulation

	Uncorrected	MCF	MMBTU	Minutes	Mass
Today :	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0
Yesterday :	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0
Month :	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0
Prev Month :	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0
Accumulated :	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0	<input type="text"/> 0.0

Factors

Zf1 : 1.0
 Fpwl : 1.0
 Density : 0.0 Lb/Cf
 Pressure Multiplier : 0.0
 Temperature Multiplier : 1.130528
 Compressibility Multiplier : 0.9979234
 Multiplier Value : 0.0
 Pulses Accumulated : 0

Auto Scan

Figure 12-7. Meter Run Values Example (ROC800-Series – Turbine)

Select the number of the Meter **Run** that you wish to monitor. You can verify the choice in the meter **Tag** and **Description** fields. This information was entered in the meter configuration screen.

The current values of the **Differential Pressure** (orifice), **Uncorrected Volume** (turbine), **Static Pressure**, and **Temperature** for the meter selected will display.

Current Values displays the current **Flow Rate**, **Energy Rate**, and **Mass Rate**.

Accumulation displays accumulated flow, energy, flowing minute, and mass values.

Factors displays current status of calculated and entered parameters of the meter. These values are calculated by the firmware.

12.6 Custom Displays

Select View > **Display**. The custom display option in ROCLINK 800 software allows you to create customized PC displays or load a display from a disk file. You can add fields to monitor flow, I/O points, and other TLPs.

The display can incorporate “live” data, as well as images and other information you may wish to convey. One use of custom displays is to graphically represent the application that a ROC or FloBoss is monitoring and controlling. A second use is to monitor the ROC or FloBoss and to allow the user to change commonly used parameters from a single screen.

Each Custom Display has parameters specific to the entire Display that you are creating. By default, the Object Properties box displays at the right of the screen in a pop-up window.

Drag and drop the menu Option buttons from the tool button bar to the Custom Display screen and set the associated parameters. Each Option has parameters associated with it depending on the type of option you have selected and you can customize the parameters in the Object Properties box.

- ❖ **Note:** Custom Displays are not compatible between ROCLINK for Windows and ROCLINK 800 Configuration Software.

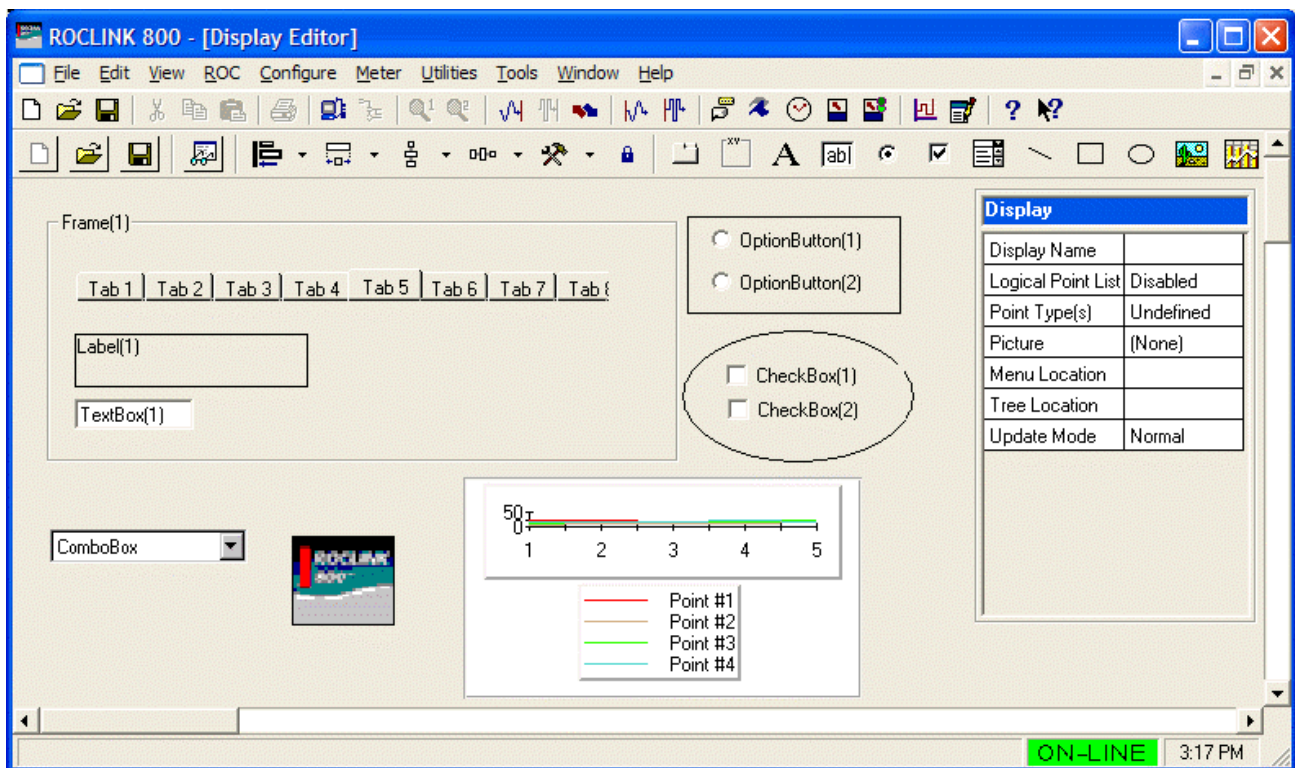


Figure 12-8. Display Editor

12.6.1 Custom Displays – New Display

To create a new display:

1. Select View > Display > **New**. The Display editor will open.
2. Specify the Custom Display properties:
 - ◆ **Display Name** – Enter text describing the entire display.
 - ◆ **Logical Point List** – If Disabled, only one iteration (logical) of the display is created. When Enabled, multiple logicals of the display are created. The number of logicals is based on the number of logicals in the first point selected in the Point Type(s) field.
 - ◆ **Point Type List** – When a Logical Point List is Enabled, select the Point Type whose logical will track the iteration of the display.
 - ◆ **Picture** – Select a graphic to be used for the background of the display.

Advanced Features

- ◆ **Menu Location** – Replace, Rename, or Hide the menu selection in the ROCLINK 800 menu. This applies only to displays that are resident in the ROC or FloBoss and not for displays on disk.
 - ◆ **Hide** – Hide a menu selection in the Meter, View, or ROC menu.
Syntax – H:menuname.submenuname
Example – H:Meter.Plate Change
 - ◆ **Replace** – Replace a current screen in the Meter menu with the Custom Display.
Syntax – R:menuname.submenuname
Example – R:Meter.Setup
 - ◆ **Rename** – Replace a current screen with the Custom Display and rename the menu selection.
Syntax – N:menuname.submenuname:newsubmenuname
Example – N:Meter.Calibration:Coriolis Cal
 - ❖ **Note:** To Hide, Replace, or Rename multiple features, separate features with a comma.
Example – N:Meter.Calibration:Coriolis Cal, N:Meter.Calibration:Central Cal
 - ◆ **Tree Location** – Currently unavailable.
 - ◆ **Update Mode** – Select Normal for the display to remain in the current state when displayed. Select Auto Scan to allow the display to automatically update when viewed.
3. Drag and drop **Objects** from the toolbar to the Custom Display. For details on the elements, refer to Custom Display – Objects.

Create as many Objects as you desire. Objects may be placed anywhere on the Display Editor screen. Certain Option should be placed within a Frame, such as for Option Buttons or Check Boxes to logically group them with a label so the user knows what the Option means.
 4. For each Object, enter or select the desired data in the **Object Properties** box. The items in the Object Properties box depend on the Object you have added. You may edit the Object Properties of each Object at any time.

5. Move and re-shape Objects within the display. To **modify Object placement or shape**:

- ◆ Click and drag on the control squares to change the size of the Object.
- ◆ Press the <Shift + Arrow Keys> to change the size of the Object or <Shift + Alt + Arrow Keys> for smaller changes.
- ◆ Press the <Ctrl + Arrow Keys> to move the Object to the desired position or <Ctrl + Alt + Arrow Keys> for smaller moves.
- ◆ From the Icon bar, select Align lefts to align all selected Objects to the furthest left point in the group.
- ◆ From the Icon bar, select Size to widest to change the width of all selected Objects to the width of the widest element.
- ◆ From the Icon bar, select Make Vertical Spacing Equal to evenly adjust the vertical spacing between all the selected Objects.
- ◆ From the Icon bar, select Make Horizontal Spacing Equal to evenly adjust the horizontal spacing between all the selected Objects.

6. Objects can be removed, by selecting the Object and pressing the <Delete> key.

7. Click the **Test** button to verify that the Custom Display works correctly.

8. Click the **Save Display to File** button.

12.6.2 Custom Displays – Objects

Select View > **Display**. Objects can be added in one of two ways.

- ◆ Select an Object from the icon bar and drag it to the area of the display where you want the display Object to appear.
- ◆ Place the cursor where you want the display Object to appear. Right-click on the mouse, and select an Object.

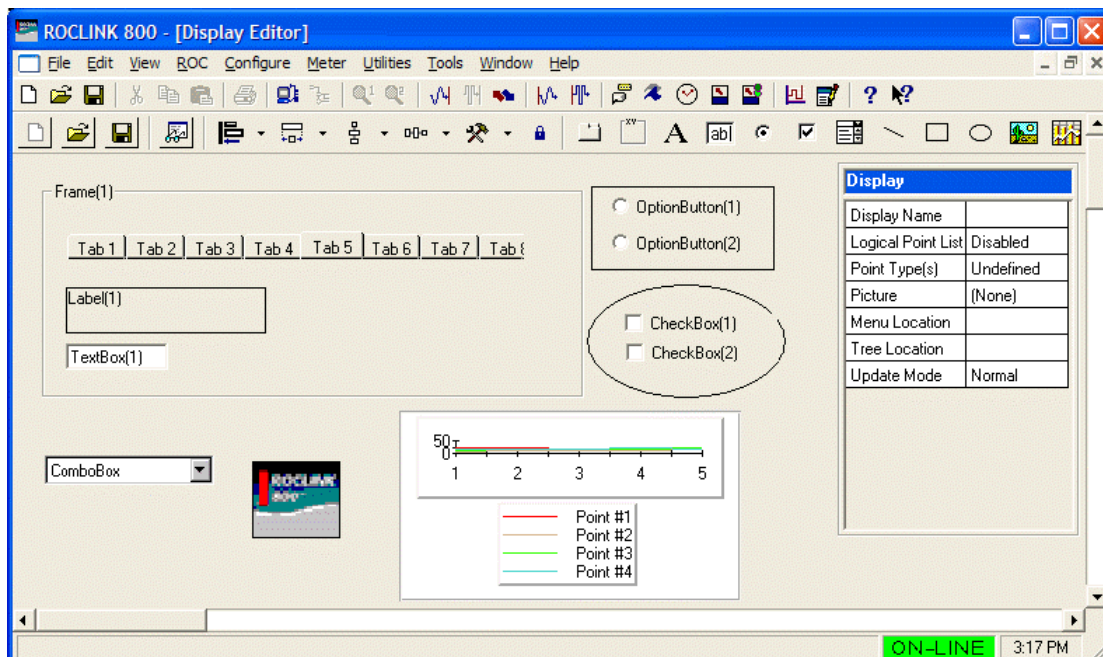


Figure 12-9. Display Editor Objects

The Objects selections are:

- ◆ **Tab Control** – Separate a large number of elements with a Tab to group user selections onto the appropriate tab. Once a Tab is in place, drag and drop Objects onto the Tab.
- ◆ **Add Frame** – Place like Objects within a Frame to group user selections. Once a Frame is in place, drag and drop Objects onto the Frame.
- ◆ **Add Label** – Use labels to mark other Objects.
- ◆ **Add Text Box** – Creates data entry fields.
- ◆ **Add Check Box** – Creates boxes for multiple selections.
- ◆ **Add Option Button** – Create radio buttons to limit input to a single selection.
- ◆ **Add Combo Box** – Create a list of options that limit input to a single selection.
- ◆ **Add Line** – Use lines to mark borders between Objects.
- ◆ **Add Rectangle** – Use rectangles to mark borders between Objects.
- ◆ **Add Oval** – Use ovals to mark borders between Objects.
- ◆ **Add Picture** – Add an image from a file.
- ◆ **Add Chart** – Create a chart to represent data graphically.
- ◆ **Add Pushbutton** – Create a button to write data to the ROC or FloBoss.

12.6.3 Custom Displays – Object Properties

Select View > **Display**. The items in the Object Properties box depend on the Object you have added. You may edit the Object Properties of each Object at any time.

The Object Properties box allows you to:

- ◆ Enter a **Caption** for the item. This applies to tabs, frames, labels, option buttons, and check boxes. When used in tabs, the captions will appear at the top tab edge.
- ◆ Enter the number of **Tabs** to appear in this tabs element. The minimum is 1, and maximum is 8.
- ◆ Enter the **Text** you desire to appear in a Text box Object.
- ◆ Enter a **Header** to run at the top of the chart. This applies only to charts.
- ◆ Select a **TLP** whose value will show in the display. This applies to labels, text boxes, option buttons, checkboxes, combo boxes, and charts.
- ◆ Enable the **Allow Data Entry**. This creates a R/W field that will allow the user to write parameters/values to the ROC or FloBoss. This applies to frames, text boxes, option buttons, checkboxes, and combo boxes.
- ◆ If you select **Expression**, refer to Adding an Expression to a Display Element.
- ◆ Select the **Alignment** of text: left, right and center. This applies only to labels.
- ◆ Enter a **Mask Value**. The default is 255. This applies to option buttons and checkboxes.
- ◆ Select a **Picture** to add to your Custom Display.
- ◆ Enter a value in the **Selected When =** field. It allows you to create a radio button that will be selected when a specified value for that specific TLP is read from the ROC or FloBoss. This applies only to Option radio buttons.

- ◆ Enter a value in the **Checked When =** field. It allows you to create a Check Box that will be selected when a specified value for that specific TLP is read from the ROC or FloBoss. This applies only to Check Box buttons.
- ◆ Select the **Action** to be performed by the **Pushbutton**.
- ◆ Enter the **Value** to be written when the **Pushbutton** is clicked.
- ◆ Click the button in the **Item List** field to enter Item Values and List Items. This applies only to combo boxes.
- ◆ Enter a **Line Width** to increase or decrease the thickness of the line.
- ◆ Select the **Color**. Click on the button in the Color field to open a color palette. This applies to lines, rectangles, and ovals.
- ◆ Enable **Visible** when the element is to appear to the user in the final version of the display. This applies to frames, labels, text boxes, option buttons, checkboxes, combo boxes, and pictures. If you select Expression, refer to Adding an Expression to a Display Element.
- ◆ Set the **Tab Order** of this element after all objects have been created. When the user is navigating the display, the Tab key on their PC follows the order entered. This applies to frames, labels, text boxes, option buttons, check boxes, and combo boxes.

12.6.4 Editing a Custom Display From a File

Select View > Display > **From File**. The From File option reads a display from a previously saved **.DSP** file, translates the data fields, and updates the data.

1. Select View > Display > **From File**.
2. Select the display **File name**. Display files have the .DSP extension.
3. Click **Open**.
4. Click **Update** to update data for the existing display elements.
5. Click **Edit** to add, edit or remove elements from the display. Follow the element steps in New Display. Be sure to Save changes to the display after editing.

12.6.5 Adding an Expression to a Custom Display Object

Some of the Custom Display Objects allow Visual Basic Expressions to be built that will cause the display to change under specific conditions. Users creating display element expressions should have experience with Visual Basic programming.

Expressions may be added to the following elements: tab, label, text box, option button, pushbutton, checkbox, combo box, line, circle, square, and image.

If the Allow Data Entry or Visible property of an element is set to Expression, click on the button with three dots in the property box. The Expression Builder screen will appear.

To create an Expression:

1. Select View > Display > **From File**.
2. Select the display **File name**. Display files have the .DSP extension.
3. Click **Open**.
4. Click **Update** to update data for the existing display elements.

5. From the three list boxes in the center of the screen, select a **category** from the left box.
6. Select a **subcategory** from the center box.
7. Select an **item** from the right box.

As you select from the list boxes, definitions of the categories and items will appear below the list boxes.

8. Click the **Add** button.

You may select items from the list boxes as many times as your expression requires.

9. From the buttons below the Expression preview pane, select the **TLP...** button to configure a specific TLP to this expression.
10. From the buttons below the Expression preview pane, select the **logical operations** that your expression requires.
11. When the expression is complete, click **Apply**.
12. Click **OK** to approve and return to the Display Editor. Saving the display file at this point is highly recommended so that you save the expression.

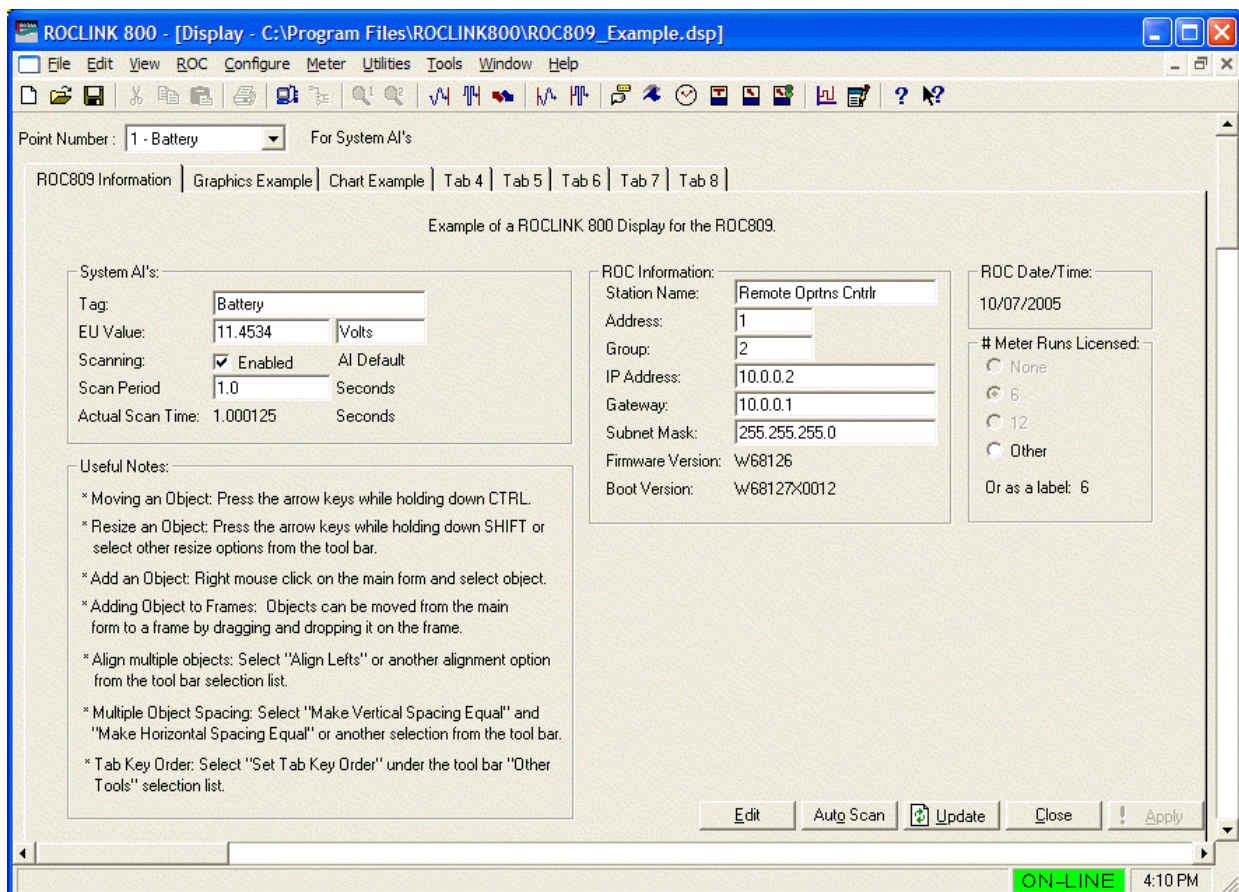


Figure 12-10. Custom Display Example

12.6.6 Display Administrator

Select View > Display > From Device > **Display Administrator** to access Custom Displays stored in the ROC800-Series unit (with firmware version 1.20 or greater). The ROC800-Series can store a maximum of 246 Displays (Custom User Displays and User Program Displays).

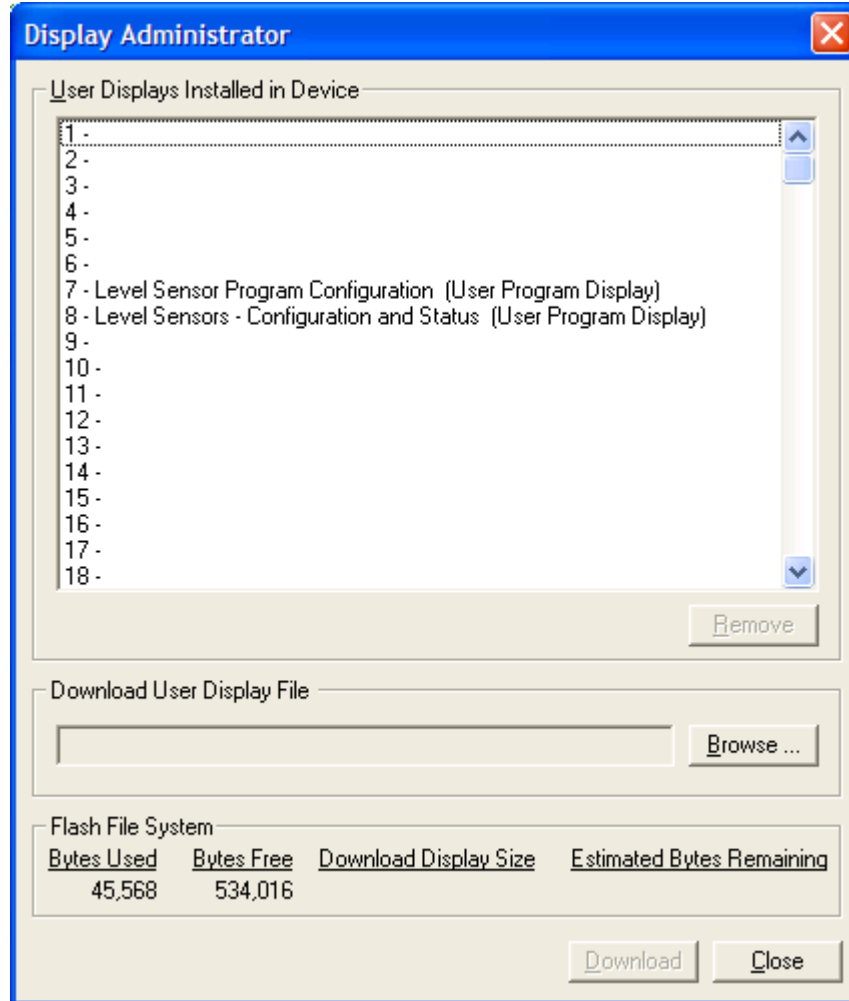


Figure 12-11. Display Administrator (ROC800-Series)

To access a display file stored in the ROC unit, select a display from the list of Custom **User Displays Installed in the ROC**.

This screen will also download user-designed displays to the ROC. To download a display file once a display has been created and saved to disk file, use the **Browse** button to search for the display file and download it.

The **Flash File System** information may be used to determine how much space is available before downloading displays.

12.7 Keypad Display Editor Configuration

Select Utilities > **Keypad Display Editor** to create and edit Keypad Display files for the ROC800-Series unit. These files may be stored on the PC or downloaded to the ROC unit. While in use on the ROC Keypad Display, the display file resides in the configuration memory of the ROC unit.

❖ **Note:** Keypad Display files have the extension .dcfg.

The Keypad Display editor is available while on-line with a ROC800-Series unit that has a ROC Keypad Display connected.

The Keypad Display is intended to display and allow interaction with TLPs in the ROC database. An understanding of TLPs is crucial to configuring a Keypad Display file. TLP refers to Point Type, Logical number (Instance), and Parameter. For example, TLP DIN 4-2, ACC is the Accumulated Value parameter of channel 2 of the Discrete Input module in slot 4. This TLP can also be expressed numerically as 101, 4-2, 6.

12.7.1 Creating a New Keypad Display File (ROC800-Series)

Display files may be created in one of two ways: by editing an existing file or by creating one in the editor. When you create a new display file in the editor, you should follow the steps below.

1. Select Utilities > **Keypad Display Editor**.

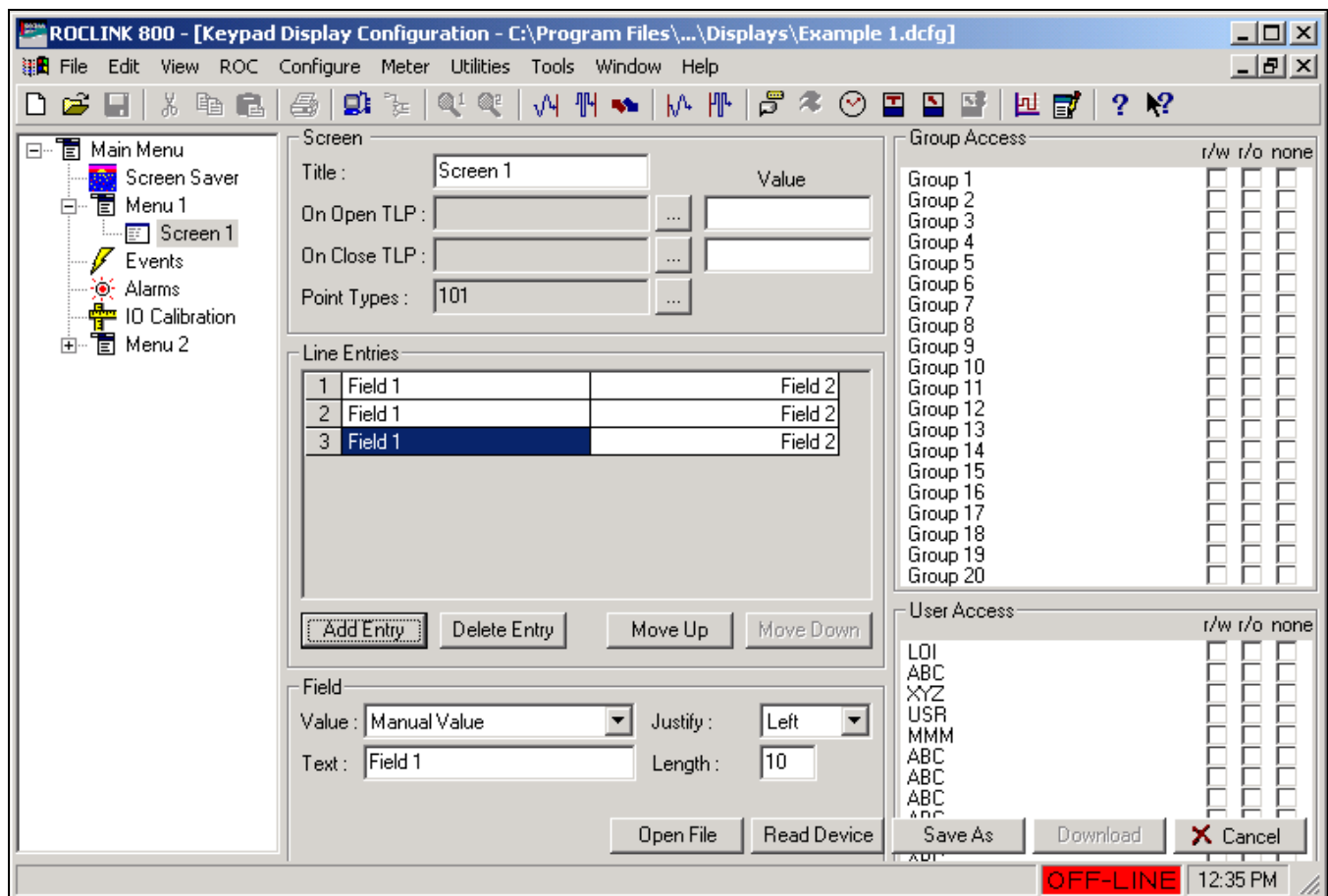


Figure 12-12. Keypad Display Editor

2. **Right-click** on the Main Menu in the Hierarchy Menu in the left pane of the editor.
3. Select **Add Menu** as many times as your display requires.

The Hierarchy Menu determines the navigation for the display. Each level in the Hierarchy Menu represents a screen with menu choices. Add menus and screens to each level in the Hierarchy Menu to suit your application.
4. **Right-click** on a menu in the Hierarchy Menu and select **Add Screen**. Then select the type of screen.
 - ◆ **User scrollable** – This screen displays and interaction with TLP names and values.
 - ◆ **Events** – This screen displays the Events log. This type of screen can only be inserted in a display file once.
 - ◆ **Alarms** – This screen displays the Alarms log. This type of screen can only be inserted in a display file once.
 - ◆ **Screen Saver** – This screen provides a scrolling list of parameters that will appear when no user is logged on. The function of the screen saver is the same, no matter where in the Hierarchy Menu it is placed. This type of screen can only be inserted in a display file once.
 - ◆ **Calibration** – This screen allows the user to perform a deadweight calibration of the I/O channels for which calibration is appropriate. This type of screen can only be inserted in a display file once.
5. When the required number of menus and screens have been added, it is good practice to **save** the file to the PC. Use the Save As button in the right pane of the editor. ROC Keypad Display files save with the extension .dcfg. A display file be saved in a.800 configuration file using the Download button (on-line) or the Save button (off-line).
6. The screens will now require editing to select TLPs and assign security. Refer to the steps in Editing a Display File. You will save the file again and download it to the ROC unit after editing.

12.7.2 Update Keypad Display Firmware (ROC800-Series)

The firmware in the Keypad Display can be updated while connected by a serial or TCP/IP (Ethernet) communications connection.

1. The updated firmware files are typically supplied on in a .zip file. It is recommended that you create a backup copy of the firmware update file after you unzip the file.
2. Read the **README** text file included with the firmware update.
3. Select Utilities > **Update Firmware** and select the Keypad Display tab.
4. Click the **Browse** button and navigate to the new firmware file on the PC.
5. Once the file is found, click the **Start** button. The update may take a while, do not interrupt the update while it is in progress.
6. Click the **OK** button when the Firmware Update Completed dialog box appears.

12.7.3 Editing a Keypad Display File

You may edit an existing Keypad Display file using the Keypad Display Editor. A default file (typically named display_config.dcfg) may be used in its current state or customized to suit your application. The default file is available with ROCLINK 800 software (version 1.50 or greater). To modify a display file:

1. Select Utilities > **Keypad Display Editor**.
2. Click the **Read Device** button in the right pane of the editor (if file is stored in the ROC unit) or the **Open File** button (if file is saved on the PC) to open the Display.
3. Rename menus by right clicking on the menu title in Hierarchy Menu and selecting **Rename**.
4. Rename **User Scrollable** screens and the **Screen Saver** by clicking once on the screen name in the Hierarchy Menu and typing the new Title that will appear both in the editor and on the ROC Keypad Display screen.
5. Edit the **TLPs**, display parameters, and security settings for the User Scrollable screens.
6. Enter the **Title** for this configuration file. Use of all uppercase letters is recommended.
7. When the Keypad Display is in use (logged on), the value listed for On Open TLP will be written to the TLP selected here. When the Keypad Display is no longer in use (logged off), the value listed for On Close TLP will be written to the TLP selected here.
8. You can scroll through the logical instances of the point types assigned in the **Point Types** field.
9. **Line Entries** can be added, deleted, or moved. Each line represents one line on the display. Each field of the entry is configured separately. However, a command to add, move, or delete the entry will add, move or delete the entire line.
10. Once an entry has been created, the parameters in the **Field** section become available, if appropriate to that entry.
11. If the field highlighted in the entry is to have manually entered text or numbers, select a **Value of Manual Value**. If the field is to have a parameter name in full, select **Parameter Name**. If the field is to have an abbreviation of the Parameter Name, select **Parameter Abbreviation**. If the field is to have the value of the parameter, select **Parameter Value**.
12. If the Value selected was Manual Value, then enter the text or number in the **Text** field.
13. If the Value selected was Parameter Name, Parameter Abbreviation, or Parameter Value, then select the **TLP** to be displayed.
14. Select **Read-Only** if the TLP selected is to be a display only on the Keypad Display. If not selected, the TLP will be Read-Write if the keypad user has Read-write privileges to TLPs in that access group. Note that only one field in an entry line can be R/W.
15. For the Line Entry highlighted, Justify determines whether the text or numbers in the entry field will be **right or left justified**. **Length** determines the maximum length of the text or numbers in the entry field.
16. In some circumstances, when the Value selected was Parameter Value, the user will be allowed to provide text to go before or after the value. **Leading** and **Trailing Text** will allow units of measurement or some other text to appear on the screen.
17. In some circumstances, when the Value selected was Parameter Value, the user will be allowed to specify whether the **Data Format** will be the default that has a precision of two characters or another manually entered precision.

18. Edit the security settings for the **Events**, **Alarms**, and **Calibration** screens. The checkboxes will determine the type of access (**Read/Write** or **Read/Only**) and types of data available for each user.
19. The **Group Access** checkboxes determine the type of access (Read/Write or Read/Only) and types of data available for each user.
20. The **User Access** checkboxes determine the type of access (Read/Write or Read/Only) and types of data available for each user.
21. If a **Screen Saver** is appropriate to your application, edit the screen saver TLPs and display parameters. The parameter definitions are given in Step 5.
22. Once you have completed your modifications to the display file, it is good practice to save it to the PC. Click the **Save As** button and save it with a new name or write over an existing file. ROC Keypad Display files have the extension .dcfg. The display files are also saved in the .800 configuration file.
23. Once the file has been saved, download it to the ROC unit by clicking the **Download** button. Be sure to let the file download without interruption. Before downloading the file, verify that the ROC comm port has been assigned to LCD (Comm Port Owner field on ROC > Comm Ports).

12.7.4 Keypad Display Security (ROC800-Series)

Select Utilities > **Keypad Display Editor**. Security is provided by the Keypad Display to control user access to information. Users are placed in “groups” having an assigned access level. Within each group, individuals can be assigned an additional level of access that overrides the group access level. Display screens can be customized to allow users to view and edit parameters, view parameters only, or have no display access based on their group or individual access level. Typically, group or individual access is assigned based on job function. Each user within a group assumes the group’s access level. However, an individual user can be granted or denied access to a specific display based on their individual access level.

For example, consider John, Joe, and Pat to be members of a “Technicians” group that is allowed to view and edit the PID display. Joe can be prevented from changing the set point of a PID loop if he is assigned individual access that restricts him to viewing only. The rest of the group members are unaffected by Joe’s individual restriction.

If a user is assigned to more than one group, each with different access levels, the user assumes the access level of the highest group for all of their assigned groups.

For example, if John is in the Technician group, which is given access to edit and view, and he is also assigned to the Meter Setup group, which only has view access, he automatically has edit access in the Meter Setup group because of his membership in the Technician group. However, if he is assigned individual access, he may be restricted to viewing only in the Meter Setup group.

- ❖ **Note:** The User Access and Group Access lists are established on the Configure > ROC Security screen. For more information on security in the ROC unit, refer to Device Security.

The Group Access checkboxes determine the type of access (Read/Write or Read/Only) and types of data available for each user.

The User Access checkboxes determine the type of access (Read/Write or Read/Only) and types of data available for each user.

APPENDIX A – FST EDITOR

A.1 FST Editor

This section describes the Function Sequence Table functionality in ROCLINK 800.

In this Chapter

Section	Page
A.1 FST Editor.....	A-1
A.2 Function Sequence Table Introduction	A-1
A.3 FST Registers.....	A-3
A.4 FST Editor.....	A-5
A.5 Working with FSTs.....	A-10
A.6 Monitor Mode	A-13
A.7 FST Command Library	A-16

A.2 Function Sequence Table Introduction

The Function Sequence Table (FST) capability is provided as an instruction list programming language that allows you to define and perform a set of specific actions when a set of conditions exists. FSTs can be written specifically for applications that require special control features, such as logic sequencing capability. For example, you can use an FST for emergency shutdown control when a parameter exceeds a low or high limit or in any application that requires logic sequencing capability. FSTs are programmed and configured using the FST Editor, which is embedded in the ROCLINK 800 configuration software.

An FST defines the Input-to-Output (I/O) relationships in the Remote Operations Controller (ROC) or FloBoss through a set of user-selected instructions, called Functions. Functions, which define the specific actions to be performed, are executed in their specified sequence. The Functions are normally executed in top-to-bottom order; however, the sequence may be altered by certain decision-making functions. Functions consist of a Command, Argument, and optional Label.

An FST is built from a library of Commands that provide mathematical and logical operations, database access operations, historical commands, testing, and branching operations, and control-related operations.

The Devices, Software, and FST Functionality table displays the ROC and FloBoss devices and their FST capabilities.

Each FST may consist of as many functions as can fit into the memory reserved for the FSTs. Reserved memory is pre-determined by the ROC or FloBoss with a set amount of Steps allocated for each FST. The byte size of an FST displays in the Code Size field on the FST Registers > Advanced tab.

Each individual FST in a **ROC800-Series** unit executes up to Steps in any given 100 mSec interval. However, it does not guarantee that 10 instructions will execute for a given FST within a 100 mSec interval. Factors that affect this include processor load (during the interval), instruction, and argument type (constant or value from other tasks, such as Meter Runs). When six FSTs are running, the maximum number of steps executed would be 60.

Each FST in a **FloBoss 100-Series** unit executes a configurable number of instructions per second. By default, the FST executes 20 Steps per execution period. If an FST has 30 sequential Steps, the first 20 Steps execute during the current execution period and remaining 10 Steps execute during the next execution period. To configure the number of Steps executed, select ROC > Information. In the Device Information screen, enter a value between 1 and 100 in the FST Execution Instructions per Cycle field and click Apply. Cycle is the execution period, which is 1 second in a FloBoss 100-Series.

The new number of Steps to execute takes effect the next execution period. Restart is not required.

Each FST in a **FloBoss 407** and **ROC300-Series** unit executes as many Steps of FST code as processor free time allows every 100 mSec. When a time slice completes, another task is given the opportunity to execute. If the FST task does not complete in the allotted time, the FST task uses whatever time is left over from other tasks to attempt to complete the sequence of functions. If the FST task executes in less than the time allotted, the remaining time can be used by the operating system to perform other tasks.

Because of the potential loading increase on the system, it is recommended that you monitor the Master Processor Unit (MPU) loading to ensure that the FST is not consuming too much of the MPU's resources.

- ❖ **Note:** It is good practice to insert WAIT (WT) commands or make sure an END command is encountered to reduce processor loading.

As the sequence of functions executes, two memory locations store **intermediate** results from one function to the next.

- ◆ One location, called the **Results Register (RR)**, stores a floating-point value referred to as the Signal Value Analog (SVA).
- ◆ The other location, called the **Compare Flag (CF)**, stores a discrete value called the Signal Value Discrete (SVD).

Depending on the Command, the Results Register (RR) and the Compare Flag (CF) may be loaded, stored, tested, modified, or left unchanged.

- ❖ **Note:** FST Registers, including the Run Flag, are always cleared upon restart; therefore, use Softpoints to load initial values for the FST.

Table A-1. Devices, Software, and FST Functionality

ROC or FloBoss	Maximum Number of FSTs	Maximum Byte Size per FST	Maximum Line Length*
FloBoss 100-Series	2	3000	300
FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series	4	8000**	300
ROC800-Series	6	3000	500

* Maximum number of Steps is a limit of the FST Editor.

** Total FST space in ROC300-series and FloBoss 407 units is 8000 bytes. Individual FST size is not limited, but the sum of all FSTs cannot exceed 8000 bytes.

A.3 FST Registers

The FST Registers screen allows you to control and View the FST operation without opening the FST Editor.

The screenshot shows the 'FST Registers' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. At the top, there are dropdowns for 'EST' (set to '1 - FST01') and a text field for 'Tag' (set to 'FST01'). Below these are two tabs: 'General' and 'Advanced'. The 'General' tab contains a 'Version' field, a 'Description' field, and a 'Status' section with radio buttons for 'Enabled' (selected) and 'Disabled', and a 'Not Running' button. Below the status section is a table of registers:

	Tag	Data		Tag	Data
R1 :	Register01	0.0	R6 :	Register06	0.0
R2 :	Register02	0.0	R7 :	Register07	0.0
R3 :	Register03	0.0	R8 :	Register08	0.0
R4 :	Register04	0.0	R9 :	Register09	0.0
R5 :	Register05	0.0	R10 :	Register10	0.0

At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure A-1. FST Registers – General (ROC800-Series)

1. Select Configure > Control > **FST Registers**.
2. Click the **Advanced** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'FST Registers' dialog box with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The 'EST' dropdown is still '1 - FST01' and the 'Tag' is 'FST01'. The 'Advanced' tab contains several configuration fields:

- Four 'Timer' fields (Timer #1 to #4) and four 'Misc' fields (Misc #1 to #4), all set to 0.
- Two 'Msg' fields (Msg #1 and #2) and two 'Msg Data' fields (Msg Data #1 and #2), all set to 0.0.
- An 'Execution Delay' field set to 0 Secs.
- A 'Result Register' field set to 0.0.
- A 'Compare Flag' field set to 0.
- A 'Code Size' field set to 0 Bytes.
- A 'Code Pointer' field set to 0.

At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Update', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Figure A-2. FST Registers – Advanced (ROC800-Series)

Use the **FST** drop-down list box to select the FST.

Enter the **FST Tag** as a 10-character name identifying the FST Register point (optional).

The **Version** number and **Description** of the FST displays entered when the FST is downloaded.

FST Status shows the current state and allows for the starting and stopping of the FST. This turns the associated FST on or off by selecting or deselecting the correct radio button and clicking Apply.

Registers R1 to R10 may be used to store floating-point values. The ROC or FloBoss allows you to assign a Tag to each Register.

The FST Registers can store calculated or manually-entered values and can pass data from one FST to another. That is, the FST can write values to the Registers and the FST can also read the values stored in the FST Register storage points. These Registers may be read from, or written to, any FST configured for the ROC or FloBoss

The **Timer #1 to #4** are countdown timers used to signal that a certain period or time has elapsed. You set the time, and the time is then updated by the FST. These four timers, when set greater than “0,” decrement by 1 every cycle time: Cycle times are:

- ◆ FloBoss 100-Series – 1 second.
- ◆ FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series – 100 millisecond.
- ◆ ROC800 – 100 millisecond.

Set the **Misc #1 to #4** unsigned 8-bit integers (with valid decimal values of 0 to 255) that are used for global storage by the FST.

Set the **Execution Delay** between the executions of successive FST command steps. The default is 0 seconds. The minimum delay is 1 second for a FloBoss 100-Series and 0.1 for other ROC and FloBoss devices.

The **Results Register (RR)**, or Signal Value Analog (SVA), is a special-purpose register that stores the floating point result from the most current command executed.

The **Compare Flag (CF)**, or Signal Value Discrete (SVD), is a special-purpose 8-bit register that stores an integer representing the numbers 0 through 255. The Compare Flag is manipulated by the logic Commands

The **Mesg #1 and Mesg #2** is a 30-character field for storing a message that will display in the FST Message area. **Msg Data #1** and **Msg Data #2** display any values associated with the messages.

The **Code Size Bytes** is the number of bytes used by the FST. The Code Size is read-only device-specific parameter. Refer to the Devices, Software, and FST Functionality table.

The **Code Pointer Byte** field is the display of the offset of the next function to be executed from the beginning of its memory Segment. Values are device specific. This value normally changes rapidly, unless the FST is at a Wait (WT) statement, an FST Execution Delay is used or in Trace mode. It is used for debugging purposes.

❖ **Note:** Use FST Monitor within the FST Editor to monitor these operations.

A.4 FST Editor

Using the FST Editor, FSTs are created, compiled, debugged, and downloaded to the device. The FST Editor consists primarily of a Workspace and menus, similar in structure to spreadsheet programs. The FST Editor also allows monitoring and tracing of an FST while it is running.



Select Utilities > **FST Editor** or click the FST Editor button to launch the FST Editor.

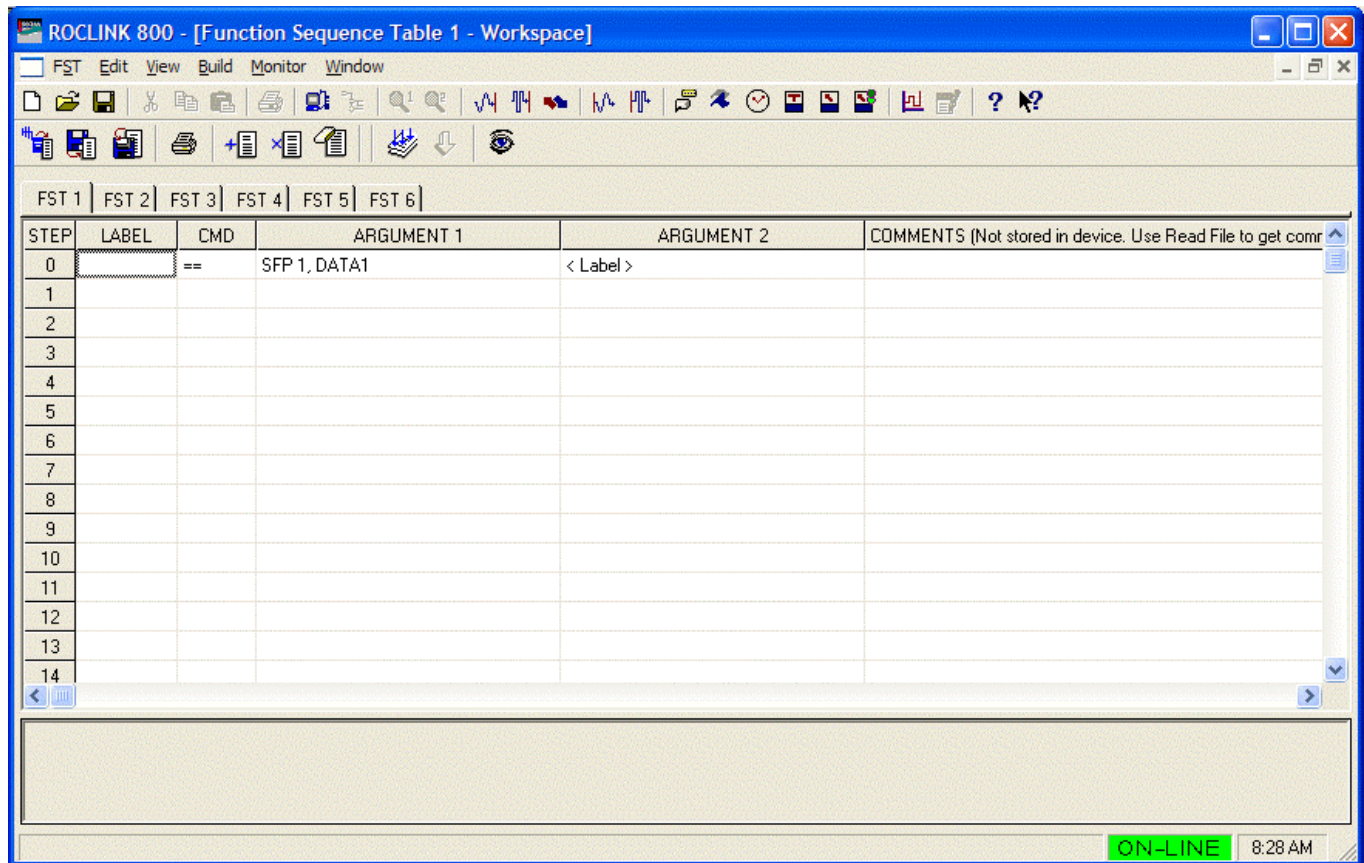


Figure A-3. FST Editor

The FST Editor provides a Workspace, menus, and buttons for creating a Function Sequence Table. The Title Bar at the top of the Workspace window identifies the FST being created or edited.

The Workspace area is a table, divided into rows and columns with the intersection called a Cell. You can use <Tab> and the arrow keys to move between cells, or you can go directly to a cell by clicking it with the mouse. Cells are denoted by a box containing the cursor and a gray line around the cell.

The Header Line of the Workspace contains the function structure column names. The STEP column contains the numbers that correspond to the number of rows or Steps available in the Workspace.

The LABEL, CMD, ARGUMENT1, and ARGUMENT2 columns correspond to the structure of the functions. The Comment column allows the user to insert comments about the FST. The comments will not be downloaded (sent) to the ROC or FloBoss unit, and they are only included in the FST when it is saved to a file.

Table A-2. Workspace and Output Keystrokes

Key	Action
→	Move cursor to the right cell or character.
←	Move cursor to the left cell or character.
↑	Move cursor to the cell above it.
↓	Move cursor to the cell below it.
Backspace	Delete the previous character.
Ctrl + Home	Move cursor to top left cell of Workspace.
Ctrl + End	Move cursor to bottom right cell of Workspace.
Delete	Delete character in front of the cursor position.
End	Within a cell, move cursor to the right-most position within the cell. Within a row, move cursor to the right-most position in the row
Enter	Process saves contents of cell entry and moves to the next cell.
Esc	Undo entry and display original or prior contents of the cell.
F1	Help.
Home	Within a cell, move cursor to the left-most position within the cell. Within a row, move cursor to the left-most position within the row.
Page Down	Display next page of Workspace.
Page Up	Display previous page of Workspace.
Tab	Move to the next cell.

A.4.1 FST Function Structure

Each function consists of a STEP number, a LABEL (optional), a command (CMD), and up to two Arguments (ARGUMENT1 and ARGUMENT2).

STEP	LABEL	CMD	ARGUMENT 1	ARGUMENT 2
0				

The FST program provides the STEP numbers for each FST. You complete the other fields in the structure to build a function.

- ❖ **Note: Do not skip any Steps.** The FST program treats a blank STEP as the END of a program and will not compile correctly.

A.4.2 FST Label Field

The LABEL field allows you to uniquely identify a function and consists of up to six alphanumeric characters in any combination. A common practice is for the LABEL to identify the action being performed by the function. For example, the LABEL “PUMPON” describes a function that activates a pump.

LABELs enable branching, the ability to direct the execution to a function other than the next function in the sequence. For example, after completion of a given program STEP 0, a GO command that has a LABEL provided in ARGUMENT1 directs the program to advance to the branch identified by the LABEL and to perform the functions defined there.

STEP	LABEL	CMD	ARGUMENT 1	ARGUMENT 2
0		GO	PMPOFF	
1	PUMPON	DO	DOU 4-1	1
2	PMPOFF	DO	DOU 4-2	0

In the example above, the program is instructed to GO to the LABEL PMPOFF as established by ARGUMENT 1 in STEP 0. STEP 0 jumps to STEP 2, where the LABEL PMPOFF is located.

A.4.3 FST Command Field – CMD

The FST command (CMD) field specifies the action to be taken by a function. A drop-down list is available in each Command cell that shows the function commands and provides a brief description of how they operate on the RR, CF, and Argument values. Commands may also be typed in directly. This example shows the use of the command (CMD) GO. Refer to Command Library for a definition of each command.

STEP	LABEL	CMD	ARGUMENT 1	ARGUMENT 2
0		GO	PMPOFF	
	.			
	.			
12	PMPOFF	VAL	3	

A.4.4 FST Argument Fields – ARG

Depending on the Command, Arguments can be unused, references to parameters in the ROC or FloBoss (TLPs), numerical constants, or ASCII characters.

Once the Command has been selected, the Argument cell requires either typing a numerical constant or ASCII text or clicking the TLP button for data selection.

Depending on whether you have selected TLP as number or as text in the Tools > Options dialog box of the main ROCLINK 800 application, the TLP appears in the argument structure as the TLP numbers or a text abbreviation of the Type, Point number and Parameter. For example, the text abbreviation of the status parameter of Discrete Input module 4 channel 1 would be DIN4-1,STATUS. The Data #3 parameter for Softpoint 3 would be SFP 3,DATA3.

A.4.5 FST Comment Fields

The Comment field is used to enhance readability and provide a place to document the purpose of an FST, Step, group of Steps, and save information within the FST. Comments are discarded when an FST is compiled and downloaded to the device. Comments remain with the FST when it is saved to a disk file.

A.4.6 FST Function Examples

The command, its associated arguments, and a Label (optional) make up a function. In this example, the Value (VAL) command in Step 0 writes the current process value of Analog Input (module 3, channel 1) in EUs to the Result Register (RR), which is implied. The Label in this example serves as a comment only, as no other function branches to it.

STEP	LABEL	CMD	ARGUMENT1	ARGUMENT2
0	CKHIAL	VAL	AIN 3-1,EU	
1		>=	AIN 3-1,HIAL	PUMPON

In the example above, when the value RR from Step 1 equals or exceeds (>=) the High Alarm value (VAL) in Step 2 and the High Alarm limit (**HIAL**) condition is met, the FST branches to the **PUMPON** Label to turn the pump on.

❖ **Note:** Refer to the *FST User Manual* (Form A4625) for additional examples.

A.4.7 Basic Rules for Creating FSTs

Several rules should be followed when creating FSTs.

- ◆ An END command is required at the end of every FST. The END command tells the FST to return to the top of the first STEP and begin to run from the first line at STEP 0. However, you can use a branching function to force the FST to immediately return to STEP 0 if you do not desire to wait for the next execution cycle to begin. If not present, the FST Editor will automatically add the END Command when compiling.
- ◆ The first blank line found in an FST is automatically converted to the END command. Any commands following a blank line are lost.
- ◆ Only one END command can be present in an FST.
- ◆ Avoid internal loops and direct the program flow to the End Command. Use Wait states (WT command) to suspend operation of the FST whenever possible to reduce MPU processor overload, especially in a loop in which a condition is being repeatedly checked.
- ◆ Be sure to configure the I/O parameters before referencing them in an FST.
- ◆ When using any branching command (GO, <, >, <=, >=, ==), make sure that you have defined the LABEL that you are referencing with the command.

A.4.8 FST Storage and Restart

This section details what FST configuration data is stored when a write to Internal Configuration Memory (EEPROM) is performed, and what happens to the FST after a Cold Start, Warm Start, or after upgrading the ROC or FloBoss firmware.

❖ **Note:** A Warm Start occurs when a ROC or FloBoss is powered on.

For a **FloBoss 100-Series**:

- ◆ **Flash Memory Save Configuration** – FSTs are permanently saved to memory.
- ◆ **Stop / Start** – If you disable an FST and restart it, the FST begins executing from where it left off.
- ◆ **Warm Start** – If an FST is saved to memory and it is active (running) when a Warm Start occurs, FSTs automatically restart at the beginning STEP.
- ◆ **Cold Start** – On a Cold Start, FST Registers will be cleared, but will be restored from Internal Config Memory if valid. However, if you perform a “Cold Start & Clear FSTs” or a “Cold Start & Clear ALL” type of Cold Start, FSTs are permanently deleted from Internal Config Memory.
- ◆ **Upgrading Firmware** – If an FST is saved to memory and it is active (running) when a firmware upgrade occurs, FSTs automatically restart after the upgrade completes.

For a **ROC300-Series** (Version 2.20 or greater) or **FloBoss 407** (Version 1.04 or greater):

If you disable an FST and then restart it, the FST will start executing from where it left off. The FST can be forced to restart from the beginning by setting the Run Flag to a value of 2.

- ◆ **Write to Config Memory** – FST point parameters (Registers and Run Flag) are permanently saved to memory. FST executable code is not saved to Config Memory.
- ◆ **Stop / Start** – If you disable an FST and restart it, the FST begins executing from the first Step.
- ◆ **Warm Start** – If a FST Point Type is saved to memory and it is active (running) when a Warm Start occurs, FSTs automatically restart at the beginning STEP.
- ◆ **Cold Start** – On a Cold Start, FST Registers will be cleared, but will be restored from Internal Config Memory if valid. However, if you perform a “Cold Start & Clear FSTs” or a “Cold Start & Clear ALL” type of Cold Start, the FSTs are permanently cleared from memory.
- ◆ **Upgrading Firmware** – If a FST Point Type is saved to memory and it is active (running) when a firmware upgrade occurs, FSTs automatically restart at the beginning STEP after the upgrade completes.

For a **ROC800-Series**:

- ◆ **Write to Internal Config Memory** – FSTs are permanently saved to memory.
- ◆ **Warm Start** – If an FST is saved to memory and it is active (running) when a restart occurs, FSTs automatically restart at the beginning STEP.
- ◆ **Cold Start** – On a Cold Start, FST Registers will be cleared, but will be restored from Internal Config Memory if valid. However, if you perform a “Cold Start & Clear FSTs” or a “Cold Start & Clear ALL” type of Cold Start, the FSTs are permanently cleared from Internal Config Memory.
- ◆ **Upgrading Firmware** – If an FST is saved to memory and it is active (running) when a firmware upgrade occurs, FSTs will be turned off and need to be MANUALLY restarted.


A.5 Working with FSTs

This section details how to work with FSTs.

A.5.1 Creating an FST

An FST can be created directly (by entering the steps in a blank workspace) or by editing an existing file from a device or from a disk file.


Use the following steps to create an FST while on-line with a ROC or FloBoss:

1. Start the ROCLINK 800 software and **connect** to the ROC or FloBoss.
2. Select Utilities > **FST Editor**.
3. Select the tab of the FST you wish to create (**FST 1, FST 2, FST 3, FST 4, FST 5, or FST 6**). The number of FSTs available is device dependent.
4. Fill in each STEP with the appropriate Labels, Commands, Tags, and Arguments.
 - ◆ When you select the field for the **Command**, the select  button appears. If you click the button, a display of commands from which to choose appears. You may type in the 3-character command.
 - ◆ Depending upon which Command was chosen, the Argument fields prompt you to type in a Label, choose a TLP, or enter some other data.
 - ◆ The Label field is optional, but are may be required if you are using the Label within a Command. Enter all required Labels or a compile error may occur.
 - ◆ Enter the **END** command at the end of your FST.

A.5.1.1 Creating an FST from an Existing File

Use the following steps to create an FST by editing an existing FST. You may use either a FST from the device or a FST file on your PC.

If you are using a file from the device, connect the ROC or FloBoss to the computer running ROCLINK 800 software.

1. Select Utilities > **FST Editor**.
2. Select File > Read > From File or File > Read > **From Device**.
3. Open an existing **FST** file with the .FST extension.
4. Edit each **STEP** with the appropriate **Command**, **Tag**, and **Arguments**.
 - ◆ The **Label** field is optional, but are may be required if you are using the Label within a Command. Enter all required Labels or a compile error may occur.
 - ◆ When you select the field for the **Command**, the select  button appears. If you click the button, a display of commands from which to choose appears. You may also type in the 3-character command.
 - ◆ Depending upon which Command was chosen, the Argument fields prompt you to type in a Label, choose a TLP, or enter some other data.
 - ◆ Verify that the **END** command is at the end of your FST.

A.5.1.2 Compiling (Build) and Viewing an FST

When you perform a Compile, the contents of the Workspace are encoded into the proper format for use by the ROC or FloBoss. The FST code can then be downloaded to ROC memory.



To build and compile an FST:

Select FST Build > **Compile** or click the Build button to encode the FST into the proper format for use by the ROC or FloBoss memory.

The compiled file displays in the **Output** FST field. If invalid points exist in the FST during compilation, you receive an error indicating which Point Number is missing. The Output compiled FST field displays the errors so that the error can be corrected before the FST is downloaded.

- ❖ **Note:** If an error occurs during the compile process, the Output field lists the error type and the cell in question turns red.

Compile errors are indicated when:

- ◆ Invalid Arguments or Commands are entered during the writing of the FST.
- ◆ You perform a Compile. The error displays in the Output field.
- ◆ You open an FST from a ROC, FloBoss, or disk file.

A.5.1.3 Downloading the FST to the ROC or FloBoss

To download the FST to ROC or FloBoss memory:

1. Click the **Download** button on the toolbar or select File > Download.

If the FST currently loaded is operating, you will be prompted to stop the FST and continue with the download or to stop the FST without downloading.

2. Enter the **Version** number and **Description** of the FST, for later identification, and click **OK**.

Following the download, you will be prompted to start the FST or you can start the FST in Monitor Mode or the FST Register screen. To verify the FST logic, you may desire to start the FST in Trace Mode.

A.5.1.4 Saving an FST

To save the FST as an individual disk file:



1. Select FST > **Save as** or click the Write to file button in the FST Editor.
2. Enter the **File name** and click **Save**. The FST file will be saved with an **.fst** extension.

A.5.1.5 Starting the FST

Once an FST is compiled (Build > Compile) without errors and is downloaded to the ROC or FloBoss, the FST must be started in order to run.

1. **Connect** the ROC or FloBoss to the computer running ROCLINK 800 software.
2. Select Configure > Control > **FST Register**.
3. Select the desired **FST** from the drop-down list box.
4. Select the **Status Enabled** radio button.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

A.5.1.6 Stopping an FST

To stop the execution of an FST:

1. Connect the ROC or FloBoss to the computer running ROCLINK 800 software.
2. Select Configure > Control > **FST Register**.
3. Select the desired **FST** from the drop-down list box.
4. Select the **FST Status Disabled** radio button.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

A.5.1.7 Deleting an FST (Clear)

To permanently delete an FST:

1. Select FST > **Clear**.
2. Select the desired **FST** (FST1 to FST6).

Not supported by a FloBoss 100-Series.

A.5.1.8 Reading, Writing, Selecting, and Closing an FST

The FST menu allows you to select FSTs to Read, Write, Select, Close, and Print.



Select FST > Read > **From Device** to retrieve the contents of the ROC or FloBoss memory and load the FST in the selected Workspace.



Select FST > Read > **From File** to retrieve the contents of a disk file and display the FST in the selected Workspace.

- ❖ **Note:** If invalid points exist in the FST, you receive an error indicating which Point Number is missing.
- ❖ **Note:** The Output view is populated with data when a Compile operation is performed or when an FST is read from the ROC or FloBoss.



Select FST > **Save as** to save the current Workspace contents to a disk file (saves one FST at a time).

Select FST > **Close** to exit the FST Editor or Monitor screen.

A.5.1.9 Printing an FST

In the FST Editor, select FST > **Print Preview** to print an FST or export it to a file.

When the Print Preview screen appears, click the Print button to send the FST to a printer. You may also select the PDF, Excel, or RTF buttons to export the FST as a file in those formats.

A printed FST can help you in troubleshooting.

A.5.2 Altering an FST – Edit Menu

The FST Editor Edit menu provides options for altering a FST.



Select Edit > **Insert Step** to place a blank line in the Workspace before the current line. Use this option to add a function between two existing functions.



Select Edit > **Delete Step** to delete the current line from the Workspace.



Select Edit > **Erase Workspace** to erase the contents of the current Workspace permanently. You can save the FST to a file before you erase the Workspace.

Cut, Copy, and Paste function are available using <Ctrl + X>, <Ctrl + C>, and <Ctrl + V>. You can copy fields, entire Steps, or blocks of Steps. The FST Editor will not insert, but will override existing fields.

Two other modes of operation are available for the FST Editor: Monitor and Trace. Monitor mode allows for continual viewing of the present contents of the FST structure in the device as it is modified. Trace mode allows you to examine execution of an FST one STEP at a time for debugging purposes.

A.5.2.1 Troubleshooting an FST

An execution error is an error that will cause the stopping of an FST by the ROC or FloBoss. An execution error occurs when the FST references a Point Number that has been removed or changed.

If a compile error occurs during the compile process (Build > Compile), the Output field lists the error type and the cell in question turns red. Execution errors are caused by changes in the ROC or FloBoss configuration after the download of an FST. This may include removal of I/O or other logical points used by the FST.

In Monitor mode, execution errors are indicated through the Run Flag Status (RF).

0 = FST is not running – All devices.

1 = FST is running – All devices.

2 = Restart from beginning – ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 only.

5 = Indicates FST has shut down due to an invalid point reference All devices.

8 = FST Editor initiates the Trace mode – ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series only.

9 = Indicates that the FST in the ROC or FloBoss is processing – ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 only.

When an FST fails as indicated by an RF value of 5, you can view at which Instruction Pointer (IP) the FST failed.

A.6 Monitor Mode

When on-line, use FST Monitor menu to select which FST to monitor, turn Trace mode on and off, Close the FST, Pause or Resume an FST and Monitor Registers, Timers, Miscellaneous Registers, Messages, and Compare Flag options.

To start Monitor mode to display the selected FST, select the desired FST from the Monitor menu while on-line with the ROC or FloBoss unit or click the Monitor button from within the open workspace to monitor that FST. FST fields located on the right side of the Monitor screen may be edited by highlighting the field, typing the value, and pressing <Enter>. The new value is written to the FST and read back on the next update.

The Help Status Line at the top of the Monitor indicates the status of the Monitor and Trace Modes.

The Parameter and Data fields include:

CF – Compare Flag, often referred to as the Signal Value Discrete (SVD), is an 8-bit integer representing the numbers 0 through 255.

CF Bny – The Compare Flag displays as both the integer value and the binary value (bit 7 to the left and bit 0 to the right).

RF – Run Flag.

0 = FST is not running – All devices.

1 = FST is running – All devices.

2 = Restart from beginning – ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 only.

5 = Indicates FST has shut down due to an invalid point reference All devices.

8 = FST Editor initiates the Trace mode – ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series only.

9 = Indicates that the FST in the ROC or FloBoss is processing – ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407 only.

When an FST fails as indicated by an RF value of 5, you can view at which Instruction Pointer (IP) the FST failed.

IP – Instruction Pointer. Indicates the storage location in the FST of the next function to be executed. One storage location is used for each byte that stores the function.

Size – The number of bytes reserved for the FST program in bytes. Equivalent to the end pointer value minus the start pointer value.

Brk – The delay, in 100 millisecond intervals, between the execution of successive FST Commands or functions. The FloBoss 100-Series Break interval is 1 second.

RR – The Results Register or accumulator, sometimes referred to as the Signal Value Analog (SVA), is a floating-point value passed between functions or FSTs.

R1 through R10 – Ten floating-point registers for each FST. The floating-point registers are used for global storage, and register contents can be called into any of the FSTs configured for a ROC or FloBoss.

Timer 1 through Timer 4 – Four timers. When set greater than “0”, they decrement by “1” every 100 milliseconds for a ROC800-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407. The FloBoss 100-Series decrements by 1 second. A timer can be set using the Set Timer (ST) Command or by saving the RR (Results Register) directly to the timer parameter using the SAV Command. The Check Timer (CT) Command is used to compare the timer to “0”. When greater than “0”, it branches to the desired LABEL.

MSG1 – Character field for storing a message.

MSG2 – Not used by the FST. A value can be written to MSG2 using the FST Registers point or a ROC Display field and viewed while monitoring or tracing the FST.

MSG Data – Displays any values associated with MSG1.

MISC 1 through MISC 4 – Single-byte registers that can be written to and the value can be used by the FST. Valid value is 0 to 255.

Table A-3. Monitor and Trace Mode Keystrokes

Key	Action	Key	Action
↑	Move cursor to the cell above it.	End	Move cursor to the right-most cell.
↓	Move cursor to the cell below it.	F1	Help.
Ctrl + End	Display last entry in Workspace.	F6	Execute current FST command.
Ctrl + Home	Display beginning of Workspace.	Home	Move cursor to the left-most cell.
Page Down	Display next page of Workspace.	Page Up	Display previous page of Workspace.

A.6.1 FST – Trace Mode

In Trace mode, you can view at which Instruction Pointer (IP) the FST failed. Print the FST to assist in troubleshooting.

When on-line, the FST Editor uses a Trace mechanism that provides the ability to debug FST program logic. Trace executes the FST function indicated by the Instruction Pointer (IP), moves the Instruction Pointer to the next FST function to be executed, and then stops. You are given the opportunity to examine the results of the FST function and determine the next FST function to be executed. The location of the action depends on the nature of the command. The action may be traced to the history log, I/O value, Point Numbers, Softpoint, and so on.

The command executed is determined by comparing the Instruction Pointer (IP) shown on the Monitor screen to a list of all Instruction Pointers and their corresponding commands. Trace thereby verifies proper execution and sequencing of the FST functions.

❖ **Note:** Before entering Trace mode, print out an Instruction Pointer listing of the FST.

After entering Trace mode from a newly compiled FST, the FST starts at the first STEP. After entering Trace mode from an executing FST, the FST starts at the STEP being executed. When using a FloBoss 407, ROC300-Series, FloBoss 100-Series, a value can be entered into the Instruction Pointer (IP) field to manually jump to another STEP.

Press <F6> to execute the next command.


❖ **Note:** When you attempt to Trace an FST that contains WT, BRK, ST, or CT commands, a pause in the sequencing can occur until the command conditions are met.

Other Trace commands include:

- ◆ Select Monitor > **Trace On** to turn on Trace mode.
- ◆ Select Monitor > **Pause** to stop the FST at the current command.
- ◆ Select Monitor > **Resume** to start the FST at the current command.
- ◆ Select Monitor > **Trace Off** to turn off Trace mode.
- ◆ Select Monitor > **Next Step** to turn off Trace mode.

A.7 FST Command Library

Commands are identified by a name that consists of one or more characters or mathematical symbols. In the FST Editor, select the CMD field and perform one of the following:

- ◆ Type the Command.
- ◆ Click the  button.

This opens a list of commands, the command names, and their descriptions (actions). Command Library Conventions Table describes the terms RR and CF used in the command descriptions (actions).

In FST Command Summary Table, each command name is given along with a brief description (action), the Arguments (ARGUMENT1 or ARGUMENT2) required, and the effect each operation has on the RR and CF. In the explanation of the operation, if RR or CF is not mentioned, then the current content is not affected and remains unchanged. In general, the CF is affected only by logical commands.

Table A-4. FST Command Library Conventions

Convention	Description
RR (in)	The value or contents of the Results Register (RR), Signal Value Analog (SVA) prior to execution of the function (command).
RR (out)	Output value from Results Register (RR).
CF (in)	The value or contents of the Compare Flag (CF), Signal Value Discrete (SVD), prior to execution of a function (command).
CF (out)	The contents of the Compare Flag (CF), following execution of the function (command).

Table A-5. FST Command Summary

Category	Command	Action	FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407	ROC800-Series
Math	+	RR = RR + ARGUMENT1 (add)	X	X
	–	RR = RR – ARGUMENT1 (subtract)	X	X
	*	RR = RR * ARGUMENT1 (multiply)	X	X
	/	RR = RR / ARGUMENT1 (divide)	X	X
	**	RR = RR raised to power of ARGUMENT1	X	X
	ABS	RR = Absolute value of RR	X	X
	EXP	RR = “e” (2.71828) raised to power of RR	X	X
	INT	RR = Integer value of RR	X	X
	LOG	RR = Log (base 10) of RR	X	X
	LN	RR = Natural Log of RR	X	X
	SQR	RR = Square root of RR	X	X
	P3	RR = 3rd-order polynomial (R1, R2, R3, R4)	X	X
Logical	NOT	SVD = NOT SVD ($0 \geq 1$; $> 0 \geq 0$)	X	X
	AND	SVD = SVD AND ARGUMENT1	X	X
	OR	SVD = SVD OR ARGUMENT1	X	X

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Category	Command	Action	FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407	ROC800- Series
	XOR	SVD = SVD XOR ARGUMENT1	X	X
Comparison	==	If RR = ARGUMENT1, go to ARGUMENT2 LABEL	X	X
	!=	If RR <> ARGUMENT1, go to ARGUMENT2 LABEL	X	X
	<	If RR < ARGUMENT1, go to ARGUMENT2 LABEL	X	X
	<=	If RR <= ARGUMENT1, go to ARGUMENT2 LABEL	X	X
	>	If RR > ARGUMENT1, go to ARGUMENT2 LABEL	X	X
	>=	If RR >= ARGUMENT1, go to ARGUMENT2 LABEL	X	X
Time	ST	Set Timer # ARGUMENT1 to ARGUMENT2 100 mSec intervals or 1 second for FloBoss 100-series	X	X
	CT	If Timer # ARGUMENT1 > 0, go to LABEL ARGUMENT2	X	X
	WT	Suspend FST execution for ARGUMENT1 secs	X	X
	DWK	RR = Day of Week (1=Sunday, 7=Saturday)	X	X
	MND	RR = Minutes since midnight	X	X
Control	AO	Set AO# ARGUMENT1 output = ARGUMENT2 EUs	X	X
	DO	Set DO# ARGUMENT1 status = ARGUMENT2	X	X
	TDO	Force Discrete Output Recalculation	X	X
Database	VAL	RR = Value specified in ARGUMENT1	X	X
	SAV	Write RR to variable specified in ARGUMENT1	X	X
	RDB	Read History Value into RR	X	X
	WDB	Write RR Value to History	X	X
	WTM	Write Current Time to History	X	X
	DHV	Read Daily History Value into RR	–	X
	DHT	Read Daily History Time Stamp into RR	–	X
	PHV	Read Periodic History Value into RR	–	X
	PHT	Read Periodic History Time Stamp into	–	X
	MHV	Read Minute History Value into RR	–	X
	DIS	Read Starting Daily History Index into RR	–	X
	DIN	Read Number of Daily History Indexes into RR	–	X
	PIS	Read Starting Periodic History Index into RR	–	X
	PIN	Read Number of Periodic History Indexes into RR	–	X

Category	Command	Action	FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407	ROC800- Series
	GTE	Extract Time Element from Time Stamp into RR	–	X
Miscellaneous	GO	Jump to STEP pointed to by ARGUMENT1 LABEL	X	X
	MSG	MSG String #1 = ARG1; MSG Data = ARG2	–	X
	END	End of FST...restart at beginning	X	X
	BRK	Delay ARGUMENT1 100 mSec intervals (1 second for FloBoss 100-Series)	X	X
	ALM	Log 10-character message and a current value	X	X
	EVT	Log 10-character message and a current value	X	X

❖ **Note:** MSG not supported by the FloBoss 100-Series.

A.7.1 FST Mathematical Commands

The mathematical commands provide simple arithmetic or mathematical operations. Such operations include addition (+), subtraction (–), multiplication (*), division (/), raise to power (**), absolute value (ABS), “e” raised to a power (EXP), truncate to integer (INT), base 10 logarithm (LOG), natural logarithm (LN), square root (SQR), and 3rd-order polynomial (P3).

❖ **Note:** No operation occurs with the LOG, LN, power (**), and SQR commands if the Results Register is less than or equal to zero.

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
+	Add value to RR(in)	1. Database or Constant Value	RR(out) = RR(in) + ARG1 SVD(out) = SVD(in)
–	Subtract value from RR(in)	1. Database or Constant Value	RR(out) = RR(in) - ARG1 SVD(out) = SVD(in)
*	Multiply RR(in) by value	1. Database or Constant Value	RR(out) = RR(in) * ARG1 SVD(out) = SVD(in)
/	Divide RR(in) by value	1. Database or Constant Value	If ARG1 = 0.0: RR(out) = RR(in), SVD(out) = SVD(in)
			Otherwise: RR(out) = RR(in) / ARG1

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
**	Raise RR(in) to a power	1. Database or Constant Value	ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series: $RR(out) = RR(in) ** ARG1$ FloBoss 500-Series: $RR(in) \geq 0$ and $ARG1 \geq 0$ $RR(out) = RR(in) ** ARG1$ $RR(in) = 0$ and $ARG1 = 0$ $RR(out) = NAN$ $RR(in) = 0$ and $ARG1 = 0$ $RR(out) = 0$ ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407: $ARG1 = 0$ and $RR(in) = 0$ $RR(out) = RR(in)$ In all other cases: $RR(out) = RR(in) ** ARG1$ $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$
ABS	Absolute Value of RR(in)	None	$RR(out) = RR(in) $ $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$
EXP	"e" to the power of RR(in)	None	$RR(out) = e ** RR(in)$ $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$
INT	Integer part of RR(in)	None	$RR(out) = (int) RR(in)$ $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$
LOG	Logarithm (base 10) of RR(in)	None	If $RR(in) > 0.0$: $RR(out) = LOG[RR(in)]$, $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$ Otherwise: $RR(out) = RR(in)$, $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$
LN	Natural Logarithm of RR(in)	None	If $RR(in) > 0.0$: $RR(out) = LN[RR(in)]$, $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$ Otherwise: $RR(out) = RR(in)$, $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$
SQR	Square Root of RR(in)	None	If $RR(in) \geq 0.0$: $RR(out) = SQRT[RR(in)]$, $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$ Otherwise: $RR(out) = RR(in)$, $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$
P3	3rd-Order Polynomial	None	$RR(out) = [reg1 * (RR(in) ** 3)]$ $+ [reg2 * [RR(in) ** 2]]$ $+ [reg3 * [RR(in) ** 1]]$ $+ reg4$ where reg1 through reg4 are the current constant values of Register1 through Register4 of the respective FST $SVD(out) = SVD(in)$

A.7.2 FST Logical Commands

You can store a discrete value called the Signal Value Discrete (SVD) in the **Compare Flag (CF)**. The SVD is stored as an 8-bit byte. The CF is true whenever non-zero, and the CF is false when zero.

Logical commands operate upon the Compare Flag (CF). Prior to execution of a logical command, the CF must be loaded with an 8-bit value by using the SAV command.

The bit-wise logical commands (AND, OR, NOT, and XOR) apply Boolean operations on two 8-bit integers, bit-by-bit. The two 8-bit integers are the CF and the value defined by ARGUMENT1 of the logical command. Note that this value is then converted by the software into an 8-bit unsigned integer. This value is used as a binary number 8 bits long as described next.

Each bit is weighted as a power of two, and the bit position determines which power of two. The bit, either 0 or 1, is multiplied by the respective bit weight. The resulting binary number is read from right to left, with the right-most bit representing bit 0, and the left-most bit representing bit 7.

For example, the integer 42 is equivalent to the binary number 00101010 as shown next, where bit 0 is the right-most bit:

Bit Binary # x Weight =

Bit 7 0 x 2⁷ = 0 x 128 = 0
 Bit 6 0 x 2⁶ = 0 x 64 = 0
 Bit 5 1 x 2⁵ = 1 x 32 = 32
 Bit 4 0 x 2⁴ = 0 x 16 = 0
 Bit 3 1 x 2³ = 1 x 8 = 8
 Bit 2 0 x 2² = 0 x 4 = 0
 Bit 1 1 x 2¹ = 1 x 2 = 2
 Bit 0 0 x 2⁰ = 0 x 1 = 0

Total = 42

The following table summarizes the bit-wise AND operation.

AND	0	1
0	0	0
1	0	1

The following example ANDs the two integers 37 and 42, giving a result of 32.

37	00100101
AND 42	00101010
32	00100000

The following table summarizes the bit-wise Inclusive OR operation.

OR	0	1
0	0	1
1	1	1

The following example ORs the two integers 37 and 42, giving a result of 47.

```

    37 | 00100101
OR  42 | 00101010
-----
    47 | 00101111

```

The following table summarizes the bit-wise Exclusive OR operation.

```

XOR   | 0 1
-----
    0 | 0 1
    1 | 1 0

```

The following example Exclusive ORs the two integers 37 and 42, giving a result of 15.

```

    37 | 00100101
XOR  42 | 00101010
-----
    15 | 00001111

```

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
NOT	Logical NOT of SVD(in)	None	If SVD(in) > 0, SVD(out) = 0 Otherwise: SVD(out) = 1 RR(out) = RR(in)
AND	Logical AND ARG1 with SVD(in)	1. Database or Constant Value	RR(out) = RR(in), SVD(out) = [SVD(in) AND ARG1]
OR	Logical OR ARG1 with SVD(in)	1. Database or Constant Value	RR(out) = RR(in), SVD(out) = [SVD(in) OR ARG1]
XOR	Logical XOR ARG1 with SVD(in)	1. Database or Constant Value	RR(out) = RR(in), SVD(out) = [SVD(in) XOR ARG1]

A.7.3 FST Comparison Commands

Use comparison commands to compare values. Comparison commands conditionally compare two values, and branch to a different sequence of commands if the comparison is determined to be **true**. Otherwise, if the comparison is determined to be **false**, no branching occurs and the next command in sequence is executed. Comparison commands test values for equivalence (==), non-equivalence (!=), less than (<), less than or equal to (<=), greater than (>), and greater than or equal to (>=).

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
==	Test If RR(in) equals ARG1. Note that this command performs in a bit-wise fashion, so two floating Point Numbers displayed as equal may not match.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. LABEL	If RR(in) = ARG1, Goto ARG2 Otherwise: continue to next command RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
!=	Test If RR(in) Not Equal to ARG1.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. LABEL	If RR(in) != ARG1, Goto ARG2 Otherwise: continue to next command RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
<	Test If RR(in) less than ARG1.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. LABEL	If RR(in) < ARG1, Go to ARG2 Otherwise: continue to next command RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
<=	Test If RR(in) less than or equal to ARG1.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. LABEL	If RR(in) <= ARG1, Go to ARG2 Otherwise: continue to next command RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
>	Test If RR(in) greater than ARG1.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. LABEL	If RR(in) > ARG1, Go to ARG2 Otherwise: continue to next command RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
>=	Test if RR(in) greater than or equal to ARG1.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. LABEL	If RR(in) >= ARG1, go to ARG2 Otherwise: continue to next command RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)

A.7.4 FST Time-Related Commands

Use time-related commands (FST Timers) to implement simple time-related operations, such as setting Timers, checking Timers, determining if Timers have elapsed, wait time before continuing, and imposing a delay upon each command executed.

Timers are used to branch the FST to a specific Label after a specified period of time following an action. Up to four Timers are available for use in an FST and each Timer has a time interval of 100 milliseconds or seconds for a FloBoss 100-Series. Each FST Timer decrements by 1 interval if the Timer value is greater than 0.

Set Timer (ST) – The ST command sets any one of the four available Timers for any of the available FSTs. ARGUMENT1 specifies the number of the Timer to set and ARGUMENT2 specifies the number of intervals to which the Timer is set.

Check Timer (CT) – When executing a loop repeatedly in an FST, it is recommended a timer (CT) be included so the loop executes only once every time interval. This prevents the loop from executing several times within the allotted task period, eliminating unnecessary calculations that could deprive time from other tasks.

Wait (WT) – The Wait command imposes a delay, entered in seconds and tenths of seconds, before executing the next command. For example, entering a value of 0.1 implies a 100-millisecond delay and a value of 1.0 implies a one-second delay. This is entered in seconds for a FloBoss 100-Series.

Day of Week (DWK) and Minutes Since Midnight (MND) – These commands are written to the Results Register. For DWK, 1=Sunday through 7=Saturday.

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
ST	Set Timer for specified FST with value in 100 mSec intervals. 1 second for FloBoss 100-Series.	1. FST Point Database Value 2. Database or Constant Value	FST Timer (ARG1) = ARG2 RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
CT	Check Timer for specified FST with value in 100 mSec intervals. 1 second for FloBoss 100-Series.	1. FST Point Database Value 2. LABEL	If FST Timer (ARG1) = 0, continue to next command. Otherwise, Goto ARG2. RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
WT	Wait – suspend FST until specified number of seconds (ARG1) have elapsed. The number of seconds can be from 0.1 to 999,999. 1 to 999,999 for a FloBoss 100-Series, which only accepts whole numbers.	1. Database or Constant Value	Delay ARG1 seconds RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
DWK	Day of Week – sets RR (out) to the day of the week (1=Sunday, 7=Saturday).	None	RR(out) = Day of Week SVD(out) = SVD(in)
Note: The DWK function requires that the real-time clock be set correctly.			
MND	Minutes Since Midnight – sets RR (out) to the number of minutes past midnight.	None	RR(out) = Minutes SVD(out) = SVD(in)

A.7.5 FST Control-Related Commands

Use Analog Output (AO), Discrete Output (DO), and Timed Duration Output (TDO) control-related commands to control outputs.

- ❖ **Note:** The FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series units must use the AO, DO, and TDO commands to drive outputs from an FST. SAV and other commands will not affect the Output.

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
AO	Analog Output. Sets the Analog Output point EUs to the argument value. If the Analog Output is in Manual, no output is sent.	1. AO Point Database Value 2. Database or Constant Value	AO Output(ARG1) = ARG2 RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
DO	Discrete Output. Sets the Discrete Output point status to the argument value. If the Discrete Output is in Manual, no output is sent.	1. DO Point Database Value 2. Database or Constant Value	DO Output(ARG1) = ARG2 RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
TDO*	Timed Duration Output. Activates a DO point configured as a TDO or TDO Toggle. This command requires that you write a value to the EU Value parameter prior to TDO command. *TDO command is only used in the FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series units. As the required SAV command is performs the same function, using it on other units will only duplicate the action.	1. DO Point Database Value	DO Output(ARG1) RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)

- ❖ **Note:** To trigger outputs, use the corresponding output command (previous table). These commands trigger the mechanism that changes the output value.
- ❖ **Note:** The FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series units must use the AO, DO, and TDO commands to drive outputs from an FST. SAV and other commands will not affect the Output.

The Analog Output (AO) command sends the analog value specified in ARGUMENT2 to the analog Point Number specified in ARGUMENT1. The analog value is not sent if the analog Point Number is in Manual Mode. The check for Manual Mode is included as a safety feature and permits the FST to continue operation if the device connected to the Analog Output is being serviced.

If a PID loop is controlling the Analog Output, placing the PID loop into Manual Tracking Mode allows the FST to send a value to the output parameter of the PID. For other active PID modes, the FST and PID will be in conflict.

A.7.6 FST Miscellaneous Commands

Use the miscellaneous commands to move around FSTs and end FSTs.

Miscellaneous commands provide operations, such as an unconditional go to (GO), message to local display panel (MSG), alarms (ALM), and event (EVT) generation, end of the FST (END), and delay (BRK).

GO – The GO command executes an unconditional branch to the LABEL in ARGUMENT1. Branching can direct the FST to a step before or after the current step.

Message – The Message (MSG) command provides a 30-character message and value for viewing on the local display panel. Not supported by FloBoss 100-Series units.

Break – The BRK command imposes a delay (Break period), in 100-millisecond (1 second for a FloBoss 100-Series) intervals, before executing the next command. Once the break period is set to a value other than zero, a delay in 100-millisecond or 1 second intervals occurs between the executions of each subsequent command.

End – The END command completes execution of the FST and waits for the next FST execution cycle before returning to the first STEP of the FST. The END command can only be used once in an FST. If omitted, End is appended to the FST by the FST Editor at compile time following the first empty Command field.

Alarm and Event Log – The ALM and EVT commands log a 10-character message and the current value of the selected parameter to the respective log.

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
GO	Go to specified LABEL.	1. LABEL	Goto ARG1 RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
BRK	Break delays execution of each command after this one for the number of 100 millisecond (1 second for a FloBoss 100-Series) intervals defined by ARGUMENT1.	1. Database or Constant Value	FST break time = ARG1 RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
END	End of FST returns to first command.	None	Execute FST starting with first command. RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
MSG	LCD Message sends message (ARGUMENT1) and value (ARGUMENT2) to local display panel. One 30 character message can be sent by each FST as shown next: xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx Arg2 val yyyyyyyyy zzzzz.zz SCAN NEXT PREV MENU xxxx ...message yyyy ...FST Tag name zzzz ...ARGUMENT2 value	1. Message 2. Database or Constant Value	FST Message String(ARG1) FST Message Value(ARG2) RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
ALM	Log Alarm records message (ARGUMENT1) and value (ARGUMENT2) in the Alarm Log. Only the first 10 characters of the 30 character messages are used.	1. Message 2. Database or Constant Value	Log Alarm(ARG1, ARG2) RR(out) = RR(in)

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
			SVD(out) = SVD(in)
EVT	Log Event records message (ARGUMENT1) and value (ARGUMENT2) in the Event Log. Only the first 10 characters of the 30 character message are used.	1. Message 2. Database or Constant Value	Log Event(ARG1,ARG2) RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
Note: The ALM and EVT functions can quickly overfill the allotted log space of alarms and events. It is important to assure that these two functions do not operate continuously.			

A.7.7 FST Database Commands

Database commands provide access to the configuration and historical databases. Operations include reading and writing configuration parameters and reading, writing, storing values from historical databases, and time stamping values to a History Point.

VAL – The Value (VAL) command loads the Results Register (RR) with the value defined in ARGUMENT1. ARGUMENT1 can be a constant or any database parameter available to the FST. The value defined in ARGUMENT1 is converted to floating point data type and written to the Results Register.

SAV – The Save (SAV) command writes the Results Register (RR) value to any database parameter available to the FST as defined in ARGUMENT1.

WDB, WTM, and RDB – The historical database commands, Write to Historical Database (WDB), Write Time to Historical Database (WTM), and Read Historical Database (RDB), allow you to establish a non-periodic history database (one that has no specific time interval), a periodic history database (one that has a specific time interval), or a storage array for data (similar to a Softpoint).

For the FST historical database commands to work, a History Point has to be configured correctly for a FST History Point as either FST Time Archive Type or FST Data Archive Type. Refer to Defining a FST History Point.

The FST for a History Point uses one of the historical database commands and two Arguments. **ARGUMENT1** contains the history database point number. ARGUMENT1 can be a constant or a parameter with a value between:

- ◆ 1 through 35 (FloBoss 100-Series).
- ◆ 1 through 87 (ROC300-Series).
- ◆ 1 through 50 (FloBoss 407).
- ◆ History Segment (General Segment 0 or Segment 1 through 10) and History Point (1 through 200) (ROC800-Series).

ARGUMENT2, for a ROC800-Series, the historical database commands is the index or pointer to the history storage array. The history storage array holds entries taken at either set intervals (typically daily, hourly, and each minute) or user-configurable intervals. For information on the intervals and number of entries, refer to the history database specifications instruction manual for the ROC800-Series.

Argument2 should be a Soft point or FST register. The history point defined by Argument1 will be logged at the index location defined by Argument2.

ARGUMENT2, for FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, can be a constant or a database parameter that contains the history log pointer. If ARGUMENT2 is a floating-point database parameter, the historical database commands check for rollover by comparing the pointer against the number of archived periods per history database point. Following the write or read, the floating point database parameter is incremented by 1 and then compared against the number of archived periods. If the floating point database parameter is equal to or greater than the number of archived periods, the floating point database parameter is set to “0” and the data writes over the stored data.

❖ **Note:** For ROC800-Series, when viewing the data or time in history, it will be under Periodic History, not Minute History.

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
VAL	Load RR sets the RR(out) to the argument value.	1. Database or Constant Value	RR(out) = ARG1 SVD(out) = SVD(in)
SAV	Store RR sets the argument to the RR(in).	1. Database Value	ARG1 = RR(in) RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
RDB	Read Historical Database sets the RR(out) to the historical database value of the specified database point (ARGUMENT1) and the specified pointer (ARGUMENT2) to the historical database value. Applies to historical database points defined for the FST only. If ARGUMENT2* is a floating database value (for example: @FST1, FST SEQ# 1, R8), the command increments ARGUMENT2 to the next historical database value and sets it to 0 when the number of archived historical periods are exceeded. Otherwise, no effect occurs to ARGUMENT2. *Note: The ROC800-Series increments any Data Type.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. Database or Constant Value	For FST History Point: RR(out) = History Value(ARG1, ARG2) For floating database value ARG2: If ARG1 >= No. of archived periods (ARG1), then ARG2 = 0 Otherwise, ARG2 = ARG2 + 1 For all other cases: RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)
WDB	Write To Historical Database sets the RR(in) to the value of the database point (ARGUMENT1) and the pointer (ARGUMENT2). Applies to historical database points defined for the FST only. If ARGUMENT2* is a floating database value (for example: @FST1, FST SEQ# 1, R8), the command increments ARGUMENT2 to the next historical database value and sets it to 0 when the number of archived historical periods are exceeded. Otherwise, no effect occurs to ARGUMENT2. *Note: The ROC800-Series increments any Data Type.	1. Database or Constant Value 2. Database or Constant Value	For FST History Point: History Value (ARG1, ARG2) = RR(in). For floating database value ARG2: If ARG2 >= No. of archived periods (ARG1), then ARG2 = 0. Otherwise, ARG2 = ARG2 + 1. For all other cases: RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)

WTM	<p>Write Time To Historical Database sets the value of the database point (ARGUMENT1) and the pointer (ARGUMENT2) to the historical database time string with either minutes or seconds resolution. The time format for minute's resolution is [min,hr,day,mon] and for seconds resolution is [sec,min,hr,day]. Applies to historical database points defined for the FST only.</p> <p>If ARGUMENT2* is a floating database value (for example: @FST1, FST SEQ# 1, R8), the command increments ARGUMENT2 to the next historical database value and sets it to 0 when the number of archived historical periods are exceeded. Otherwise, no effect occurs to ARGUMENT2.</p> <p>*Note: The ROC800-Series increments any Data Type.</p>	<p>1. Database or Constant Value</p> <p>2. Database or Constant Value</p>	<p>For FST History Point: If minute resolution, then History Value (ARG1, ARG2 = minute format. Otherwise: History Value (ARG1,ARG2) = second format. For floating database value ARG2: If ARG2 >= number of archived periods (ARG1), then ARG2 = 0. Otherwise: ARG2 = ARG2 + 1. For all other cases: RR(out) = RR(in) SVD(out) = SVD(in)</p>
-----	---	---	--

A.7.7.1 Defining a FST History Point

When defining history database points for WDB, WTM, and RDB, define at least one History Point as an FST Time type (minute or second) to provide a time stamp for the values logged. The time stamps represent what time each portion of the accumulated data was logged.

To define an FST History Point:

1. Select Configure > **History Points**.
2. For the ROC800-Series, select the desired **History Segment**.
3. Select the desired History **Point**.
4. Click the **Archive Type** TLP button and select FST Time or FST Data.
5. Click the **Archive Point** TLP button and select any TLP, such as FST Register 2 to contain the data or time stamp. The Archive Point selection is ignored by the FST.
6. Click **OK**.

The FST for a History Point uses one of the historical database commands and two Arguments.

ARGUMENT1 typically contains the history database History Segment and History Point number with a value between:

- ◆ For History Segment, General Segment 0 or Segment 1 through 10.
- ◆ For History Point, 1 through 200.

ARGUMENT2 is the History Index or database pointer to the history storage array. The history storage array holds entries taken at either set intervals (typically daily, hourly, and each minute) or user-configurable intervals.

For the **DHV**, **DHT**, **PHV**, **PHT**, and **MHV** commands, select the History Segment and the corresponding History Point that you desire to log in Argument 1. In Argument 2, select either a database point or a constant value, which is the actual History Index where the data resides in the historical database.

The Minute History Value (MHV) History Index is the same as the minute of the hour. Read the clock's minutes to get the last History Index value. For example, if it is 8:10 then the History Index is 10.

For the Extract Time Element (**GTE**) command, select the database point or a constant value, which is the actual History Index value where the data resides in the historical database. In Argument 2, select the Time Element to log the exact time of the database point or History Index value. The GTE command is used to extract the time element from the time stamp received back from the CHT and PHT commands.

For **DIS**, **DIN**, **PIS**, and **PIN** commands, select the History Segment and the corresponding History Point that you desire to log in Argument 1. In Argument 2, select the Month and Date on which to log the History Index value.

To acquire the Daily History Value (DHV), perform a Starting Daily Index (DIS) command to locate the starting History Index value for a specific day. Using the DIS History Index value, use the DHV command to locate the Daily History Value.

To find specific data in history, such as the data entered at 9:00 AM yesterday, first use the Starting Periodic Index (PIS) command to find the starting History Index value for yesterday's date and then count forward nine to acquire the History Index value for 9:00 AM. Use this new History Index with the Periodic History Value (PHV) command to locate the data.

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
DHV	Daily History Value	1. History Segment, History Point 2. DB Point or Constant (History Index)	Stores value in RR. Halts on invalid History Index.
DHT	Daily History Time Stamp	1. History Segment, History Point 2. DB Point or Constant (History Index)	Stores value in RR. Halts on invalid History Index.
PHV	Periodic History Value	1. History Segment, History Point 2. DB Point or Constant (History Index)	Stores value in RR. Halts on invalid History Index.
PHT	Periodic History Time Stamp	1. History Segment, History Point 2. DB Point or Constant (History Index)	Stores value in RR. Halts on invalid History Index.
MHV	Minute History Value	1. History Segment, History Point 2. DB Point or Constant (History Index)	Stores value in RR. Halts on invalid History Index.
DIS	Starting Daily Index	1. History Segment, History Point 2. Month/Day	Stores value in RR. Returns -1 if Month/Day not found.
DIN	Number of Daily Indexes	1. History Segment, History Point 2. Month / Day	Stores value in RR. Returns -1 if Month/Day not found.
PIS	Starting Periodic Index	1. History Segment, History Point 2. Month / Day	Stores value in RR. Returns -1 if Month/Day not found.
PIN	Number of Periodic Indexes	1. History Segment, History Point 2. Month / Day	Stores value in RR. Returns -1 if Month/Day not found.

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Name	Description	Arguments	Results
GTE	Extract Time Element	1. DB Point or Constant (History Index) (Time in Seconds since 1/1/1970) 2. Time Element	Stores value in RR. Valid Time Elements: 0 – Month 1 – Day 2 – Year 3 – Hour 4 – Minute 5 – Second

GLOSSARY

A

A/D: Analog to Digital signal conversion.

AGA: American Gas Association. Association that oversees the AGA 3 (orifice), AGA 5 (heating value), AGA 7 (turbine), AGA 8 (compressibility) and AGA 11 (ultrasonic) gas flow calculations standards. For more information, refer to the AGA website: <http://www.aga.org>.

AI: Analog Input.

AO: Analog Output.

Attribute: A parameter that provides information about an aspect of a database point. For example, the alarm attribute is an attribute that uniquely identifies the configured value of an alarm.

B

BMV: Base Multiplier Value. Used in AGA7 (turbine) calculations.

BPS: Bits Per Second. Typically associated with baud rate.

Built-in I/O: I/O channels that are fabricated into the ROC or FloBoss and do not require a separate option. Also called on-board I/O.

C

Comm: Abbreviation for communications. Most commonly used as comm port, referring to the communications port on the ROC.

Comm Module: Module that plugs into the ROC or FloBoss unit to provide a channel for communications via a specified communications protocol, such as EIA-422 (RS-422) or HART.

Compare Flag (CF): Compare Flag. Stores the SVD.

Configuration: Refers either to the process of setting up the software for a given system or the result of performing this process. The configuration activity includes editing the database, building schematic displays and reports, and defining user calculations. Typically, the software setup of a device that can often be defined and changed. Can also mean the hardware assembly scheme.

Configuration Tree: When a configuration file is open in ROCLINK 800 software, the Configuration Tree View menu appears. It is a hierarchy tree style means of navigating within the configuration screens.

CRC: Cyclical Redundancy Check error checking.

CTS: Clear to Send modem communications signal.

D

D/A: Digital to Analog signal conversion.

DCD: Data Carrier Detect modem communications signal. Also, Discrete Control Device - A discrete control device energizes a set of discrete outputs for a given Setpoint and matches the desired result against a set of discrete inputs.

Deadband: A value that is a zone above the low limits and below the high limits. The purpose of the Deadband is to prevent a value such as an alarm from being set and cleared continuously when the input value is oscillating around the specified limit. This also prevents the logs or data storage location from being over-filled with data.

Device: Instrument for a specific purpose and generally refers to a ROC or FloBoss unit.

Device Directory: When ROCLINK 800 software opens, the Device Directory appears. Also referred to as the Communication Directory Tree, it provides a hierarchy tree style means of navigating through the PC Comm Ports and the ROC Comm Ports setup screens.

DI: Discrete Input.

DO: Discrete Output.

Download: To send data, a file, or a program to the ROC or FloBoss unit.

DP: Differential Pressure.

Duty Cycle: Proportion of time during a cycle that a device is activated. A short duty cycle conserves power for I/O channels, radios, and such.

DVS: Dual-Variable Sensor. The DVS provides differential pressure and static pressure inputs to the FloBoss 100-Series for orifice flow calculation.

E

EFM: Electronic Flow Metering or Measurement.

EIA-232: Serial Communications Protocol using three or more signal lines, intended for short distances. Also referred to as the RS-232 standard.

EIA-422: Serial Communications Protocol using four signal lines. Also referred to as the RS-422 standard.

EIA-485: Serial Communications Protocol requiring only two signal lines. Can allow up to 32 devices to be connected together in a daisy-chained fashion. Also referred to as the RS-485 standard.

EU: Engineering Units. Units of measure, such as MCF/DAY.

F

Firmware: Internal software that is factory-loaded into a form of ROM or flash memory. In the ROC or FloBoss, the firmware supplies the software used for gathering input data, converting raw input data calculated values, storing values, and providing control signals.

Flash ROM: A type of Read-Only memory that can be electrically re-programmed. It is a form of permanent memory and requires no backup power.

FloBoss: A microprocessor-based unit that provides flow calculations, remote monitoring, and remote control.

FST: Function Sequence Table, a type of program that can be written by the user in a language designed by Emerson Process Management.

G

GND: Electrical ground, such as used by the ROC or FloBoss power supply.

H

HART: Highway Addressable Remote Transducer protocol.

Holding Register: Analog output number value to be read.

Hw: Differential pressure.

I, J, K

I/O: Inputs and Outputs.

I/O Module: Module that plugs into a ROC or FloBoss unit to provide an input or output channel.

IEC: Industrial Electric Code or International Electrotechnical Commission. For more information about the International Electrotechnical Commission, refer to their website: <http://www.iec.ch>

IEEE: Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers. The Open System Interconnection (OSI) reference model and an international standard for the organization of local area networks (LANs) established by the International Standards Organization (ISO) and the IEEE. For more information, refer to the IEEE website: <http://www.ieee.org>

IMV: Integral Multiplier Value. Used in AGA3 calculations.

Input: Analog or Digital input, a bit to be read.

Input Register: Input numeric value to be read.

IRQ: Interrupt Request. Hardware address oriented.

ISO: International Standards Organization. For more information, refer to the ISO website: <http://www.iso.ch>

IV: Integral Value.

L

LCD: Liquid Crystal Display. Display only device used for reading data.

LED: Light-emitting diode.

Logical Number: The Point Numbers used by ROC and ROC Plus Protocol for I/O Point Types are based on a physical input or output with a terminal location; the point numbers for all other Point Types are “logical” and are simply numbered in sequence.

LOI: Local Operator Interface (Local Port). Refers to the serial [EIA-232 (RS-232)] port on the ROC or FloBoss through which local communications are established, typically for configuration software running on a PC.

LRC: Longitudinal Redundancy Check error checking.

M, N

MAC – Media Access Control Address is a hardware address that uniquely identifies each node of a network. In IEEE 802 networks, the Data Link Control (DLC) layer of the OSI Reference Model is divided into two sublayers: the Logical Link Control (LLC) layer and the Media Access Control (MAC) layer. The MAC layer interfaces directly with the network medium. Consequently, each different type of network medium requires a different MAC layer.

Manual Mode: In a ROC or FloBoss configuration, Manual Mode generally refers to I/O Scanning set to Disabled mode.

Modbus: A popular device communications protocol developed by Gould-Modicon.

MVS: Multi-Variable Sensor. The MVS provides differential pressure, static pressure, and temperature inputs to the FloBoss 407 and ROC800-Series for orifice flow calculation.

O

Off-line: Accomplished while the target device is not connected (by a communications link). For example, off-line configuration is configuring a ROC in a electronic file that is later loaded into the ROC.

On-line: Accomplished while connected (by a communications link) to the target device. For example, on-line configuration is configuring a ROC while connected to it, so that current parameter values are viewed and new values can be loaded immediately.

Opcode: Type of message protocol used by the ROC to communicate with the configuration software, as well as host computers with ROC driver software.

Orifice Meter: A meter that records the flow rate of gas through a pipeline. The flow rate is calculated from the pressure differential created by the fluid passing through an orifice of a particular size and other parameters.

P, Q

P/DP: Pressure/Differential Pressure.

Parameter: A property of a point that typically can be configured or set. For example, the Point Tag ID is a parameter of an Analog Input point. Parameters are normally edited by using configuration software running on a PC.

PC: Personal Computer.

PI: Pulse Input.

PID: Proportional, Integral, and Derivative control feedback action.

PLC: Programmable Logic Controller.

Point: Software-oriented term for an I/O channel or some other function, such as a flow calculation. Points are defined by a collection of parameters.

Point Number: In ROC800-Series, the physical location of an I/O point as installed in the ROC system (module slot and channel). In FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407, the number of an I/O point as installed in the FloBoss system.

Point Type: The point type attribute defines the database point to be one of the possible types of points available to the system. The point type determines the basic functions of a point.

Preset: Number value previously determined for an register.

Pulse: Transient variation of a signal whose value is normally constant.

PV: Process Variable or Process Value.

R

RAM: Random Access Memory. In a FloBoss, it is used to store history, data, most user programs, and additional configuration data.

RBX: Report-by-Exception. In a ROC or FloBoss, it always refers to Spontaneous RBX in which the ROC or FloBoss contacts the host to report an alarm condition.

Results Register (RR): Results Register. Stores the SVA.

ROC: Remote Operations Controller, a microprocessor-based unit that provides remote monitoring and control.

ROM: Read-Only Memory. Typically used to store firmware.

Rotary Meter: A positive displacement meter to measure flow rate. Also referred to a Roots meter.

RS-232: Serial Communications Protocol using three or more signal lines, intended for short distances. Also referred to as the EIA-232 standard.

RS-485: Serial Communications Protocol requiring only two signal lines. Can allow up to 32 devices to be connected together in a daisy-chained fashion. Also referred to as the EIA-485 standard.

RTC: Real-time clock.

RTD: Resistance Temperature Detector.

RTS: Ready to Send modem communications signal.

RTU: Remote Terminal Unit.

RXD: Received data communications signal.

S

Soft Point: A type of ROC point with generic parameters that can be configured to hold data as desired by the user.

SP: Setpoint or Static Pressure.

SPI: Slow Pulse Input.

SRAM: Static Random Access Memory. Stores data as long as power is applied; typically backed up by a lithium battery or super capacitor.

SRBX: Spontaneous-Report-by-Exception in which the ROC or FloBoss contacts the host to report an alarm condition.

SVA: Signal Value Analog. Stored in the Results Register, it is the analog value that is passed between functions in an FST.

SVD: Signal Value Discrete. Stored in the Compare Flag, it is the discrete value that is passed down the sequence of functions in an FST.

System Variables: Parameters configured that describe the ROC or FloBoss unit. These parameters are set in the ROC > Information screen of ROCLINK software.

T

TCP/IP: Transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol.

TDI: Timed Discrete Input, or Time Duration Input.

TDO: Timed Discrete Output, or Time Duration Output.

TLP: Type (of point), Logical (or point) number, and Parameter number.

Turbine Meter: A turbine device to measure flow rate and other parameters.

TXD: Transmitted data communications signal.

U – Z

Upload: To send data, a file, or a program from the ROC or FloBoss unit to a configuration PC or the Host.

INDEX

Symbols

.ANA	6-25
.ARM	6-25
.CFX	6-31
.EVT	6-23
.VOL	6-27
+T	3-21

Numbers

0% Count	4-26
0% Pulse Width	4-18
100% Count	4-26
100% Pulse Width	4-18
103 History Sizing	1-19
800	9-2, 9-3
809 Modules	1-19

A

A4/A5 Function	3-21
About ROCLINK 800.....	1-12
Absolute.....	5-31
Access Levels	2-2, 2-5
Accum'd Pulses	4-31
Accumulated Value	4-17, 4-25
Acknowledging Events & Alarms	8-16
Active Alarms	4-4, 5-4, 5-15
Active Connections.....	3-7
Actual Pulse Width	4-18, 4-19
Actual Scan.....	4-6, 4-18
Adding	
Device	2-16
Group	2-16
Address	2-15, 3-5
Device or Slave	3-7
Gateway	3-6
Modbus	3-7
RBX or SRBX.....	2-30
Adjusted A/D 0%	4-6
Adjusted A/D 100%	4-6
AGA / DET.....	6-19
AGA Calculation	3-5
AGA Limit Events.....	5-31
AGA3 (1992).....	5-14
AGA7 (1996).....	5-14
AI	
Advanced	4-4
Alarms.....	4-7
Analog Input Configuration	4-2
Calibration Values	10-16
General.....	4-2
Points	4-2

Alarms

Mass / Day	5-36
Volume / Day.....	5-36
Volume / Hour	5-36
Alarms	4-4, 4-20, 4-31
AcknowledgingModbus.....	8-16
Active.....	4-4
AI	4-8
Configuring Comm Ports for RBX or SRBX	2-30
Deadband	4-21, 4-36
High, Low, Deadband	5-10
Log Reports	6-31
Mass / Day	5-10
Mass / Hour.....	5-36
Meter.....	5-14, 5-35
Modbus	8-13, 8-14
RBX.....	4-8, 5-10
Reading Modbus.....	8-15
ROC800-Series	5-36
SRBX.....	4-8, 5-10
Station	5-10
Volume / Day.....	5-10

Altering

FST – Edit Menu.....	A-13
Ambient Hg Temp	5-33
Analog Input	
Refer to AI	4-2
Analog Outputs	
Refer to AO.....	4-9

AO

Advanced	4-11
Alarms	4-13
Analog Output	4-9
General.....	4-9
Points	4-9
Application Code	2-13
Archive Type	6-12
ASCII.....	8-4
Atmospheric Pressure	5-8, 5-29
Auto Output.....	4-23
Automatic Mode.....	4-3
AutoScan	
Update Interval Option	1-14
Average Raw Values	4-6, 4-44
Averaging Technique	5-18

B

Backup

Database.....	9-1
Base Density	5-4
Base Multiplier Period (BMP).....	5-15
Base Multiplier Value (BMV)	5-15
Base Pressure.....	5-8, 5-29
Base Temperature	5-8, 5-29

Battery Power	
Controlling	7-18
Baud Rate	2-19, 2-25
Baud Rate Generator.....	3-12
BMP.....	5-15
Browse Button	
TLP	1-13
Build	A-11
Buttons.....	1-8, 1-9

C

Calc User Program.....	3-23
Calc2 User Program.....	3-23
Calculation Standards	5-4, 5-14
Calibrated	
Air Temp.....	5-34
Grav. Accel	5-33
H ₂ O Temp.....	5-33
Hg Temp	5-33
Calibrated Grav. Accel	5-35
Calibration	10-1
AI Values	10-16
Factors.....	5-34
HART.....	10-15
MVS Values.....	10-19
Orifice Meter.....	10-10
Report.....	10-2
RTD Values	10-17
Turbine Meter	10-13
Verify	10-3
Calibration	10-1
Carbon Steel	5-30
Channel Version	4-51
Clearing	
FST	A-12
Clipping	4-7
Clock.....	3-1
Closing	
FST	A-12
Collect Data	6-17
COM1 Device.....	2-15
COM1 User Program.....	3-23
COM2 Device.....	2-15
COM2 User Program.....	3-23
Comm Board.....	2-26
Comm Ports	2-15, 2-19, 2-21, 2-22
Diagnostics(ROC800-Series).....	2-33
General.....	2-25
Modbus Host Parameters	2-27, 8-32
Modem.....	2-28
ROC800-Series & FloBoss 100-Series	2-11
SRBX or RBX.....	2-30
Store & Forward Tab (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 407).....	2-32
Users	2-11
Comm Status.....	4-51
Comm Type	2-25

Command Library	
FST	A-16
Communciations	
Power Control	7-18
Communication	
Ports on the ROC and FloBoss	2-1, 2-21, 8-2
Communication Ports	2-25
Communications	
Monitor	2-40
ROCLINK 800.....	2-17
Troubleshooting	2-38, 2-39, 2-40
Compare Flag	
CF	A-2
Comparison Commands	
FST	A-22
Compile	A-11
Computer Requirements	1-2
Config Command	2-28
Configuration	
Basics.....	1-14
Checklist	1-14
Checklist FloBoss 100-Series	1-16
Checklist FloBoss 407	1-17
Checklist ROC300-Series	1-16
Checklist ROC800-Series	1-15
Download.....	9-3
Duplicating	1-17
I/O.....	4-1
Menu Tree.....	1-20, 2-37
Modbus	8-1
New.....	1-18
Open.....	1-19
Open.....	9-4
Print	12-2
Procedure	1-14
Save	9-2
Saving and Retrieving.....	9-1
TCP/IP Communications	2-34
Configure	
Control	7-4, 7-5, 7-18, 7-21
History Points	6-1, 6-3, 6-5
History Segments.....	6-8
I/O	4-2, 4-9, 4-14, 4-21, 4-29,
.....	4-38, 4-42, 4-46, 4-50, 7-1
LCD	12-5
LCD User List.....	12-6
Modbus	8-1, 8-18, 8-29
Opcode Table.....	7-3
Configuring	
Device Information	3-2
History	6-1
History Points	6-10
Meter History.....	6-10
System Flags.....	3-15
System Parameters	3-1
Connect.....	2-18, 2-37
Command.....	2-29
Direct	2-36
Time.....	2-28

Contacting the Flow Computer Division	1-2
Continuous	
Polling for Modbus	2-27
Contract Hour	3-5, 4-31, 5-3, 6-9
Control Configuration	1-19
Control-Related Commands	
FST	A-24
Conversion	4-31
Convert Codes	
Modbus	8-23
Convert EFM File	6-19
CRC Check	2-21, 3-20
Creating	
FST	A-10
New Configuration File	1-18
Current Rate	4-32
Custom Displays	12-9, 12-15
Editing	12-13
Expressions	12-13
New Display	12-10
Object Properties	12-12
Objects	12-11
Cycle Time	4-26

D

Daily Entries	6-9
Daily History	6-31
Data Bits	2-25
Database Commands	
FST	A-26
dcfg	12-16
Dead Weight Calibration	5-33
Deadband	4-21, 4-36, 5-10
Defining a FST History Point	A-28
Delete Step	A-13
Deleting	
All Devices	2-17
Device	2-16
FST (Clear)	A-12
Group	2-16
Desktop Shortcut	1-3
DET	6-19
Detailed	5-8
Device	
Adding	2-16
Address	2-16
COM1 and COM2	2-15
Deleting	2-16
Deleting All	2-17
Directory	2-1, 2-14
Ethernet	2-15
Groups	2-16
Memory	6-35
Modem	2-15
Renaming	2-17
Root	2-15
Security	2-1, 2-6, 2-8, 2-9, 2-10, 2-11, 2-12
Device Address	2-18, 3-7

Device Flags	3-15
Device Group	2-18
Device Information	3-2
Other Information	3-10
Points	3-7
Revision Info	3-13
System Configuration	3-12
Device Security	
Comm Ports	2-11
FloBoss 407	2-8
Groups	2-10
ROC300-Series	2-9
ROC800-Series & FloBoss 100-Series	2-6
Users	2-6, 2-8, 2-9
Users / Group Summary	2-12
Device Type	3-5
DI	
Advanced	4-16
Alarms	4-19
Discrete Input Configuration	4-14
General	4-14
Points	4-14
TDI Parameters	4-18
Diagnostics	2-34, 12-1
Comm Port	2-33
Differential Pressure	5-17
DIN Type	4-16
Direct Connect	2-36
Disconnect	
Command	2-29
ROC or FloBoss	2-40
Time	2-28
Discrete Inputs	
Refer to DI	4-14
Discrete Outputs	
Refer to DO	4-21
Display Administrator	12-15
Display Editor	12-14
Display TLP Options	1-14
Displays	
Custom	12-9
Diagnostics & Monitoring	12-1
DO	
Advanced	4-24
Alarms	4-28
Discrete Output Configuration	4-21
DOUT Type	4-23
General	4-22
Points	4-21, 4-22
TDO Parameters	4-26
Download	1-17, 9-3
FST	A-11
Downstream	5-31
DS800	2-26, 2-34, 2-35
Development Suite Software	7-21
Duplicating a Configuration	1-17
Duration	7-4

E

EFM Reports.....	6-17
Collect Data	6-17
Converging.....	6-19
Converting	6-19
History Configuration	6-13
Viewing.....	6-18
Elevation.....	5-8, 5-29
E-mail	1-2
Energy Rate	5-4
Energy Today	5-4
Energy Yesterday.....	5-4
Engineering Unit.....	4-3
Erase Workspace	A-13
Ethernet Address.....	3-6
Ethernet Device	2-15
Ethernet Port.....	2-34
EU Option.....	4-34
EU Value	4-19, 4-26, 4-30, 5-15
Event Log Reports	6-31
Events	
Acknowledging Modbus.....	8-16
Modbus	8-13, 8-14
Reading Modbus	8-15
Exponent.....	6-13
Expression	
Custom Displays	12-13
Extended Functions	7-1
Extended History	1-19, 6-3, 6-4, 6-5
External I/O	1-19
Extra Key On Delay.....	2-31

F

Factory Default Settings	3-18
Fault Value	4-6
Figure 1-1. Logon	1-5
Figure 1-2. Menu Bar and ToolBar (ROC800-Series Example).....	1-8
Figure 1-3. About ROCLINK 800 (ROC800-Series)	1-12
Figure 1-4. Select TLP.....	1-13
Figure 1-5. TLP Options.....	1-14
Figure 1-6. New File Configuration Example (ROC800- Series)	1-18
Figure 1-7. Configuration Tree	1-20
Figure 2-1. ROCLINK 800 Security.....	2-5
Figure 2-2. Device Security – Users (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series).....	2-6
Figure 2-3. Device Security – Users Maintenance (ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series).....	2-7
Figure 2-4. Device Security – Users (FloBoss 407)	2-8
Figure 2-5. Device Security – Users (ROC300-Series)	2-9
Figure 2-6. Device Security – Groups (ROC800-Series)	2-10
Figure 2-7. Device Security – Comm Ports (ROC800- Series and FloBoss 100-Series).....	2-11

Figure 2-8. Device Security – User/Group Summary (ROC800-Series)	2-12
Figure 2-9. License Key Administrator (ROC800-Series)	2-13
Figure 2-10. Device Directory	2-14
Figure 2-11. Device Root	2-15
Figure 2-12. ROCLINK 800 Communications – General Example (ROC800-Series)	2-18
Figure 2-13. ROCLINK 800 Communications Example – Advanced (ROC800-Series)	2-20
Figure 2-14. Comm Port (ROC800-Series)	2-23
Figure 2-15. Comm Port (FloBoss 100-Series)	2-23
Figure 2-16. Comm Port (FloBoss 407 and ROC300- Series).....	2-24
Figure 2-17. Comm Port Example (ROC800-Series)	2-25
Figure 2-18. Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	2-27
Figure 2-19. Comm Port – Advanced Example (ROC800- Series).....	2-28
Figure 2-20. Comm Port – SRBX Example (ROC800- Series).....	2-30
Figure 2-21. Comm Ports – Store & Forward (ROC800- Series and FloBoss 407)	2-32
Figure 2-22. Comm Ports – Diagnostics (ROC800-Series)	2-33
Figure 2-23. Successful Login Example (ROC800-Series)	2-37
Figure 2-24. Communications Monitor Example (ROC800-Series)	2-40
Figure 2-25. Device Directory	2-40
Figure 3-1. Clock.....	3-1
Figure 3-2. Device Information (ROC800-Series)	3-3
Figure 3-3. Device Information (FloBoss 100-Series)	3-3
Figure 3-4. Device Information (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	3-4
Figure 3-5. Device Information Example (ROC300- Series) and FloBoss 407	3-4
Figure 3-6. Information – Internet (ROC800-Series)	3-6
Figure 3-7. Information – Points (ROC800-Series).....	3-8
Figure 3-8. Information – Points (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	3-8
Figure 3-9. Information – Points (FloBoss 100-Series)	3-9
Figure 3-10. Information – Other Information Example (ROC800-Series)	3-10
Figure 3-11. Other Information (FloBoss 407 and FloBoss 100-Series).....	3-11
Figure 3-12. Other Information (ROC300-Series).....	3-11
Figure 3-13. Information – System Configuration (ROC800-Series)	3-12
Figure 3-14. Information – Revision Info (FloBoss 100- Series).....	3-13
Figure 3-15. Information – Keypad Display (ROC800- Series).....	3-14
Figure 3-16. Flags (ROC800-Series).....	3-15

Figure 3-17. Flags (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series).....	3-16
Figure 3-18. Flags – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	3-19
Figure 3-19. Flags – Advanced (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	3-19
Figure 3-20. Flags – Advanced (FloBoss 100-Series).....	3-20
Figure 3-21. Flags – User Programs (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	3-22
Figure 3-22. Flags – User Programs (FloBoss 100-Series).....	3-22
Figure 4-1. AI – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-2
Figure 4-2. AI – General (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series).....	4-3
Figure 4-3. AI – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-4
Figure 4-4. AI – Advanced (ROC300-Series).....	4-5
Figure 4-5. AI – Advanced (FloBoss 407).....	4-5
Figure 4-6. AI – Advanced (FloBoss 100-Series).....	4-6
Figure 4-7. AI – Alarms (ROC800-Series and ROC300-Series).....	4-7
Figure 4-8. AI Alarms (FloBoss 407 and FloBoss 100-Series).....	4-8
Figure 4-9. AO – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-9
Figure 4-10. Analog Outputs (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-10
Figure 4-11. AO – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-11
Figure 4-12. AO Advanced (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-12
Figure 4-13. AO – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	4-13
Figure 4-14. Discrete Inputs – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-14
Figure 4-15. Discrete Inputs – General (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-15
Figure 4-16. Discrete Inputs – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-16
Figure 4-17. Discrete Inputs – Advanced (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-17
Figure 4-18. Discrete Inputs – TDI Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	4-18
Figure 4-19. Discrete Inputs – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	4-19
Figure 4-20. Discrete Inputs – Alarms (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-20
Figure 4-21. Discrete Outputs – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-22
Figure 4-22. Discrete Outputs – General (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-22
Figure 4-23. Discrete Outputs – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-24
Figure 4-24. Discrete Outputs – Advanced (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-25
Figure 4-25. Discrete Outputs – TDO Parameters (FloBoss 407, ROC300-Series, ROC800-Series).....	4-26
Figure 4-26. Discrete Outputs – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	4-28
Figure 4-27. Pulse Inputs – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-29
Figure 4-28. Pulse Inputs – General (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-30

Figure 4-29. Pulse Input – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-32
Figure 4-30. Pulse Inputs – Advanced (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	4-33
Figure 4-31. Pulse Inputs – Advanced (FloBoss 100-Series).....	4-33
Figure 4-32. Pulse Inputs – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	4-35
Figure 4-33. Pulse Inputs – Alarms (FloBoss 407, FloBoss 100-Series, and ROC300-Series).....	4-36
Figure 4-34. Pulse Interface Module Data (FloBoss 104).....	4-37
Figure 4-35. Pulse Interface Module View (FloBoss 104).....	4-38
Figure 4-36. RTD – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-39
Figure 4-37. RTD – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-40
Figure 4-38. RTD – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	4-41
Figure 4-39. Thermocouple – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-43
Figure 4-40. Thermocouple – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-44
Figure 4-41. Thermocouple – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	4-45
Figure 4-42. System AI – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-47
Figure 4-43. System AI – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-48
Figure 4-44. System AI – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	4-49
Figure 4-45. HART – General (ROC800-Series).....	4-51
Figure 4-46. HART – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	4-53
Figure 4-47. HART – Device (ROC800-Series).....	4-54
Figure 4-48. Multi-Variable Sensor (ROC800-Series or FloBoss 407).....	4-57
Figure 5-1. Station – General (ROC800-Series).....	5-3
Figure 5-2. Station – Gas Quality (ROC800-Series).....	5-5
Figure 5-3. Station – Advanced (ROC800-Series).....	5-7
Figure 5-4. Station – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	5-9
Figure 5-5. Meter – General (Orifice – ROC800-Series).....	5-12
Figure 5-6. Meter – General (Turbine – ROC800-Series).....	5-13
Figure 5-7. Meter – General (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, and ROC300-Series).....	5-13
Figure 5-8. Meter – Inputs (Orifice – ROC800-Series).....	5-16
Figure 5-9. Meter – Inputs (Turbine – ROC800-Series).....	5-17
Figure 5-10. Gas Quality (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407).....	5-19
Figure 5-11. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – ROC800-Series).....	5-21
Figure 5-12. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – ROC800-Series).....	5-22
Figure 5-13. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – FloBoss 100-Series).....	5-23
Figure 5-14. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – FloBoss 100-Series).....	5-24

Figure 5-15. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – ROC300-Series)	5-25	Figure 7-5. PID Loop (ROC800-Series).....	7-7
Figure 5-16. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – ROC300-Series)	5-26	Figure 7-6. PID Loop (ROC300-Series).....	7-8
Figure 5-17. Meter – Advanced (Orifice – FloBoss 407)	5-27	Figure 7-7. PID – General (ROC800-Series).....	7-9
Figure 5-18. Meter – Advanced (Turbine – FloBoss 407)	5-28	Figure 7-8. PID Tuning (ROC800-Series).....	7-13
Figure 5-19. Meter – Sampler (FloBoss 100-Series)	5-32	Figure 7-9. PID Loop (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	7-14
Figure 5-20. Meter – Instrument Calibration (FloBoss 100-Series)	5-33	Figure 7-10. PID Loop Status (ROC800-Series)	7-16
Figure 5-21. Meter – Calibration Factors (Orifice – ROC800-Series)	5-34	Figure 7-11. Radio Power Control (ROC-800-Series)	7-19
Figure 5-22. Meter – Alarms (ROC800-Series).....	5-35	Figure 7-12. DS800 Development Suite Software (ROC800-Series)	7-21
Figure 5-23. Meter – Alarms (FloBoss 100-Series, FloBoss 407, ROC300-Series)	5-36	Figure 7-13. User Program Administrator (ROC800-Series)	7-22
Figure 5-24. Meter – Mass Meter Pressure Effect (Turbine – ROC800-Series)	5-38	Figure 7-14. User Program Administrator (FloBoss 100-Series)	7-23
Figure 6-1. History Memory (FloBoss 100-Series)	6-3	Figure 7-15. User Program Administrator (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)	7-24
Figure 6-2. History Setup – Standard History (FloBoss 100-Series)	6-3	Figure 7-16. User Data Example (ROC300-Series) ..	7-26
Figure 6-3. History Setup – Extended History (FloBoss 100-Series)	6-4	Figure 8-1. Modbus Configuration – General (ROC800-Series)	8-3
Figure 6-4. History Setup – Points Setup (FloBoss 100-Series)	6-5	Figure 8-2. Modbus Configuration – General (FloBoss 100-Series)	8-3
Figure 6-5. Meter > History Setup (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series – Meter)	6-7	Figure 8-3. Modbus Configuration – Scale Values (ROC800-Series)	8-6
Figure 6-6. Configure > History Points (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series – Standard)	6-7	Figure 8-4. Modbus History Example (ROC800-Series)	8-8
Figure 6-7. History Segment Configuration (ROC800-Series)	6-9	Figure 8-5. Modbus History Access Registers (FloBoss 100-Series)	8-10
Figure 6-8. Configure > History Points (FloBoss 100-Series)	6-10	Figure 8-6. Modbus History Table (ROC800-Series)	8-12
Figure 6-9. Configure > History Points (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series)	6-11	Figure 8-7. Modbus Registers (ROC800-Series).....	8-19
Figure 6-10. Configure > History Points (ROC800-Series)	6-11	Figure 8-8. Modbus Registers (FloBoss 100-Series)	8-20
Figure 6-11. Collect Device Data	6-17	Figure 8-9. Modbus Master Table (ROC800-Series)	8-30
Figure 6-12. View EFM Report	6-18	Figure 8-10. Modbus Master Modem (ROC800-Series)	8-31
Figure 6-13. Convert EFM File	6-19	Figure 8-11. Modbus Host Parameters (FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series).....	8-32
Figure 6-14. Select EFM File(s) to Convert.....	6-20	Figure 9-1. Saving Configuration	9-2
Figure 6-15. Invalid EFM File Alert.....	6-20	Figure 9-2. Saving Configuration Complete.....	9-2
Figure 6-16. EFM Files Select for Conversion and Invalid Files.....	6-21	Figure 9-3. Download Configuration.....	9-3
Figure 6-17. Select Folder for Converted Files.....	6-22	Figure 10-1. View Calibration Report	10-2
Figure 6-18. History From Device Example (FloBoss 407)	6-32	Figure 10-2. Calibration Report Print Preview	10-3
Figure 6-19. Select History to View (ROC800-Series)	6-33	Figure 10-3. Verify Calibration (ROC800-Series)	10-4
Figure 6-20. Device Memory (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	6-35	Figure 10-4. Verify Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	10-4
Figure 6-21. Device Memory (FloBoss 100-Series)	6-36	Figure 10-5. Set Zero Calibration (ROC800-Series)	10-5
Figure 7-1. Soft Points (FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, and FloBoss 407).....	7-2	Figure 10-6. Set Zero Calibration (FloBoss 100-Series)	10-5
Figure 7-2. Soft Points (ROC800-Series)	7-2	Figure 10-7. Set Zero Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	10-6
Figure 7-3. Opcode Table Settings	7-3	Figure 10-8. Set Span Calibration.....	10-7
Figure 7-4. Sampler / Odorizer (ROC800-Series)	7-4	Figure 10-9. Set Span Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	10-7
		Figure 10-10. Set Midpoints Calibration (ROC800-Series)	10-8

Figure 10-11. Set Midpoints Calibration (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	10-9
Figure 10-12. Set Zero Shift (Offset) (ROC800-Series)	10-10
Figure 10-13. Orifice Meter Calibration Example (ROC800-Series).....	10-11
Figure 10-14. Turbine Meter Calibration Example (ROC800-Series).....	10-13
Figure 10-15. HART Calibration.....	10-15
Figure 10-16. AI Calibration Values Example (ROC800-Series)	10-16
Figure 10-17. RTD Input Calibration Values	10-17
Figure 10-18. MVS Input Calibration Values.....	10-19
Figure 11-1. Update Firmware Example (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	11-2
Figure 11-2. I/O Termination Board.....	11-3
Figure 11-3. Update Firmware – Keypad Display (ROC800-Series).....	11-4
Figure 11-4. Upgrade Hardware	11-5
Figure 11-5. Plate Change	11-6
Figure 12-1. Print Configuration	12-2
Figure 12-2. I/O Monitor	12-3
Figure 12-3. I/O Monitor Values	12-4
Figure 12-4. LCD Display Configuration (ROC300-Series)	12-5
Figure 12-5. LCD User List.....	12-6
Figure 12-6. Meter Run Values Example (ROC800-Series – Orifice).....	12-7
Figure 12-7. Meter Run Values Example (ROC800-Series – Turbine)	12-8
Figure 12-8. Display Editor	12-9
Figure 12-9. Display Editor Objects	12-11
Figure 12-10. Custom Display Example.....	12-14
Figure 12-11. Display Administrator (ROC800-Series)	12-15
Figure 12-12. Keypad Display Editor.....	12-16
Figure A-1. FST Registers – General (ROC800-Series)	A-3
Figure A-2. FST Registers – Advanced (ROC800-Series)	A-3
Figure A-3. FST Editor.....	A-5
File	
Download.....	9-3
Open.....	9-4
Print Configuration	12-2
Save Configuration	9-2
Filter	4-6, 4-17, 4-44
Filter Intervals.....	4-17
Filter Time (Seconds)	4-34
Firmware	
Update.....	11-1
Update Keypad Display	12-17
Flags	3-15
Advanced	3-19
User Programs.....	3-22
Flange	5-31
FloBoss 100-Series	
History Sizing	1-19
Flow Dependant Formulaic	5-18

Flow Dependant Linear	5-18
Flow Rate.....	5-4
Flow Today.....	5-4
Flow Weighted Formulaic	5-18
Flow Weighted Linear	5-18
Flow Yesterday.....	5-4
Flow-Cal	6-19
Conversions	6-31
Force End of Day.....	3-5, 6-9
Force Recalculation	5-31
FPV Method	5-7, 5-8, 5-28
Freeze	10-3
Freeze Value.....	10-3
Frequency	4-31
From Device	6-32
From Factory Defaults.....	3-18
From File	6-33
FST	A-1
Argument Fields - ARG.....	A-7
Build (Compile)	A-11
Command Field - CMD	A-7
Command Library.....	A-16
Comment Fields.....	A-8
Comparison Commands.....	A-22
Control-Related Commands.....	A-24
Creating.....	A-10
Database Commands.....	A-26
Deleting.....	A-12
Download.....	A-11
Editing	A-13
Editor	A-5
Enabling.....	3-7
Execution	3-5
Function Examples	A-8
Function Structure.....	A-6
History Point.....	A-28
Label Structure.....	A-7
Logical Commands	A-20
Mathematical Commands	A-18
Miscellaneous Commands	A-25
Monitor Mode	A-13
Printing	A-12
Reading, Writing, Selecting, and Closing.....	A-12
Registers	A-3
Rules	A-8
Saving	A-11
Starting.....	A-11
Stopping.....	A-12
Storage and Restart	A-9
Time-Related Commands	A-23
Trace Mode.....	A-15
Troubleshooting	A-13
Function Sequence Table	
Refer to FST	A-1

G

Gas Component	5-5, 5-19
Gas Quality	5-6, 5-19

Gas, AGA3-92 / AGA7-96 / AGA11-2003	5-4
Gas, ISO5167-98 / ISO9951-93 / ISO10790-2003	5-4
Gateway Address	3-6
Gauge.....	5-31
Gravitational Acceleration	5-29
Gross I.....	5-8
Gross II	5-8
Groups	2-15, 3-5
Adding	2-16
Deleting.....	2-16
New Device.....	2-15
New Group.....	2-15
RBX or SRBX.....	2-30
Renaming	2-17
Security	2-10

H

Handshaking	2-26
HART	
Advanced	4-53
Calibration	10-15
Device	4-54
General.....	4-51
Input Configuration.....	4-50
Heating Value	5-6, 5-20
Heating Value Basis	5-6, 5-20
Heavy Gas Distribution	5-9
Heavy Gas Option.....	5-5
Help System.....	1-11
Hierarchy Tree	1-20
High Alarm	5-10
High DP SetPoint.....	5-18
High Reading EU.....	4-3, 4-26
High Reading Time.....	4-26
Historical Database	6-8
History	6-1
Access Registers	8-8, 8-10
Alarm and Event Log Reports	6-31
Daily, Minute, and Periodic	6-31
EFM Reporting	6-13
Extended	6-4
Meter	6-6
Modbus	8-8, 8-10
Modbus Table Configuration	8-11
Plot Report	6-34
Points	6-1
Setup	6-5
Setup (FloBoss 100-Series).....	6-3, 6-5
Setup FloBoss 407 and ROC300-Series.....	6-6
Sizing	1-19
Standard	6-3, 6-6
View.....	6-2
History Point	
FST	A-28
History Points	1-19, 6-3, 6-6, 6-8, 6-10
History Segments.....	5-3, 6-8
Hold Last Value	4-6

Host	
Address	2-19
Group	2-19
Poll Delay	2-27
Host Address	
RBX or SRBX	2-30
Host Group	
RBX or SRBX	2-30
Hourly Values.....	3-5

I

I/O	
AI Points	4-2
Configuring.....	4-1
Module	2-26
Monitor	12-3
Scanning	3-20
Setup	4-1
Type	1-19
Inactivity Time	2-28, 3-7, 3-14
Indexing.....	8-18
Information	3-2
General.....	3-4
Internet.....	3-6
Keypad Display.....	3-14
Other Information	3-10
Points	3-7
System Configuration	3-12
Information Revision	
Info.....	3-13
Input.....	5-15
Input Rate Point.....	7-4
Input Rate Value.....	7-4
Inputs	4-1
Insert Step.....	A-13
Installation	1-2
Integral Multiplier Period	5-14
Integral Multiplier Period (IMP)	5-14
Integral Multiplier Value (IMV).....	5-14
Internal.....	2-28
Internet.....	3-6
Invalid Message Byte Time	2-33
Invalid Message Bytes	2-33
Inverted.....	4-17
IP Address	2-19, 3-6
IP Port Number.....	3-6
ISO (1992).....	5-14
IXD Task	7-21

J

J Type	4-43
--------------	------

K

K Factor	5-15
K Type	4-43
Keep Alive Time	3-7

Key Off Delay	2-21, 2-26
Key On Delay	2-26
Keyboard	1-10
Keypad Display	3-14
Creating New	12-16
Firmware Update	11-4, 12-17
Keypad Display Editor	12-16
Editing	12-18
Security	12-19
Keystrokes	1-10

L

Latched	4-16, 4-23
Latitude	5-8, 5-29
Launching	
ROCLINK 800	1-4
ROCLINK 800 during Startup	1-4
LCD	2-26
Backlight Power Saving Mode	3-14
Custom User List	2-8, 2-9
Display Configuration	12-5
Firmware Version	3-14
Master Switch	3-14
ON	2-8, 2-9
Status	3-14
User List	12-6
User Program	3-23
Video Mode	3-14
LEDs	3-20
License Key Administrator	2-13
Liquid, ISO5167-98 / API 12-95 / ISO10790-1999	5-4
Local Gravitational Acceleration	5-8
Local Operator Interface (LOI)	2-37
Local Port	2-36, 2-37
Log Methane Adjust	5-20
Log Verify	10-3
Logging On	1-5
Logical Commands	
FST	A-20
Login	1-5, 2-37
Logs	6-31
LOI	2-37
Port	2-36
User Program	3-23
Low Alarm	5-10
Low DP Input	5-18
Low DP SetPoint	5-18
Low Flow Cutoff	5-14, 5-30
Low Reading EU	4-3, 4-26
Low Reading Time	4-26

M

MAC Address	3-6
Manual Mode	4-3
Manual Output	4-23
Mass Meter Pressure Effect	5-38
Mass Rate	5-4

Mass Today	5-4
Mass Yesterday	5-4
Master Table	8-29
Mathematical Commands	
FST	A-18
Maximum Time Between Pulses	4-19
Memory	6-35
Menu Bar	1-8
Menu Listing	1-7
Mercury Manometer Instrument Used	5-33
Merge	2-13
Meter	
Advanced	5-21
Alarms	5-35
Calibration Factors	5-34
Gas Quality	5-19
General	5-12
History	6-1
Inputs	5-16
Instrument Calibration	5-33
Mass Meter Pressure Effect	5-38
Sampler	5-32
Meter Calibration	
Orifice	10-10
Turbine	10-13
Meter Description	5-14
Meter Factor	5-30
Meter History	6-6, 6-10
Meter ID	5-14
Meter Run	5-1, 5-14
Meter Run Values	12-7
Meter Runs	
Enabling	3-7
Meter Setup	5-1, 5-11
Meter Tag	5-14
Meter Type	5-14
Minute History	6-31
Miscellaneous Commands	
FST	A-25
Modbus	2-35, 8-1
Continuous Polling	2-27
Conversion	8-23
Host	8-2
Host Parameters	8-32
Host Parameters Tab (ROC300-Series and FloBoss 407)	2-27
Master	2-26
Master Modem	8-31
Master Table	8-29
Registers	8-18
RTU Encapsulated in TCP/IP	2-34
Slave	2-26, 8-2
Slave Only	2-26
TCP/IP	2-34
Modbus Configuration	8-2
Acknowledging Events and Alarms	8-16
Events and Alarms	8-13, 8-14
General	8-3
History	8-8, 8-10

History Table	8-11
Reading Events and Alarms	8-15
Scale Values.....	8-5
Modem	
Comm Ports	2-28
Device	2-15
Modbus Master	8-31
Parameters.....	2-19
Status.....	2-29
Type	2-28
Module Scan Period.....	4-15
Momentary.....	4-23
Monel.....	5-30
Monitor	
I/O	12-3
Monitor Mode.....	A-13
Monitoring	12-1
Move.....	2-13
MVS	
Calibration Values	10-19
Sensor.....	4-57

N

Navigation	1-10
New	
Configuration File.....	1-18
Device1	2-15
Device2	2-15
Display	12-10
Group1	2-15
No Flow Time.....	5-30
Node	3-6
Normalization Type.....	5-6
Number of Days.....	6-6
Number of Retries.....	2-20

O

Odorizer	7-4
Off Counter.....	4-18
Offset	10-10
On Alarm Clear.....	5-10
On Alarm Set	5-10
On Counter	4-18
On-line	1-20
Opcodes	7-3
Open	
Configuration	9-4
Configuration File.....	1-19
Operator ID.....	2-5
Opposite Port	2-32
Options	
TLP	1-14
Tools Menu	1-14
Orifice	
Meter Calibration.....	10-10
Orifice Diameter	5-14, 11-6
Orifice Material	5-30

Other Information	3-10
Outputs	4-1
Override Default TAPI Init String	2-19

P, Q

Parameter Indexing.....	8-18
Parity	2-25
Part Number.....	3-13
Pass Through Mode.....	3-20
Password.....	1-5, 2-5
PC Comm Baud Rate.....	2-19
PC Comm Port and Baud Rate	2-19
PC Requirements	1-2
Periodic Entries	6-9
Periodic History	6-31
Periodic Sample Rate.....	6-9
PGAS	6-19
Alarm Files	6-25
Conversions	6-23
Event Files	6-23
Gas Quality Files	6-25
Meter Event Files.....	6-24
Volume Files.....	6-27
Volume Files Formate	6-29
Phone Number	2-19
Physical Output	4-23
Physical Status.....	4-15
PI	
Advanced	4-32
Alarms	4-35
General.....	4-29
Module Diagnostic.....	4-37
Points	4-29
Pulse Input Configuration.....	4-29
PID	
Enabling	3-7
Example	7-17
General.....	7-9
Loop.....	7-5
Status Tab (ROC800-Series).....	7-16
Tuning	7-13
ROC800-Series and FloBoss 100-Series	7-6
PIM	4-38
Pipe	5-31
Pipe Diameter	5-14, 11-6
Pipe Material	5-30
Plate Change.....	11-6
Point Indexing	8-18
Point Number.....	4-1, 5-14
Points	
Enabling	3-7
Port	2-25
Port Number	2-19
IP.....	3-6
Port Owner.....	2-26
Ports	
COMM1 – COMM5	2-21
Power Saving Mode.....	3-20

Pressure Tap	5-31
Print Configuration	12-2
Print Preview	10-3
FST	A-12
Printing	
FST	A-12
Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID)	7-5
Protocol.....	2-26, 3-6
Pulse Input Module Diagnostic.....	4-37
Pulse Inputs	
Refer to PI.....	4-29
Pulses For Day	4-31

R

Radio Power Control	7-18
Rate (Max Rollover)	4-34
Rate Alarm.....	4-20, 4-36
Rate Period	4-34
Raw A/D Input.....	4-6
RBX.....	2-30, 4-8, 4-28, 4-36, 5-37
Alarming	4-20, 5-10
Configuring Comm Ports	2-30
Mode	2-30
RBX Ack Timeout.....	2-31
Read I/O.....	3-21
Reading	
FST	A-12
Reading Modbus Events & Alarms Register	8-15
Reference Temp.....	5-30
Registers	8-18
FST	A-3
Remove Programs.....	1-4
Renaming	
Group or Device.....	2-17
Reports	
Calibration	10-2
Collect Data	6-17
EFM	6-13, 6-17
From Device	6-32
From File.....	6-33
History Plot.....	6-34
History, Alarm, and Event Logs	6-31
Plot.....	6-34
Viewing.....	6-18
Reserved	2-26
Reset All Connections	3-7
Resistance Temperature Detector	
Refer to RTD.....	4-38
Results Register	
RR	A-2
Retrieving Configurations.....	9-1
Returning the Device to Factory Default Settings	3-18
Revision Info	3-13

ROC	
Collect Data	6-17
Comm Ports	2-1, 2-21, 2-22, 2-25, 8-32
Direct Connect	2-36
Flags.....	3-15
Information	3-4
Memory.....	6-35
Security.....	2-6
ROC Plus Protocol.....	2-26, 2-35, 3-6
ROC_user.mdb	2-15, 9-1
ROC800-Series Modules	1-19
ROCLINK 800 Communications	2-1
Advanced	2-20
General.....	2-17
ROCLINK 800 Security	2-1, 2-5
ROCLINK 800 Software	1-1
ROCLINK 800 Version.....	1-12
Rollover Value.....	4-34
Rotation	4-37
RSI Task	7-21
RTD	
Advanced	4-40
Alarms	4-41
Calibration Values	10-17
General.....	4-39
Input.....	4-38
Points	4-38
RTD Input Configuration.....	4-38
RTD Bias	10-10
RTS.....	2-20
RTS/CTS Handshaking	2-26
RTU	8-4
Running Total (Entered Rollover)	4-34

S

Same Port.....	2-32
Sample Interval.....	6-5, 6-6
Sampler.....	7-4
Control	5-32
Duration	5-32
Volume Accum.....	5-32
Sampler/Odorizer (ROC800-Series).....	7-4
Samplers	
Enabling	3-7
Save Configuration	1-17, 9-2
Save ROC User File	9-1
Saving	
FST	A-11
Saving and Retrieving Configurations.....	9-1
Scale Values	8-5
Scan Period.....	4-3, 4-31, 5-14
Scanning	4-3
Scanning Disabled	4-4

Security	2-1, 2-6
Access Level	2-5
Access Levels.....	2-2
Groups.....	2-10
Keypad Display.....	12-19
ROCLINK 800.....	2-5
Users	2-6, 2-8, 2-9
Users / Group Summary.....	2-12
Security On	2-11
Segments	
History	6-8
Selecting	
FST	A-12
Set Bias	10-10
Set Offset	10-10
Set RTS to High for 30 Sec	3-21
Set To Factory Defaults	10-19
Setting the Clock.....	3-1
Setup	
History	6-5
Shortcut	
Desktop	1-3
Signal Value Analog (SVA)	A-2
Signal Value Discrete (SVD).....	A-2
Slave Address	3-7
Soft Points.....	7-1
Sp Heat Ratio.....	5-30
Span EU	4-19
Spec Gravity	5-6, 5-20
Speed of Sound.....	5-30
Split.....	2-13
SRAM Memory	3-17
SRBX.....	2-30, 4-8, 4-36, 5-37
Alarm Index	2-31
Alarming	5-10
Attempts.....	2-31
Configuring Comm Ports	2-30
Mode	2-30
Status.....	2-31
Stacked DP	5-17
Stainless Steel	5-30
Standard	4-16
Standard History	1-19, 6-3, 6-5, 6-6
Starting	
FST	A-11
Host Request for Modbus	2-27
ROCLINK 800.....	1-4
Transmission for Modbus	2-27
Startup	
ROCLINK 800 Software	1-4
Static K Factor	5-15, 5-30
Static Pressure.....	5-17
Stations	5-1, 5-2, 5-3, 5-14
Advanced	5-7
Alarms.....	5-9
Enabling	3-7
Gas Quality	5-5
General Tab.....	5-3
Name.....	3-5

Values	5-4
Status	4-15
Status on Power Reset	4-25
Stop Bits	2-25
Stopping	
FST	A-12
StopScan.....	1-14
Store & Forward	2-32
Mode.....	2-32
Path Address	2-32
Port.....	2-32
Subnet Mask	3-6
Successful Message Time.....	2-33
System AI	
Advanced	4-48
Alarms	4-49
General.....	4-47
System Analog Input	4-46
System Analog Inputs	
Refer to System AI	4-46
System Configuration	3-12
System Flags.....	3-15
System Parameters.....	3-1

T

Table 1-1. Menu Listing for ROCLINK 800.....	1-7
Table 2-1. Security Access Levels.....	2-2
Table 2-2. Communication Ports for the ROC800-Series	2-21
Table 2-3. Communication Ports for the FloBoss 407	2-22
Table 2-4. Communication Ports for the FloBoss 100-Series	2-22
Table 2-5. Communication Ports for the ROC300-Series	2-22
Table 3-1. ROC > Flag Definitions	3-17
Table 5-1. Default Engineering Units (EU).....	5-2
Table 6-1. Optional History Configuration per Meter Run	6-14
Table 6-2. Orifice EFM History Point for ROC800-Series	6-14
Table 6-3. Turbine EFM History Points for ROC800-Series	6-15
Table 6-4. EFM History Points for a FloBoss 100-Series, ROC300-Series, or FloBoss 407.....	6-16
Table 8-1. Modbus History, Event, and Alarm Functionality	8-9
Table 8-2. Host Events and Alarms Request Example Message	8-16
Table 8-3. Events and Alarms Response Example Message	8-16
Table 8-4. Events and Alarms Acknowledgement Response Example Message	8-16
Table 8-5. Modbus Events and Alarms Log Contents	8-17
Table 8-6. Event and Alarm Change Bit Map Contents	8-17

Table 8-7. Modbus Register Definition Defaults (FloBoss 100-Series).....	8-21
Table 8-8. Modbus Function Codes.....	8-22
Table 8-9. Modbus Convert Codes.....	8-23
Table 8-10. Status of Host Request or Command.....	8-30
Table A-1. Devices, Software, and FST Functionality.....	A-2
Table A-2. Workspace and Output Keystrokes.....	A-6
Table A-3. Monitor and Trace Mode Keystrokes.....	A-15
Table A-4. FST Command Library Conventions.....	A-16
Table A-5. FST Command Summary.....	A-16
Tag.....	2-18, 2-25
TC	
Advanced.....	4-44
Alarms.....	4-45
General.....	4-43
Points.....	4-42
Thermocouple Input Configuration.....	4-42
Type J or Type K.....	4-43
TCP/IP.....	2-34
TCP/IP Network.....	3-6
TCP/IP Task.....	7-21
TDI.....	4-16
TDI Parameters.....	4-18
TDO.....	4-23
Defining the Output Pulse.....	4-27
Parameters.....	4-26
Toggle.....	4-24
Technical Support.....	1-2
Telephone.....	1-2
Temp Compensation.....	4-7
Temperature TLP.....	5-17
Thermocouple	
Refer to TC.....	4-42
Time Basis.....	7-4
Time Duration.....	4-16
Time Out.....	2-21
Time-Related Commands	
FST.....	A-23
TLP	
Box Selections.....	1-13
Display Options.....	1-14
Today's Total.....	4-31
Today's Total (Max Rollover).....	4-34
ToolBar.....	1-8, 1-9
Tools Menu	
Options.....	1-14
Total Mole %.....	5-5, 5-19
Total Mole Percentage.....	5-19
Totaled.....	3-5
Trace Mode.....	A-15
Transmission Status.....	2-27
Transmit Counter.....	2-33
Transmitter Power.....	3-21
Troubleshooting	
Communication Monitor.....	2-40
Connection Errors.....	2-38
FST.....	A-8, A-13
FST Monitor Mode.....	A-13

FST Trace Mode.....	A-15
ROCLINK 800 Communications.....	2-39
TCP/IP Connections.....	2-39
Turbine	
Meter Calibration.....	10-13
Tx Delay.....	2-20
Type.....	1-19

U

Uncorrected Volume.....	5-17
Un-Installing ROCLINK 800.....	1-4
Unit Accumulation.....	7-4
Units.....	3-5, 4-3, 5-8
Update Firmware	
I/O Termination Board.....	11-3
Keypad Display.....	11-4
Update Firmware.....	11-1
Upstream.....	5-31
Use Failsafe State.....	4-25
User.....	5-8
User Correction Factor.....	5-29, 5-34, 5-35
User Data.....	7-25
User ID.....	1-5, 2-5
User Interface.....	1-6
User Program 1 to 8.....	2-26
User Program Administrator.....	7-22
Steps.....	7-24
User Programs	
Flags.....	3-22, 3-23
Users / Group Summary.....	2-12
Utilities	
Communications Monitor.....	2-40
Convert EFM File.....	6-19
FST Editor.....	A-5
Keypad Display Editor.....	12-16
License Key Administrator.....	2-13
ROCLINK 800.....	2-5
Update Firmware.....	11-4, 12-17
User Program Administrator.....	7-22

V

Valid Receive Counters.....	2-33
Valid Receive Ctr.....	2-26
Value.....	4-3
Value on Power Reset.....	4-12
Values	
AI Calibration.....	10-16
I/O.....	12-3
Meter Run.....	12-7
MVS Calibration.....	10-19
RTD Calibration.....	10-17
Variable K Factor.....	5-15, 5-30
Verify	
Calibration.....	10-3
View	
Calibration Report.....	10-2
Custom Displays.....	12-9

ROCLINK 800 User Manual

Directory	2-14
Display	12-10
EFM Reports.....	6-18
History	6-1, 6-2, 6-31
I/O Monitor	12-3
Viscosity	5-29

W, X

Water Manometer Calibration	5-33
Website	1-2
Window	
Device Directory	2-14

Writing
FST A-12

Y

Yesterday's Total.....4-31

Z

Zero EU	4-19
Zero Shift.....	10-10

If you have comments or questions regarding this manual, please direct them to your local sales representative or contact:

**Emerson Process Management
Flow Computer Division**

Marshalltown, IA 50158 U.S.A.

Houston, TX 77065 U.S.A.

Pickering, North Yorkshire UK Y018 7JA

Website: www.EmersonProcess.com/flow